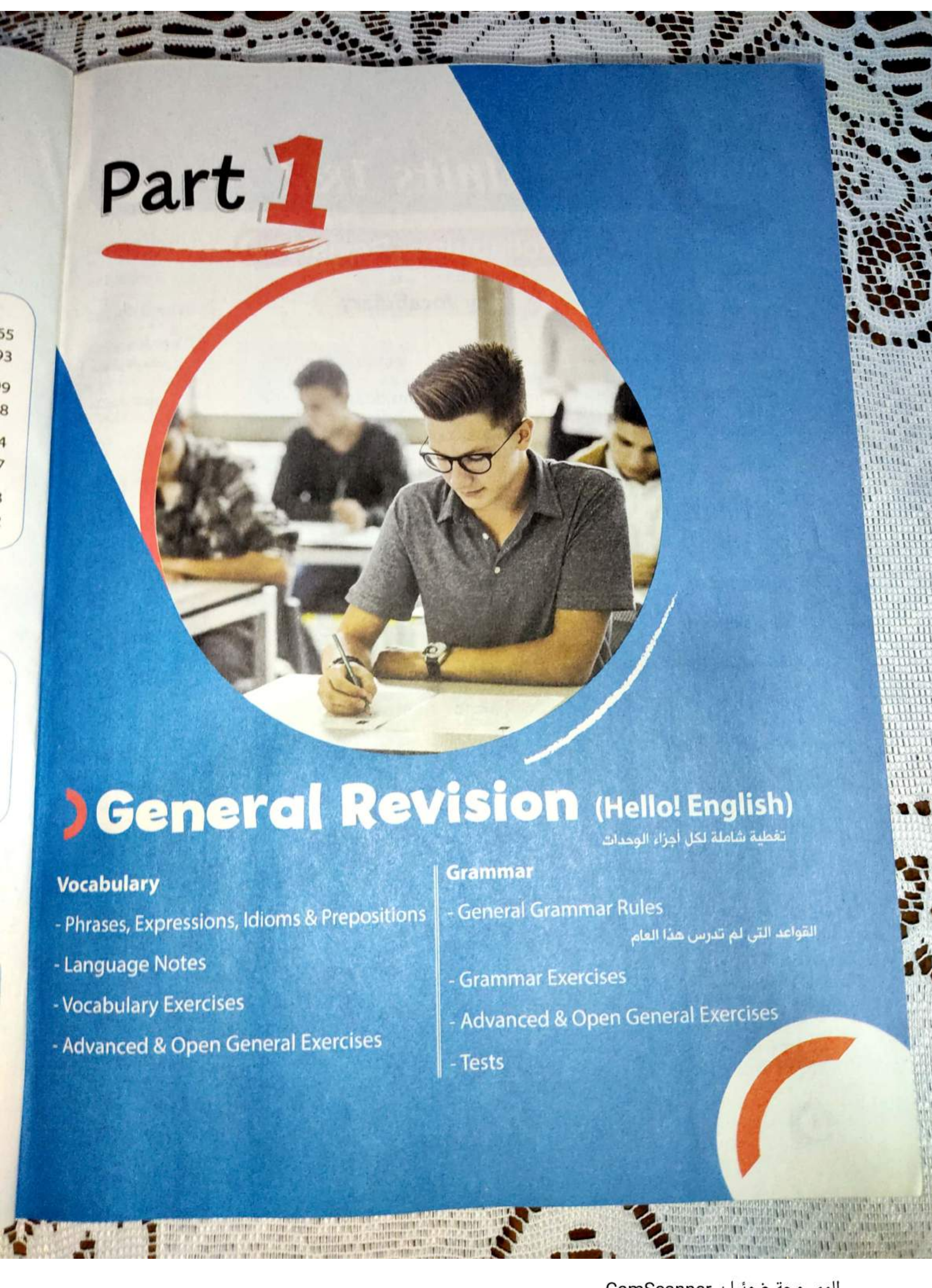

Part 1
General Revision (Hello! English)
تغطية شاملة لكل أجزاء الوحدات
Vocabulary
- Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions
- Language Notes
- Vocabulary Exercises
- Advanced & Open General Exercises
Grammar
- General Grammar Rules
القواعد التي لم تدرس هذا العام
- Grammar Exercises
- Advanced & Open General Exercises
- Tests

Units 1 & 2

Vocabulary Revision

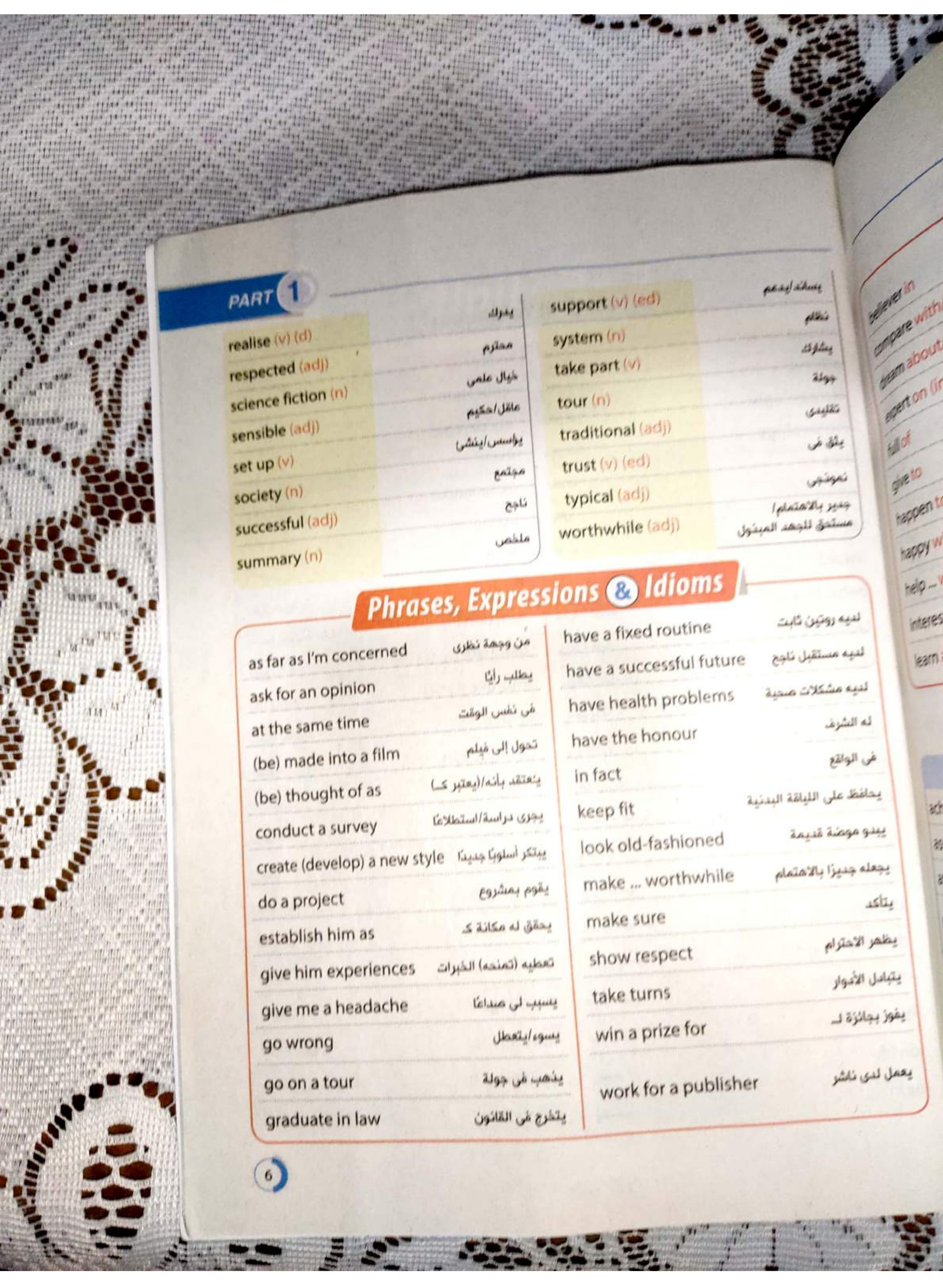
Key Vocabulary

association (n)	مؤسسة/منظمة
attachment (n)	مُلحق/مُرفَق
average (n)	متوسط/معدل
believer (n)	مؤمن
confused (adj)	مرتبك
cultural (adj)	ثقافى
customs (n)	عادات
disabled (adj)	معاق
discipline (n) (v) (d)	انضباط/يهذب
district (n)	منطقة/حى
establish (v) (ed)	يوطد قدمه/يرسخ
fatherly (adj)	أبوى
honour (n) (v) (ed)	شرف/يشرف/يتشرف
importance (n)	أهمية
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/ يؤثر على
insist (v) (ed)	يصر
law (n)	القانون
layer (n)	طبقة

lecture (n) (v) (d)	محاضرة/يحاضر
midday (n)	منتصف النهار
ministry (n)	وزارة
old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
pioneers (n)	رواد
plan (n) (v) (ned)	خطة/يخطط
poetry (n)	الشعر
political science (n)	علم السياسة
publisher (n)	ناشر/دار نشر
responsible (adj)	مسئول
routine (n)	روتين
secretary (n)	سكرتير
semicircle (n)	نصف دائرة
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير
silence (n) (v) (d)	صمت/يُسكت
spoil (v) (ed)	يفسد/يدلل
strict (adj)	صارم/حازم
style (n)	أسلوب

Helpful Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار
area (n)	منطقة
article (n)	مقال
author (n)	مؤلف
award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة/وسام/يمنح وسام
behaviour (n)	سلوك/تصرف
career (n)	حياة عملية
chat (n) (v) (ted)	دردشة/يدردش
collection (n)	مجموعة
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
culture (n)	ثقافة
demand (n) (v) (ed)	طلب/يطلب
design (n) (v) (ed)	تصميم/يصمم
develop (v) (ped)	يطور/يتطور
diplomat (n)	دبلوماسي
discussion (n)	مناقشة
divide (v) (d)	يقسم
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب
editor (n)	رئيس تحرير
education (n)	التعليم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
event (n)	حدث
experiences (n)	تجارب/خبرات
fiction (n)	خيال
fixed (adj)	ثابت
fresh (adj)	طازج/حديث
function (n)	وظيفة (طريقة أداء)
graduate (n) (v) (d)	خريج/ يتخرج
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/يطور
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث
introduction (n)	مقدمة
level (n)	مستوى
life (n)	حياة
literature (n)	الأدب
material (n)	مادة خام
non-fiction (n)	واقع/غير خيالي
obey (v) (ed)	يطيع
paintings (n)	رسومات
partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
politician (n)	سياسي/رجل سياسة
practice (n)	ممارسة



PART 1

realise (v) (d)	يدرك
respected (adj)	محترم
science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم
set up (v)	يؤسس/ينشئ
society (n)	مجتمع
successful (adj)	ناجح
summary (n)	ملخص
support (v) (ed)	يساند/يدعم
system (n)	نظام
take part (v)	يشارك
tour (n)	جولة
traditional (adj)	تقليدي
trust (v) (ed)	يثق في
typical (adj)	نموذجي
worthwhile (adj)	جدير بالاهتمام/ مستحق للجهد المبذول

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

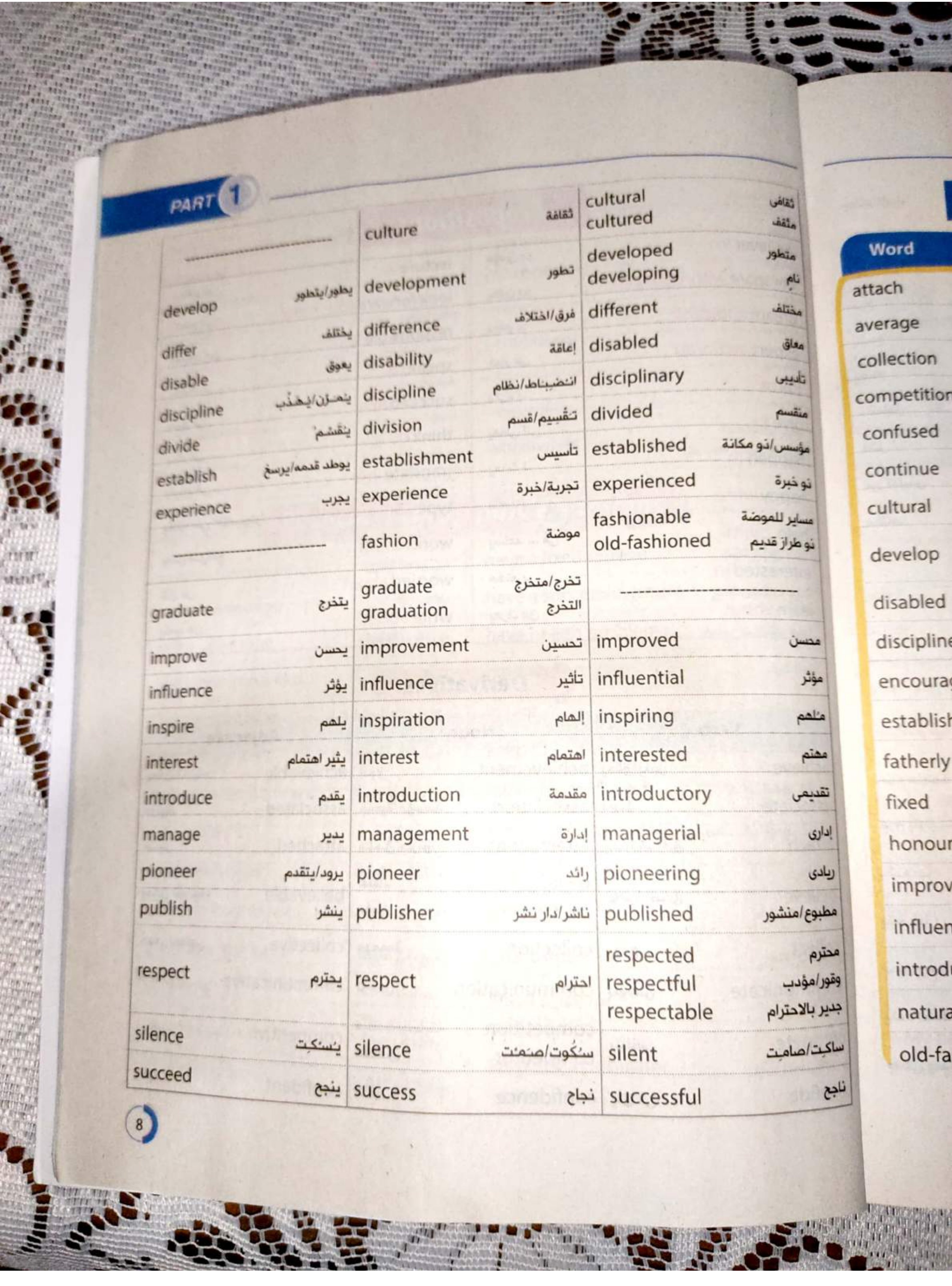
as far as I'm concerned	من وجهة نظري
ask for an opinion	يطلب رأيًا
at the same time	في نفس الوقت
(be) made into a film	تحول إلى فيلم
(be) thought of as	يُعتقد بأنه/(يعتبر كـ)
conduct a survey	يجري دراسة/استطلاعًا
create (develop) a new style	يبتكر أسلوبًا جديدًا
do a project	يقوم بمشروع
establish him as	يحقق له مكانة كـ
give him experiences	تعطيه (تمنحه) الخبرات
give me a headache	يسبب لي صداعًا
go wrong	يسوء/يتعطل
go on a tour	يذهب في جولة
graduate in law	يتخرج في القانون
have a fixed routine	لديه روتين ثابت
have a successful future	لديه مستقبل ناجح
have health problems	لديه مشكلات صحية
have the honour	له الشرف
in fact	في الواقع
keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة البدنية
look old-fashioned	يبدو موضة قديمة
make ... worthwhile	يجعله جديرًا بالاهتمام
make sure	يتأكد
show respect	يظهر الاحترام
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة لـ
work for a publisher	يعمل لدى ناشر

Prepositions

believer in	مؤمن بـ	lecture at	يحاضر فى
compare with/between	يقارن مع	look forward to + v. ing	يتطلع إلى
dream about/of	يحلم بـ	responsible for	مسئول عن
expert on (in/at)	خبير فى	speak to	يتحدث لـ
full of	ملىء بـ	succeed in	ينجح فى
give to	يعطى إلى	think of	يفكر فى
happen to	يحدث لـ	translate into	يترجم إلى
happy with	سعيد بـ	type ... into/in/onto	يكتب على (الكمبيوتر)
help ... with	يساعد ... فى	work for/with	يعمل لدى/مع
interested in	مهتم بـ	worried about	قلق عن
learn about	يعرف عن	write about	يكتب عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
associate	يربط	association	جمعية/مؤسسة	associated	مرتبط
attach	يُلحِق/يُرفِق	attachment	مُلحَق/مُرفَق	attached	متصل
believe	يؤمن/يصدق	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يمكن تصديقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جمعى/جماعى
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	تواصلى
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor	منافسة/مسابقة متنافس	competitive	تنافسى
confide	يثق فى	confidence	الثقة	confident	واثق

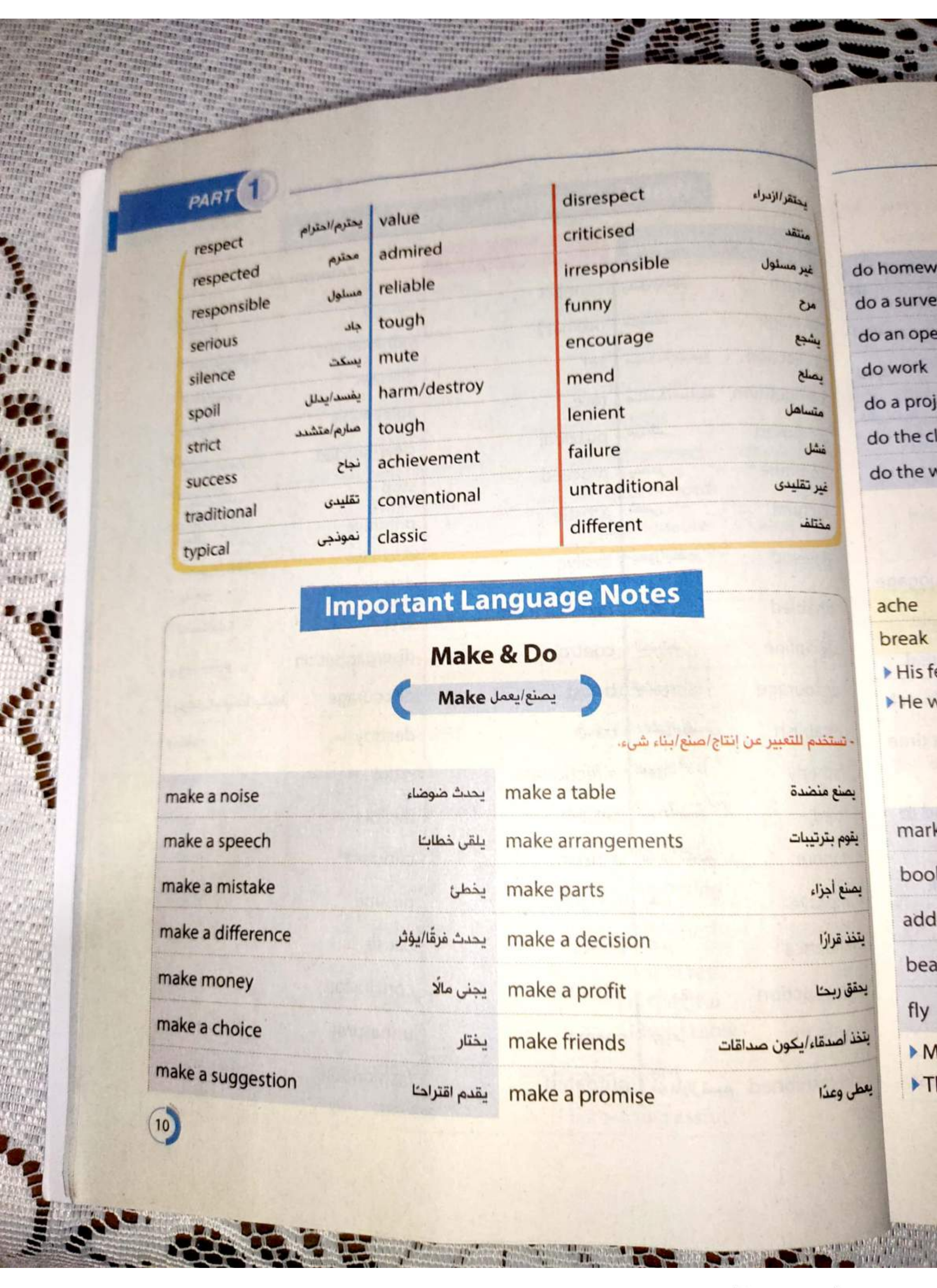


----------		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافي مثقف
develop	يطور/يتطور	development	تطور	developed developing	متطور نام
differ	يختلف	difference	فرق/اختلاف	different	مختلف
disable	يعوق	disability	إعاقة	disabled	معاق
discipline	يمرن/يهذب	discipline	انضباط/نظام	disciplinary	تأديبي
divide	ينقسم	division	تقسيم/قسم	divided	منقسم
establish	يوطد قدمه/يرسخ	establishment	تأسيس	established	مؤسس/ذو مكانة
experience	يجرب	experience	تجربة/خبرة	experienced	ذو خبرة
----------		fashion	موضة	fashionable old-fashioned	مساير للموضة ذو طراز قديم
graduate	يتخرج	graduate graduation	تخرج/متخرج التخرج	----------	
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
interest	يثير اهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interested	مهتم
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إداري
pioneer	يرود/يتقدم	pioneer	رائد	pioneering	ريادي
publish	ينشر	publisher	ناشر/دار نشر	published	مطبوع/منشور
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectful respectable	محترم وقور/مؤدب جدير بالاحترام
silence	يُسكِت	silence	سُكُوت/صَمْت	silent	ساكِت/صامِت
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

Word
attach
average
collection
competitio
confused
continue
cultural
develop
disabled
disciplin
encoura
establis
fatherly
fixed
honour
improv
influen
introd
natura
old-fa

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
attach	يصل/يرفق	connect	detach	يفصل
average	متوسط	ordinary	extraordinary	مميز/غير مألوف
collection	مجموعة/تجميع	set	division	قسم/تقسيم
competition	منافسة/مسابقة	race	agreement	اتفاق
confused	مرتبك	puzzled	clear-headed	صافي الذهن
continue	يستمر	proceed	stop	يوقف/يتوقف
cultural	ثقافى	artistic	primitive	بدائى
develop	يطور/يتطور	evolve	decrease deteriorate	يخفض/ ينخفض يتدهور
disabled	معاق	handicapped	healthy	بصحة جيدة
discipline	انضباط	control	disorganisation	عدم تنظيم
encourage	يشجع	boost	discourage	يُوهِن العَزِيمةَ/يثَبِّط
establish	ينشئ/يؤسس	base	destroy	يدمر
fatherly	أبوى	affectionate	cruel	قاس
fixed	ثابت/محدد	settled	flexible	مرن
honour	شرف/تكريم	esteem	criticism	انتقاد
improve	يحسن	progress	decline	يتدهور
influence	تأثير	effect	cause	مسبب
introduction	مقدمة	initiation	conclusion	خاتمة
natural	طبيعى	normal	unnatural	غير طبيعى
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated	fashionable	مساير للموضة



Word	المعنى	Synonym	Antonym	المعنى
respect	يحترم/احترام	value	disrespect	يحتقر/ازدراء
respected	محترم	admired	criticised	منتقد
responsible	مسئول	reliable	irresponsible	غير مسئول
serious	جاد	tough	funny	مرح
silence	يسكت	mute	encourage	يشجع
spoil	يفسد/يدلل	harm/destroy	mend	يصلح
strict	صارم/متشدد	tough	lenient	متساهل
success	نجاح	achievement	failure	فشل
traditional	تقليدى	conventional	untraditional	غير تقليدى
typical	نموذجى	classic	different	مختلف

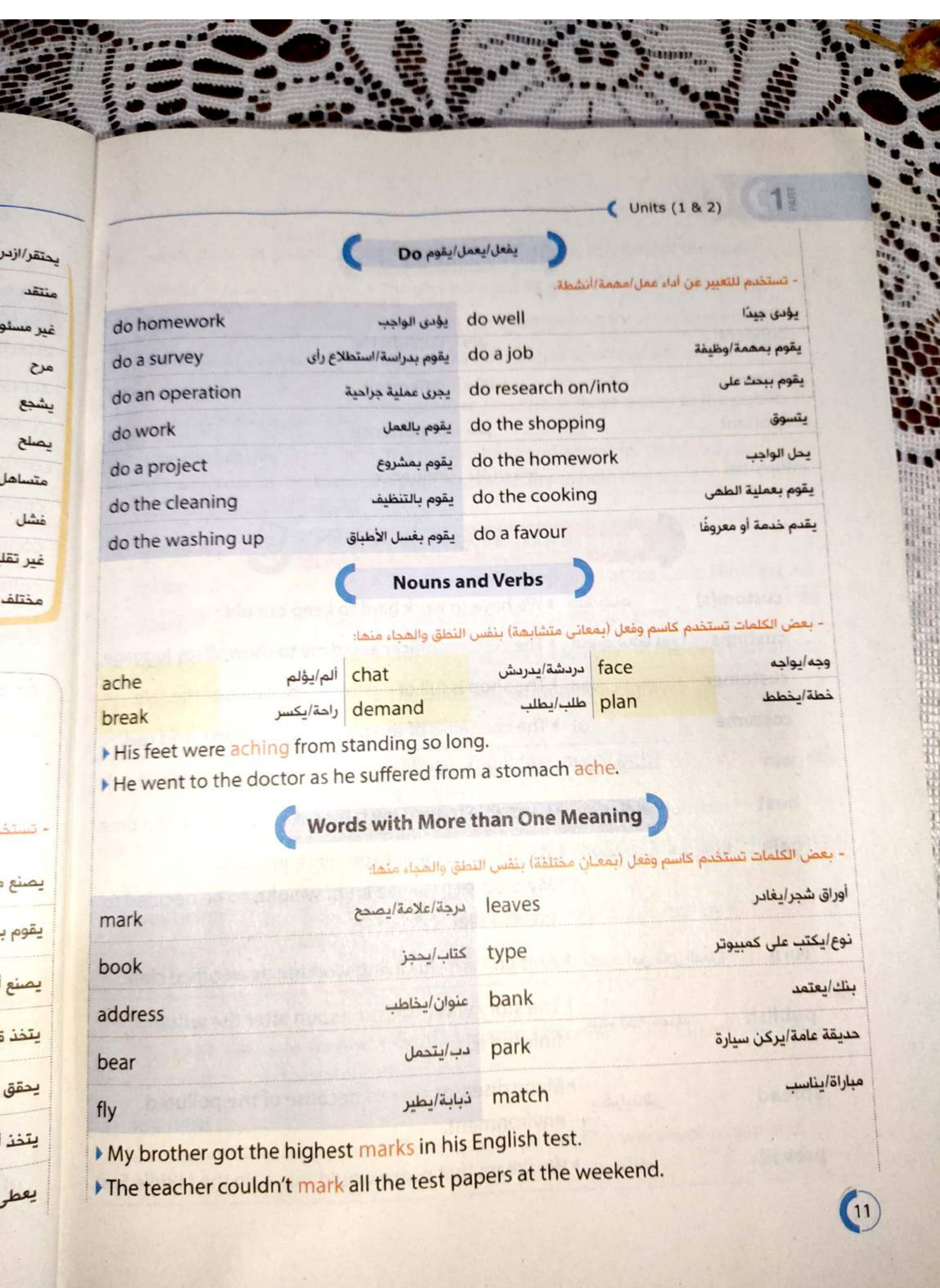
Important Language Notes

Make & Do

Make يصنع/يعمل

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إنتاج/صنع/بناء شىء.

make a noise	يحدث ضوضاء	make a table	يصنع منضدة
make a speech	يلقى خطابًا	make arrangements	يقوم بترتيبات
make a mistake	يخطئ	make parts	يصنع أجزاء
make a difference	يحدث فرقًا/يؤثر	make a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
make money	يجنى مالًا	make a profit	يحقق ربحًا
make a choice	يختار	make friends	يتخذ أصدقاء/يكون صداقات
make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراحًا	make a promise	يعطى وعدًا



Do يفعل/يعمل/يقوم

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أداء عمل/مهمة/أنشطة.

do homework	يؤدى الواجب	do well	يؤدى جيدًا
do a survey	يقوم بدراسة/استطلاع رأى	do a job	يقوم بمهمة/وظيفة
do an operation	يجرى عملية جراحية	do research on/into	يقوم ببحث على
do work	يقوم بالعمل	do the shopping	يتسوق
do a project	يقوم بمشروع	do the homework	يحل الواجب
do the cleaning	يقوم بالتنظيف	do the cooking	يقوم بعملية الطهى
do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأطباق	do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروفًا

Nouns and Verbs

- بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل (بمعانى متشابهة) بنفس النطق والهجاء منها:

ache	ألم/يؤلم	chat	دردشة/يدردش	face	وجه/يواجه
break	راحة/يكسر	demand	طلب/يطلب	plan	خطة/يخطط

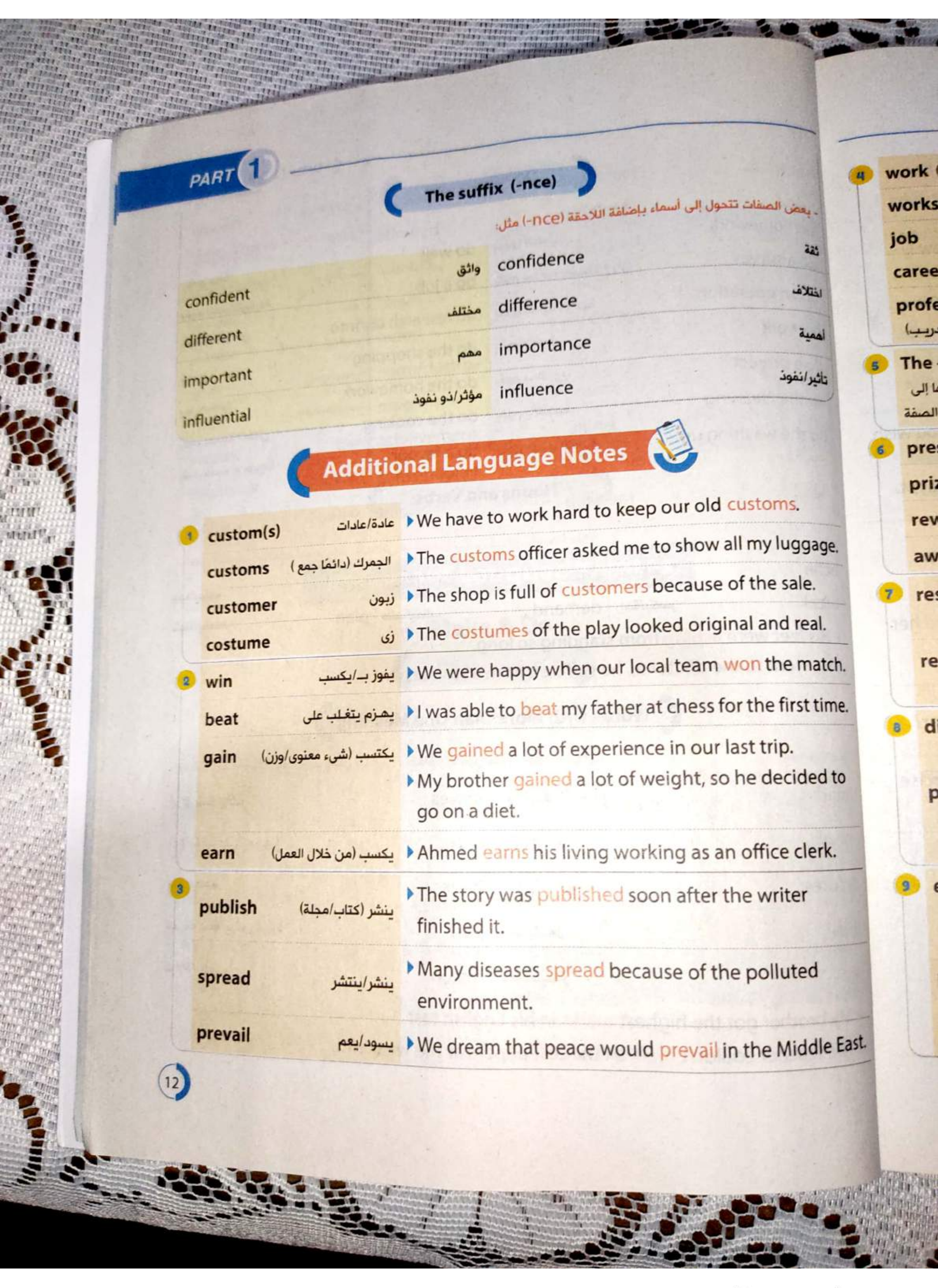
- His feet were aching from standing so long.
- He went to the doctor as he suffered from a stomach ache.

Words with More than One Meaning

- بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل (بمعانٍ مختلفة) بنفس النطق والهجاء منها:

mark	درجة/علامة/يصحح	leaves	أوراق شجر/يغادر
book	كتاب/يحجز	type	نوع/يكتب على كمبيوتر
address	عنوان/يخاطب	bank	بنك/يعتمد
bear	دب/يتحمل	park	حديقة عامة/يركن سيارة
fly	ذبابة/يطير	match	مباراة/يناسب

- My brother got the highest marks in his English test.
- The teacher couldn't mark all the test papers at the weekend.



PART 1

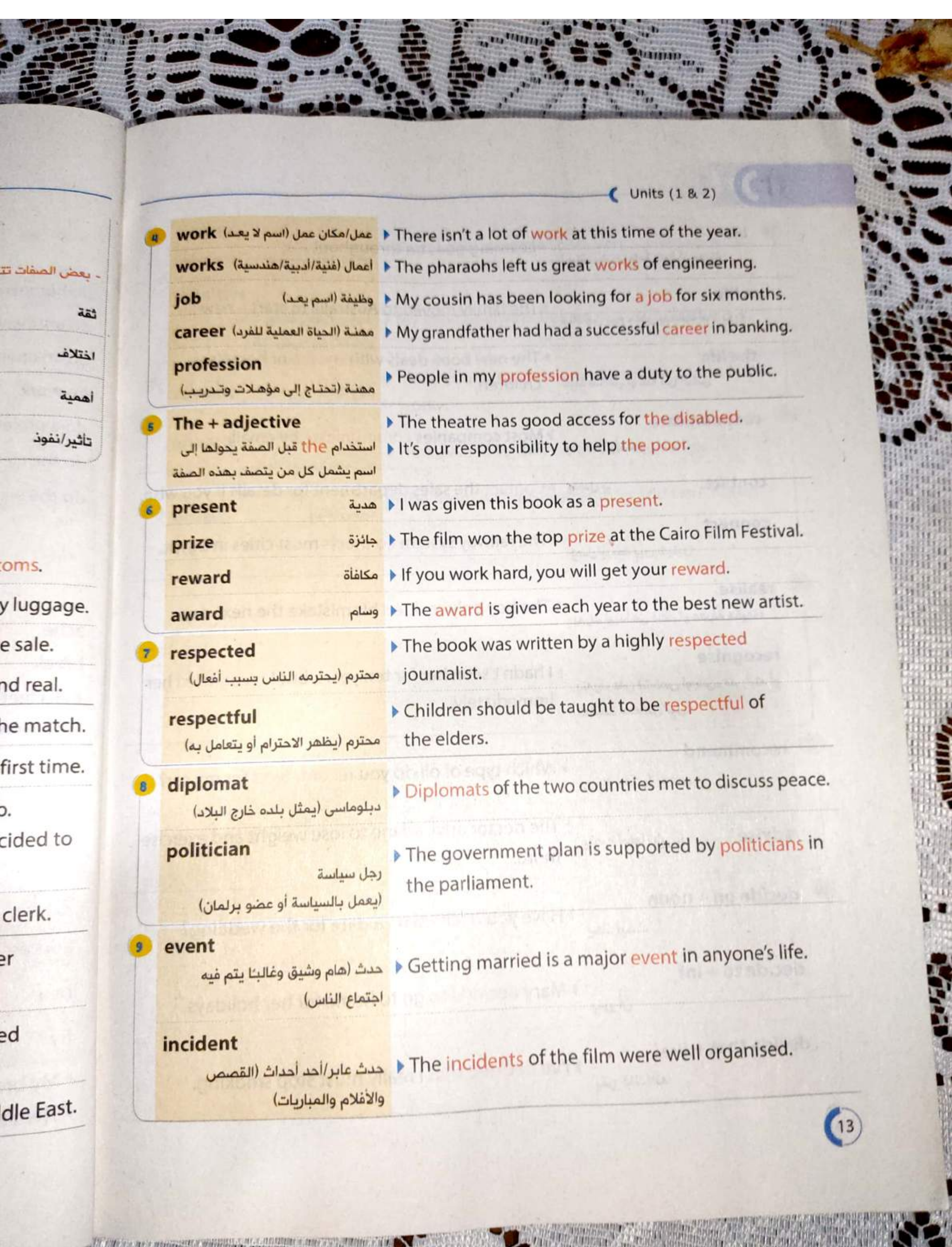
The suffix (-nce)

- بعض الصفات تتحول إلى أسماء بإضافة اللاحقة (-nce) مثل:

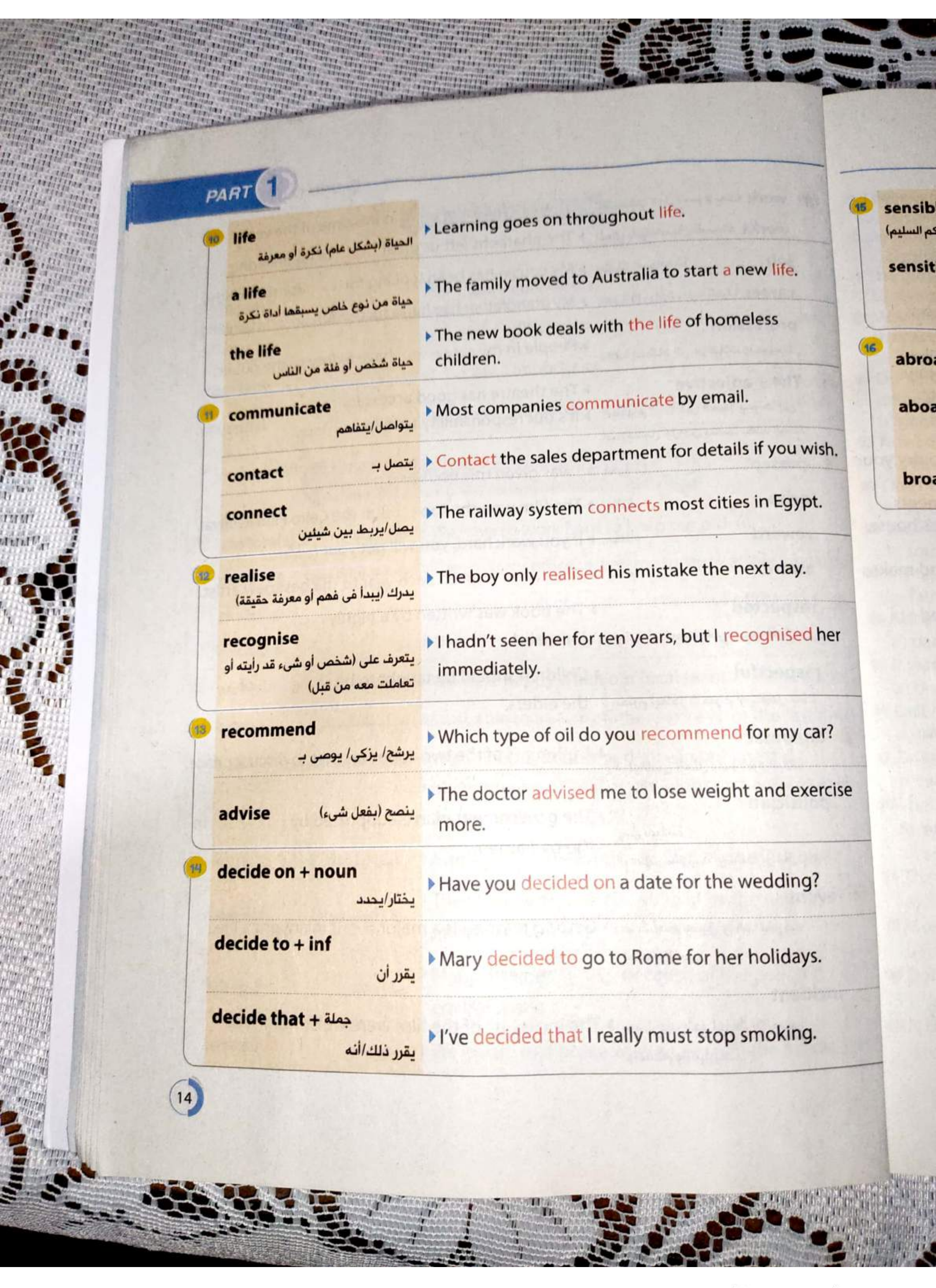
confident	واثق	confidence	ثقة
different	مختلف	difference	اختلاف
important	مهم	importance	أهمية
influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ	influence	تأثير/نفوذ

Additional Language Notes

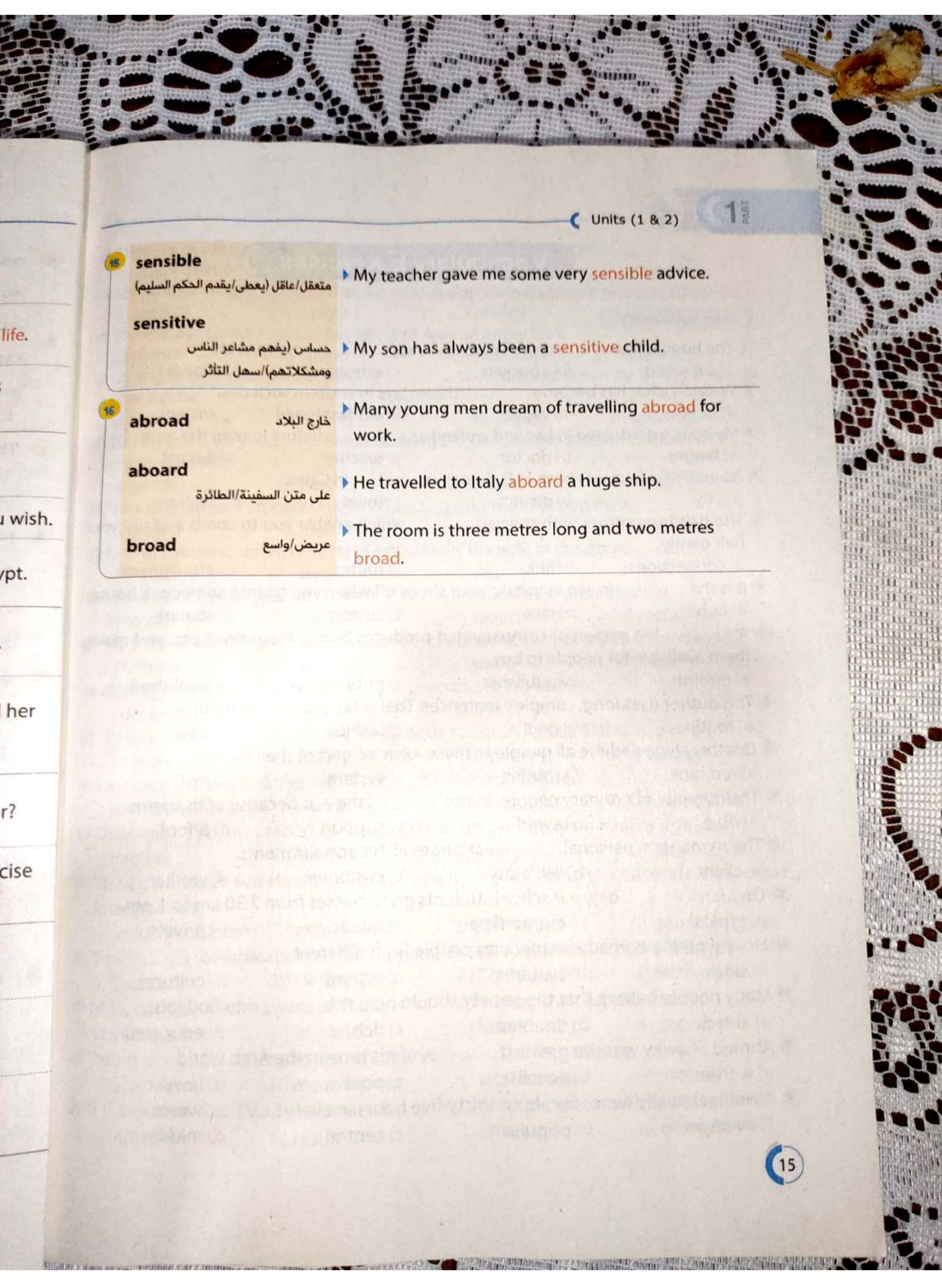
1	custom(s)	عادة/عادات	▸ We have to work hard to keep our old customs.
	customs	الجمرك (دائمًا جمع)	▸ The customs officer asked me to show all my luggage.
	customer	زبون	▸ The shop is full of customers because of the sale.
	costume	زى	▸ The costumes of the play looked original and real.
2	win	يفوز بـ/يكسب	▸ We were happy when our local team won the match.
	beat	يهزم يتغلب على	▸ I was able to beat my father at chess for the first time.
	gain	يكتسب (شيء معنوى/وزن)	▸ We gained a lot of experience in our last trip. ▸ My brother gained a lot of weight, so he decided to go on a diet.
	earn	يكسب (من خلال العمل)	▸ Ahmed earns his living working as an office clerk.
3	publish	ينشر (كتاب/مجلة)	▸ The story was published soon after the writer finished it.
	spread	ينشر/ينتشر	▸ Many diseases spread because of the polluted environment.
	prevail	يسود/يعم	▸ We dream that peace would prevail in the Middle East.



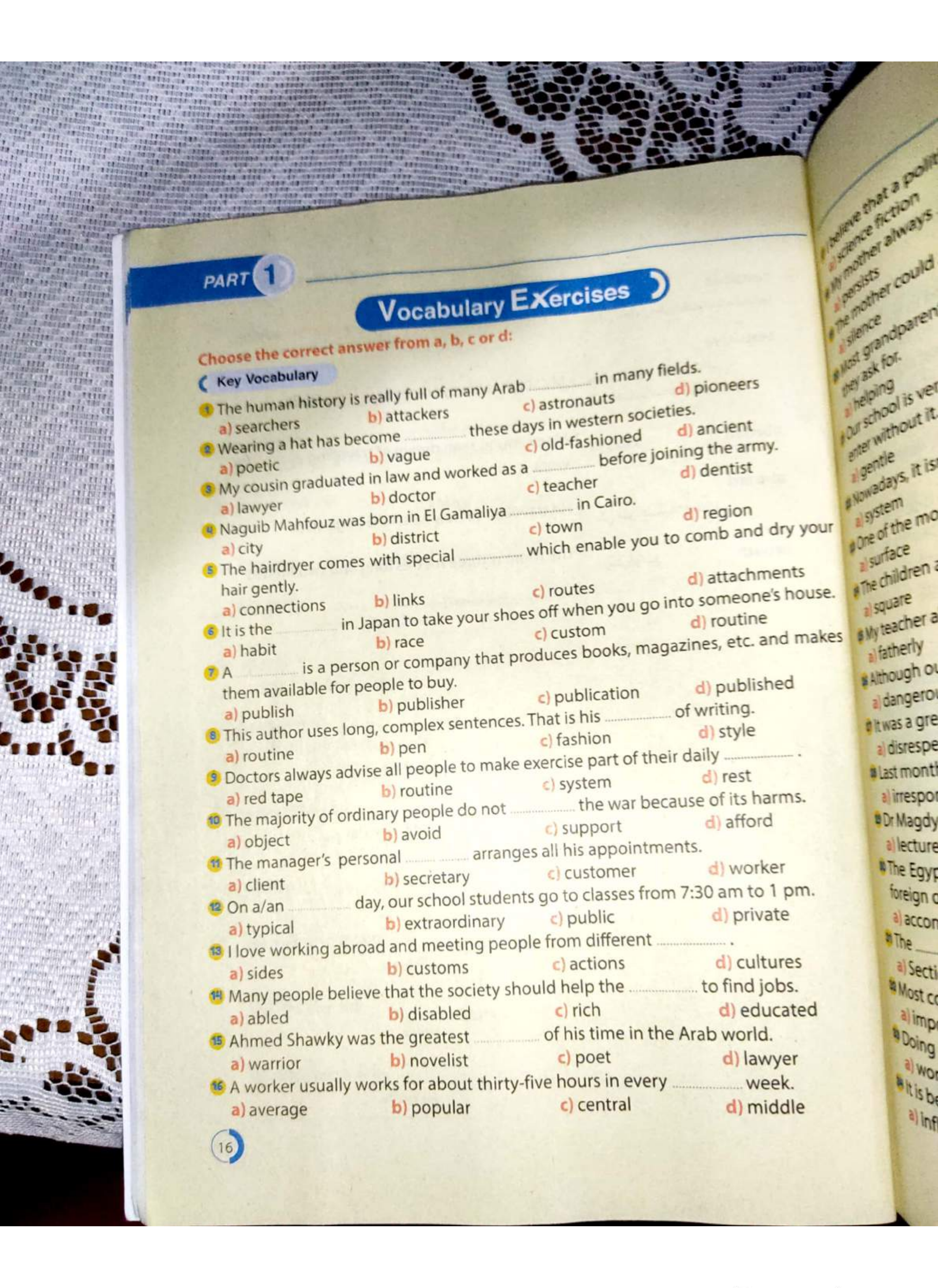
	Word	Meaning	Example
4	**work**	عمل/مكان عمل (اسم لا يعد)	There isn't a lot of work at this time of the year.
	works	أعمال (فنية/أدبية/هندسية)	The pharaohs left us great works of engineering.
	job	وظيفة (اسم يعد)	My cousin has been looking for a job for six months.
	career	مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)	My grandfather had had a successful career in banking.
	profession	مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)	People in my profession have a duty to the public.
5	**The + adjective**	استخدام the قبل الصفة يحولها إلى اسم يشمل كل من يتصف بهذه الصفة	The theatre has good access for the disabled. It's our responsibility to help the poor.
6	**present**	هدية	I was given this book as a present.
	prize	جائزة	The film won the top prize at the Cairo Film Festival.
	reward	مكافأة	If you work hard, you will get your reward.
	award	وسام	The award is given each year to the best new artist.
7	**respected**	محترم (يحترمه الناس بسبب أفعال)	The book was written by a highly respected journalist.
	respectful	محترم (يظهر الاحترام أو يتعامل به)	Children should be taught to be respectful of the elders.
8	**diplomat**	دبلوماسي (يمثل بلده خارج البلاد)	Diplomats of the two countries met to discuss peace.
	politician	رجل سياسة (يعمل بالسياسة أو عضو برلمان)	The government plan is supported by politicians in the parliament.
9	**event**	حدث (هام وشيق وغالبًا يتم فيه اجتماع الناس)	Getting married is a major event in anyone's life.
	incident	حدث عابر/أحد أحداث (القصص والأفلام والمباريات)	The incidents of the film were well organised.



10	**life** الحياة (بشكل عام) نكرة أو معرفة	Learning goes on throughout life.
	a life حياة من نوع خاص يسبقها أداة نكرة	The family moved to Australia to start a new life.
	the life حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس	The new book deals with the life of homeless children.
11	**communicate** يتواصل/يتفاهم	Most companies communicate by email.
	contact يتصل بـ	Contact the sales department for details if you wish.
	connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	The railway system connects most cities in Egypt.
12	**realise** يدرك (يبدأ فى فهم أو معرفة حقيقة)	The boy only realised his mistake the next day.
	recognise يتعرف على (شخص أو شىء قد رأيته أو تعاملت معه من قبل)	I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.
13	**recommend** يرشح/ يزكى/ يوصى بـ	Which type of oil do you recommend for my car?
	advise ينصح (بفعل شىء)	The doctor advised me to lose weight and exercise more.
14	**decide on + noun** يختار/يحدد	Have you decided on a date for the wedding?
	decide to + inf يقرر أن	Mary decided to go to Rome for her holidays.
	decide that + جملة يقرر ذلك/أنه	I've decided that I really must stop smoking.



15	**sensible** متعقل/عاقل (يعطى/يقدم الحكم السليم)	My teacher gave me some very sensible advice.
	sensitive حساس (يفهم مشاعر الناس ومشكلاتهم)/سهل التأثر	My son has always been a sensitive child.
16	**abroad** خارج البلاد	Many young men dream of travelling abroad for work.
	aboard على متن السفينة/الطائرة	He travelled to Italy aboard a huge ship.
	broad عريض/واسع	The room is three metres long and two metres broad.



PART 1

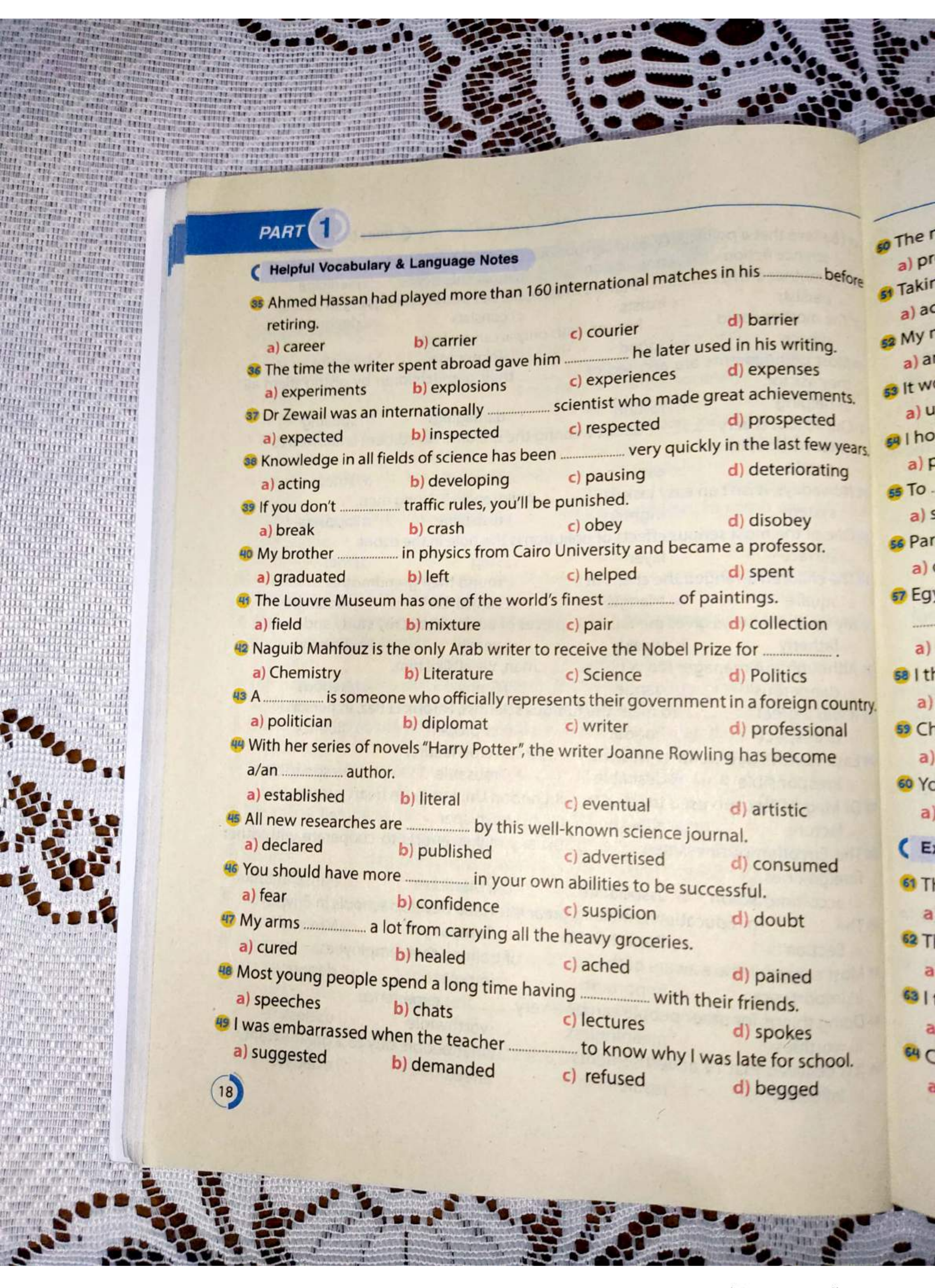
Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. The human history is really full of many Arab .... in many fields.
   a) searchers b) attackers c) astronauts d) pioneers
2. Wearing a hat has become .... these days in western societies.
   a) poetic b) vague c) old-fashioned d) ancient
3. My cousin graduated in law and worked as a .... before joining the army.
   a) lawyer b) doctor c) teacher d) dentist
4. Naguib Mahfouz was born in El Gamaliya .... in Cairo.
   a) city b) district c) town d) region
5. The hairdryer comes with special .... which enable you to comb and dry your hair gently.
   a) connections b) links c) routes d) attachments
6. It is the .... in Japan to take your shoes off when you go into someone's house.
   a) habit b) race c) custom d) routine
7. A .... is a person or company that produces books, magazines, etc. and makes them available for people to buy.
   a) publish b) publisher c) publication d) published
8. This author uses long, complex sentences. That is his .... of writing.
   a) routine b) pen c) fashion d) style
9. Doctors always advise all people to make exercise part of their daily ....
   a) red tape b) routine c) system d) rest
10. The majority of ordinary people do not .... the war because of its harms.
    a) object b) avoid c) support d) afford
11. The manager's personal .... arranges all his appointments.
    a) client b) secretary c) customer d) worker
12. On a/an .... day, our school students go to classes from 7:30 am to 1 pm.
    a) typical b) extraordinary c) public d) private
13. I love working abroad and meeting people from different ....
    a) sides b) customs c) actions d) cultures
14. Many people believe that the society should help the .... to find jobs.
    a) abled b) disabled c) rich d) educated
15. Ahmed Shawky was the greatest .... of his time in the Arab world.
    a) warrior b) novelist c) poet d) lawyer
16. A worker usually works for about thirty-five hours in every .... week.
    a) average b) popular c) central d) middle

17 I believe that a politician would be more successful if he studied ....
a) science fiction b) non-fiction c) political science d) medicine
18 My mother always .... that we must make our beds before going to school.
a) persists b) insists c) consists d) depends
19 The mother could .... her son with only an angry look.
a) silence b) sound c) encourage d) inspire
20 Most grandparents are accused of .... their grandchildren by giving them all they ask for.
a) helping b) rotting c) damaging d) spoiling
21 Our school is very .... about wearing the uniform. No student is allowed to enter without it.
a) gentle b) easy c) criminal d) strict
22 Nowadays, it isn't an easy task to .... children and young men.
a) system b) frighten c) discipline d) oppress
23 One of the most serious effects of pollution is the hole in the ozone ....
a) surface b) layer c) step d) roof
24 The children arranged the chairs in a .... round their grandmother.
a) square b) triangle c) semicircle d) rectangle
25 My teacher always gives me .... pieces of advice about my study and my life.
a) fatherly b) weekly c) yearly d) heavily
26 Although our manager is a very .... man, we all like him.
a) dangerous b) gentle c) funny d) serious
27 It was a great .... to meet the famous scientist, Farouk El Baz, in person.
a) disrespect b) honour c) improper d) fluency
28 Last month's bad weather was .... for the crop failure.
a) irresponsible b) desirable c) reusable d) responsible
29 Dr Magdy Yaccoub used to .... at London University on heart surgery.
a) lecture b) chat c) whisper d) tell
30 The Egyptian businessmen .... usually makes efforts to cooperate with other foreign ones.
a) accommodation b) association c) invitation d) transplantation
31 The .... of Education is making great efforts to develop schools in Egypt.
a) Section b) Department c) Company d) Ministry
32 Most companies are aware of the .... of training their employees.
a) importance b) important c) import d) deport
33 Doing things for other people can be a very .... experience.
a) worthless b) meaningless c) worthwhile d) useless
34 It is believed that TV advertisements .... what people buy to a great extent.
a) influence b) result c) effect d) evaluate



Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

35 Ahmed Hassan had played more than 160 international matches in his .... before retiring.

a) career b) carrier c) courier d) barrier

36 The time the writer spent abroad gave him .... he later used in his writing.

a) experiments b) explosions c) experiences d) expenses

37 Dr Zewail was an internationally .... scientist who made great achievements.

a) expected b) inspected c) respected d) prospected

38 Knowledge in all fields of science has been .... very quickly in the last few years.

a) acting b) developing c) pausing d) deteriorating

39 If you don't .... traffic rules, you'll be punished.

a) break b) crash c) obey d) disobey

40 My brother .... in physics from Cairo University and became a professor.

a) graduated b) left c) helped d) spent

41 The Louvre Museum has one of the world's finest .... of paintings.

a) field b) mixture c) pair d) collection

42 Naguib Mahfouz is the only Arab writer to receive the Nobel Prize for ....

a) Chemistry b) Literature c) Science d) Politics

43 A .... is someone who officially represents their government in a foreign country.

a) politician b) diplomat c) writer d) professional

44 With her series of novels "Harry Potter", the writer Joanne Rowling has become a/an .... author.

a) established b) literal c) eventual d) artistic

45 All new researches are .... by this well-known science journal.

a) declared b) published c) advertised d) consumed

46 You should have more .... in your own abilities to be successful.

a) fear b) confidence c) suspicion d) doubt

47 My arms .... a lot from carrying all the heavy groceries.

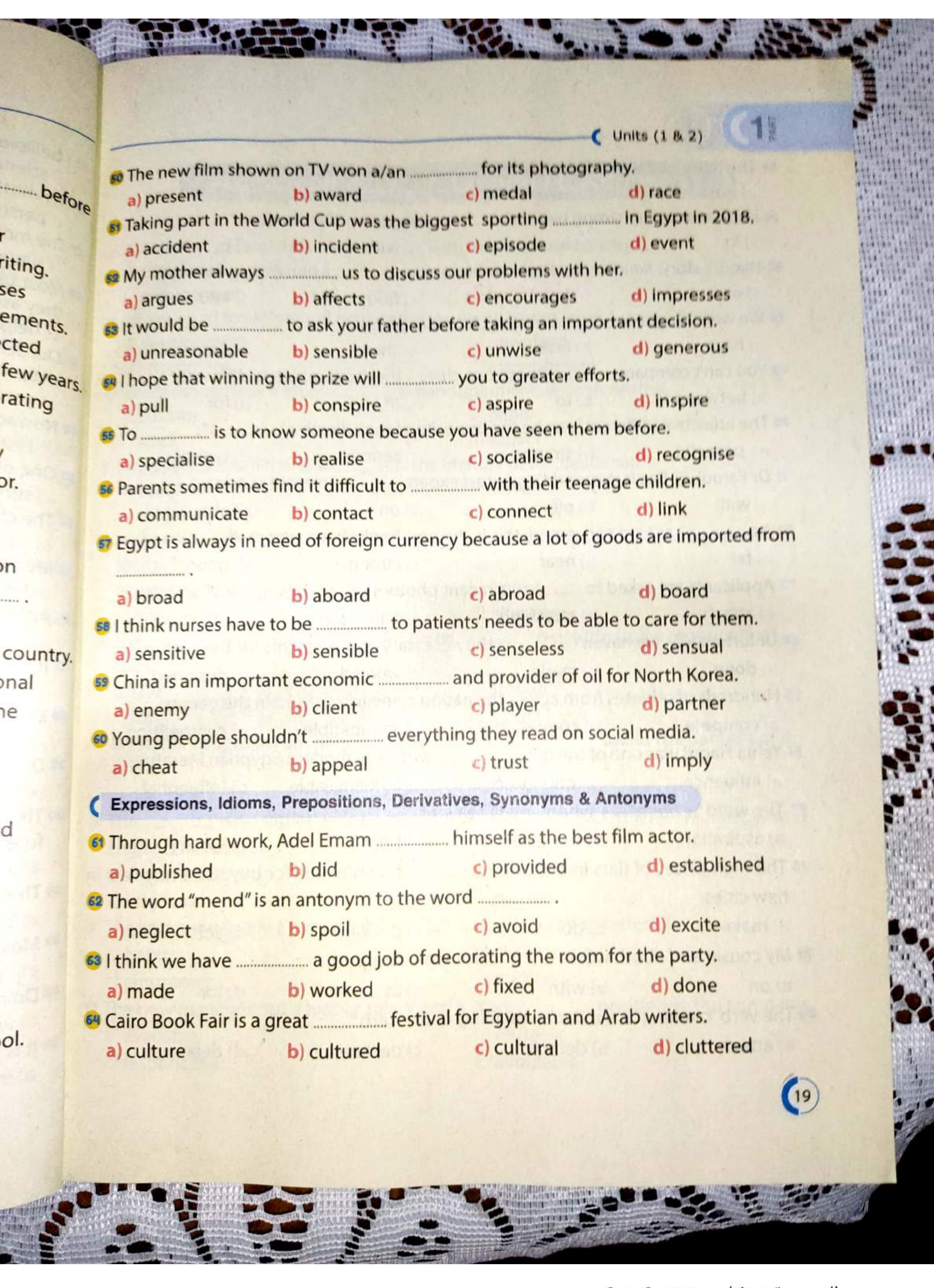
a) cured b) healed c) ached d) pained

48 Most young people spend a long time having .... with their friends.

a) speeches b) chats c) lectures d) spokes

49 I was embarrassed when the teacher .... to know why I was late for school.

a) suggested b) demanded c) refused d) begged



50 The new film shown on TV won a/an .... for its photography.
a) present b) award c) medal d) race

51 Taking part in the World Cup was the biggest sporting .... in Egypt in 2018.
a) accident b) incident c) episode d) event

52 My mother always .... us to discuss our problems with her.
a) argues b) affects c) encourages d) impresses

53 It would be .... to ask your father before taking an important decision.
a) unreasonable b) sensible c) unwise d) generous

54 I hope that winning the prize will .... you to greater efforts.
a) pull b) conspire c) aspire d) inspire

55 To .... is to know someone because you have seen them before.
a) specialise b) realise c) socialise d) recognise

56 Parents sometimes find it difficult to .... with their teenage children.
a) communicate b) contact c) connect d) link

57 Egypt is always in need of foreign currency because a lot of goods are imported from ....
a) broad b) aboard c) abroad d) board

58 I think nurses have to be .... to patients' needs to be able to care for them.
a) sensitive b) sensible c) senseless d) sensual

59 China is an important economic .... and provider of oil for North Korea.
a) enemy b) client c) player d) partner

60 Young people shouldn't .... everything they read on social media.
a) cheat b) appeal c) trust d) imply

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

61 Through hard work, Adel Emam .... himself as the best film actor.
a) published b) did c) provided d) established

62 The word "mend" is an antonym to the word ....
a) neglect b) spoil c) avoid d) excite

63 I think we have .... a good job of decorating the room for the party.
a) made b) worked c) fixed d) done

64 Cairo Book Fair is a great .... festival for Egyptian and Arab writers.
a) culture b) cultured c) cultural d) cluttered



65 The noise of the city centre always .... my grandmother a headache.
a) does b) makes c) works d) gives

66 Haqqi was a very strong believer .... the power of education.
a) in b) at c) with d) by

67 Haqqi's story, *Kandeel Om Hashem*, was made .... a film many years ago.
a) on b) in c) from d) into

68 We were taught to .... respect for older people.
a) have b) lose c) show d) deserve

69 You can't compare .... these two cities – they're completely different.
a) between b) to c) in d) for

70 The adjective "different" can be the opposite of the adjective ".............."
a) peaceful b) strange c) serious d) typical

71 Dr Farouk El-Baz is the world's greatest expert .... remote sensing.
a) with b) off c) on d) about

72 As .... as I am concerned, this is the best book I have ever read.
a) far b) near c) strong d) good

73 Applicants are asked to .... a recent photograph to their application form.
a) attach b) attaching c) attachment d) attached

74 Unfortunately, we haven't .... the necessary arrangements for the party yet.
a) done b) made c) worked d) designed

75 Hundreds of athletes from across the nation came to .... in the games.
a) compete b) competitive c) compatible d) competition

76 Yehia Haqqi was one of the most .... writers of modern Egyptian literature.
a) influence b) influenced c) influenceable d) influential

77 The word "esteem" is a synonym to the word "..............".
a) aspiration b) disrespect c) honour d) loyalty

78 The high prices of flats in big cities .... it worthwhile for buyers to buy flats in new cities.
a) make b) do c) perform d) act

79 My cousin and I both work .... the same company.
a) on b) with c) as d) for

80 The verb "connect" is similar in meaning to the verb "..............".
a) attach b) detach c) declare d) delay

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Al Mahala City has had a long .... with the weaving industry.
a) organisation b) association
c) enforcement d) foundation

2 We were sad to sell our old house because we all have a deep .... to it.
a) development b) prevailing
c) attachment d) astonishment

3 Smaller shops lose a lot of .... when supermarkets open nearby.
a) custom b) habit
c) stock d) aspect

4 The police are still trying to .... the identity of the dead man.
a) evaluate b) solve
c) abide d) establish

5 Mohamed Salah received nearly every .... that can be given to an Egyptian footballer.
a) protection b) horror
c) honour d) affection

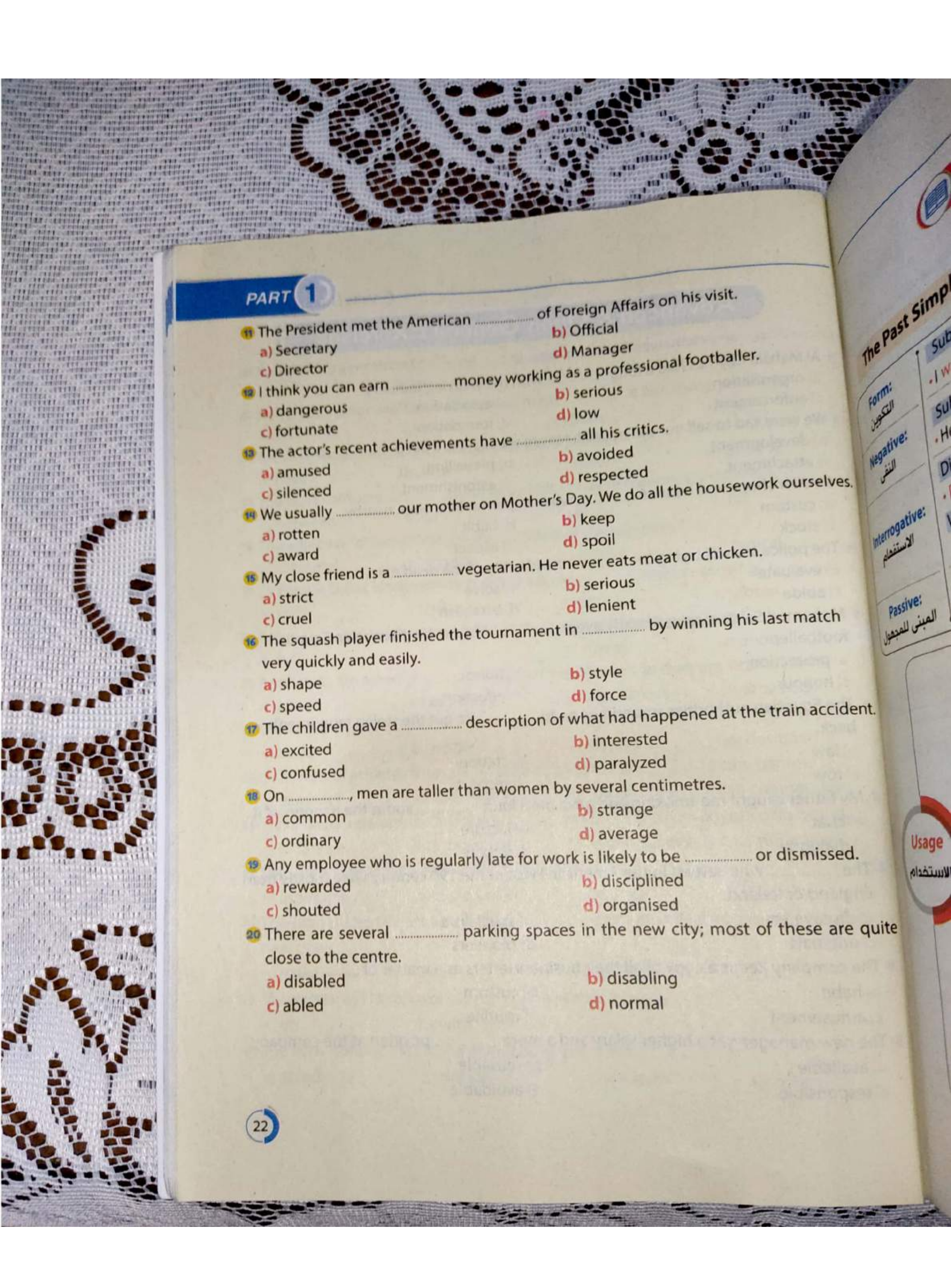
6 The Egyptian authorities sometimes go to .... to get the stolen monuments back.
a) law b) station
c) row d) respect

7 My father caught me smoking and gave me a long .... about the dangers of it.
a) chat b) lecture
c) dialogue d) debate

8 The .... who settled in the American West in the 19th century were mostly from England or Ireland.
a) discoverers b) specialists
c) originals d) pioneers

9 The company keeps a copy of all their business letters as a matter of ....
a) habit b) custom
c) amusement d) routine

10 The new manager got a higher salary and a more .... position at the company.
a) available b) reusable
c) responsible d) avoidable



PART 1

11 The President met the American .... of Foreign Affairs on his visit.
a) Secretary
b) Official
c) Director
d) Manager

12 I think you can earn .... money working as a professional footballer.
a) dangerous
b) serious
c) fortunate
d) low

13 The actor's recent achievements have .... all his critics.
a) amused
b) avoided
c) silenced
d) respected

14 We usually .... our mother on Mother's Day. We do all the housework ourselves.
a) rotten
b) keep
c) award
d) spoil

15 My close friend is a .... vegetarian. He never eats meat or chicken.
a) strict
b) serious
c) cruel
d) lenient

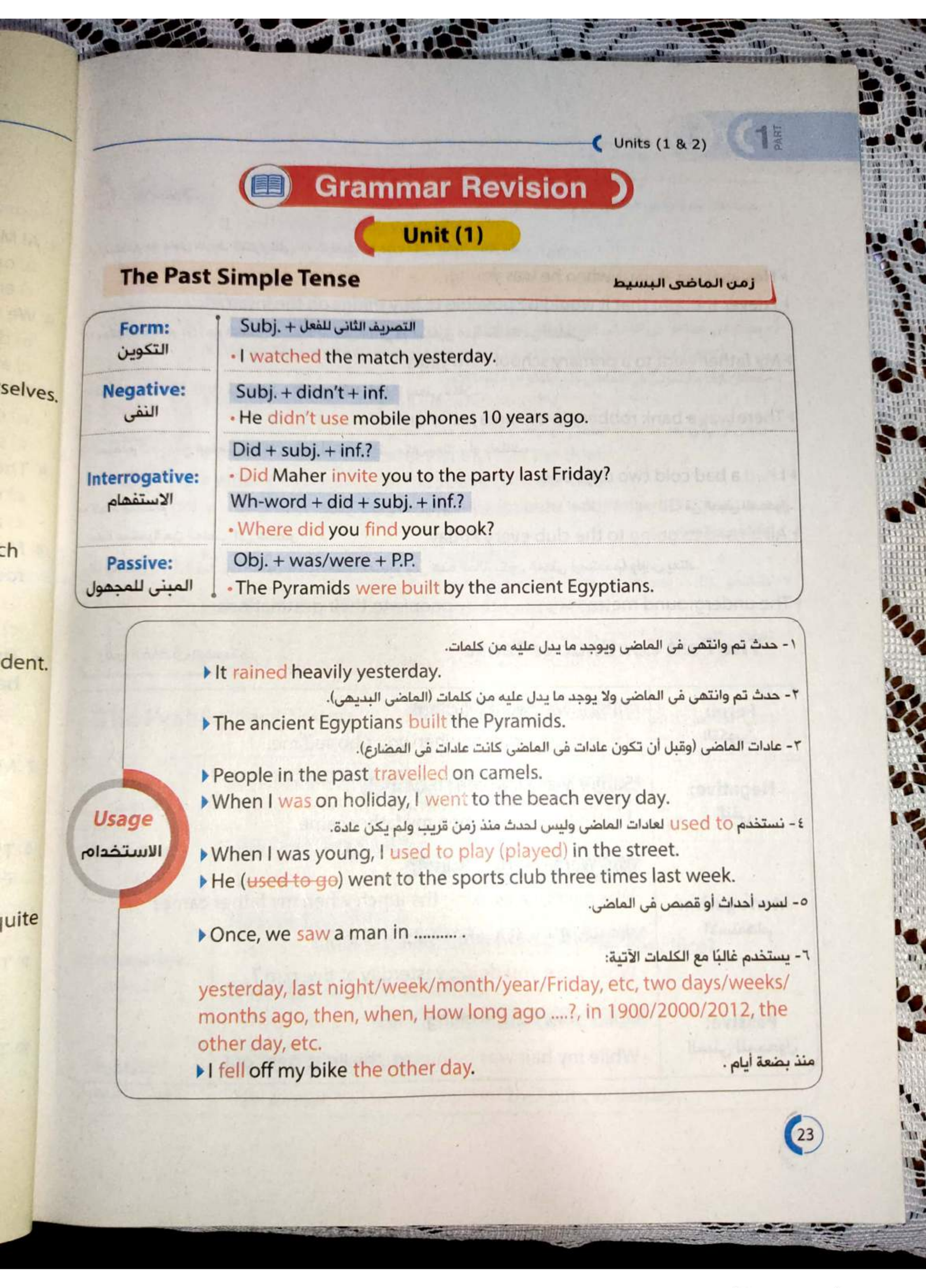
16 The squash player finished the tournament in .... by winning his last match very quickly and easily.
a) shape
b) style
c) speed
d) force

17 The children gave a .... description of what had happened at the train accident.
a) excited
b) interested
c) confused
d) paralyzed

18 On ...., men are taller than women by several centimetres.
a) common
b) strange
c) ordinary
d) average

19 Any employee who is regularly late for work is likely to be .... or dismissed.
a) rewarded
b) disciplined
c) shouted
d) organised

20 There are several .... parking spaces in the new city; most of these are quite close to the centre.
a) disabled
b) disabling
c) abled
d) normal



Grammar Revision

Unit (1)

The Past Simple Tense — زمن الماضى البسيط

Form: التكوين	Subj. + التصريف الثانى للفعل • I watched the match yesterday.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + didn't + inf. • He didn't use mobile phones 10 years ago.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Did + subj. + inf.? • Did Maher invite you to the party last Friday? Wh-word + did + subj. + inf.? • Where did you find your book?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + was/were + P.P. • The Pyramids were built by the ancient Egyptians.

Usage الاستخدام

١- حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى ويوجد ما يدل عليه من كلمات.

- It rained heavily yesterday.

٢- حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى ولا يوجد ما يدل عليه من كلمات (الماضى البديهى).

- The ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.

٣- عادات الماضى (وقبل أن تكون عادات فى الماضى كانت عادات فى المضارع).

- People in the past travelled on camels.
- When I was on holiday, I went to the beach every day.

٤- نستخدم used to لعادات الماضى وليس لحدث منذ زمن قريب ولم يكن عادة.

- When I was young, I used to play (played) in the street.
- He (~~used to go~~) went to the sports club three times last week.

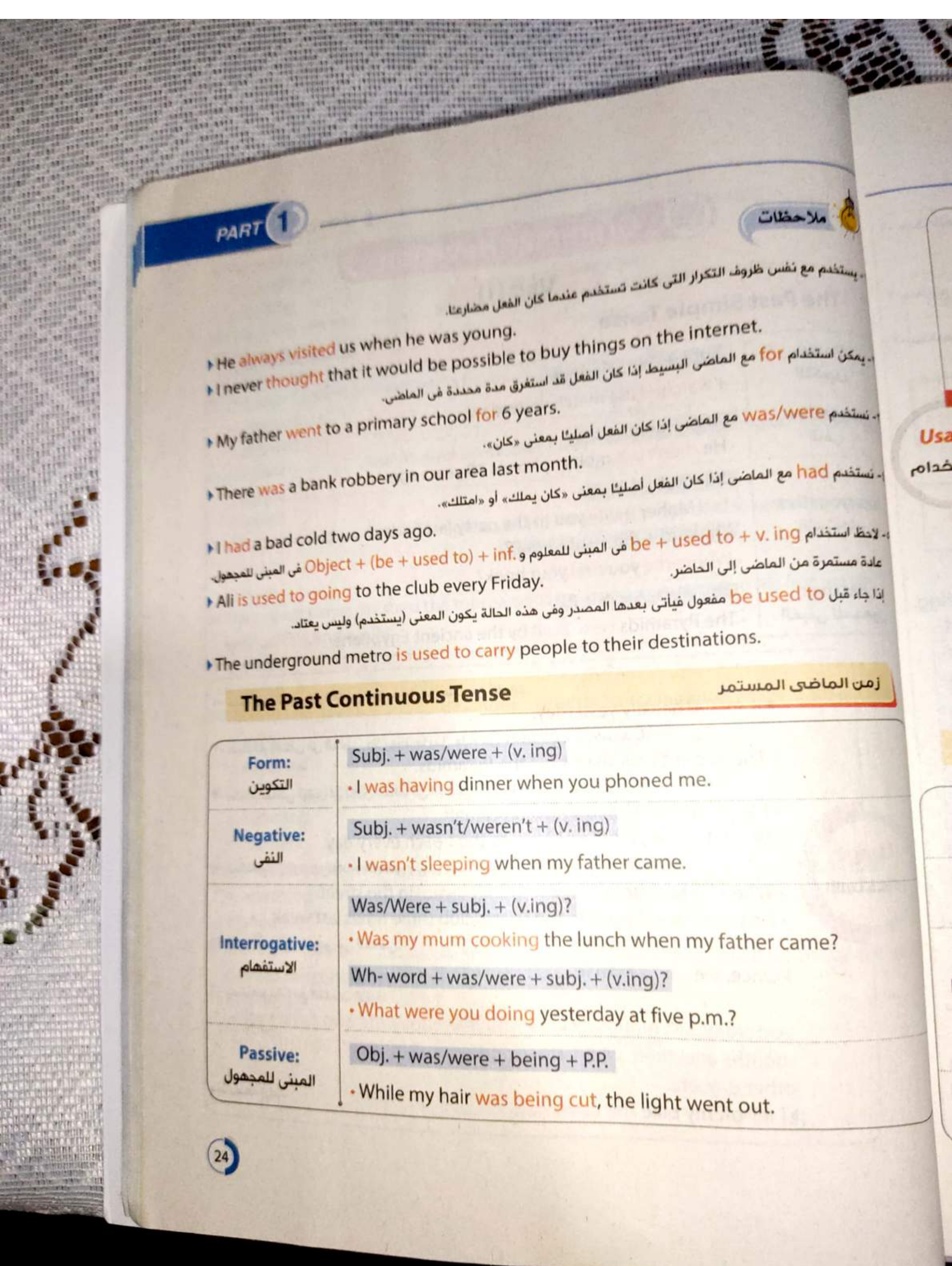
٥- لسرد أحداث أو قصص فى الماضى.

- Once, we saw a man in ....

٦- يستخدم غالبًا مع الكلمات الآتية:

yesterday, last night/week/month/year/Friday, etc, two days/weeks/months ago, then, when, How long ago ....?, in 1900/2000/2012, the other day, etc.

- I fell off my bike the other day. منذ بضعة أيام .



ملاحظات

- يستخدم مع نفس ظروف التكرار التى كانت تستخدم عندما كان الفعل مضارعًا.

▸ He always visited us when he was young.

▸ I never thought that it would be possible to buy things on the internet.

- يمكن استخدام for مع الماضى البسيط إذا كان الفعل قد استغرق مدة محددة فى الماضى.

▸ My father went to a primary school for 6 years.

- نستخدم was/were مع الماضى إذا كان الفعل أصليًا بمعنى «كان».

▸ There was a bank robbery in our area last month.

- نستخدم had مع الماضى إذا كان الفعل أصليًا بمعنى «كان يملك» أو «امتلك».

▸ I had a bad cold two days ago.

- لاحظ استخدام be + used to + v. ing فى المبنى للمعلوم و Object + (be + used to) + inf. فى المبنى للمجهول
عادة مستمرة من الماضى إلى الحاضر.

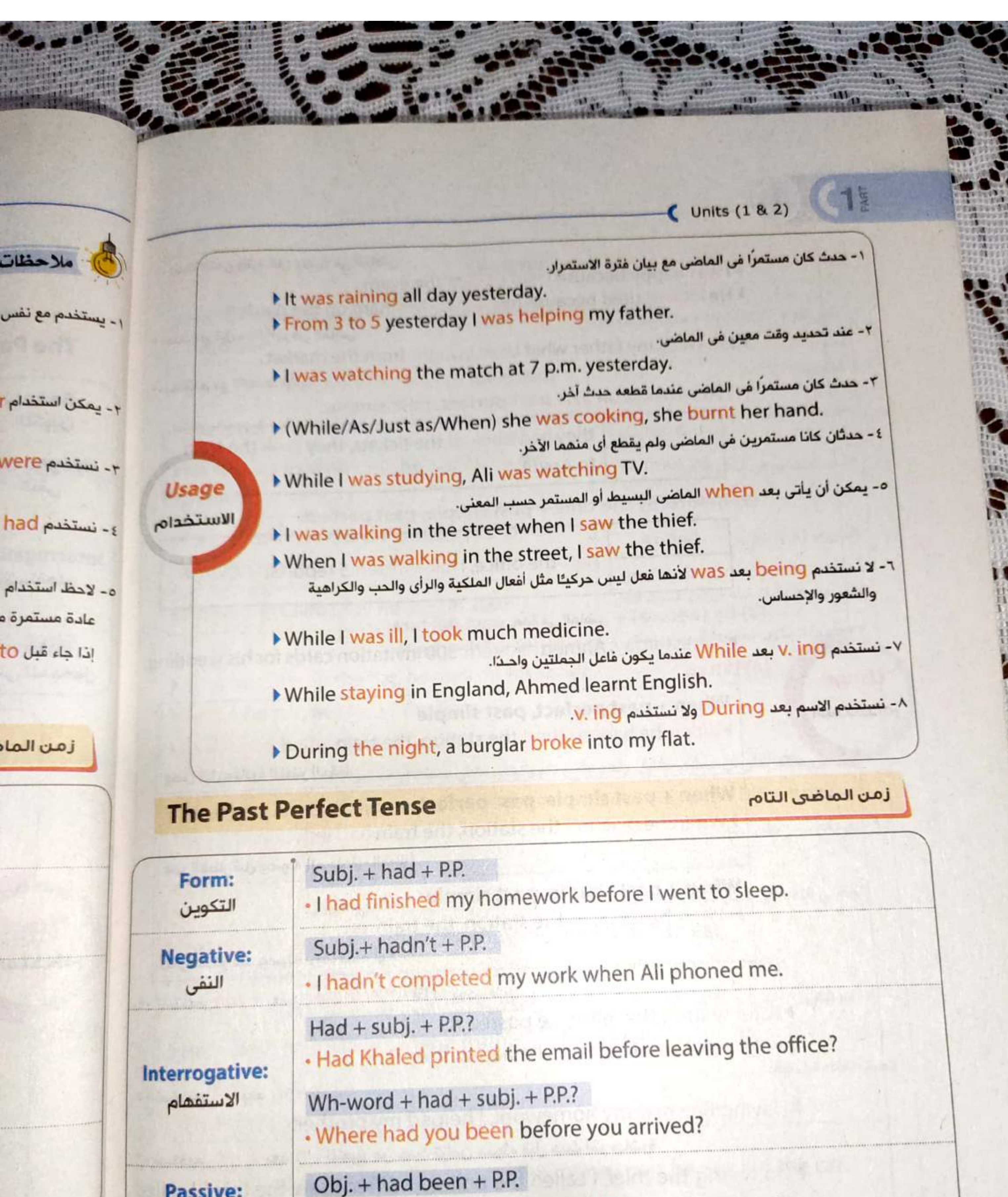
▸ Ali is used to going to the club every Friday.

إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول فيأتى بعدها المصدر وفى هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

▸ The underground metro is used to carry people to their destinations.

The Past Continuous Tense — زمن الماضى المستمر

Form: التكوين	Subj. + was/were + (v. ing) • I was having dinner when you phoned me.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + wasn't/weren't + (v. ing) • I wasn't sleeping when my father came.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Was/Were + subj. + (v.ing)? • Was my mum cooking the lunch when my father came? Wh- word + was/were + subj. + (v.ing)? • What were you doing yesterday at five p.m.?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + was/were + being + P.P. • While my hair was being cut, the light went out.



Usage الاستخدام

١- حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى مع بيان فترة الاستمرار.

- It was raining all day yesterday.
- From 3 to 5 yesterday I was helping my father.

٢- عند تحديد وقت معين فى الماضى.

- I was watching the match at 7 p.m. yesterday.

٣- حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

- (While/As/Just as/When) she was cooking, she burnt her hand.

٤- حدثان كانا مستمرين فى الماضى ولم يقطع أى منهما الآخر.

- While I was studying, Ali was watching TV.

٥- يمكن أن يأتى بعد when الماضى البسيط أو المستمر حسب المعنى.

- I was walking in the street when I saw the thief.
- When I was walking in the street, I saw the thief.

٦- لا نستخدم being بعد was لأنها فعل ليس حركيًا مثل أفعال الملكية والرأى والحب والكراهية والشعور والإحساس.

- While I was ill, I took much medicine.

٧- نستخدم v. ing بعد While عندما يكون فاعل الجملتين واحدًا.

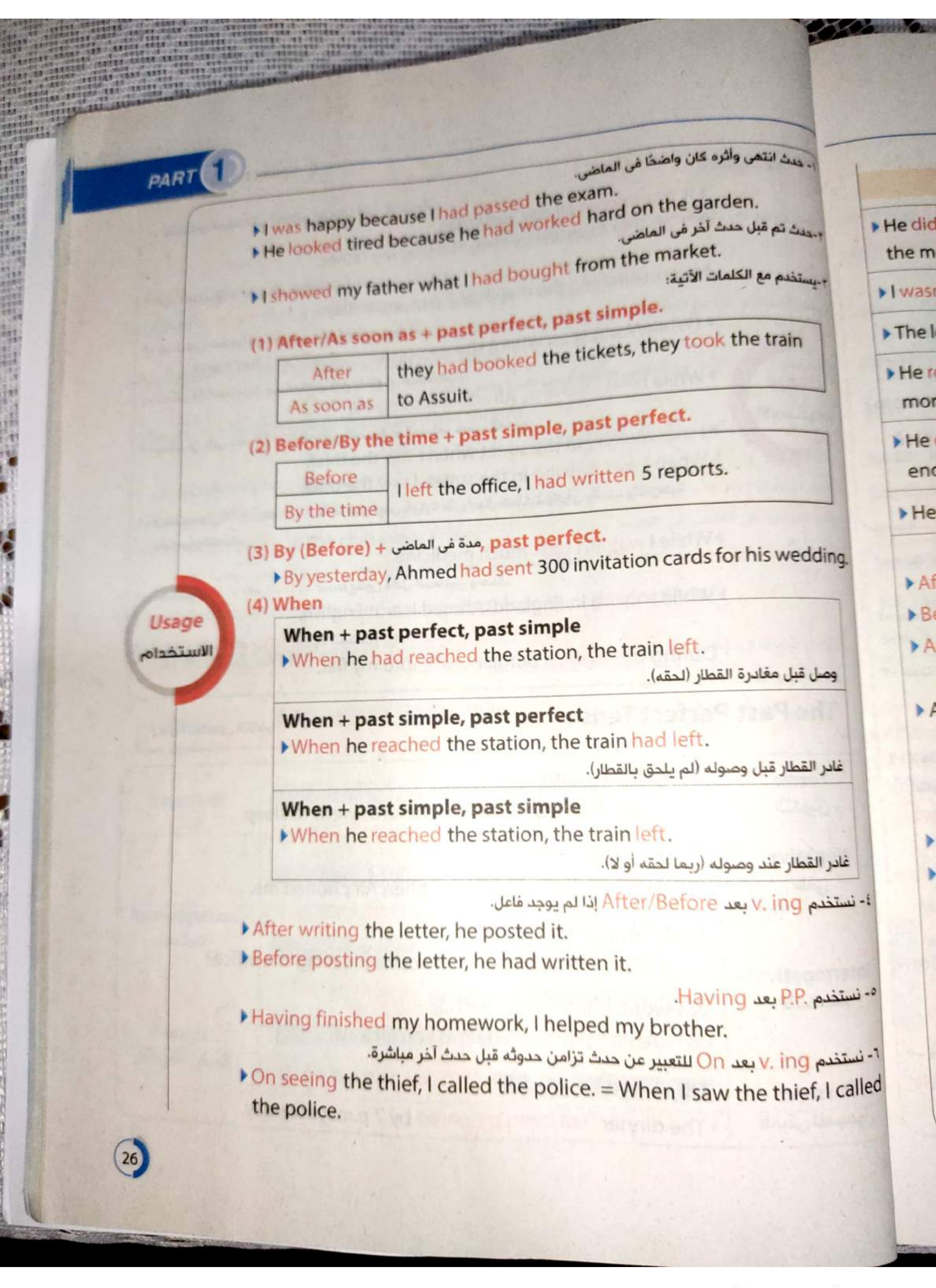
- While staying in England, Ahmed learnt English.

٨- نستخدم الاسم بعد During ولا نستخدم v. ing.

- During the night, a burglar broke into my flat.

The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضى التام

Form: التكوين	Subj. + had + P.P. • I had finished my homework before I went to sleep.
Negative: النفى	Subj.+ hadn't + P.P. • I hadn't completed my work when Ali phoned me.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Had + subj. + P.P.? • Had Khaled printed the email before leaving the office? Wh-word + had + subj. + P.P.? • Where had you been before you arrived?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + had been + P.P. • The dinner had been prepared by 7 p.m. yesterday.



PART 1

١- حدث انتهى وأثره كان واضحًا فى الماضى.

- I was happy because I had passed the exam.
- He looked tired because he had worked hard on the garden.

٢- حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى.

- I showed my father what I had bought from the market.

٣- يستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية:

(1) After/As soon as + past perfect, past simple.

After	they had booked the tickets, they took the train to Assuit.
As soon as	

(2) Before/By the time + past simple, past perfect.

Before	I left the office, I had written 5 reports.
By the time	

(3) By (Before) + مدة فى الماضى, past perfect.

- By yesterday, Ahmed had sent 300 invitation cards for his wedding.

Usage
الاستخدام

(4) When

When + past perfect, past simple
- When he had reached the station, the train left.

وصل قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقه).

When + past simple, past perfect
- When he reached the station, the train had left.

غادر القطار قبل وصوله (لم يلحق بالقطار).

When + past simple, past simple
- When he reached the station, the train left.

غادر القطار عند وصوله (ربما لحقه أو لا).

٤- نستخدم v. ing بعد After/Before إذا لم يوجد فاعل.

- After writing the letter, he posted it.
- Before posting the letter, he had written it.

٥- نستخدم P.P. بعد Having.

- Having finished my homework, I helped my brother.

٦- نستخدم v. ing بعد On للتعبير عن حدث تزامن حدوثه قبل حدث آخر مباشرة.

- On seeing the thief, I called the police. = When I saw the thief, I called the police.

Until/till	
He didn't buy the car until (till) he had saved the money.	ماضٍ تام + until (till) + ماضٍ بسيط منفى
I wasn't happy until I had passed the exam.	النفى بـ wasn't
The letter wasn't sent until it had been written.	مبنى للمجهول
He refused to leave until he had taken the money.	إثبات قبلها يعطى معنى النفى
He couldn't buy the car until he had saved enough money.	النفى بـ couldn't
He lived in Cairo until he died in 2007.	ماضٍ بسيط مثبت قبله ويكون الحدث الأول.

٧- عندما لا يكون هناك فارق زمنى يمكن استخدام الحدثين فى الماضى البسيط.

- After he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- Before he left, he closed the door.
- As soon as he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.

٨- إذا كان هناك أكثر من حدثين فالأول منهم ماضٍ تام والباقى ماضٍ بسيط أو مستمر.

- After he went back home, he found that someone had stolen his money.

٩- لم يكد ...... حتى ......

No sooner .... than (Hardly/Scarcely .... when)

الماضى التام على شكل سؤال إذا كانت No sooner/Hardly/Scarcely أول الكلام.

- No sooner had she finished cooking than we started to eat.
- Hardly/Scarcely had she finished cooking when we started to eat.

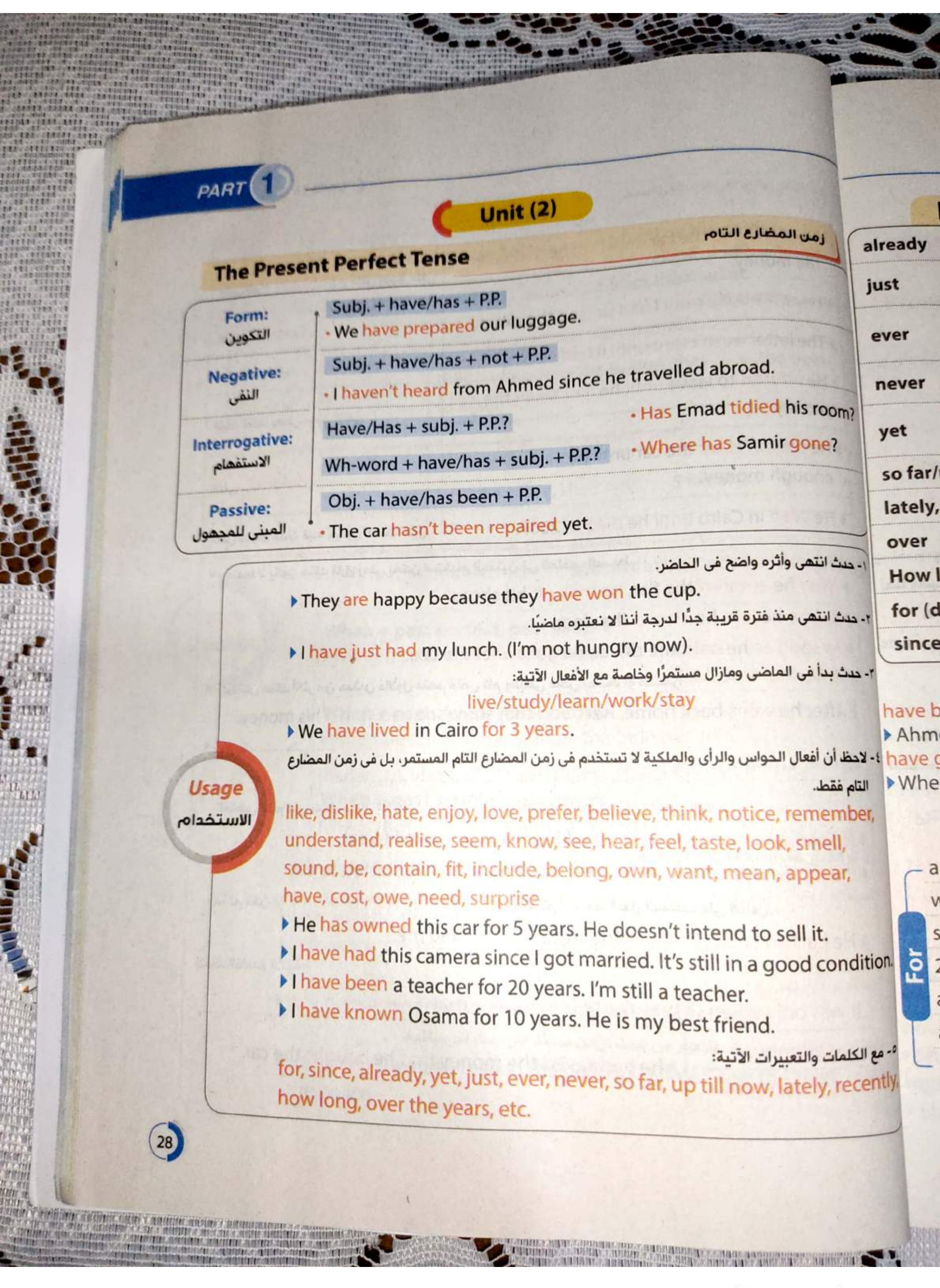
إذا لم تكن no sooner/hardly/scarcely أول الكلام لا نقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل.

- He had no sooner known the truth than he told me.

لاحظ القاعدة الآتية:

It was only when (It wasn't until) + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

It was only when It wasn't until	he had saved the money that he bought the car.



Unit (2)

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form: التكوين	Subj. + have/has + P.P. • We have prepared our luggage.
Negative: النفى	Subj. + have/has + not + P.P. • I haven't heard from Ahmed since he travelled abroad.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Have/Has + subj. + P.P.? • Has Emad tidied his room? Wh-word + have/has + subj. + P.P.? • Where has Samir gone?
Passive: المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + have/has been + P.P. • The car hasn't been repaired yet.

Usage الاستخدام

١- حدث انتهى وأثره واضح فى الحاضر.

▸ They are happy because they have won the cup.

٢- حدث انتهى منذ فترة قريبة جدًا لدرجة أننا لا نعتبره ماضيًا.

▸ I have just had my lunch. (I'm not hungry now).

٣- حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا وخاصة مع الأفعال الآتية:

live/study/learn/work/stay

▸ We have lived in Cairo for 3 years.

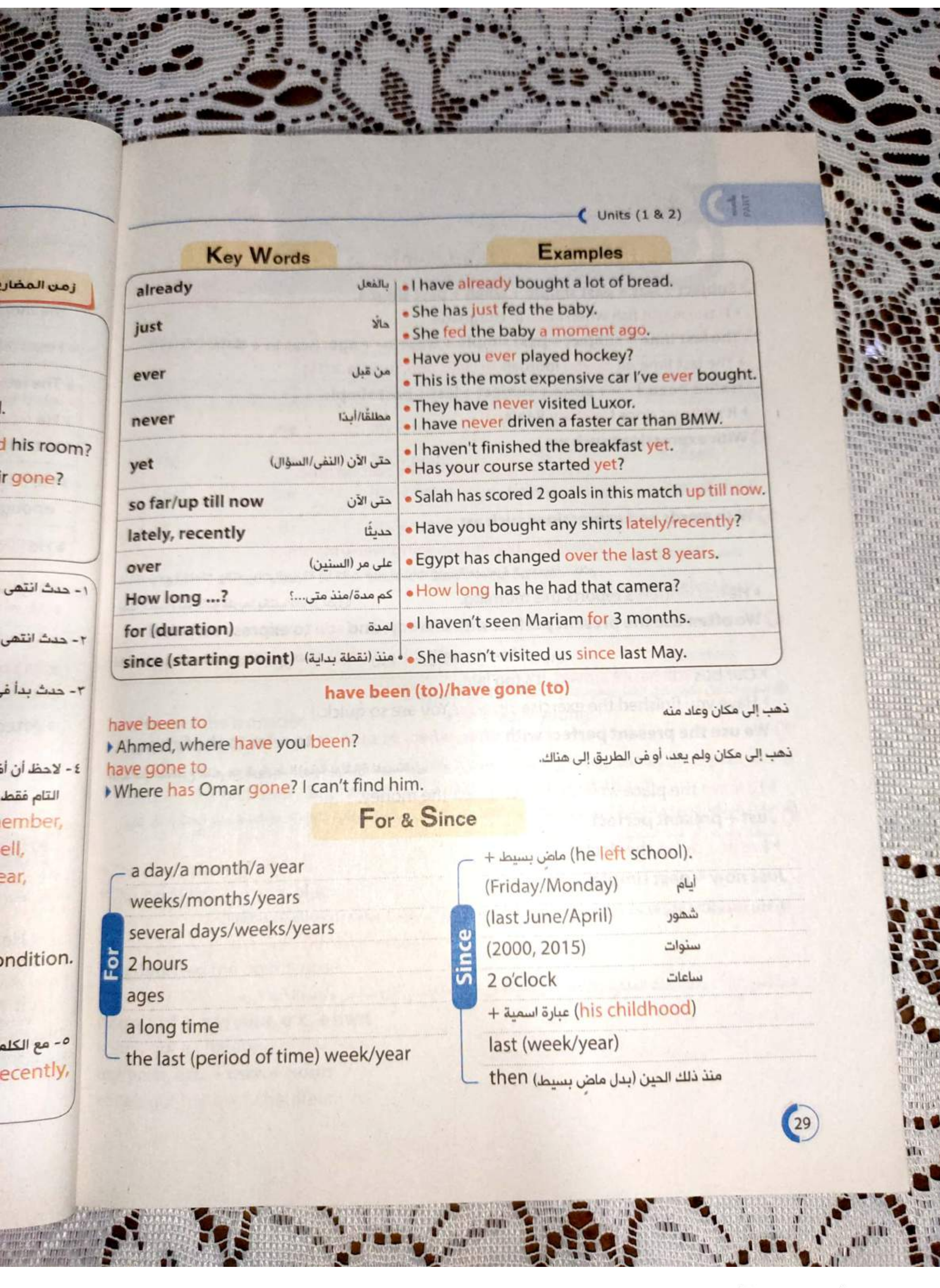
٤- لاحظ أن أفعال الحواس والرأى والملكية لا تستخدم فى زمن المضارع التام المستمر، بل فى زمن المضارع التام فقط.

like, dislike, hate, enjoy, love, prefer, believe, think, notice, remember, understand, realise, seem, know, see, hear, feel, taste, look, smell, sound, be, contain, fit, include, belong, own, want, mean, appear, have, cost, owe, need, surprise

▸ He has owned this car for 5 years. He doesn't intend to sell it.
▸ I have had this camera since I got married. It's still in a good condition.
▸ I have been a teacher for 20 years. I'm still a teacher.
▸ I have known Osama for 10 years. He is my best friend.

٥- مع الكلمات والتعبيرات الآتية:

for, since, already, yet, just, ever, never, so far, up till now, lately, recently, how long, over the years, etc.



Key Words		Examples
already	بالفعل	• I have already bought a lot of bread.
just	حالًا	• She has just fed the baby. • She fed the baby a moment ago.
ever	من قبل	• Have you ever played hockey? • This is the most expensive car I've ever bought.
never	مطلقًا/أبدًا	• They have never visited Luxor. • I have never driven a faster car than BMW.
yet	حتى الآن (النفى/السؤال)	• I haven't finished the breakfast yet. • Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	حتى الآن	• Salah has scored 2 goals in this match up till now.
lately, recently	حديثًا	• Have you bought any shirts lately/recently?
over	على مر (السنين)	• Egypt has changed over the last 8 years.
How long ...?	كم مدة/منذ متى...؟	• How long has he had that camera?
for (duration)	لمدة	• I haven't seen Mariam for 3 months.
since (starting point)	منذ (نقطة بداية)	• She hasn't visited us since last May.

have been (to)/have gone (to)

have been to — ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه

- Ahmed, where have you been?

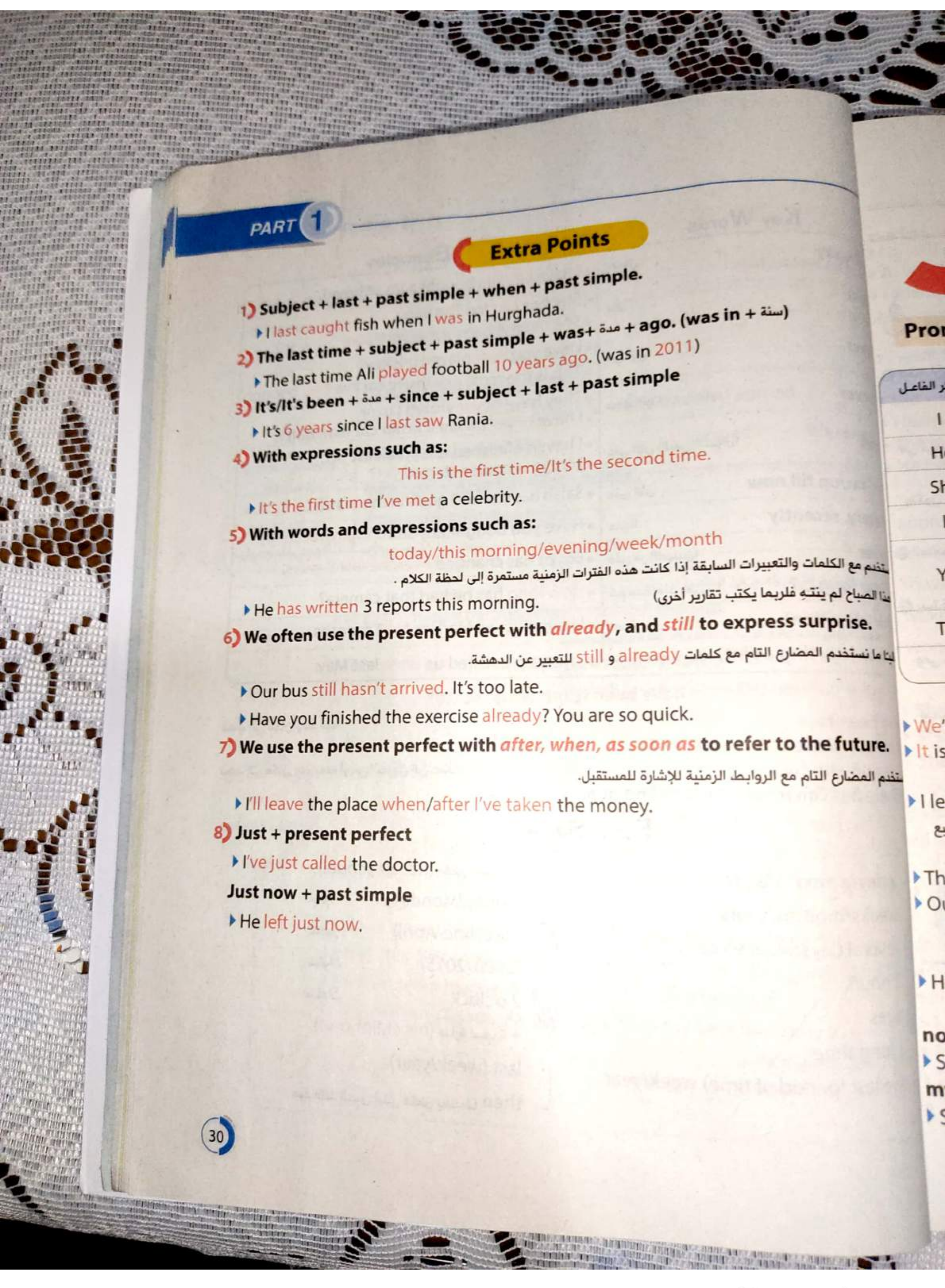
have gone to — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد، أو فى الطريق إلى هناك.

- Where has Omar gone? I can't find him.

For & Since

For
- a day/a month/a year
- weeks/months/years
- several days/weeks/years
- 2 hours
- ages
- a long time
- the last (period of time) week/year

Since
- ماضٍ بسيط + (he left school).
- (Friday/Monday) أيام
- (last June/April) شهور
- (2000, 2015) سنوات
- 2 o'clock ساعات
- عبارة اسمية + (his childhood)
- last (week/year)
- then منذ ذلك الحين (بدل ماضٍ بسيط)



Extra Points

1) Subject + last + past simple + when + past simple.

- I last caught fish when I was in Hurghada.

2) The last time + subject + past simple + was+ مدة + ago. (was in + سنة)

- The last time Ali played football 10 years ago. (was in 2011)

3) It's/It's been + مدة + since + subject + last + past simple

- It's 6 years since I last saw Rania.

4) With expressions such as:

This is the first time/It's the second time.

- It's the first time I've met a celebrity.

5) With words and expressions such as:

today/this morning/evening/week/month

ستخدم مع الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة إذا كانت هذه الفترات الزمنية مستمرة إلى لحظة الكلام .

- He has written 3 reports this morning. ذا الصباح لم ينتهِ فلربما يكتب تقارير أخرى)

6) We often use the present perfect with *already*, and *still* to express surprise.

لبا ما نستخدم المضارع التام مع كلمات already و still للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- Our bus still hasn't arrived. It's too late.
- Have you finished the exercise already? You are so quick.

7) We use the present perfect with *after, when, as soon as* to refer to the future.

ستخدم المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية للإشارة للمستقبل.

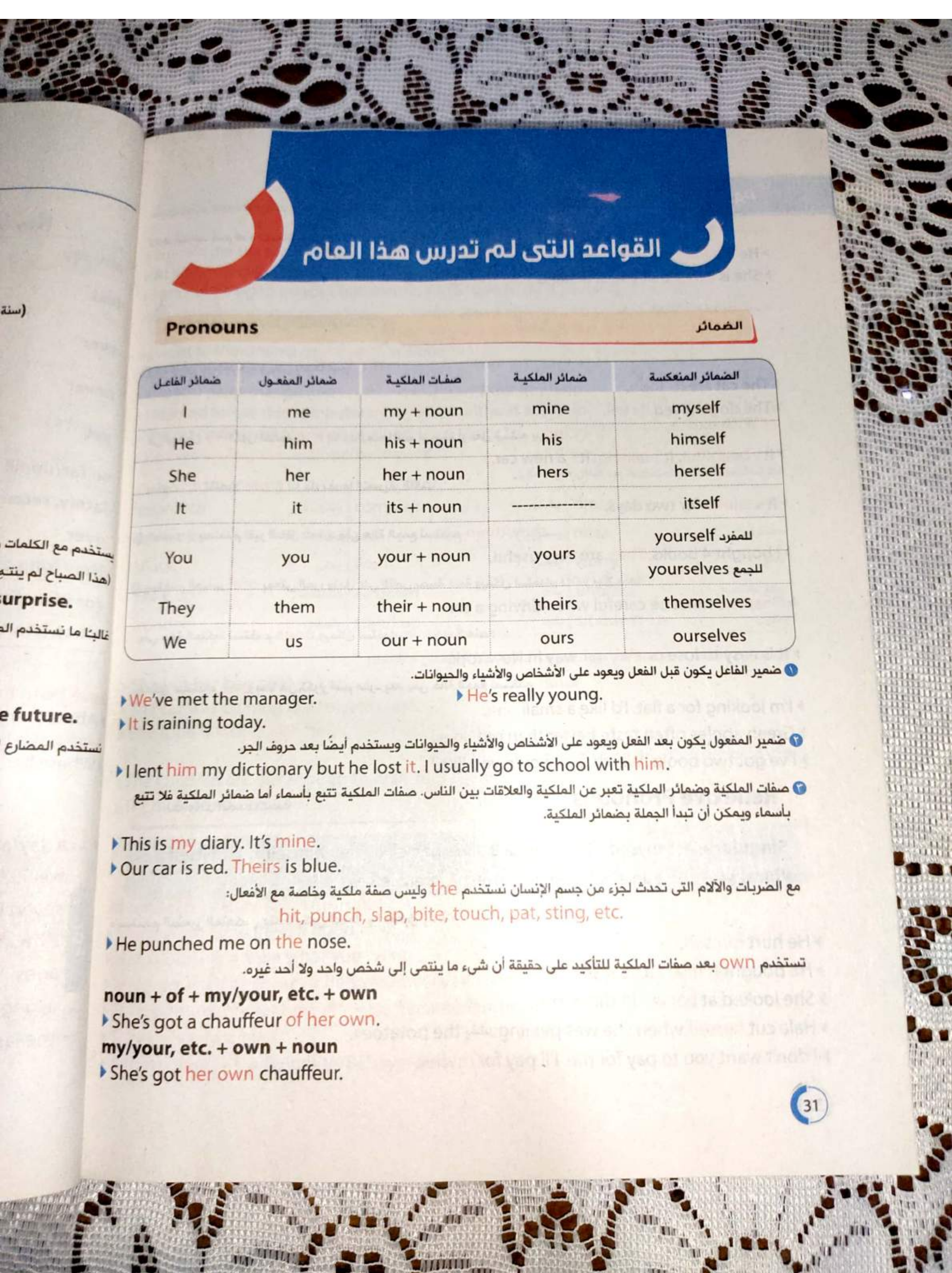
- I'll leave the place when/after I've taken the money.

8) Just + present perfect

- I've just called the doctor.

Just now + past simple

- He left just now.



القواعد التى لم تدرس هذا العام

Pronouns — الضمائر

الضمائر المنعكسة	ضمائر الملكية	صفات الملكية	ضمائر المفعول	ضمائر الفاعل
myself	mine	my + noun	me	I
himself	his	his + noun	him	He
herself	hers	her + noun	her	She
itself	---------------	its + noun	it	It
yourself للمفرد yourselves للجمع	yours	your + noun	you	You
themselves	theirs	their + noun	them	They
ourselves	ours	our + noun	us	We

١ ضمير الفاعل يكون قبل الفعل ويعود على الأشخاص والأشياء والحيوانات.

- He's really young.
- We've met the manager.
- It is raining today.

٢ ضمير المفعول يكون بعد الفعل ويعود على الأشخاص والأشياء والحيوانات ويستخدم أيضًا بعد حروف الجر.

- I lent him my dictionary but he lost it. I usually go to school with him.

٣ صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية تعبر عن الملكية والعلاقات بين الناس. صفات الملكية تتبع بأسماء أما ضمائر الملكية فلا تتبع بأسماء ويمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بضمائر الملكية.

- This is my diary. It's mine.
- Our car is red. Theirs is blue.

مع الضربات والآلام التى تحدث لجزء من جسم الإنسان نستخدم the وليس صفة ملكية وخاصة مع الأفعال:

hit, punch, slap, bite, touch, pat, sting, etc.

- He punched me on the nose.

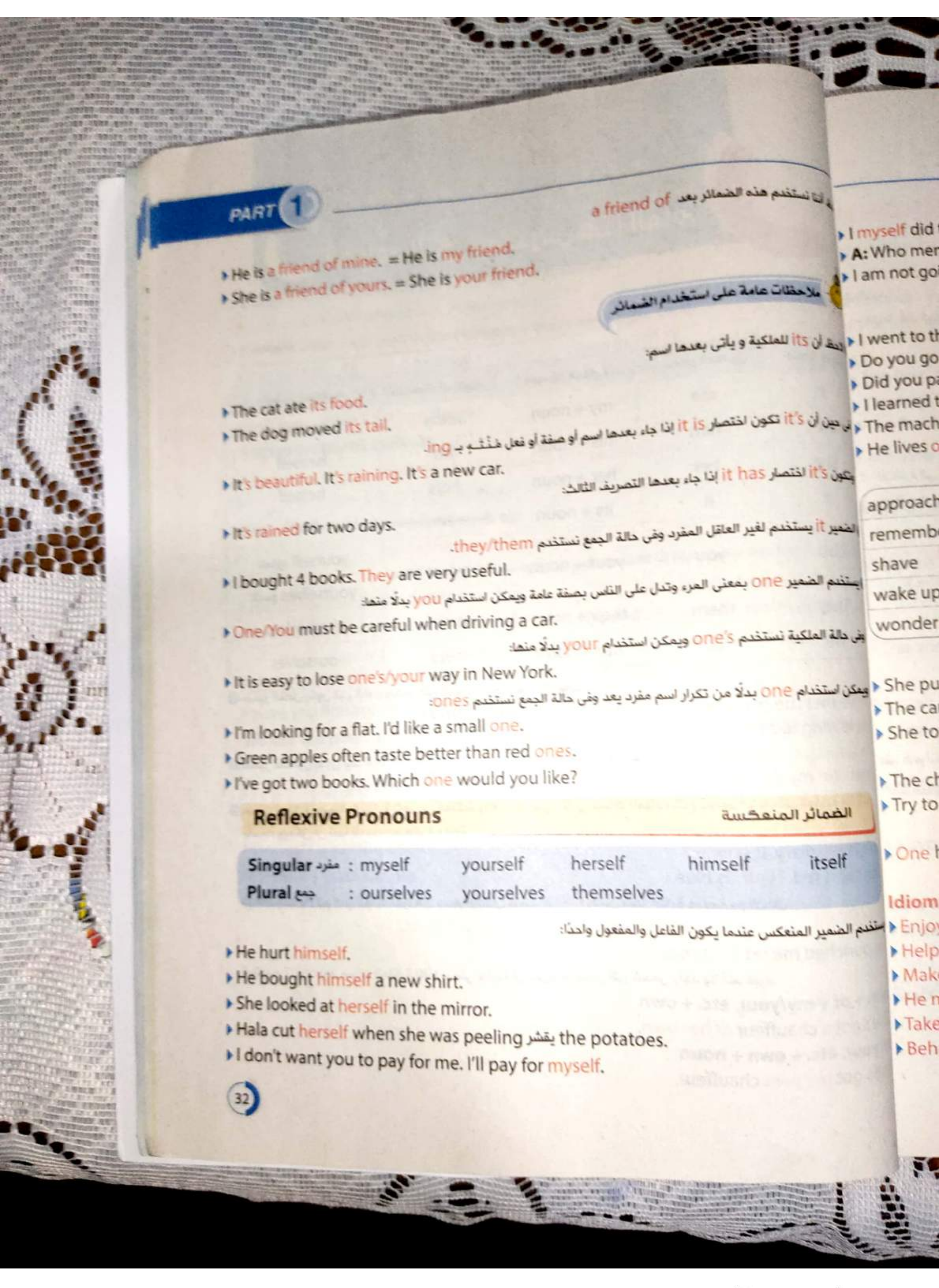
تستخدم own بعد صفات الملكية للتأكيد على حقيقة أن شيء ما ينتمي إلى شخص واحد ولا أحد غيره.

noun + of + my/your, etc. + own

- She's got a chauffeur of her own.

my/your, etc. + own + noun

- She's got her own chauffeur.



لاحظ أننا نستخدم هذه الضمائر بعد a friend of

- He is a friend of mine. = He is my friend.
- She is a friend of yours. = She is your friend.

ملاحظات عامة على استخدام الضمائر

لاحظ أن its للملكية و يأتى بعدها اسم:

- The cat ate its food.
- The dog moved its tail.

فى حين أن it's تكون اختصار it is إذا جاء بعدها اسم أو صفة أو فعل منتهٍ بـ ing.

- It's beautiful. It's raining. It's a new car.

ويكون it's اختصار it has إذا جاء بعدها التصريف الثالث:

- It's rained for two days.

الضمير it يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد وفى حالة الجمع نستخدم they/them.

- I bought 4 books. They are very useful.

يستخدم الضمير one بمعنى المرء وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام you بدلًا منه:

- One/You must be careful when driving a car.

فى حالة الملكية نستخدم one's ويمكن استخدام your بدلًا منها:

- It is easy to lose one's/your way in New York.

ويمكن استخدام one بدلًا من تكرار اسم مفرد يعد وفى حالة الجمع نستخدم ones:

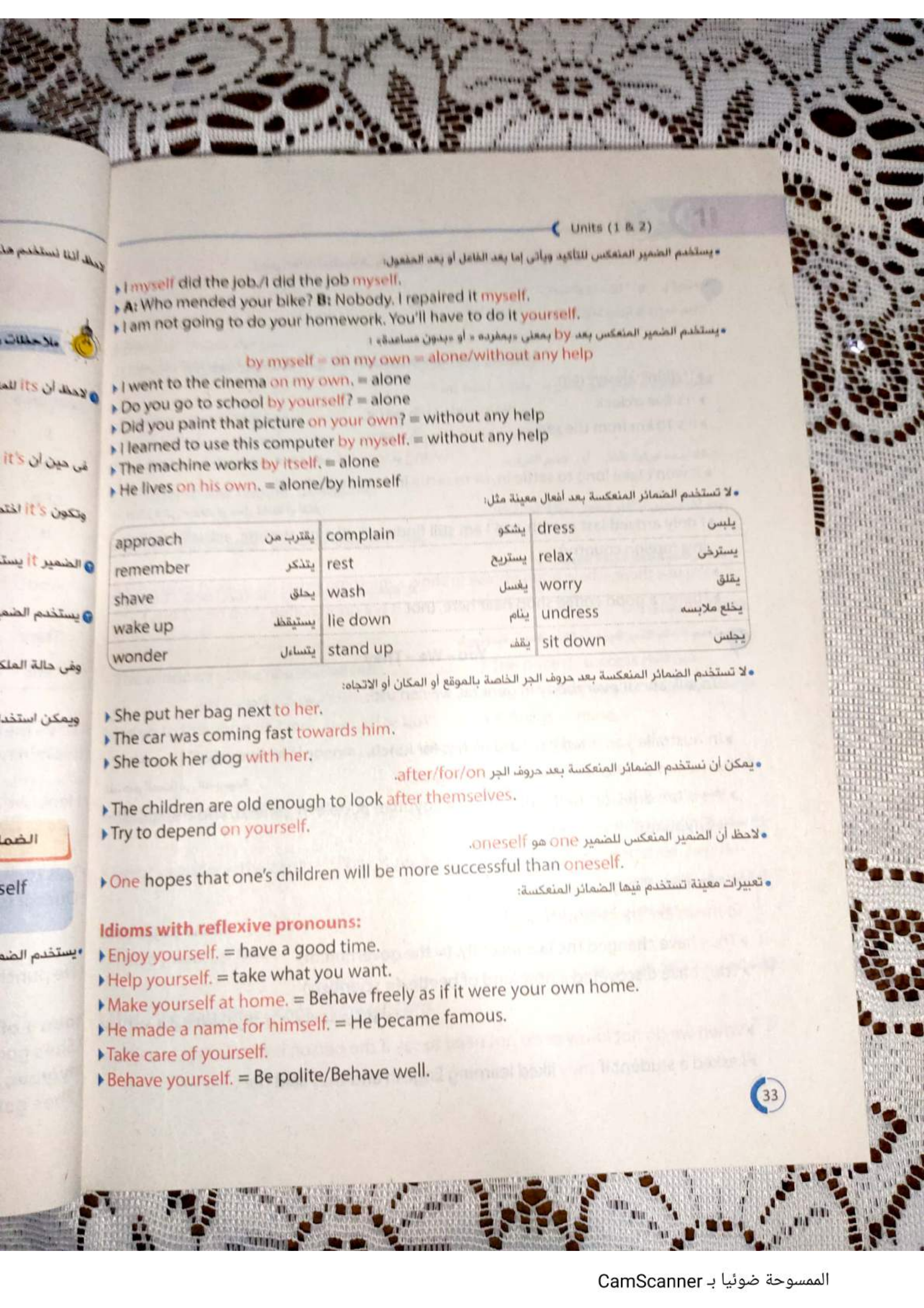
- I'm looking for a flat. I'd like a small one.
- Green apples often taste better than red ones.
- I've got two books. Which one would you like?

Reflexive Pronouns — الضمائر المنعكسة

Singular مفرد	: myself	yourself	herself	himself	itself
Plural جمع	: ourselves	yourselves	themselves		

يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول واحدًا:

- He hurt himself.
- He bought himself a new shirt.
- She looked at herself in the mirror.
- Hala cut herself when she was peeling يقشر the potatoes.
- I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for myself.



• يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد ويأتي إما بعد الفاعل أو بعد المفعول:

- I myself did the job./I did the job myself.
- A: Who mended your bike? B: Nobody. I repaired it myself.
- I am not going to do your homework. You'll have to do it yourself.

• يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد by بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة»:

by myself = on my own = alone/without any help

- I went to the cinema on my own. = alone
- Do you go to school by yourself? = alone
- Did you paint that picture on your own? = without any help
- I learned to use this computer by myself. = without any help
- The machine works by itself. = alone
- He lives on his own. = alone/by himself

• لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة مثل:

approach	يقترب من	complain	يشكو	dress	يلبس
remember	يتذكر	rest	يستريح	relax	يسترخى
shave	يحلق	wash	يغسل	worry	يقلق
wake up	يستيقظ	lie down	ينام	undress	يخلع ملابسه
wonder	يتساءل	stand up	يقف	sit down	يجلس

• لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه:

- She put her bag next to her.
- The car was coming fast towards him.
- She took her dog with her.

• يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر after/for/on.

- The children are old enough to look after themselves.
- Try to depend on yourself.

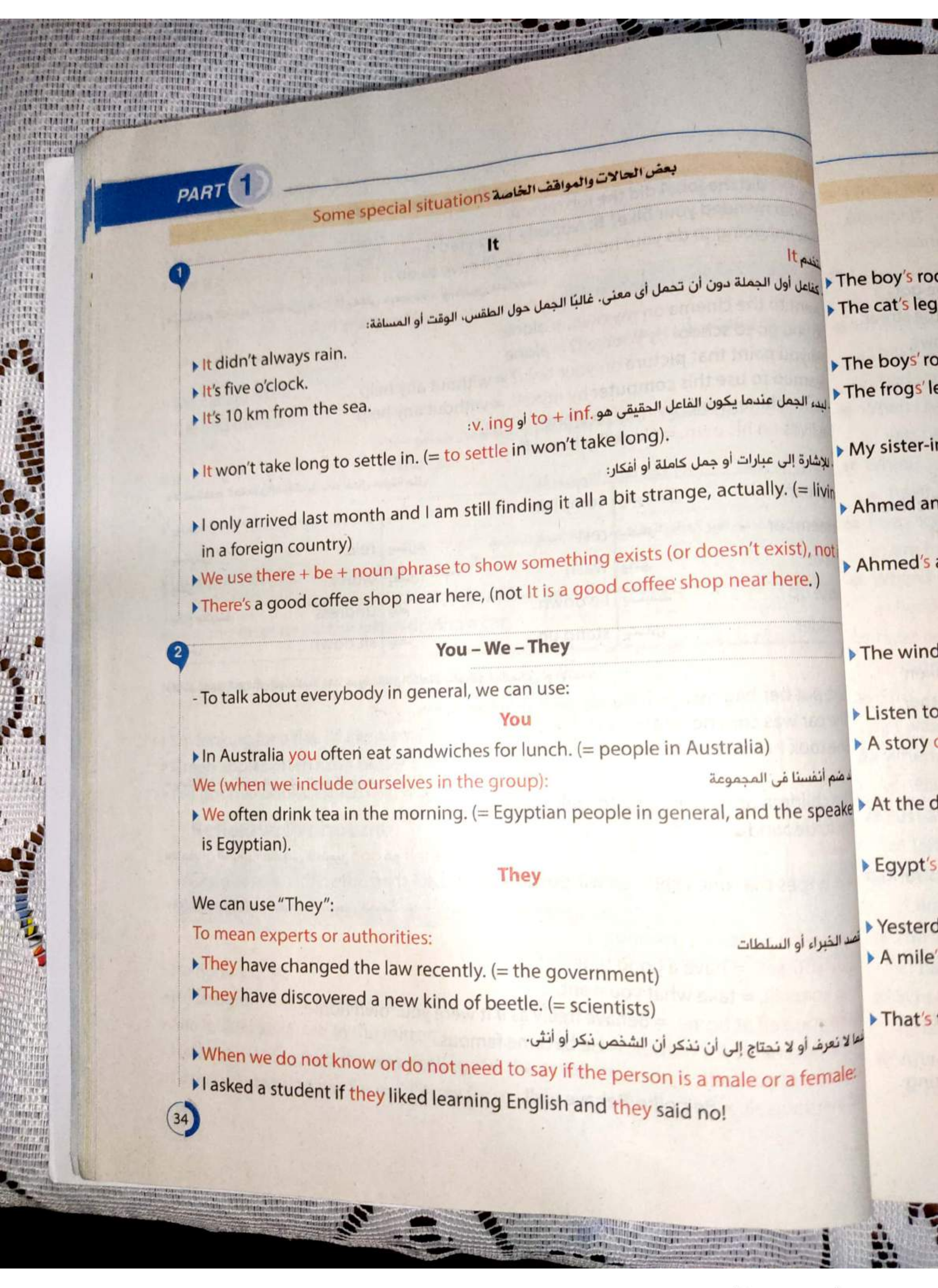
• لاحظ أن الضمير المنعكس للضمير one هو oneself.

- One hopes that one's children will be more successful than oneself.

• تعبيرات معينة تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة:

Idioms with reflexive pronouns:

- Enjoy yourself. = have a good time.
- Help yourself. = take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- Take care of yourself.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite/Behave well.



Some special situations بعض الحالات والمواقف الخاصة

1 It

تستخدم It

كفاعل أول الجملة دون أن تحمل أى معنى. غالبًا الجمل حول الطقس، الوقت أو المسافة:

- It didn't always rain.
- It's five o'clock.
- It's 10 km from the sea.

لبدء الجمل عندما يكون الفاعل الحقيقى هو to + inf. أو v. ing:

- It won't take long to settle in. (= to settle in won't take long).

للإشارة إلى عبارات أو جمل كاملة أو أفكار:

- I only arrived last month and I am still finding it all a bit strange, actually. (= living in a foreign country)
- We use there + be + noun phrase to show something exists (or doesn't exist), not
- There's a good coffee shop near here, (not It is a good coffee shop near here.)

2 You – We – They

- To talk about everybody in general, we can use:

You

- In Australia you often eat sandwiches for lunch. (= people in Australia)

We (when we include ourselves in the group): عند ضم أنفسنا فى المجموعة

- We often drink tea in the morning. (= Egyptian people in general, and the speaker is Egyptian).

They

We can use "They":

To mean experts or authorities: لنقصد الخبراء أو السلطات

- They have changed the law recently. (= the government)
- They have discovered a new kind of beetle. (= scientists)

عندما لا نعرف أو لا نحتاج إلى أن نذكر أن الشخص ذكر أو أنثى.

- When we do not know or do not need to say if the person is a male or a female:
- I asked a student if they liked learning English and they said no!

حالات خاصة بالملكية ('s/s'/of)

❶ الملكية بـ 's و ' للإنسان والحيوان:

الاسم المفرد أو الجمع الذى لا ينتهى بـ s يأخذ ('s):

- The children's names أسماء الأطفال
- The boy's room حجرة الولد
- The horse's tail ذيل الحصان
- The cat's leg رجل القطة

الاسم المفرد أو الجمع الذى ينتهى بـ s يأخذ (') فقط بعد s.

- The girls' class فصل الفتيات
- The boys' room حجرة الأولاد
- The dogs' barking نباح الكلاب
- The frogs' legs أرجل الضفادع

هناك أسماء مركبة تأخذ 's آخر الاسم المركب

- My sister-in-law's house. منزل زوجة أخى

بعد آخر اسمين أو أكثر لإظهار الحيازة المشتركة:

- Ahmed and Osama's car. يمتلك الاثنان سيارة واحدة

بعد كل اسم لإظهار الحيازة الفردية:

- Ahmed's and Osama's cars. كل واحد يملك سيارة

❷ الملكية للجماد بـ (of)

نستخدم of ثم الاسم الجماد أو الاسم المجرد (المعنوى).

- The price of success ثمن النجاح
- The windows of the house نوافذ المنزل

❸ نستخدم ضمير الملكية أو حالة الملكية + a/the/this/that + noun + of لبيان شيء واحد من كثير.

- A friend of mine.
- Listen to this song of Amr's. أغنية من أغانى عمرو
- A car of yours.
- A story of Taha Hussein's. قصة من قصص طه حسين

❹ اذا أضيفت 's للوظيفة تعطى المكان الذى يعمل فيه مثل:

- At the baker's عند محل الخباز (الفرن)
- At the dentist's فى عيادة طبيب الأسنان

❺ نستخدم of أو 's مع الأماكن والمنظمات:

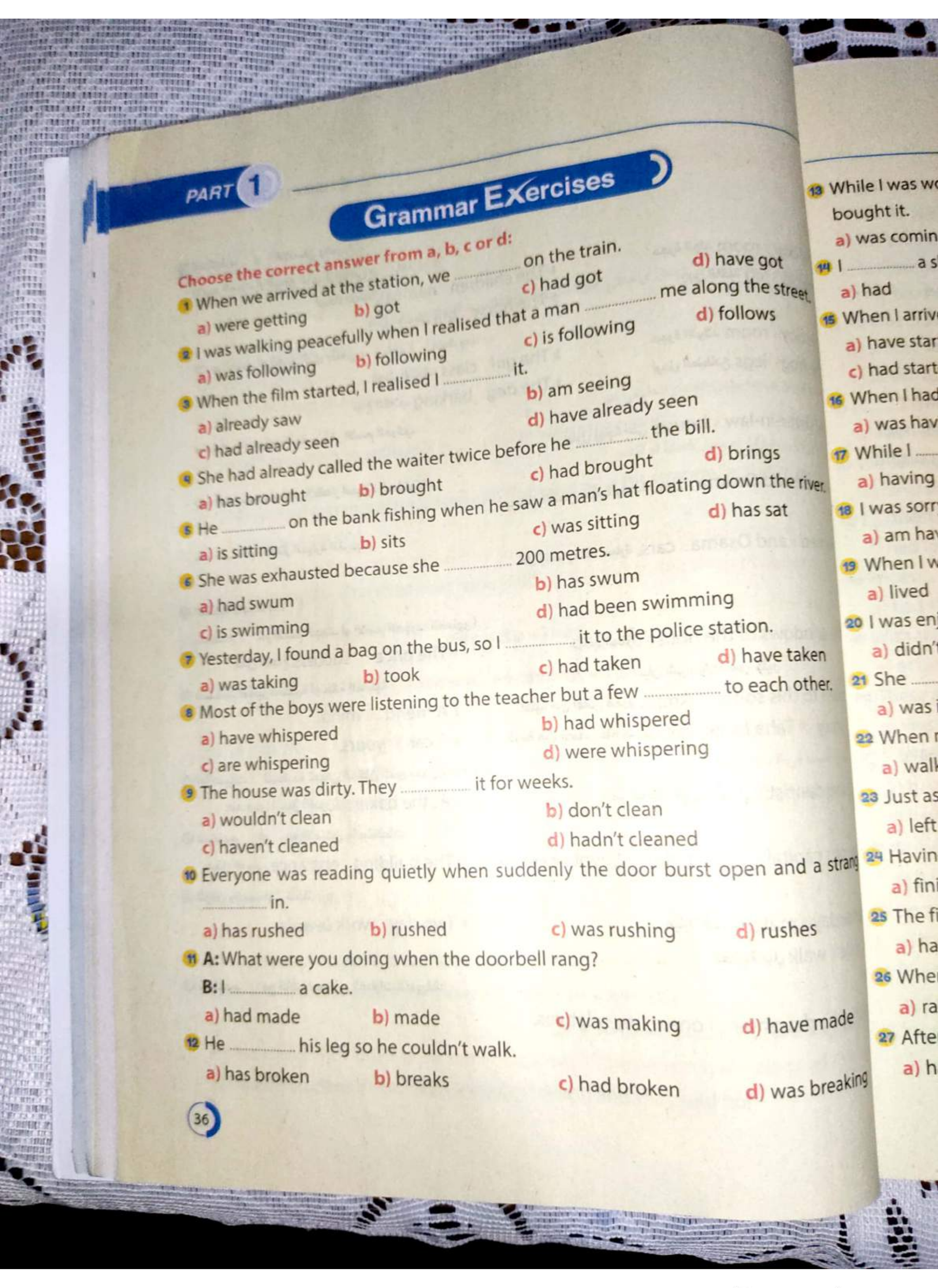
- The building's entrance مدخل المبنى
- Egypt's capital = the capital of Egypt عاصمة مصر

❻ الزمن والمسافات تأخذ 's و 's:

- Two days' work عمل يومين
- Yesterday's match مباراة أمس
- A mile's walk تمشية ميل

❼ نستخدم of مع الأشخاص فى العبارات الطويلة:

- That's the daughter of one of my relatives.



PART 1

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When we arrived at the station, we .... on the train.
a) were getting b) got c) had got d) have got

2 I was walking peacefully when I realised that a man .... me along the street.
a) was following b) following c) is following d) follows

3 When the film started, I realised I .... it.
a) already saw b) am seeing
c) had already seen d) have already seen

4 She had already called the waiter twice before he .... the bill.
a) has brought b) brought c) had brought d) brings

5 He .... on the bank fishing when he saw a man's hat floating down the river.
a) is sitting b) sits c) was sitting d) has sat

6 She was exhausted because she .... 200 metres.
a) had swum b) has swum
c) is swimming d) had been swimming

7 Yesterday, I found a bag on the bus, so I .... it to the police station.
a) was taking b) took c) had taken d) have taken

8 Most of the boys were listening to the teacher but a few .... to each other.
a) have whispered b) had whispered
c) are whispering d) were whispering

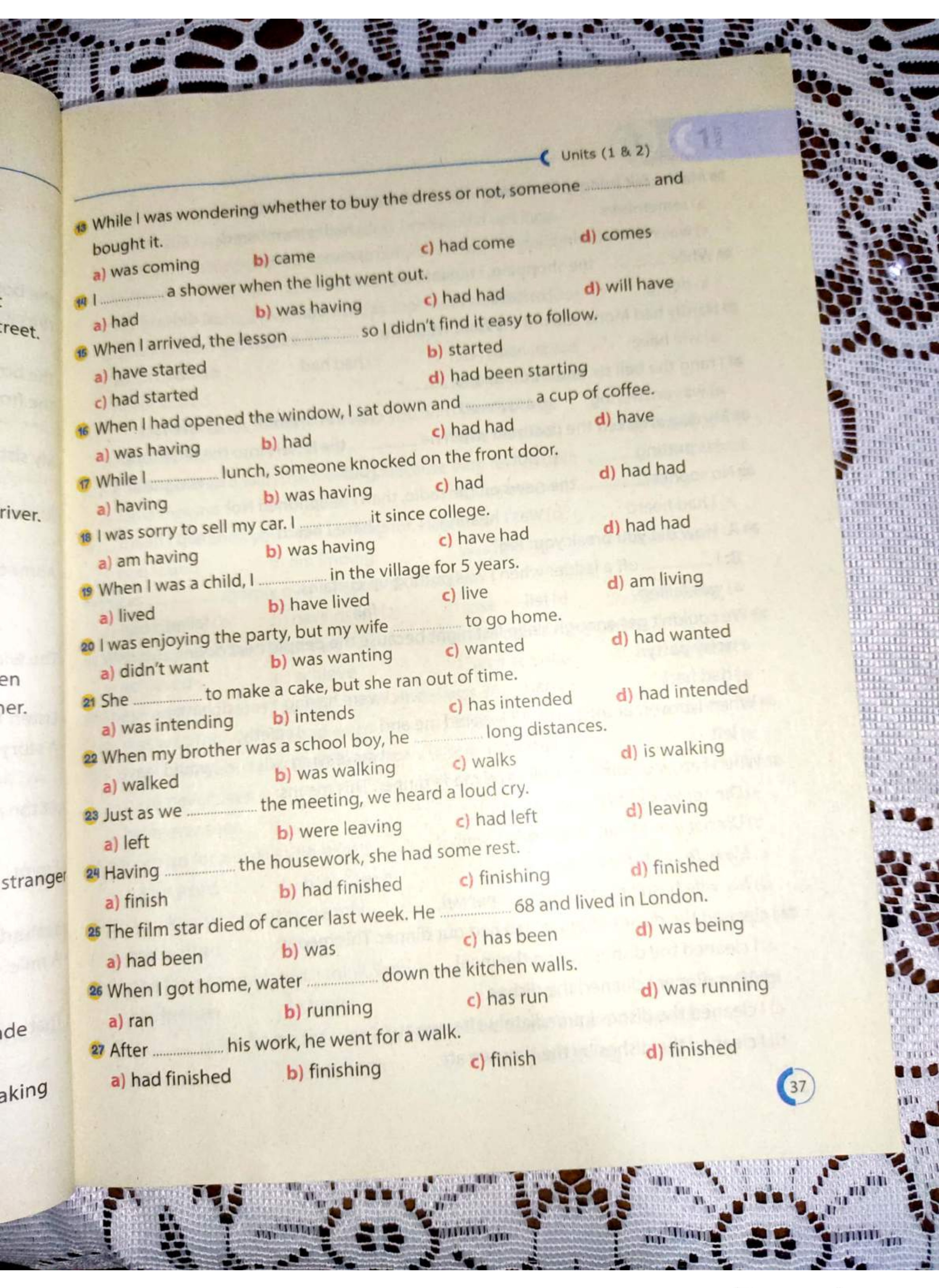
9 The house was dirty. They .... it for weeks.
a) wouldn't clean b) don't clean
c) haven't cleaned d) hadn't cleaned

10 Everyone was reading quietly when suddenly the door burst open and a strang
.... in.
a) has rushed b) rushed c) was rushing d) rushes

11 A: What were you doing when the doorbell rang?
B: I .... a cake.
a) had made b) made c) was making d) have made

12 He .... his leg so he couldn't walk.
a) has broken b) breaks c) had broken d) was breaking

13 While I was wo
bought it.
a) was comin
14 I .... a s
a) had
15 When I arriv
a) have star
c) had start
16 When I had
a) was hav
17 While I ....
a) having
18 I was sorr
a) am hav
19 When I w
a) lived
20 I was enj
a) didn't
21 She ....
a) was i
22 When r
a) walk
23 Just as
a) left
24 Havin
a) fini
25 The fi
a) ha
26 Whe
a) ra
27 Afte
a) h



13 While I was wondering whether to buy the dress or not, someone .... and bought it.

a) was coming b) came c) had come d) comes

14 I .... a shower when the light went out.

a) had b) was having c) had had d) will have

15 When I arrived, the lesson .... so I didn't find it easy to follow.

a) have started b) started

c) had started d) had been starting

16 When I had opened the window, I sat down and .... a cup of coffee.

a) was having b) had c) had had d) have

17 While I .... lunch, someone knocked on the front door.

a) having b) was having c) had d) had had

18 I was sorry to sell my car. I .... it since college.

a) am having b) was having c) have had d) had had

19 When I was a child, I .... in the village for 5 years.

a) lived b) have lived c) live d) am living

20 I was enjoying the party, but my wife .... to go home.

a) didn't want b) was wanting c) wanted d) had wanted

21 She .... to make a cake, but she ran out of time.

a) was intending b) intends c) has intended d) had intended

22 When my brother was a school boy, he .... long distances.

a) walked b) was walking c) walks d) is walking

23 Just as we .... the meeting, we heard a loud cry.

a) left b) were leaving c) had left d) leaving

24 Having .... the housework, she had some rest.

a) finish b) had finished c) finishing d) finished

25 The film star died of cancer last week. He .... 68 and lived in London.

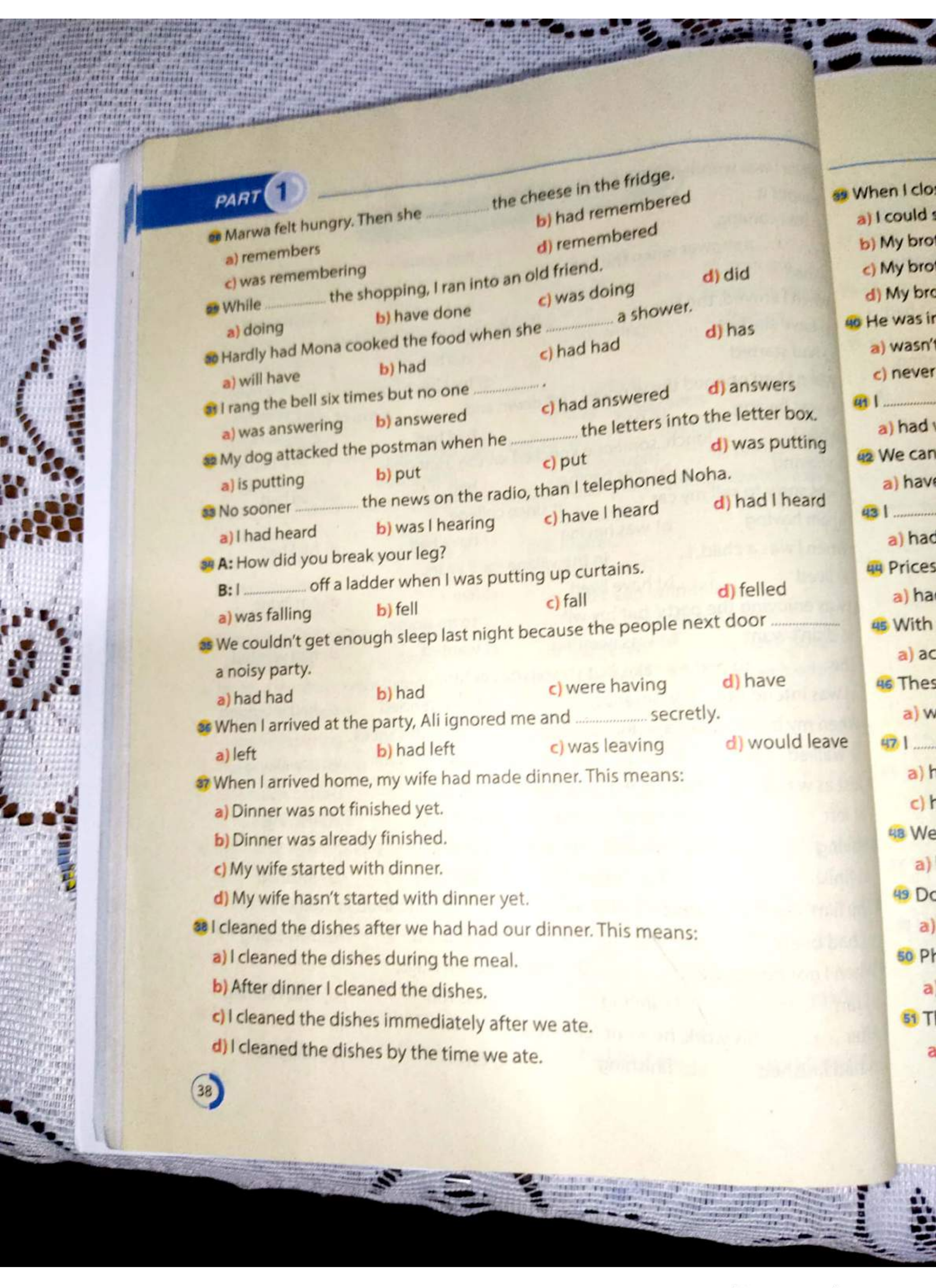
a) had been b) was c) has been d) was being

26 When I got home, water .... down the kitchen walls.

a) ran b) running c) has run d) was running

27 After .... his work, he went for a walk.

a) had finished b) finishing c) finish d) finished



PART 1

28 Marwa felt hungry. Then she .... the cheese in the fridge.

a) remembers
b) had remembered
c) was remembering
d) remembered

29 While .... the shopping, I ran into an old friend.

a) doing
b) have done
c) was doing
d) did

30 Hardly had Mona cooked the food when she .... a shower.

a) will have
b) had
c) had had
d) has

31 I rang the bell six times but no one ....

a) was answering
b) answered
c) had answered
d) answers

32 My dog attacked the postman when he .... the letters into the letter box.

a) is putting
b) put
c) put
d) was putting

33 No sooner .... the news on the radio, than I telephoned Noha.

a) I had heard
b) was I hearing
c) have I heard
d) had I heard

34 A: How did you break your leg?

B: I .... off a ladder when I was putting up curtains.

a) was falling
b) fell
c) fall
d) felled

35 We couldn't get enough sleep last night because the people next door .... a noisy party.

a) had had
b) had
c) were having
d) have

36 When I arrived at the party, Ali ignored me and .... secretly.

a) left
b) had left
c) was leaving
d) would leave

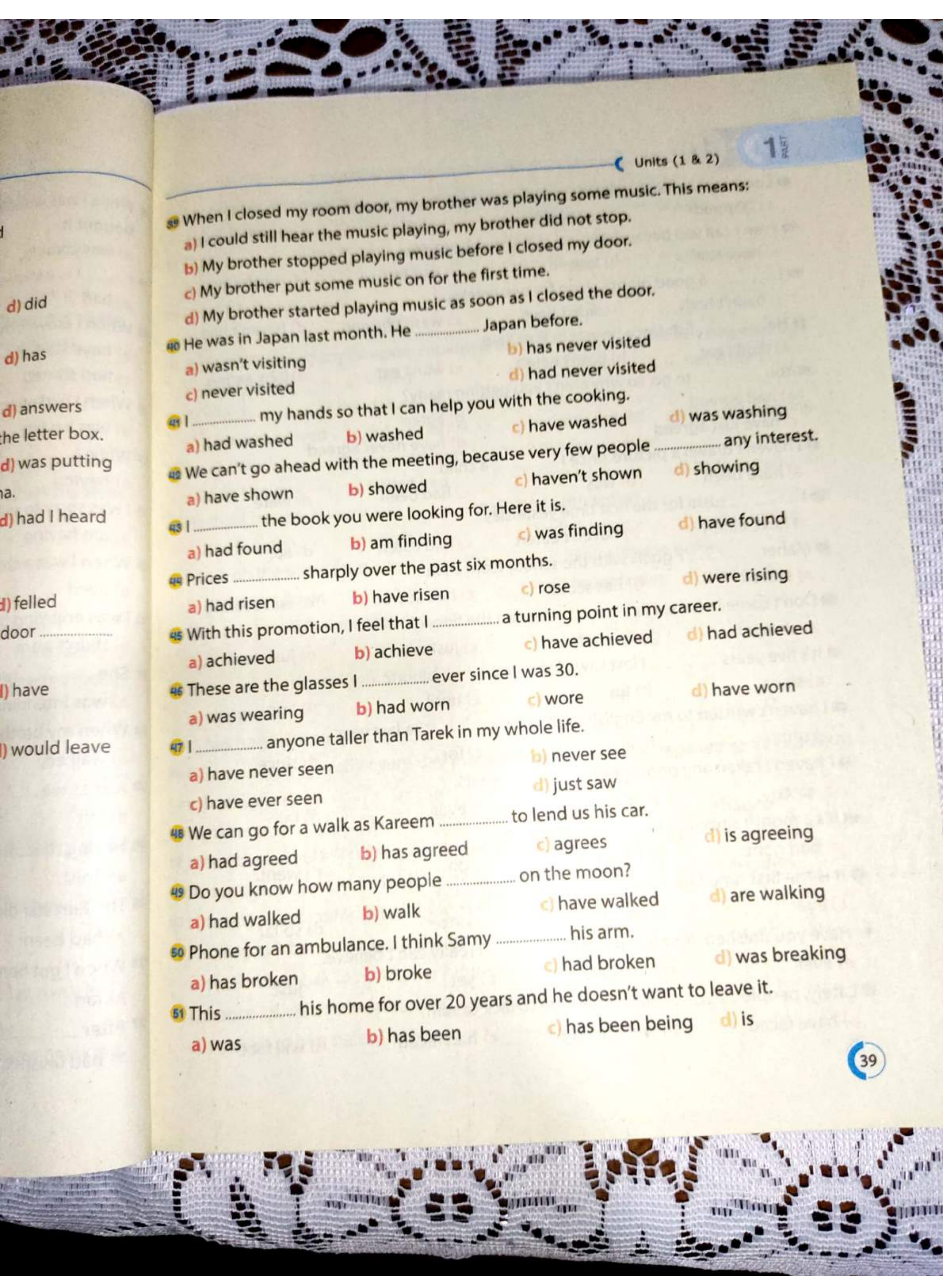
37 When I arrived home, my wife had made dinner. This means:

a) Dinner was not finished yet.
b) Dinner was already finished.
c) My wife started with dinner.
d) My wife hasn't started with dinner yet.

38 I cleaned the dishes after we had had our dinner. This means:

a) I cleaned the dishes during the meal.
b) After dinner I cleaned the dishes.
c) I cleaned the dishes immediately after we ate.
d) I cleaned the dishes by the time we ate.

39 When I clo
a) I could
b) My bro
c) My bro
d) My bro
40 He was in
a) wasn't
c) never
41 I ....
a) had
42 We can
a) have
43 I ....
a) had
44 Prices
a) ha
45 With
a) ac
46 Thes
a) w
47 I ......
a) h
c) h
48 We
a)
49 Do
a)
50 Pl
a
51 Tl
a



39 When I closed my room door, my brother was playing some music. This means:

a) I could still hear the music playing, my brother did not stop.

b) My brother stopped playing music before I closed my door.

c) My brother put some music on for the first time.

d) My brother started playing music as soon as I closed the door.

40 He was in Japan last month. He .... Japan before.

a) wasn't visiting b) has never visited

c) never visited d) had never visited

41 I .... my hands so that I can help you with the cooking.

a) had washed b) washed c) have washed d) was washing

42 We can't go ahead with the meeting, because very few people .... any interest.

a) have shown b) showed c) haven't shown d) showing

43 I .... the book you were looking for. Here it is.

a) had found b) am finding c) was finding d) have found

44 Prices .... sharply over the past six months.

a) had risen b) have risen c) rose d) were rising

45 With this promotion, I feel that I .... a turning point in my career.

a) achieved b) achieve c) have achieved d) had achieved

46 These are the glasses I .... ever since I was 30.

a) was wearing b) had worn c) wore d) have worn

47 I .... anyone taller than Tarek in my whole life.

a) have never seen b) never see

c) have ever seen d) just saw

48 We can go for a walk as Kareem .... to lend us his car.

a) had agreed b) has agreed c) agrees d) is agreeing

49 Do you know how many people .... on the moon?

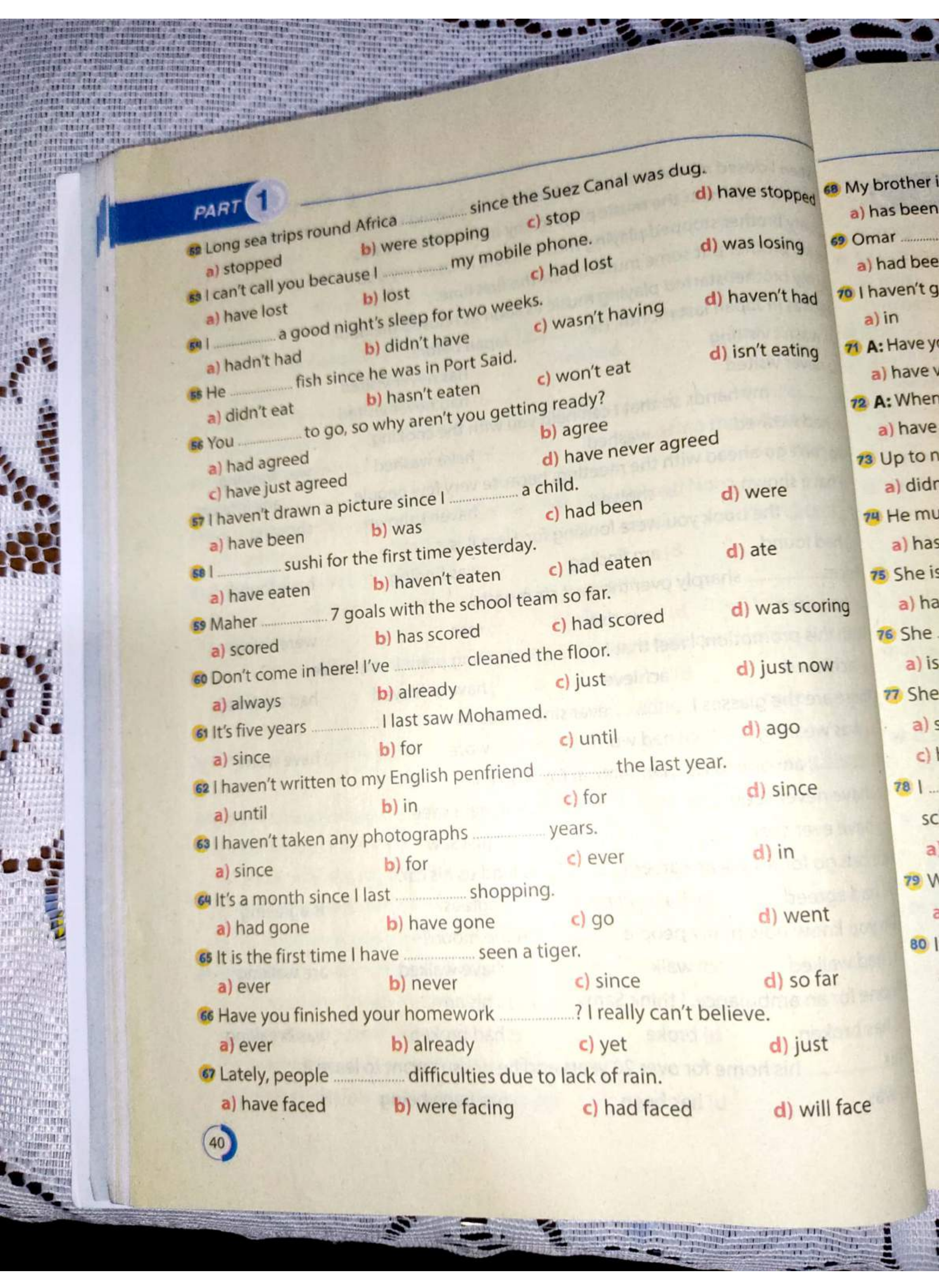
a) had walked b) walk c) have walked d) are walking

50 Phone for an ambulance. I think Samy .... his arm.

a) has broken b) broke c) had broken d) was breaking

51 This .... his home for over 20 years and he doesn't want to leave it.

a) was b) has been c) has been being d) is



PART 1

52 Long sea trips round Africa .... since the Suez Canal was dug.

a) stopped b) were stopping c) stop d) have stopped

53 I can't call you because I .... my mobile phone.

a) have lost b) lost c) had lost d) was losing

54 I .... a good night's sleep for two weeks.

a) hadn't had b) didn't have c) wasn't having d) haven't had

55 He .... fish since he was in Port Said.

a) didn't eat b) hasn't eaten c) won't eat d) isn't eating

56 You .... to go, so why aren't you getting ready?

a) had agreed b) agree

c) have just agreed d) have never agreed

57 I haven't drawn a picture since I .... a child.

a) have been b) was c) had been d) were

58 I .... sushi for the first time yesterday.

a) have eaten b) haven't eaten c) had eaten d) ate

59 Maher .... 7 goals with the school team so far.

a) scored b) has scored c) had scored d) was scoring

60 Don't come in here! I've .... cleaned the floor.

a) always b) already c) just d) just now

61 It's five years .... I last saw Mohamed.

a) since b) for c) until d) ago

62 I haven't written to my English penfriend .... the last year.

a) until b) in c) for d) since

63 I haven't taken any photographs .... years.

a) since b) for c) ever d) in

64 It's a month since I last .... shopping.

a) had gone b) have gone c) go d) went

65 It is the first time I have .... seen a tiger.

a) ever b) never c) since d) so far

66 Have you finished your homework ....? I really can't believe.

a) ever b) already c) yet d) just

67 Lately, people .... difficulties due to lack of rain.

a) have faced b) were facing c) had faced d) will face

68 My brother isn't here. He .... into town to buy some new shoes.
a) has been b) has gone c) had gone d) was going

69 Omar .... to the market. Let's see what he has bought.
a) had been b) has gone c) has been d) will be

70 I haven't gone to Luxor .... a long time.
a) in b) until c) since d) for

71 A: Have you visited any European countries? B: Yes. I .... Spain and Italy two years ago.
a) have visited b) visited c) had visited d) has visited

72 A: When .... at the station? B: Exactly at 7 p.m.
a) have you arrived b) did you arrive c) had you arrived d) was you arriving

73 Up to now, I .... any opportunity to check this information.
a) didn't have b) hadn't had c) don't have d) haven't had

74 He must be very hungry. He .... anything in three days.
a) hasn't eaten b) didn't eat c) hadn't eaten d) wasn't eating

75 She is on the plane for the first time. She .... in an airplane before.
a) has never flown b) isn't flying c) had never flown d) used to fly

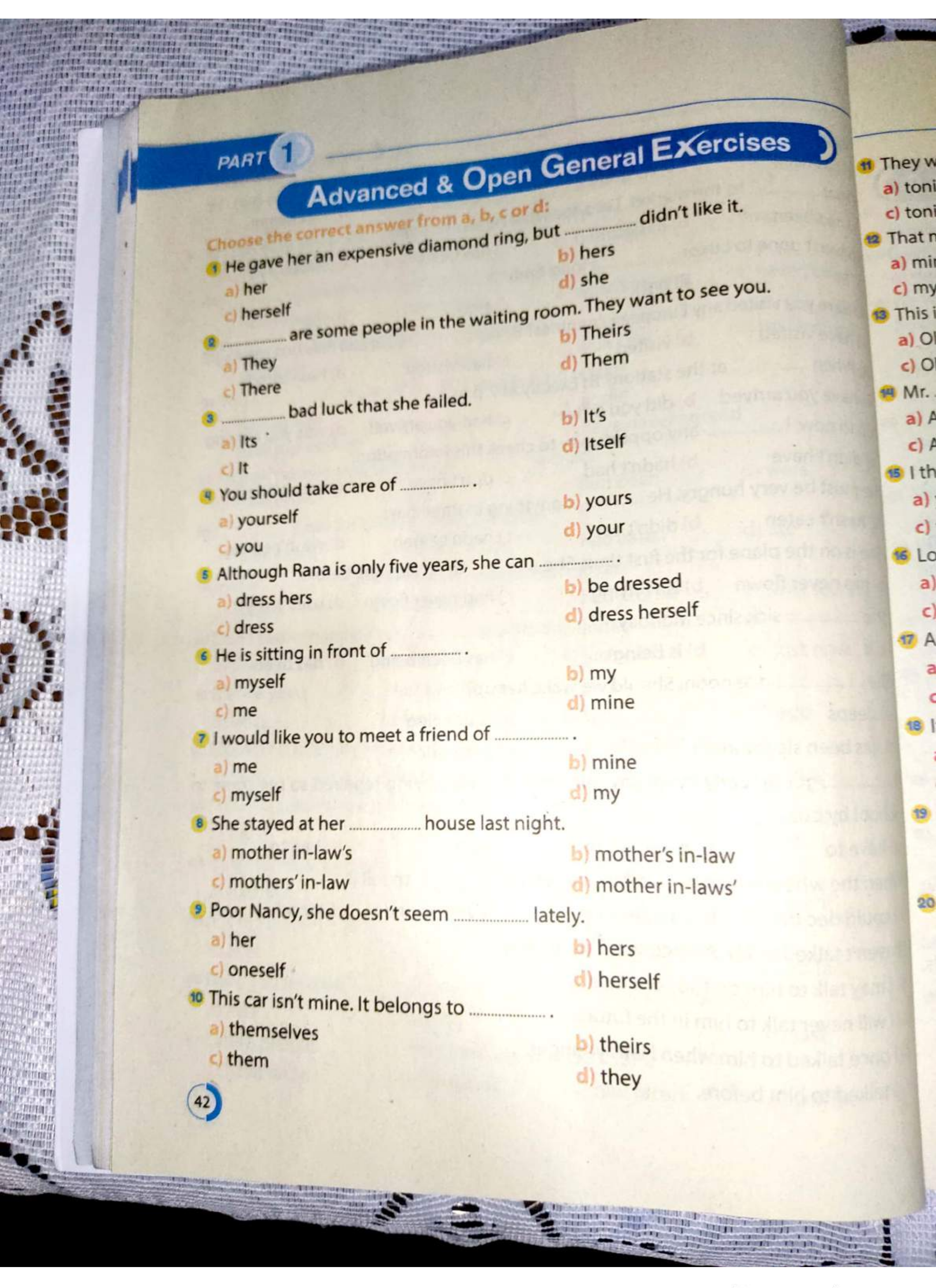
76 She .... sick since Monday.
a) is b) is being c) has been being d) has been

77 She .... since noon. Should we wake her up?
a) sleeps b) is sleeping
c) has been sleeping d) has slept

78 I .... get up early every day this week. Our car's being repaired so I've come to school by bus.
a) have to b) have had to c) must d) had to

79 When the wheel fell off my old bike last week, I .... to sell it.
a) could decide b) had decided c) have decided d) decided

80 I haven't talked to Mr. Ahmed yet. This means:
a) I may talk to him on the coming days.
b) I will never talk to him in the future.
c) I once talked to him when I was younger.
d) I talked to him before.

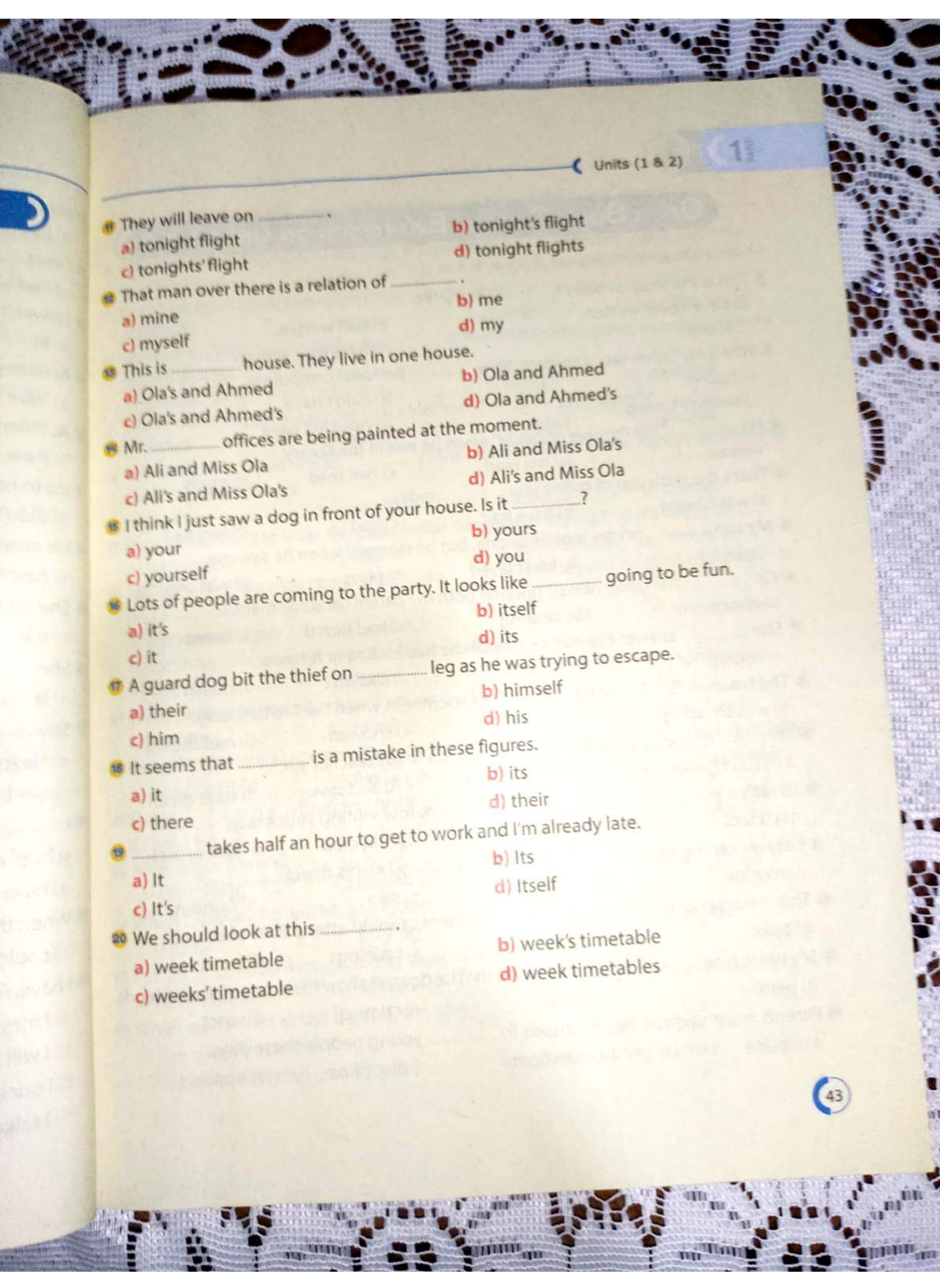


PART 1

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He gave her an expensive diamond ring, but .... didn't like it.
   a) her b) hers
   c) herself d) she
2. .... are some people in the waiting room. They want to see you.
   a) They b) Theirs
   c) There d) Them
3. .... bad luck that she failed.
   a) Its b) It's
   c) It d) Itself
4. You should take care of ....
   a) yourself b) yours
   c) you d) your
5. Although Rana is only five years, she can ....
   a) dress hers b) be dressed
   c) dress d) dress herself
6. He is sitting in front of ....
   a) myself b) my
   c) me d) mine
7. I would like you to meet a friend of ....
   a) me b) mine
   c) myself d) my
8. She stayed at her .... house last night.
   a) mother in-law's b) mother's in-law
   c) mothers' in-law d) mother in-laws'
9. Poor Nancy, she doesn't seem .... lately.
   a) her b) hers
   c) oneself d) herself
10. This car isn't mine. It belongs to ....
    a) themselves b) theirs
    c) them d) they



11 They will leave on ....
a) tonight flight
b) tonight's flight
c) tonights' flight
d) tonight flights

12 That man over there is a relation of ....
a) mine
b) me
c) myself
d) my

13 This is .... house. They live in one house.
a) Ola's and Ahmed
b) Ola and Ahmed
c) Ola's and Ahmed's
d) Ola and Ahmed's

14 Mr. .... offices are being painted at the moment.
a) Ali and Miss Ola
b) Ali and Miss Ola's
c) Ali's and Miss Ola's
d) Ali's and Miss Ola

15 I think I just saw a dog in front of your house. Is it ....?
a) your
b) yours
c) yourself
d) you

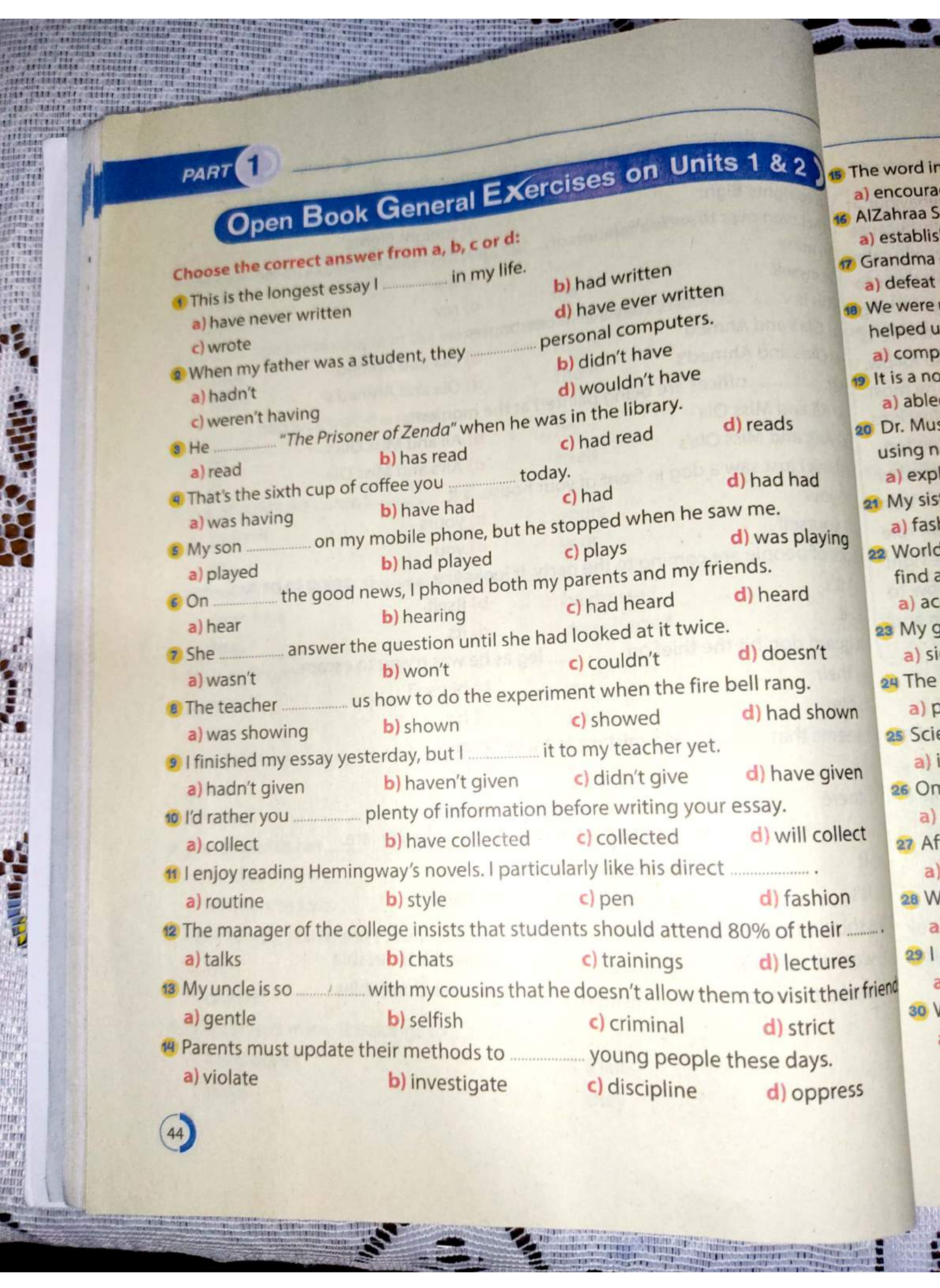
16 Lots of people are coming to the party. It looks like .... going to be fun.
a) it's
b) itself
c) it
d) its

17 A guard dog bit the thief on .... leg as he was trying to escape.
a) their
b) himself
c) him
d) his

18 It seems that .... is a mistake in these figures.
a) it
b) its
c) there
d) their

19 .... takes half an hour to get to work and I'm already late.
a) It
b) Its
c) It's
d) Itself

20 We should look at this ....
a) week timetable
b) week's timetable
c) weeks' timetable
d) week timetables

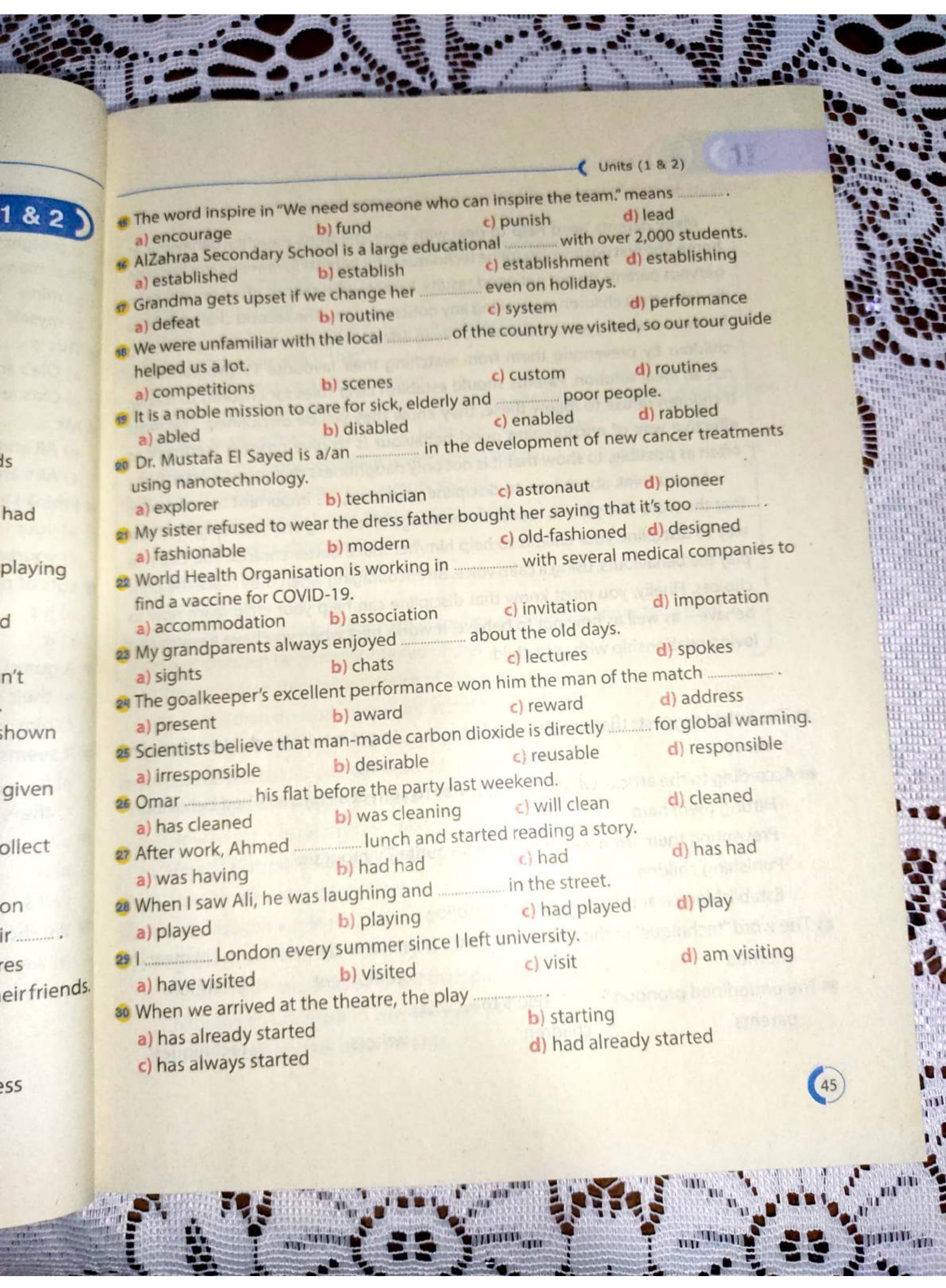


PART 1

Open Book General Exercises on Units 1 & 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is the longest essay I .... in my life.
   a) have never written b) had written
   c) wrote d) have ever written
2. When my father was a student, they .... personal computers.
   a) hadn't b) didn't have
   c) weren't having d) wouldn't have
3. He .... *"The Prisoner of Zenda"* when he was in the library.
   a) read b) has read c) had read d) reads
4. That's the sixth cup of coffee you .... today.
   a) was having b) have had c) had d) had had
5. My son .... on my mobile phone, but he stopped when he saw me.
   a) played b) had played c) plays d) was playing
6. On .... the good news, I phoned both my parents and my friends.
   a) hear b) hearing c) had heard d) heard
7. She .... answer the question until she had looked at it twice.
   a) wasn't b) won't c) couldn't d) doesn't
8. The teacher .... us how to do the experiment when the fire bell rang.
   a) was showing b) shown c) showed d) had shown
9. I finished my essay yesterday, but I .... it to my teacher yet.
   a) hadn't given b) haven't given c) didn't give d) have given
10. I'd rather you .... plenty of information before writing your essay.
    a) collect b) have collected c) collected d) will collect
11. I enjoy reading Hemingway's novels. I particularly like his direct ....
    a) routine b) style c) pen d) fashion
12. The manager of the college insists that students should attend 80% of their ....
    a) talks b) chats c) trainings d) lectures
13. My uncle is so .... with my cousins that he doesn't allow them to visit their friend
    a) gentle b) selfish c) criminal d) strict
14. Parents must update their methods to .... young people these days.
    a) violate b) investigate c) discipline d) oppress



15 The word inspire in "We need someone who can inspire the team." means ....
a) encourage b) fund c) punish d) lead

16 AlZahraa Secondary School is a large educational .... with over 2,000 students.
a) established b) establish c) establishment d) establishing

17 Grandma gets upset if we change her .... even on holidays.
a) defeat b) routine c) system d) performance

18 We were unfamiliar with the local .... of the country we visited, so our tour guide helped us a lot.
a) competitions b) scenes c) custom d) routines

19 It is a noble mission to care for sick, elderly and .... poor people.
a) abled b) disabled c) enabled d) rabbled

20 Dr. Mustafa El Sayed is a/an .... in the development of new cancer treatments using nanotechnology.
a) explorer b) technician c) astronaut d) pioneer

21 My sister refused to wear the dress father bought her saying that it's too ....
a) fashionable b) modern c) old-fashioned d) designed

22 World Health Organisation is working in .... with several medical companies to find a vaccine for COVID-19.
a) accommodation b) association c) invitation d) importation

23 My grandparents always enjoyed .... about the old days.
a) sights b) chats c) lectures d) spokes

24 The goalkeeper's excellent performance won him the man of the match ....
a) present b) award c) reward d) address

25 Scientists believe that man-made carbon dioxide is directly .... for global warming.
a) irresponsible b) desirable c) reusable d) responsible

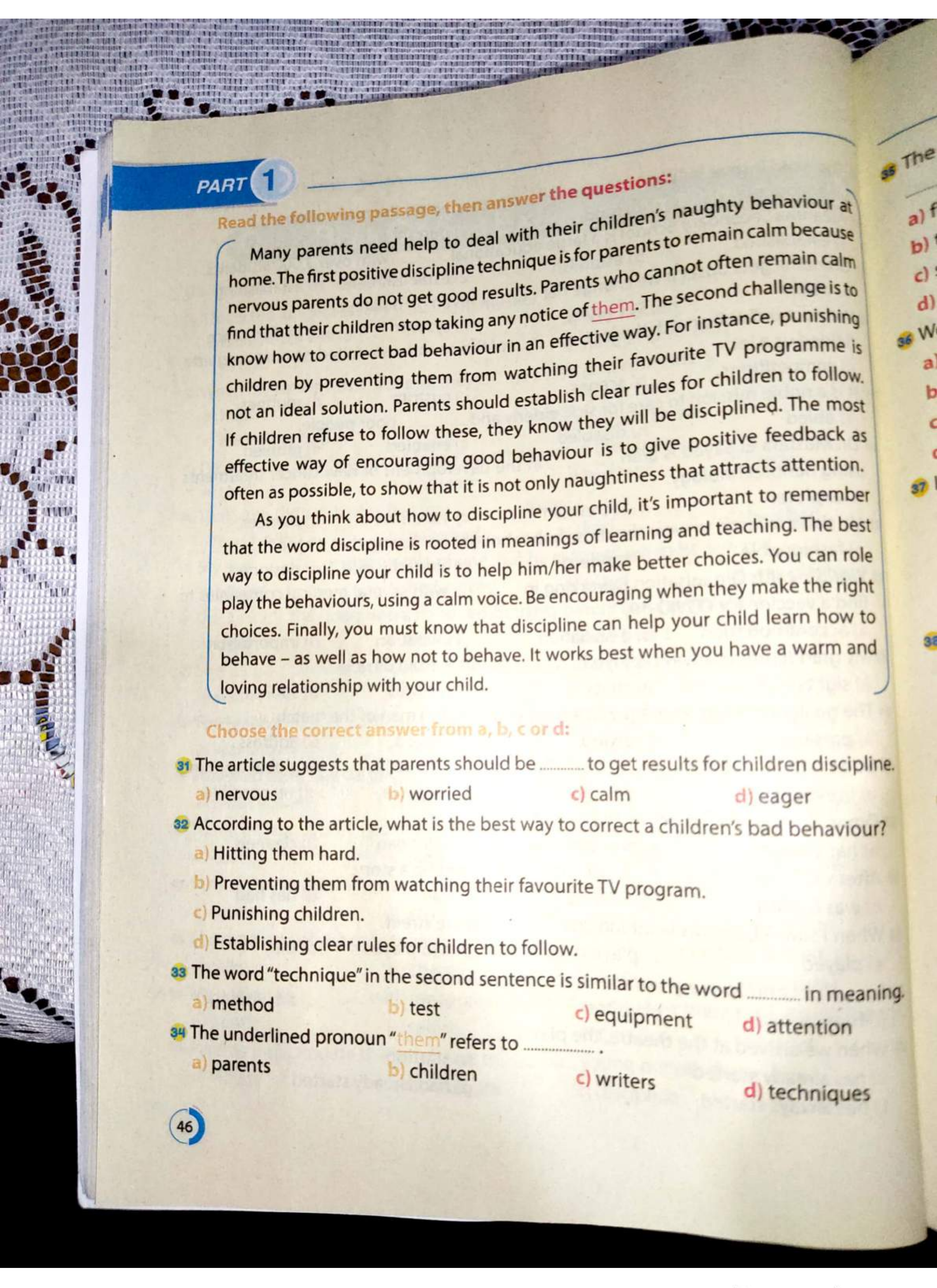
26 Omar .... his flat before the party last weekend.
a) has cleaned b) was cleaning c) will clean d) cleaned

27 After work, Ahmed .... lunch and started reading a story.
a) was having b) had had c) had d) has had

28 When I saw Ali, he was laughing and .... in the street.
a) played b) playing c) had played d) play

29 I .... London every summer since I left university.
a) have visited b) visited c) visit d) am visiting

30 When we arrived at the theatre, the play ....
a) has already started b) starting
c) has always started d) had already started



PART 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many parents need help to deal with their children's naughty behaviour at home. The first positive discipline technique is for parents to remain calm because nervous parents do not get good results. Parents who cannot often remain calm find that their children stop taking any notice of them. The second challenge is to know how to correct bad behaviour in an effective way. For instance, punishing children by preventing them from watching their favourite TV programme is not an ideal solution. Parents should establish clear rules for children to follow. If children refuse to follow these, they know they will be disciplined. The most effective way of encouraging good behaviour is to give positive feedback as often as possible, to show that it is not only naughtiness that attracts attention.

As you think about how to discipline your child, it's important to remember that the word discipline is rooted in meanings of learning and teaching. The best way to discipline your child is to help him/her make better choices. You can role play the behaviours, using a calm voice. Be encouraging when they make the right choices. Finally, you must know that discipline can help your child learn how to behave – as well as how not to behave. It works best when you have a warm and loving relationship with your child.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

31 The article suggests that parents should be .... to get results for children discipline.
a) nervous b) worried c) calm d) eager

32 According to the article, what is the best way to correct a children's bad behaviour?
a) Hitting them hard.
b) Preventing them from watching their favourite TV program.
c) Punishing children.
d) Establishing clear rules for children to follow.

33 The word "technique" in the second sentence is similar to the word .... in meaning.
a) method b) test c) equipment d) attention

34 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
a) parents b) children c) writers d) techniques

35 The article suggests that in order to discipline children, parents first of all should ....

a) find an effective way to correct their children's behaviour

b) treat them as harshly as possible

c) stop beating them

d) teach them how they have to behave themselves

36 We learn from this article that ....

a) only naughtiness attracts attention

b) preventing children from watching their favourite TV program is an ideal solution

c) giving positive feedback for good behaviour is necessary

d) children's naughty behaviour is something good

37 Instead of punishing children, parents should ....

a) encourage them to follow the necessary rules

b) give them everything they ask for

c) give them negative feedback

d) praise them all the time

38 According to the article, what happens when parents get angry too often?

a) Their children become frightened of them.

b) Their children stop taking notice of them.

c) Their children do what they want at once.

d) Their children follow the rules of a good behaviour.

39 A suitable title to this passage would be ....

a) "How to punish naughty children effectively"

b) "How to set role models for children"

c) "How to discipline naughty children"

d) "How to reward good children"

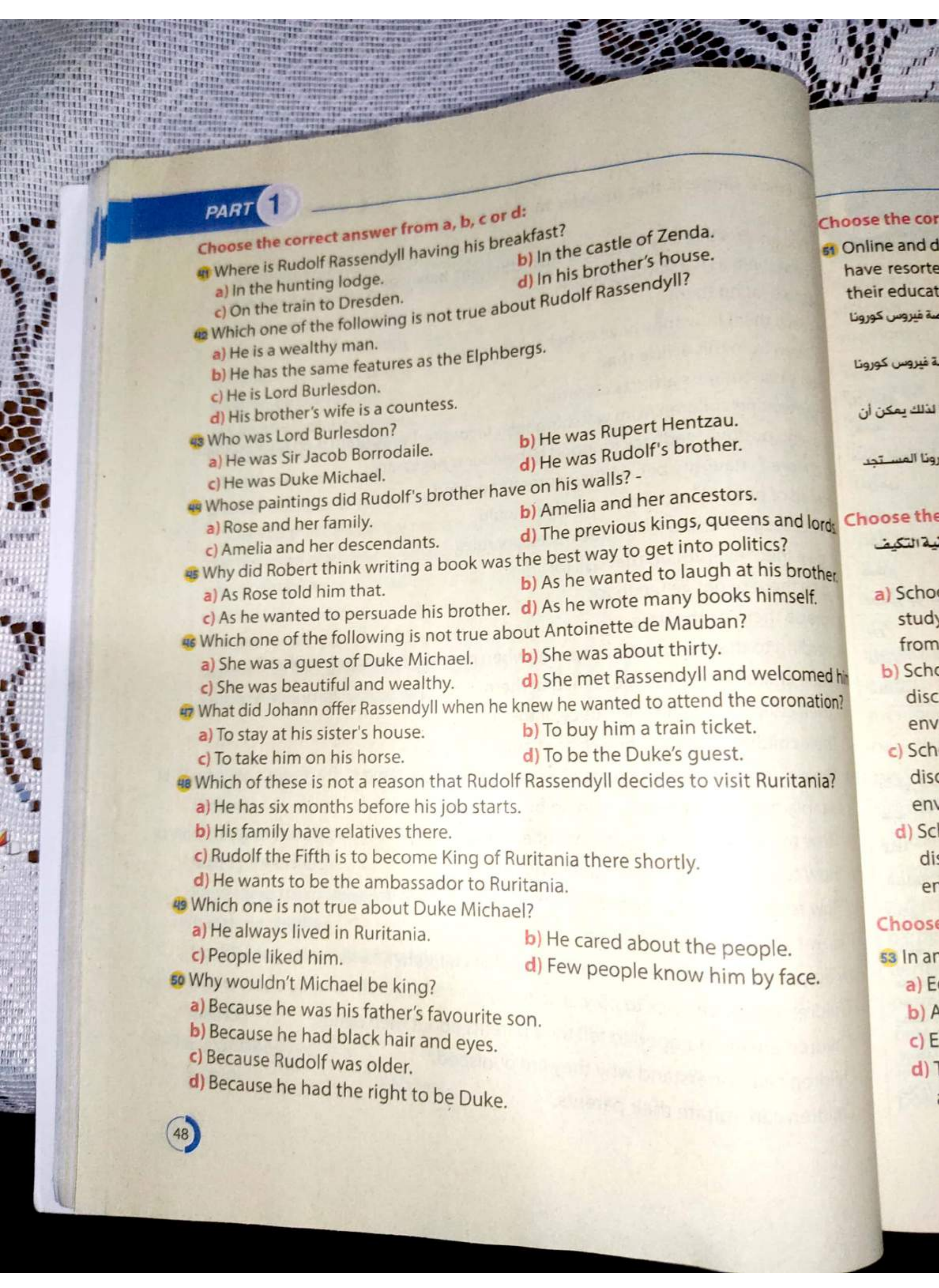
40 How do you think role play can help discipline children?

a) Children can have roles to play at school.

b) Children are encouraged to tell their parents about their needs.

c) Children can understand why they are punished.

d) Children can imitate their parents.



PART 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

41 Where is Rudolf Rassendyll having his breakfast?
a) In the hunting lodge. b) In the castle of Zenda.
c) On the train to Dresden. d) In his brother's house.

42 Which one of the following is not true about Rudolf Rassendyll?
a) He is a wealthy man.
b) He has the same features as the Elphbergs.
c) He is Lord Burlesdon.
d) His brother's wife is a countess.

43 Who was Lord Burlesdon?
a) He was Sir Jacob Borrodaile. b) He was Rupert Hentzau.
c) He was Duke Michael. d) He was Rudolf's brother.

44 Whose paintings did Rudolf's brother have on his walls? -
a) Rose and her family. b) Amelia and her ancestors.
c) Amelia and her descendants. d) The previous kings, queens and lords.

45 Why did Robert think writing a book was the best way to get into politics?
a) As Rose told him that. b) As he wanted to laugh at his brother.
c) As he wanted to persuade his brother. d) As he wrote many books himself.

46 Which one of the following is not true about Antoinette de Mauban?
a) She was a guest of Duke Michael. b) She was about thirty.
c) She was beautiful and wealthy. d) She met Rassendyll and welcomed him.

47 What did Johann offer Rassendyll when he knew he wanted to attend the coronation?
a) To stay at his sister's house. b) To buy him a train ticket.
c) To take him on his horse. d) To be the Duke's guest.

48 Which of these is not a reason that Rudolf Rassendyll decides to visit Ruritania?
a) He has six months before his job starts.
b) His family have relatives there.
c) Rudolf the Fifth is to become King of Ruritania there shortly.
d) He wants to be the ambassador to Ruritania.

49 Which one is not true about Duke Michael?
a) He always lived in Ruritania. b) He cared about the people.
c) People liked him. d) Few people know him by face.

50 Why wouldn't Michael be king?
a) Because he was his father's favourite son.
b) Because he had black hair and eyes.
c) Because Rudolf was older.
d) Because he had the right to be Duke.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 Online and distance learning is becoming more and more important. Most countries have resorted to it in the novel Coronavirus crisis so that students could complete their education at home.

(أ) يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم البعيد أكثر وأكثر أهمية. ولقد لجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة قصة فيروس كورونا لذلك يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

(ب) يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم عن بعد أكثر وأكثر أهمية. ولجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد لكى يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

(جـ) يصبح التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية. ولقد لجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة فيروس كورونا لذلك يمكن أن يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

(د) يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم عن بعد أكثر أهمية. ولجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد ولذلك يمكن أن يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

Choose the correct English translation:

52 الحياة المدرسية مهمة جدًا فى حياة المرء، لأنها توفر فرصة للدراسة والانضباط. يتعلم الطالب أيضًا كيفية التكيف على الحياة مع أشخاص من بيئات مختلفة.

a) School life is very important in the person's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. The student is also learned how to adapt to live with people from different environments.

b) School life is very important in one's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. The student is learned how to adapt to living with people from different environments.

c) School life is very important in one's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. The student also learns how to adapt to living with people from different environments.

d) School life is very important in one's life, as it shows an opportunity for study and discipline. The student also learns how to adapt to live with people from different environments.

Choose the correct answer:

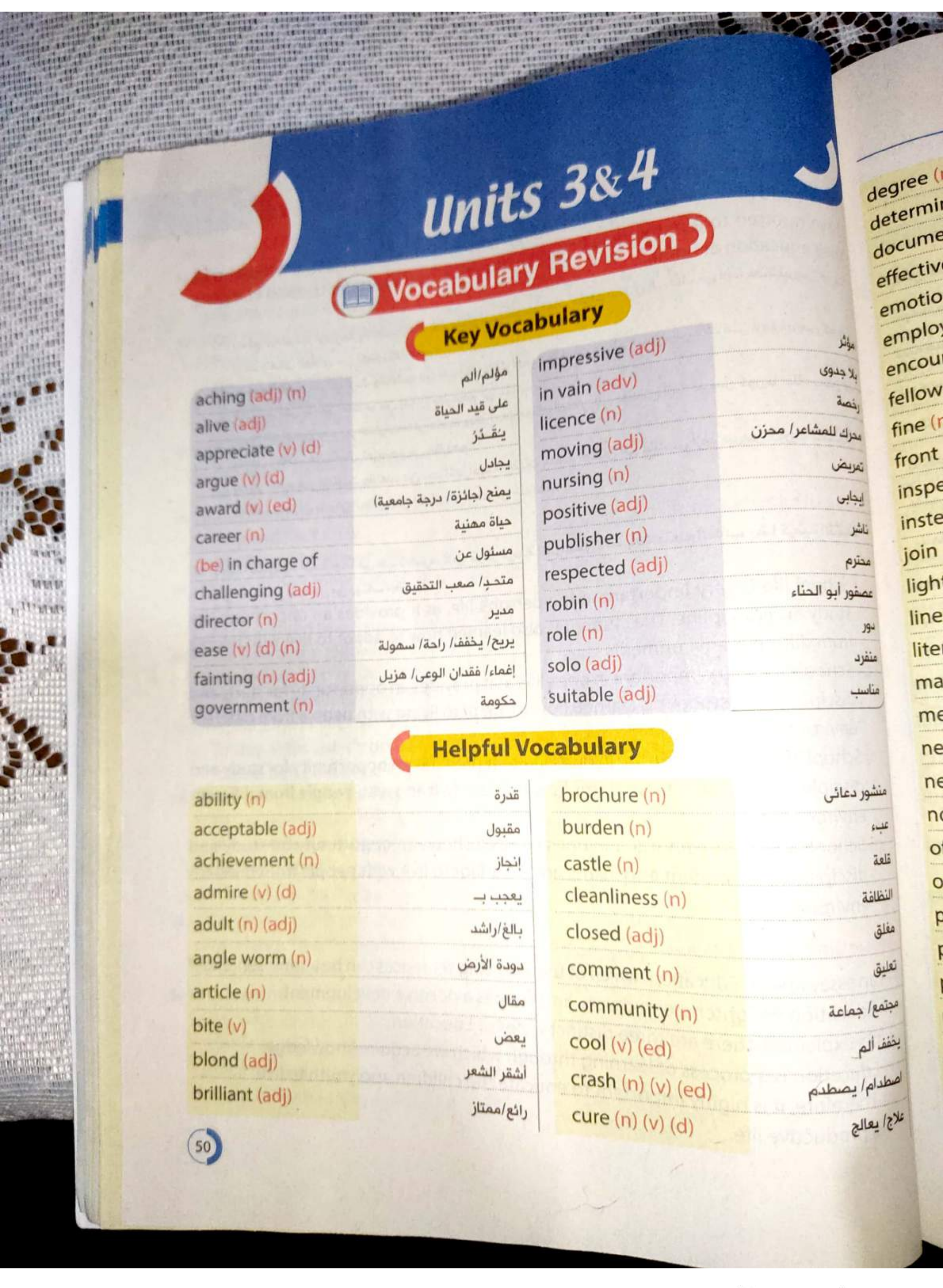
53 In an essay about "Education" which of the following sentences can be a topic sentence?

a) Education enlightens, empowers, and creates a positive development.

b) As explained, there are three distinct types of Education.

c) Education is a process of learning through which we acquire knowledge.

d) Therefore, it is highly important to educate the children and youth to live a productive life.



Units 3&4

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

aching (adj) (n)	مؤلم/ألم
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة
appreciate (v) (d)	يُقَدِّر
argue (v) (d)	يجادل
award (v) (ed)	يمنح (جائزة/ درجة جامعية)
career (n)	حياة مهنية
(be) in charge of	مسئول عن
challenging (adj)	متحدٍ/ صعب التحقيق
director (n)	مدير
ease (v) (d) (n)	يريح/ يخفف/ راحة/ سهولة
fainting (n) (adj)	إغماء/ فقدان الوعى/ هزيل
government (n)	حكومة
impressive (adj)	مؤثر
in vain (adv)	بلا جدوى
licence (n)	رخصة
moving (adj)	محرك للمشاعر/ محزن
nursing (n)	تمريض
positive (adj)	إيجابى
publisher (n)	ناشر
respected (adj)	محترم
robin (n)	عصفور أبو الحناء
role (n)	دور
solo (adj)	منفرد
suitable (adj)	مناسب

Helpful Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة
acceptable (adj)	مقبول
achievement (n)	إنجاز
admire (v) (d)	يعجب بـ
adult (n) (adj)	بالغ/راشد
angle worm (n)	دودة الأرض
article (n)	مقال
bite (v)	يعض
blond (adj)	أشقر الشعر
brilliant (adj)	رائع/ممتاز
brochure (n)	منشور دعائى
burden (n)	عبء
castle (n)	قلعة
cleanliness (n)	النظافة
closed (adj)	مغلق
comment (n)	تعليق
community (n)	مجتمع/ جماعة
cool (v) (ed)	يخفف ألم
crash (n) (v) (ed)	اصطدام/ يصطدم
cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/ يعالج

degree (n)	درجة
determined (adj)	مصمم/ عاقد العزم
document (n)	وثيقة/ مستند
effective (adj)	مؤثر/ فعال
emotions (n)	مشاعر
employ (v) (ed)	يوظف
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
fellow (n)	شخص
fine (n) (v) (d)	غرامة/ يغرم
front (n)	مقدمة/ جبهة
inspector (n)	مفتش
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ
lighten (v) (ed)	يضيء
line (n)	سطر شعرى
literature (n)	أدب
marry (v) (~~y~~ied)	يتزوج
member (n)	عضو/ فرد
negative (adj)	سلبى
nest (n)	عش الطائر
normal (adj)	طبيعى
official (adj)	رسمى
outdoor (adj)	خارج البيت
paraphrase (n) (v) (d)	إعادة صياغة/ يعيد صياغة
partly (adv)	جزئيًا
perfect (adj)	كامل/ تام
permission (n)	إذن/ تصريح
personal (adj)	شخصى
pilot (n)	طيار
poem (n)	قصيدة

poet (n)	شاعر
poetry (n)	الشعر
popular (adj)	مشهور/ محبوب
position (n)	موقع/ مكانة
present (v) (ed)	يقدم
qualification (n)	مؤهل
race (n)	سباق
raw (adj)	نيء/ غير مطهى
rescuer (n)	منقذ
research assistant (n)	باحث/ معيد (فى الجامعة)
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب/ يقوم برد فعل
review (n)	مقال نقدى
rhyme (n) (v) (d)	قافية/يتناغم
sadness (n)	حزن
skill (n)	مهارة
staff (n)	هيئة العاملين/ طاقم العمل
state (n)	دولة/ولاية
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
take up (v)	يستغرق/ يشغل وقتًا
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
title (n)	عنوان
traditionally (adv)	تقليديًا
unconscious (adj)	فاقد للوعى
value (n)	قيمة
verse (n)	بيت من الشعر
voyage (n)	رحلة بحرية
waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية/ يضيع/ يسرف
wealthy (adj)	ثرى
wounded (adj)	مجروح/مصاب

PART 1

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

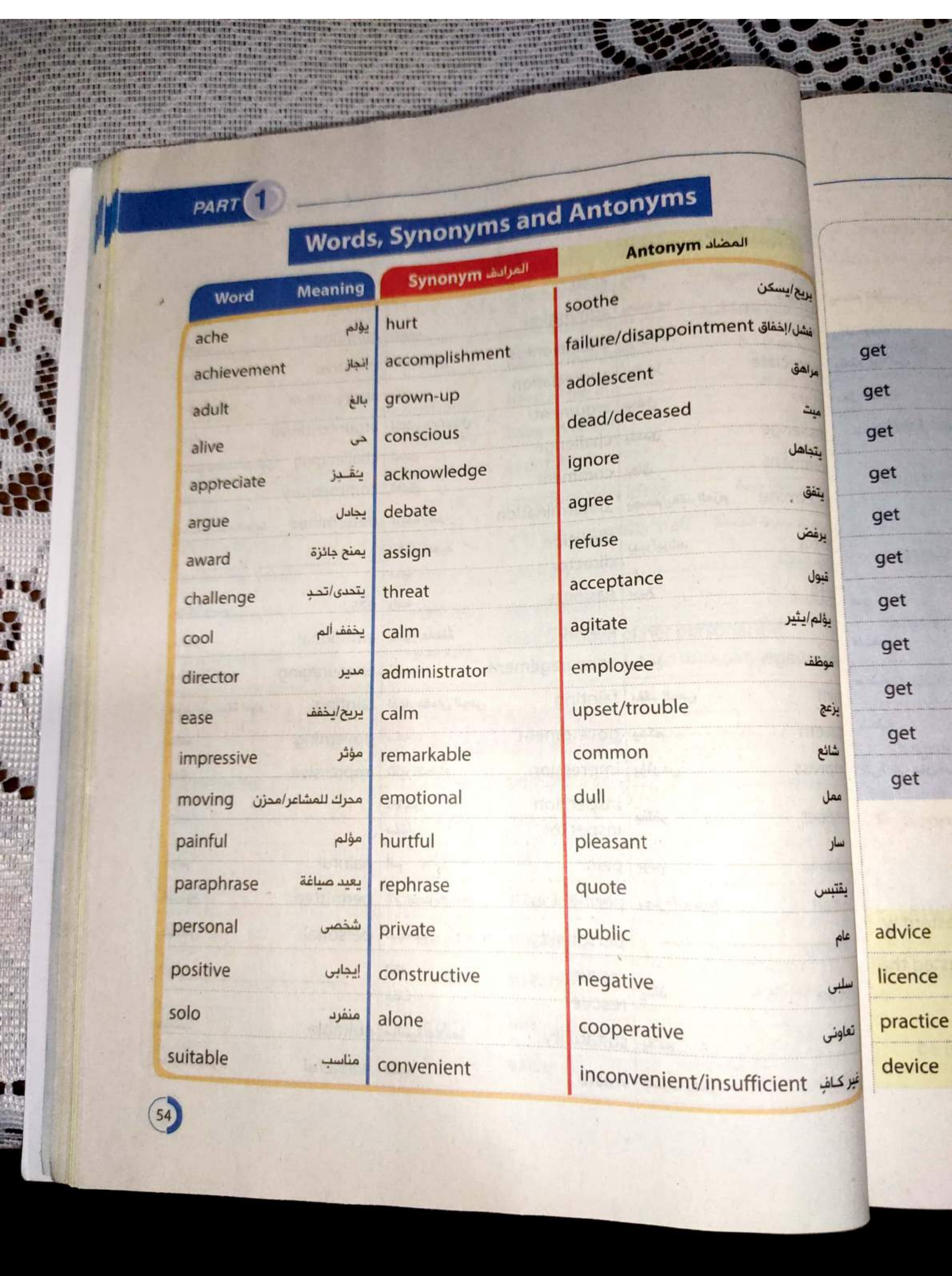
across the Arab world	عبر العالم العربى
at a time	فى وقت ما
at that time	فى ذلك الوقت
at the age of ...	فى سن ...
(be) awarded a degree	يُمنح درجة علمية
(be) known as	معروف كـ
born into a wealthy family	وُلِد فى أسرة ثرية
cool pain	يخفف الم
find it easy to	يجد من السهل أن
follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
for a short time	لفترة قصيرة
give a job	يعطى مهمة
give permission	يعطى إذنًا (تصريحًا)
have a degree in	لديه درجة علمية فى
have a headache	لديه صداع
have a role in	لديه دور فى
have an effect	له تأثير
in detail	بالتفصيل
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جيدة
join the university staff	يلتحق بهيئة الجامعة
mark an event	يميز حدثًا
on your own	بمفردك
take up much of her personal life	تشغل جزءًا كبيرًا من حياتها الشخصية

Prepositions

appreciative of	مقدر لـ
cure for	علاج لـ
cut into	يقطع إلى
different to	مختلف عن
effect on	تأثير على
find out	يكتشف
look after	يعتنى بـ
move to	يتحرك إلى
popular with	محبوب من
return to	يعود إلى
stay in	يقيم فى
stop ... from	يوقف ... عن
successful at	ناجح فى
suitable for	مناسب لـ/صالح لـ
talk about	يتحدث عن
value of	قيمة الـ

Derivatives

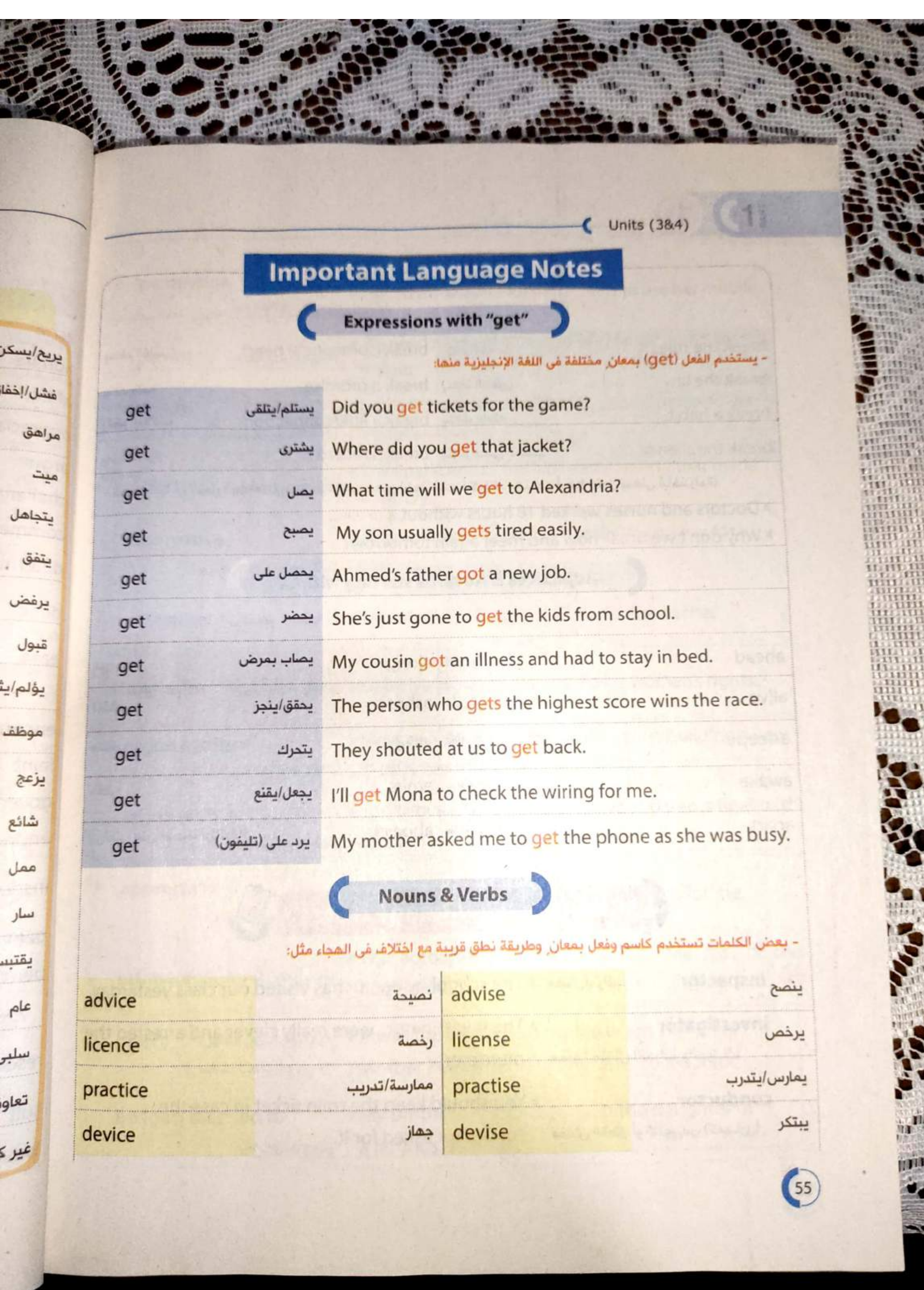
Verb	Noun	Adjective
ache يؤلم	ache ألم	aching مؤلم
admire يعجب بـ	admiration إعجاب	admiring معجب
affect يؤثر على	effectiveness فاعلية/تأثير	effective مؤثر/فعال
appreciate يقدر	appreciation تقدير	appreciative مقدر/ممتن
argue يجادل	argument نقاش حاد/جدال	argumentative جدلي
challenge يتحدى	challenge تحدى	challenging متحدٍ/صعب التحقيق
comment يعلق	comment تعليق	commentary تعليقي
determine يصمم/يعقد العزم	determination عزيمة/إصرار	determined مصمم/عاقد العزم
direct يدير/يرشد	direction إرشاد/توجيه director مدير	------------------------
ease يريح	easiness راحة	easy مرتاح/مسترخٍ
------------------------	emotion شعور/عاطفة	emotional عاطفي
encourage يشجع	encouragement تشجيع	encouraging مشجع/تشجيع
faint يفقد الوعي	fainting إغماء/فقدان الوعي	fainting هزيل/في حالة اعياء
govern يحكم	government حكومة	governing حاكم
impress يؤثر في	impression تأثير/انطباع	impressive مؤثر
inspect يفتش	inspection تفتيش inspector مفتش	------------------------
pain يؤلم	pain ألم	painful مؤلم
permit يصرح/تصريح	permission إذن/تصريح	permitted مسموح
------------------------	personality شخصية	personal شخصي
rescue ينقذ	rescue إنقاذ rescuer منقذ	------------------------
suit يلائم	suitability مناسبة/ملائمة	suitable مناسب
waste يسرف/يهدر	waste نفاية	wasteful مسرف/مبذر



PART 1

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
ache	يؤلم	hurt	soothe يريح/يسكن
achievement	إنجاز	accomplishment	failure/disappointment فشل/إخفاق
adult	بالغ	grown-up	adolescent مراهق
alive	حى	conscious	dead/deceased ميت
appreciate	يُقَدِّر	acknowledge	ignore يتجاهل
argue	يجادل	debate	agree يتفق
award	يمنح جائزة	assign	refuse يرفض
challenge	يتحدى/تحدٍ	threat	acceptance قبول
cool	يخفف ألم	calm	agitate يؤلم/يثير
director	مدير	administrator	employee موظف
ease	يريح/يخفف	calm	upset/trouble يزعج
impressive	مؤثر	remarkable	common شائع
moving	محرك للمشاعر/محزن	emotional	dull ممل
painful	مؤلم	hurtful	pleasant سار
paraphrase	يعيد صياغة	rephrase	quote يقتبس
personal	شخصى	private	public عام
positive	إيجابى	constructive	negative سلبى
solo	منفرد	alone	cooperative تعاونى
suitable	مناسب	convenient	inconvenient/insufficient غير كافٍ



Important Language Notes

Expressions with "get"

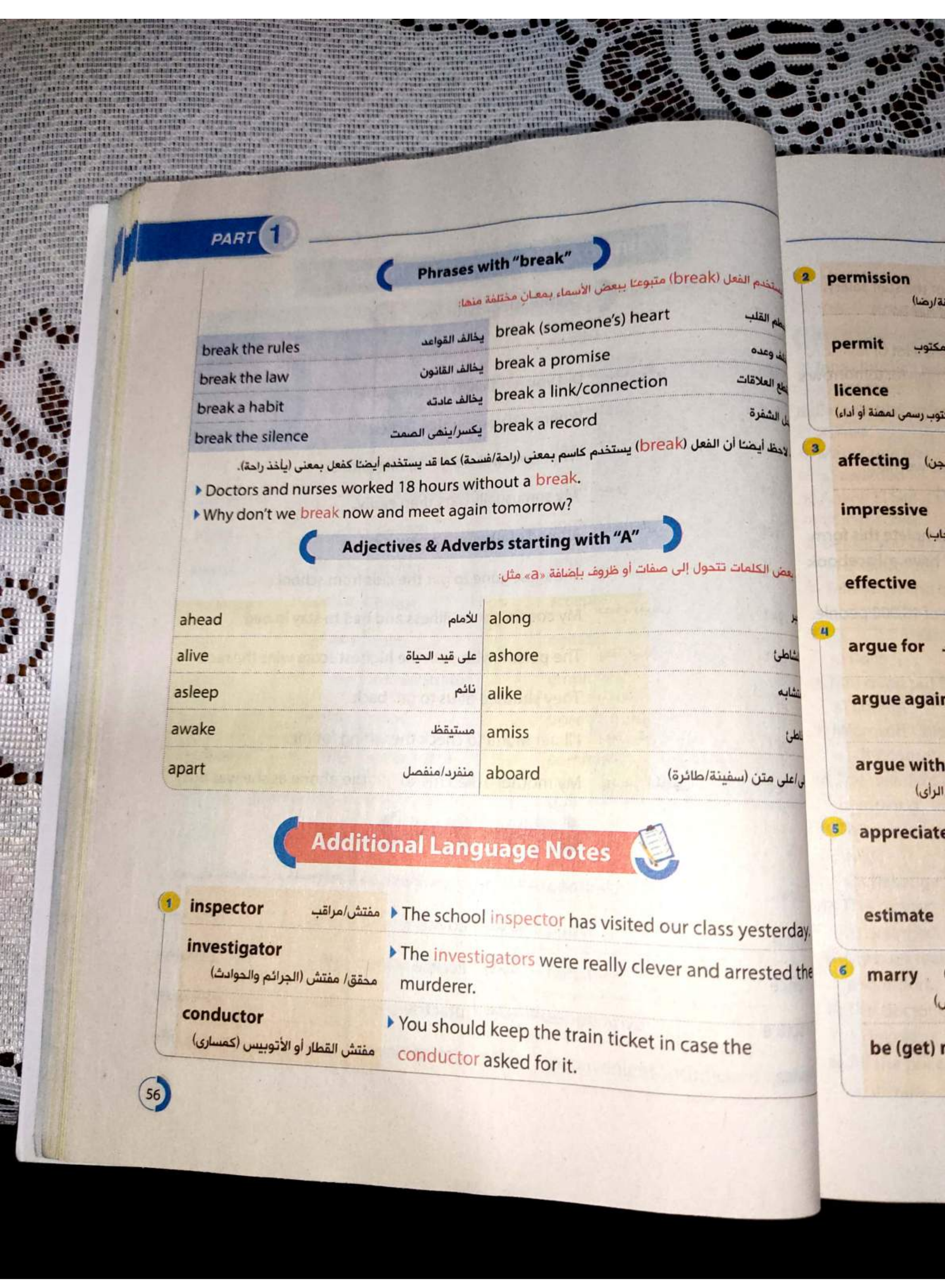
- يستخدم الفعل (get) بمعان مختلفة فى اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

get	يستلم/يتلقى	Did you get tickets for the game?
get	يشترى	Where did you get that jacket?
get	يصل	What time will we get to Alexandria?
get	يصبح	My son usually gets tired easily.
get	يحصل على	Ahmed's father got a new job.
get	يحضر	She's just gone to get the kids from school.
get	يصاب بمرض	My cousin got an illness and had to stay in bed.
get	يحقق/ينجز	The person who gets the highest score wins the race.
get	يتحرك	They shouted at us to get back.
get	يجعل/يقنع	I'll get Mona to check the wiring for me.
get	يرد على (تليفون)	My mother asked me to get the phone as she was busy.

Nouns & Verbs

- بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل بمعان وطريقة نطق قريبة مع اختلاف فى الهجاء مثل:

advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح
licence	رخصة	license	يرخص
practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practise	يمارس/يتدرب
device	جهاز	devise	يبتكر



Phrases with "break"

يستخدم الفعل (break) متبوعًا ببعض الأسماء بمعانٍ مختلفة منها:

break the rules	يخالف القواعد	break (someone's) heart	يحطم القلب
break the law	يخالف القانون	break a promise	يخلف وعده
break a habit	يخالف عادته	break a link/connection	يقطع العلاقات
break the silence	يكسر/ينهي الصمت	break a record	يحل الشفرة

لاحظ أيضًا أن الفعل (break) يستخدم كاسم بمعنى (راحة/فسحة) كما قد يستخدم أيضًا كفعل بمعنى (يأخذ راحة).

- Doctors and nurses worked 18 hours without a break.
- Why don't we break now and meet again tomorrow?

Adjectives & Adverbs starting with "A"

بعض الكلمات تتحول إلى صفات أو ظروف بإضافة «a» مثل:

ahead	للأمام	along	ير
alive	على قيد الحياة	ashore	شاطئ
asleep	نائم	alike	متشابه
awake	مستيقظ	amiss	خاطئ
apart	منفرد/منفصل	aboard	على/على متن (سفينة/طائرة)

Additional Language Notes

1

inspector	مفتش/مراقب	The school inspector has visited our class yesterday.
investigator	محقق/ مفتش (الجرائم والحوادث)	The investigators were really clever and arrested the murderer.
conductor	مفتش القطار أو الأتوبيس (كمسارى)	You should keep the train ticket in case the conductor asked for it.

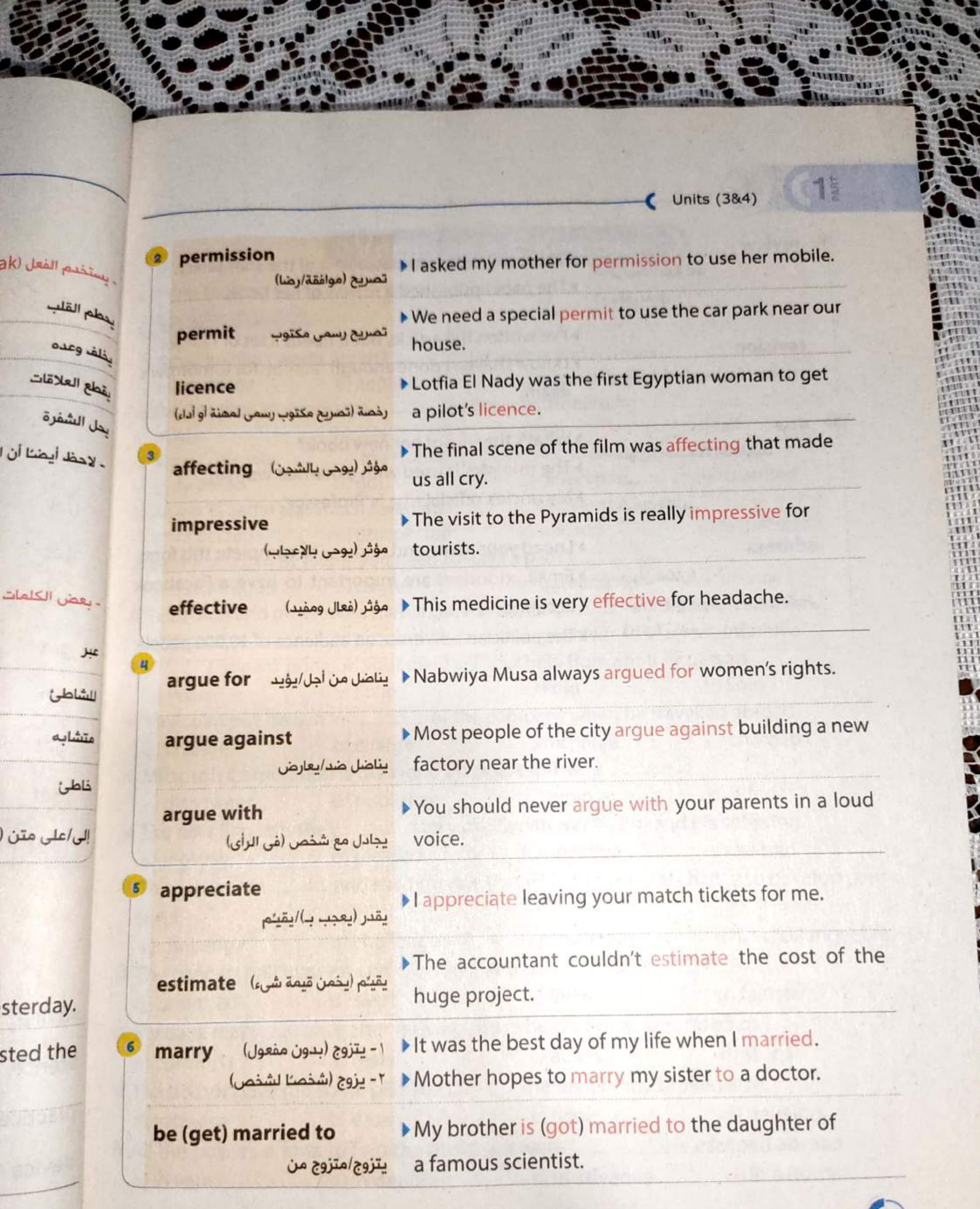
2 permission (رضا/
permit مكتوب
licence توب رسمي لمهنة أو أداء)

3 affecting
impressive
effective

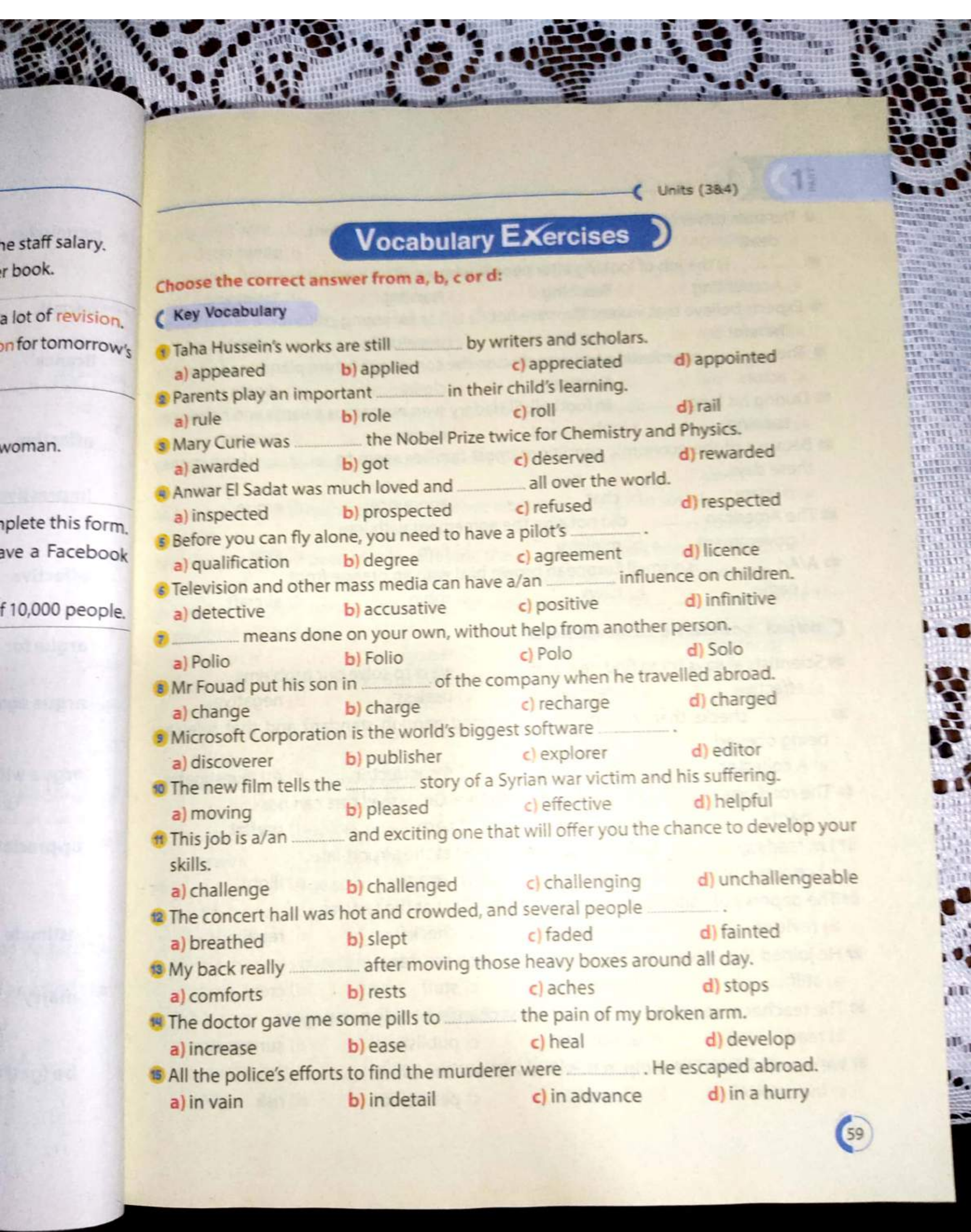
4 argue for
argue again
argue with (الرأى)

5 appreciate
estimate

6 marry
be (get)



2 **permission**	تصريح (موافقة/رضا)	I asked my mother for permission to use her mobile.
permit	تصريح رسمي مكتوب	We need a special permit to use the car park near our house.
licence	رخصة (تصريح مكتوب رسمي لمهنة أو أداء)	Lotfia El Nady was the first Egyptian woman to get a pilot's licence.
3 **affecting**	مؤثر (يوحي بالشجن)	The final scene of the film was affecting that made us all cry.
impressive	مؤثر (يوحي بالإعجاب)	The visit to the Pyramids is really impressive for tourists.
effective	مؤثر (فعال ومفيد)	This medicine is very effective for headache.
4 **argue for**	يناضل من أجل/يؤيد	Nabwiya Musa always argued for women's rights.
argue against	يناضل ضد/يعارض	Most people of the city argue against building a new factory near the river.
argue with	يجادل مع شخص (فى الرأى)	You should never argue with your parents in a loud voice.
5 **appreciate**	يقدر (يعجب بـ)/يقيّم	I appreciate leaving your match tickets for me.
estimate	يقيّم (يخمن قيمة شىء)	The accountant couldn't estimate the cost of the huge project.
6 **marry**	١- يتزوج (بدون مفعول) ٢- يزوج (شخصًا لشخص)	It was the best day of my life when I married. Mother hopes to marry my sister to a doctor.
be (get) married to	يتزوج/متزوج من	My brother is (got) married to the daughter of a famous scientist.

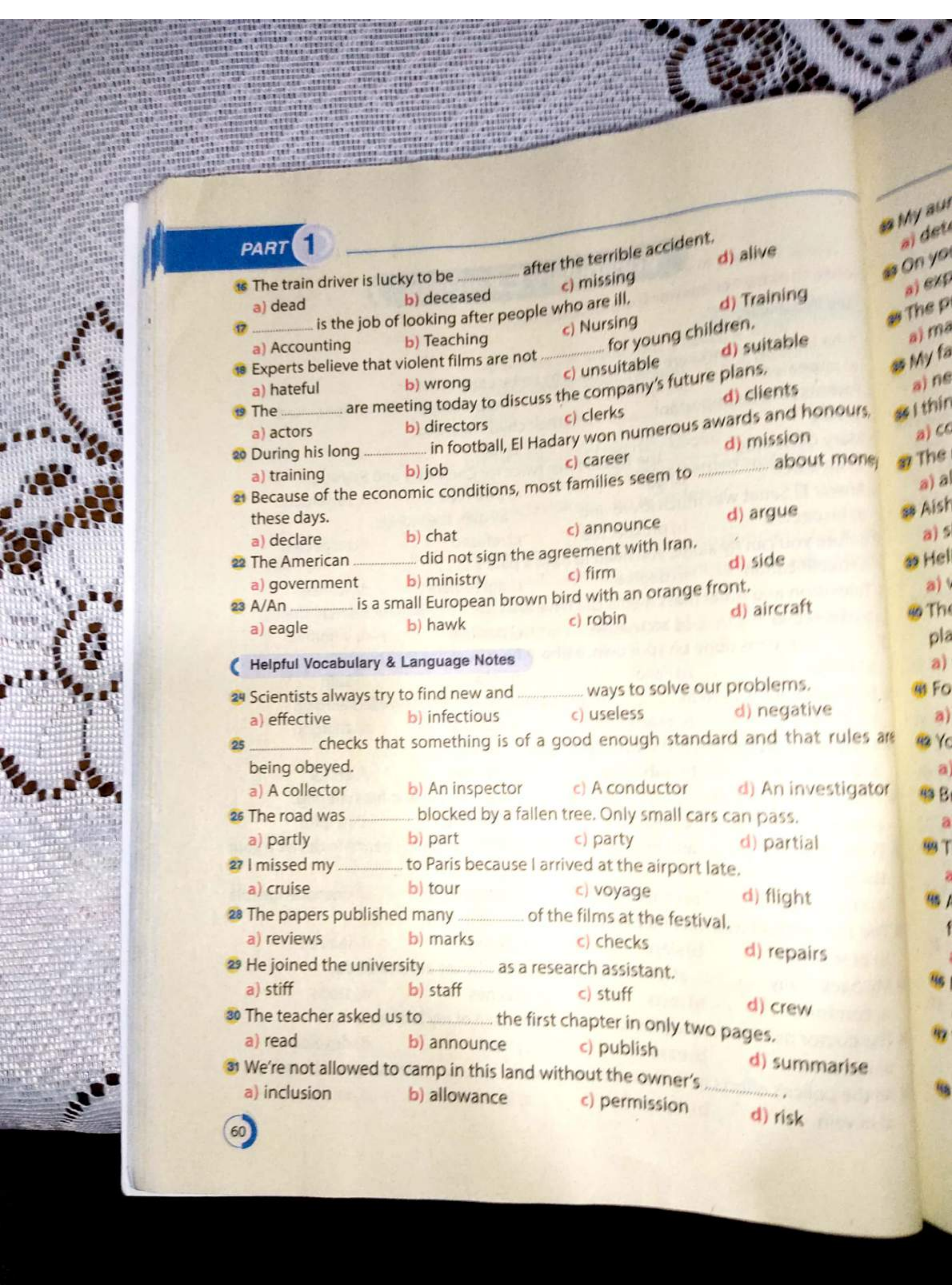


Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. Taha Hussein's works are still .... by writers and scholars.
   a) appeared b) applied c) appreciated d) appointed
2. Parents play an important .... in their child's learning.
   a) rule b) role c) roll d) rail
3. Mary Curie was .... the Nobel Prize twice for Chemistry and Physics.
   a) awarded b) got c) deserved d) rewarded
4. Anwar El Sadat was much loved and .... all over the world.
   a) inspected b) prospected c) refused d) respected
5. Before you can fly alone, you need to have a pilot's ....
   a) qualification b) degree c) agreement d) licence
6. Television and other mass media can have a/an .... influence on children.
   a) detective b) accusative c) positive d) infinitive
7. .... means done on your own, without help from another person.
   a) Polio b) Folio c) Polo d) Solo
8. Mr Fouad put his son in .... of the company when he travelled abroad.
   a) change b) charge c) recharge d) charged
9. Microsoft Corporation is the world's biggest software ....
   a) discoverer b) publisher c) explorer d) editor
10. The new film tells the .... story of a Syrian war victim and his suffering.
    a) moving b) pleased c) effective d) helpful
11. This job is a/an .... and exciting one that will offer you the chance to develop your skills.
    a) challenge b) challenged c) challenging d) unchallengeable
12. The concert hall was hot and crowded, and several people ....
    a) breathed b) slept c) faded d) fainted
13. My back really .... after moving those heavy boxes around all day.
    a) comforts b) rests c) aches d) stops
14. The doctor gave me some pills to .... the pain of my broken arm.
    a) increase b) ease c) heal d) develop
15. All the police's efforts to find the murderer were .... He escaped abroad.
    a) in vain b) in detail c) in advance d) in a hurry



16 The train driver is lucky to be .... after the terrible accident.
a) dead b) deceased c) missing d) alive

17 .... is the job of looking after people who are ill.
a) Accounting b) Teaching c) Nursing d) Training

18 Experts believe that violent films are not .... for young children.
a) hateful b) wrong c) unsuitable d) suitable

19 The .... are meeting today to discuss the company's future plans.
a) actors b) directors c) clerks d) clients

20 During his long .... in football, El Hadary won numerous awards and honours.
a) training b) job c) career d) mission

21 Because of the economic conditions, most families seem to .... about money these days.
a) declare b) chat c) announce d) argue

22 The American .... did not sign the agreement with Iran.
a) government b) ministry c) firm d) side

23 A/An .... is a small European brown bird with an orange front.
a) eagle b) hawk c) robin d) aircraft

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

24 Scientists always try to find new and .... ways to solve our problems.
a) effective b) infectious c) useless d) negative

25 .... checks that something is of a good enough standard and that rules are being obeyed.
a) A collector b) An inspector c) A conductor d) An investigator

26 The road was .... blocked by a fallen tree. Only small cars can pass.
a) partly b) part c) party d) partial

27 I missed my .... to Paris because I arrived at the airport late.
a) cruise b) tour c) voyage d) flight

28 The papers published many .... of the films at the festival.
a) reviews b) marks c) checks d) repairs

29 He joined the university .... as a research assistant.
a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew

30 The teacher asked us to .... the first chapter in only two pages.
a) read b) announce c) publish d) summarise

31 We're not allowed to camp in this land without the owner's ....
a) inclusion b) allowance c) permission d) risk

32 My aunt was .... that her children should have the best possible education.
a) determined b) decided c) agreed d) accepted

33 On your first day in a new job, you should make a good ....
a) expression b) impression c) depression d) tradition

34 The priest who .... people at the church is an old man.
a) married b) got married c) marriage d) was married

35 My father has always told me that it is important never to break my ....
a) neck b) promise c) record d) law

36 I think you should have suitable .... to apply for this job.
a) contract b) permission c) licence d) qualifications

37 The metro had to stop because there was a broken one ....
a) along b) apart c) ahead d) alive

38 Aisha Abd El-Rahman helped to improve women's .... in society.
a) site b) disposition c) post d) position

39 Helicopters have been sent in to rescue the .... soldiers from the war zone.
a) wound b) wounded c) wounding d) wounds

40 The travel agent handed me a copy of their summer travel .... to choose the place for my holiday.
a) research b) newspaper c) agency d) brochure

41 For a time, Dr. Aisha worked as a research .... at Cairo University.
a) seller b) assistant c) teacher d) colleague

42 You have to pay extra money to be a/an .... in this club.
a) officer b) partner c) member d) organ

43 Brave firefighters were able to .... the children of the burning house.
a) rescue b) drown c) hurt d) punish

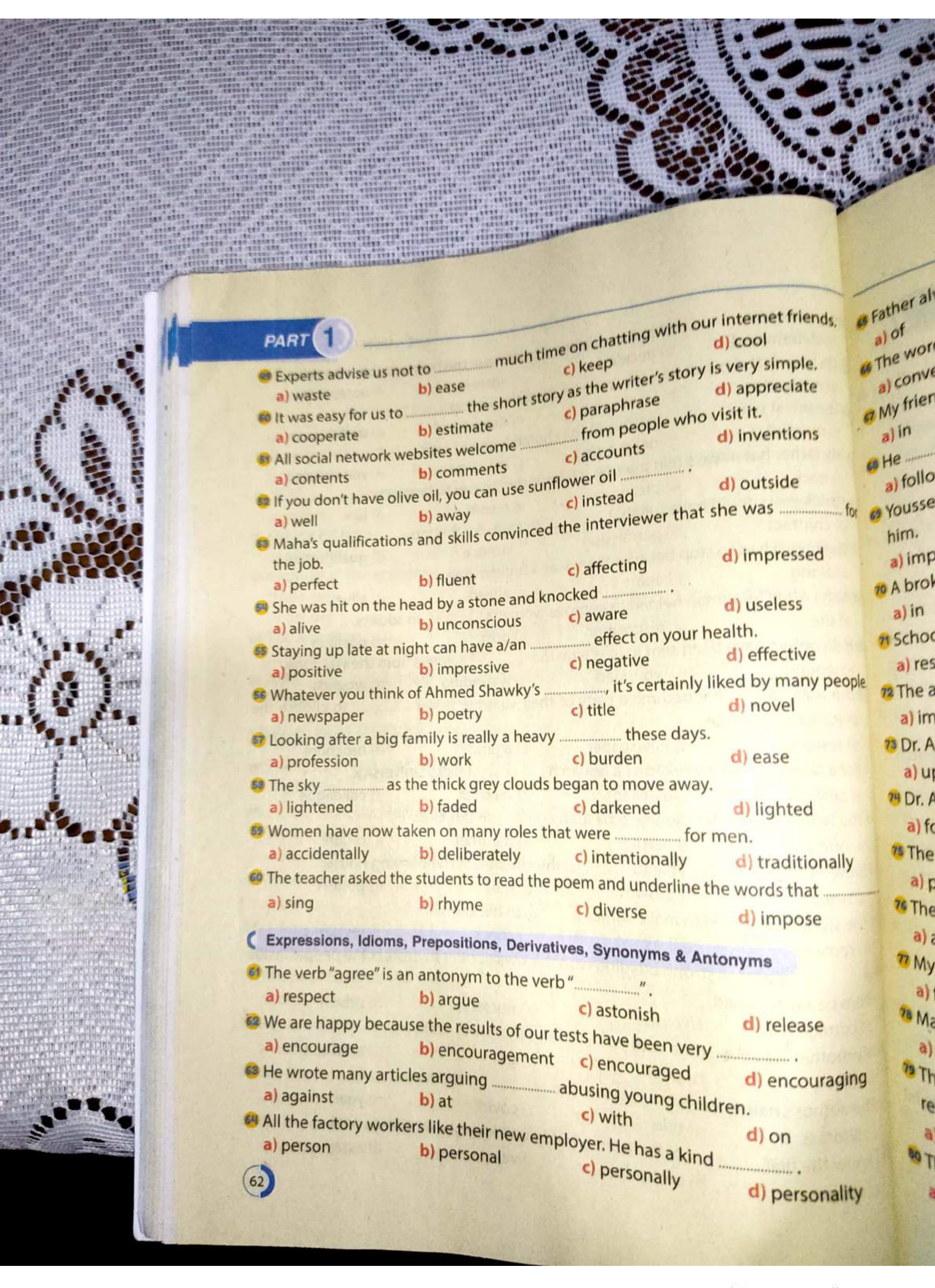
44 The student was told to make some .... to his speech.
a) repairs b) limits c) checks d) revisions

45 A .... is a large strong building with thick walls, built to protect the people inside from being attacked
a) cottage b) castle c) nursery d) prison

46 My mother was overcome with .... and burst into tears.
a) alarm b) pain c) gift d) emotion

47 The author's name was printed below the .... of the novel.
a) address b) title c) cover d) year

48 I know the first .... of this poem, but I don't know what comes next.
a) copy b) paragraph c) verse d) essay



PART 1

49 Experts advise us not to .... much time on chatting with our internet friends.
a) waste b) ease c) keep d) cool

50 It was easy for us to .... the short story as the writer's story is very simple.
a) cooperate b) estimate c) paraphrase d) appreciate

51 All social network websites welcome .... from people who visit it.
a) contents b) comments c) accounts d) inventions

52 If you don't have olive oil, you can use sunflower oil ....
a) well b) away c) instead d) outside

53 Maha's qualifications and skills convinced the interviewer that she was .... for the job.
a) perfect b) fluent c) affecting d) impressed

54 She was hit on the head by a stone and knocked ....
a) alive b) unconscious c) aware d) useless

55 Staying up late at night can have a/an .... effect on your health.
a) positive b) impressive c) negative d) effective

56 Whatever you think of Ahmed Shawky's ...., it's certainly liked by many people.
a) newspaper b) poetry c) title d) novel

57 Looking after a big family is really a heavy .... these days.
a) profession b) work c) burden d) ease

58 The sky .... as the thick grey clouds began to move away.
a) lightened b) faded c) darkened d) lighted

59 Women have now taken on many roles that were .... for men.
a) accidentally b) deliberately c) intentionally d) traditionally

60 The teacher asked the students to read the poem and underline the words that ....
a) sing b) rhyme c) diverse d) impose

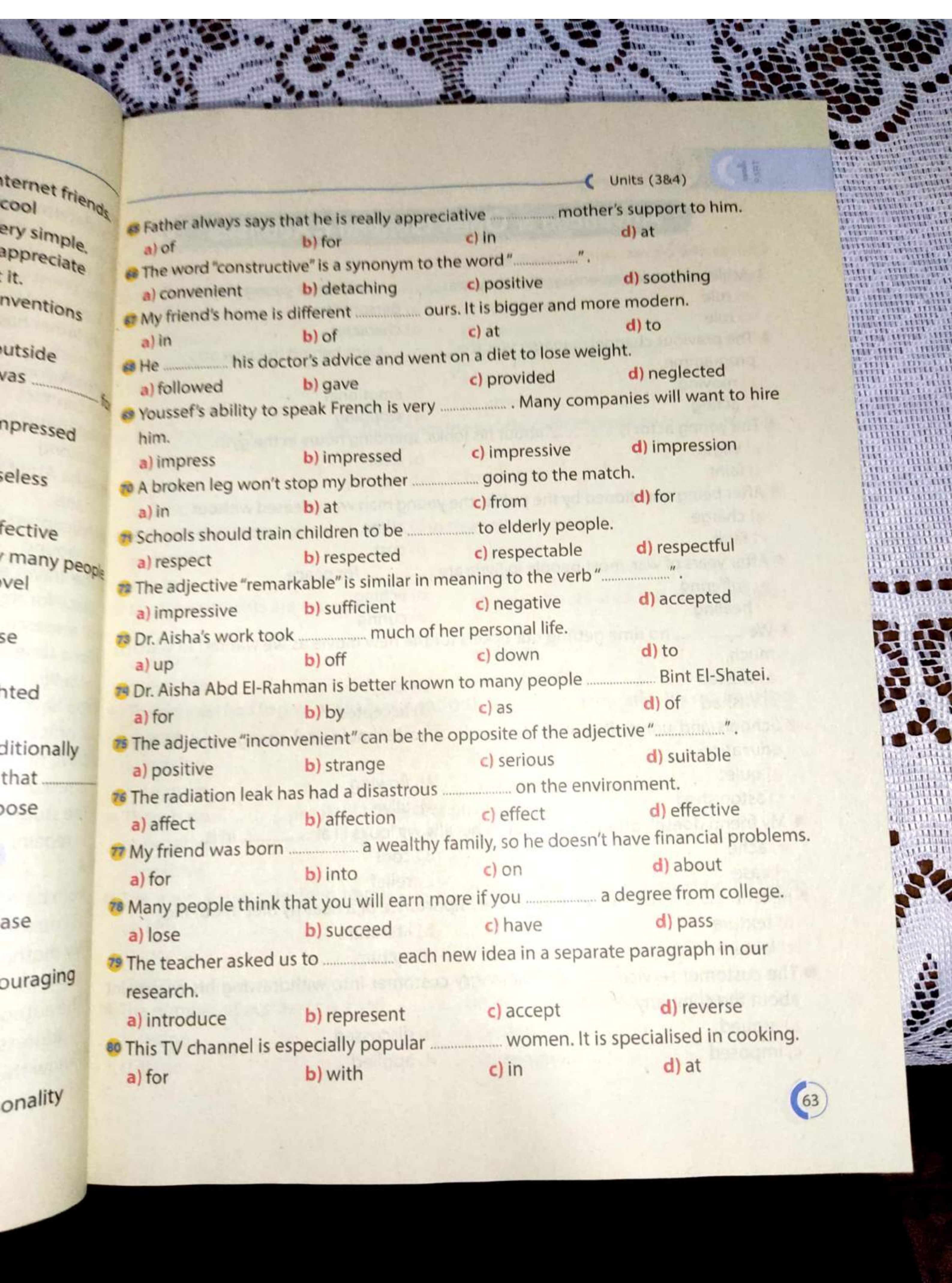
Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

61 The verb "agree" is an antonym to the verb ".............." .
a) respect b) argue c) astonish d) release

62 We are happy because the results of our tests have been very ....
a) encourage b) encouragement c) encouraged d) encouraging

63 He wrote many articles arguing .... abusing young children.
a) against b) at c) with d) on

64 All the factory workers like their new employer. He has a kind ....
a) person b) personal c) personally d) personality



65 Father always says that he is really appreciative .... mother's support to him.
a) of b) for c) in d) at

66 The word "constructive" is a synonym to the word "..................".
a) convenient b) detaching c) positive d) soothing

67 My friend's home is different .... ours. It is bigger and more modern.
a) in b) of c) at d) to

68 He .... his doctor's advice and went on a diet to lose weight.
a) followed b) gave c) provided d) neglected

69 Youssef's ability to speak French is very .... Many companies will want to hire him.
a) impress b) impressed c) impressive d) impression

70 A broken leg won't stop my brother .... going to the match.
a) in b) at c) from d) for

71 Schools should train children to be .... to elderly people.
a) respect b) respected c) respectable d) respectful

72 The adjective "remarkable" is similar in meaning to the verb "..................".
a) impressive b) sufficient c) negative d) accepted

73 Dr. Aisha's work took .... much of her personal life.
a) up b) off c) down d) to

74 Dr. Aisha Abd El-Rahman is better known to many people .... Bint El-Shatei.
a) for b) by c) as d) of

75 The adjective "inconvenient" can be the opposite of the adjective "..................".
a) positive b) strange c) serious d) suitable

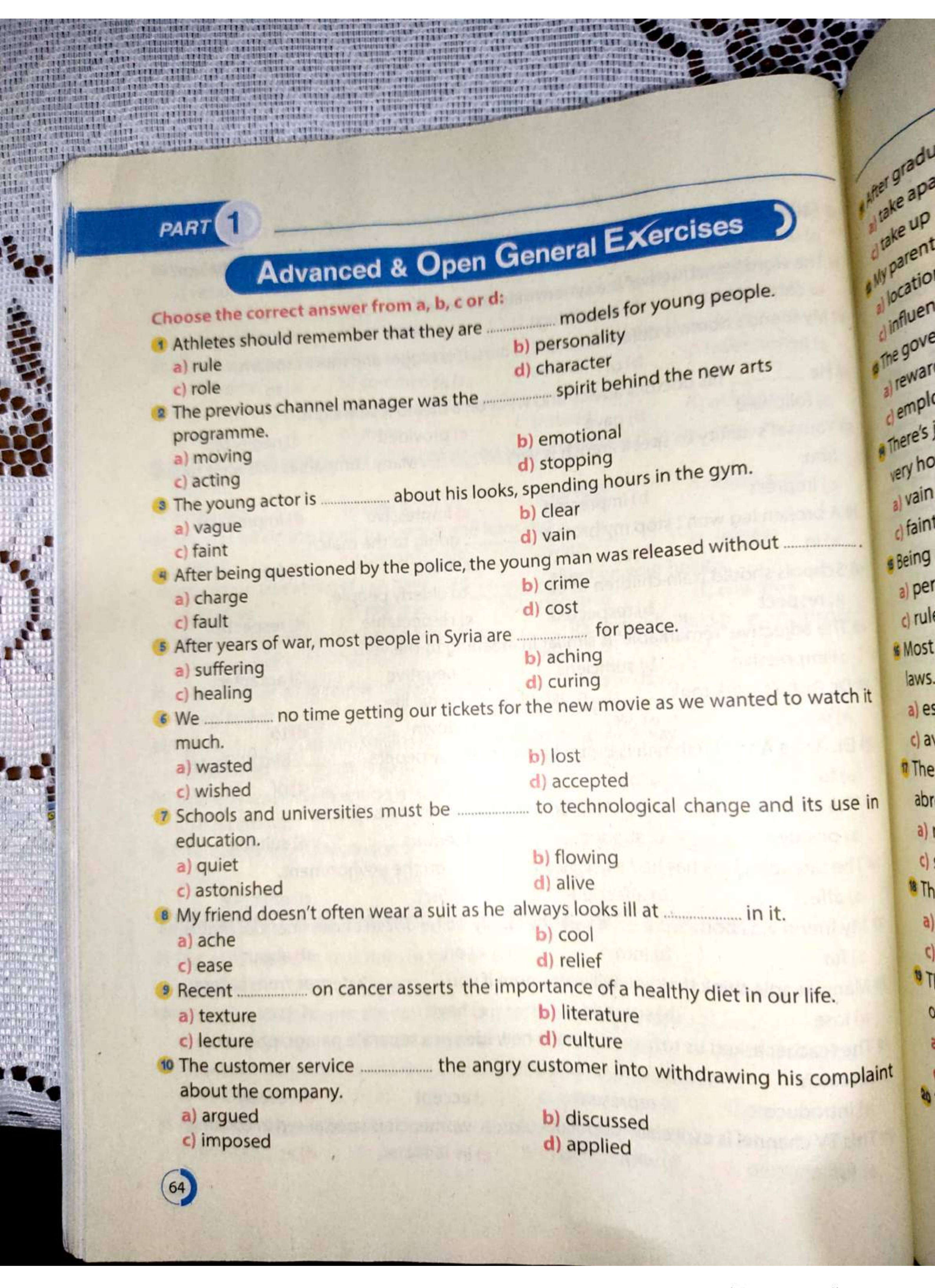
76 The radiation leak has had a disastrous .... on the environment.
a) affect b) affection c) effect d) effective

77 My friend was born .... a wealthy family, so he doesn't have financial problems.
a) for b) into c) on d) about

78 Many people think that you will earn more if you .... a degree from college.
a) lose b) succeed c) have d) pass

79 The teacher asked us to .... each new idea in a separate paragraph in our research.
a) introduce b) represent c) accept d) reverse

80 This TV channel is especially popular .... women. It is specialised in cooking.
a) for b) with c) in d) at

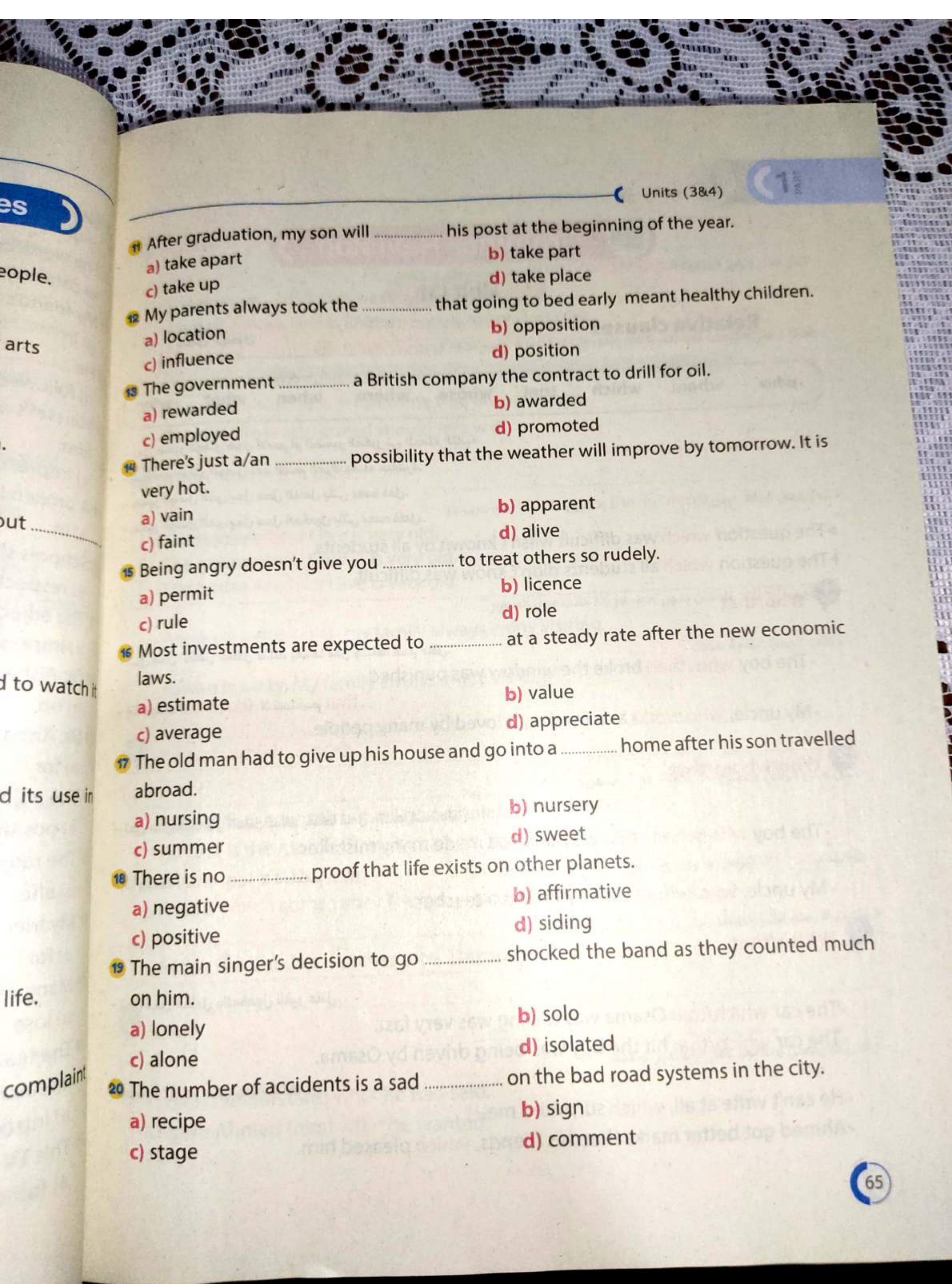


PART 1

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Athletes should remember that they are .... models for young people.
   a) rule b) personality
   c) role d) character
2. The previous channel manager was the .... spirit behind the new arts programme.
   a) moving b) emotional
   c) acting d) stopping
3. The young actor is .... about his looks, spending hours in the gym.
   a) vague b) clear
   c) faint d) vain
4. After being questioned by the police, the young man was released without ....
   a) charge b) crime
   c) fault d) cost
5. After years of war, most people in Syria are .... for peace.
   a) suffering b) aching
   c) healing d) curing
6. We .... no time getting our tickets for the new movie as we wanted to watch it much.
   a) wasted b) lost
   c) wished d) accepted
7. Schools and universities must be .... to technological change and its use in education.
   a) quiet b) flowing
   c) astonished d) alive
8. My friend doesn't often wear a suit as he always looks ill at .... in it.
   a) ache b) cool
   c) ease d) relief
9. Recent .... on cancer asserts the importance of a healthy diet in our life.
   a) texture b) literature
   c) lecture d) culture
10. The customer service .... the angry customer into withdrawing his complaint about the company.
   a) argued b) discussed
   c) imposed d) applied



11 After graduation, my son will .... his post at the beginning of the year.

a) take apart
b) take part
c) take up
d) take place

12 My parents always took the .... that going to bed early meant healthy children.

a) location
b) opposition
c) influence
d) position

13 The government .... a British company the contract to drill for oil.

a) rewarded
b) awarded
c) employed
d) promoted

14 There's just a/an .... possibility that the weather will improve by tomorrow. It is very hot.

a) vain
b) apparent
c) faint
d) alive

15 Being angry doesn't give you .... to treat others so rudely.

a) permit
b) licence
c) rule
d) role

16 Most investments are expected to .... at a steady rate after the new economic laws.

a) estimate
b) value
c) average
d) appreciate

17 The old man had to give up his house and go into a .... home after his son travelled abroad.

a) nursing
b) nursery
c) summer
d) sweet

18 There is no .... proof that life exists on other planets.

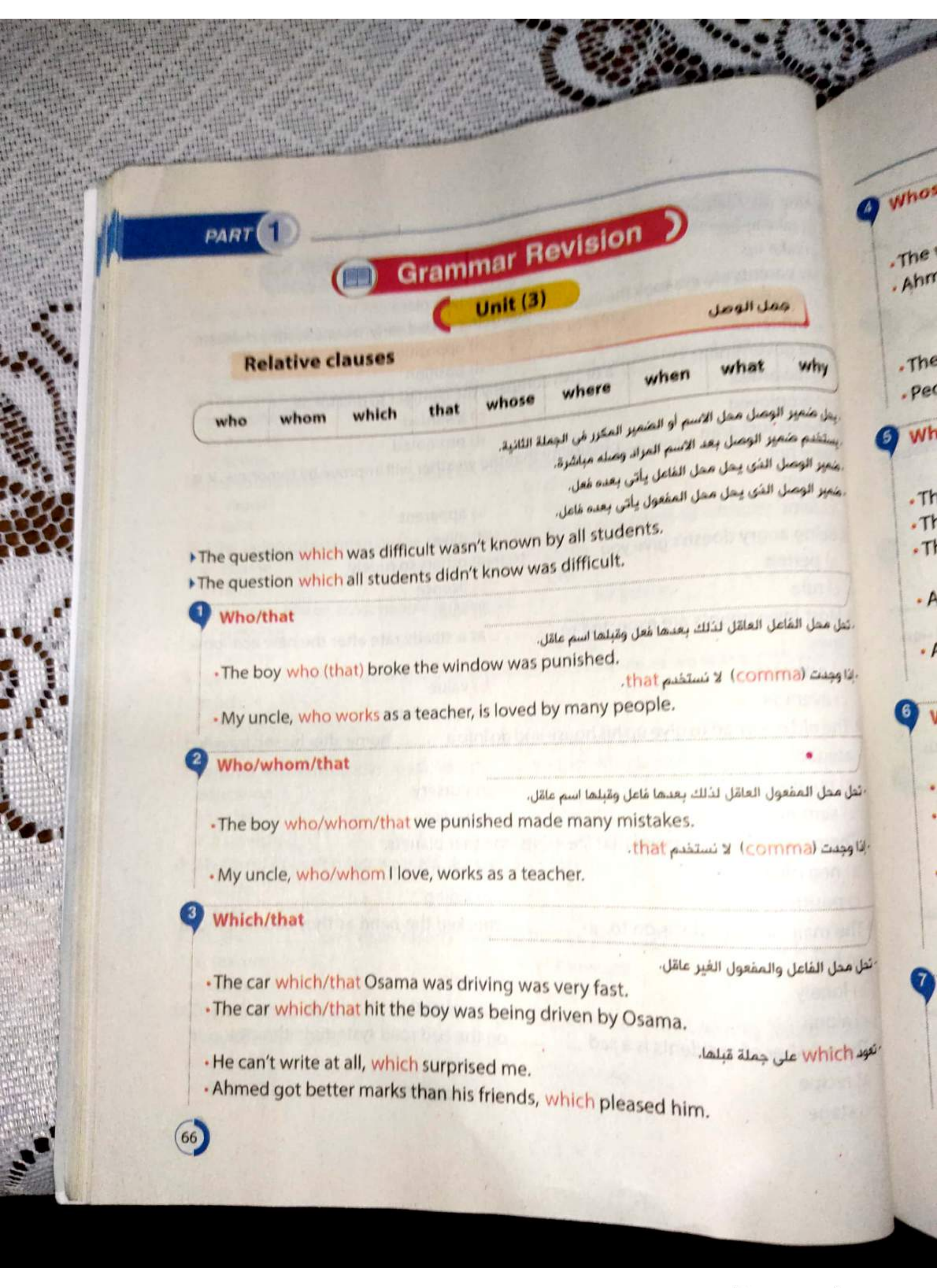
a) negative
b) affirmative
c) positive
d) siding

19 The main singer's decision to go .... shocked the band as they counted much on him.

a) lonely
b) solo
c) alone
d) isolated

20 The number of accidents is a sad .... on the bad road systems in the city.

a) recipe
b) sign
c) stage
d) comment



PART 1

Grammar Revision

Unit (3)

جمل الوصل

Relative clauses

who	whom	which	that	whose	where	when	what	why

- يحل ضمير الوصل محل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.
- يستخدم ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.
- ضمير الوصل الذى يحل محل الفاعل يأتى بعده فعل.
- ضمير الوصل الذى يحل محل المفعول يأتى بعده فاعل.

▸ The question which was difficult wasn't known by all students.

▸ The question which all students didn't know was difficult.

1 Who/that

- تحل محل الفاعل العاقل لذلك بعدها فعل وقبلها اسم عاقل.

- The boy who (that) broke the window was punished.

- إذا وجدت (comma) لا نستخدم that.

- My uncle, who works as a teacher, is loved by many people.

2 Who/whom/that

- تحل محل المفعول العاقل لذلك بعدها فاعل وقبلها اسم عاقل.

- The boy who/whom/that we punished made many mistakes.

- إذا وجدت (comma) لا نستخدم that.

- My uncle, who/whom I love, works as a teacher.

3 Which/that

- تحل محل الفاعل والمفعول الغير عاقل.

- The car which/that Osama was driving was very fast.
- The car which/that hit the boy was being driven by Osama.

- تعود which على جملة قبلها.

- He can't write at all, which surprised me.
- Ahmed got better marks than his friends, which pleased him.



4 Whose

- تحل محل ضمير الملكية (his/her/their/its) وبعدها اسم يملكه ما قبلها.

- The woman whose bag was stolen was angry.
- Ahmed, whose wife is English, travels to London a lot.

- هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose مثل:

stay, dream, work, play, like, stand, dislike, end, hopes, etc.

- The man whose dream has come true is very happy.
- People whose stay ended should renew it.

5 Where = which ... prep.

- تحل محل المكان بدل (here/there) وتساوى which مع حرف جر.

- The house where I live is very old.
- The house which I live in is very old.
- The house in which I live is very old.

- تستخدم which للمكان بدون حرف جر إذا كانت محل الضمير it.

- Aswan is a city which my family always enjoy visiting.

- فكانت الجملة الثانية هكذا.

- Aswan is a city. My family always enjoy visiting it.

6 When = which ... prep.

- تحل محل الزمان وتساوى which مع حرف جر.

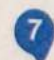
- August is the month when I go on holiday.
- August is the month in which I go on holiday.

- تستخدم which للزمان بدون حرف جر إذا كانت محل الضمير it.

- Friday, which comes after Thursday, is a holiday.

- فكانت الجملة الثانية هكذا.

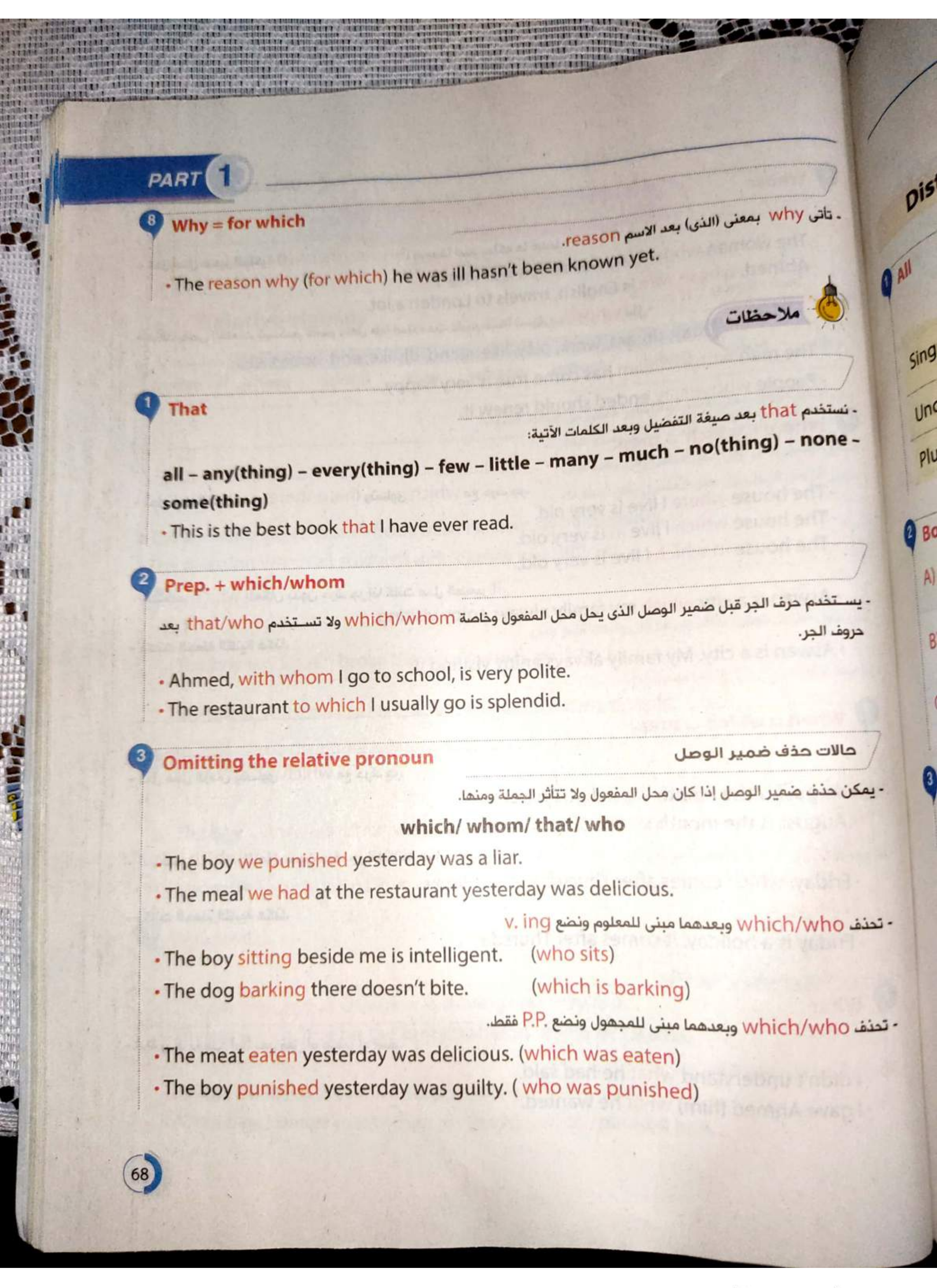
- Friday is a holiday. It comes after Thursday.



7 What

- أداة ربط بمعنى (ما) بعد فعل أو ضمير أو اسم.

- I didn't understand what he had said.
- I gave Ahmed (him) what he wanted.



PART 1

8 **Why = for which**

- تأتى why بمعنى (الذى) بعد الاسم reason.

- The reason why (for which) he was ill hasn't been known yet.

ملاحظات

1 **That**

- نستخدم that بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

all – any(thing) – every(thing) – few – little – many – much – no(thing) – none – some(thing)

- This is the best book that I have ever read.

2 **Prep. + which/whom**

- يستخدم حرف الجر قبل ضمير الوصل الذى يحل محل المفعول وخاصة which/whom ولا تستخدم that/who بعد حروف الجر.

- Ahmed, with whom I go to school, is very polite.
- The restaurant to which I usually go is splendid.

3 **Omitting the relative pronoun** حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

- يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان محل المفعول ولا تتأثر الجملة ومنها.

which/ whom/ that/ who

- The boy we punished yesterday was a liar.
- The meal we had at the restaurant yesterday was delicious.

- تحذف which/who وبعدهما مبنى للمعلوم ونضع v. ing

- The boy sitting beside me is intelligent. (who sits)
- The dog barking there doesn't bite. (which is barking)

- تحذف which/who وبعدهما مبنى للمجهول ونضع P.P. فقط.

- The meat eaten yesterday was delicious. (which was eaten)
- The boy punished yesterday was guilty. (who was punished)

Unit (4)

Distributives: all, both, half, each, every, either, neither

1 All

كل /جميع /طوال

• يأتى بعدها اسم مفرد واسم لا يعد والفعل مفرد. • يأتى بعدها اسم جمع والفعل جمع.

Singular noun	اسم مفرد	▸ All night yesterday was cold and I couldn't sleep well.
Uncountable noun	اسم لا يعد	▸ All the food I had yesterday was delicious.
Plural noun	اسم جمع	▸ All the people in my street are cooperative.

2 Both (of)

كلٌ من

A) Both (of)

كلٌ من للمثنى: (شخصين - شيئين - مجموعتين) تتبع بفعل جمع

• Both (of) my parents are doctors. • Both of them have clinics.

B) Both + فاعل أول and + فاعل ثانٍ + فعل جمع

• Both Sameh and his wife are clever engineers.

C) فاعل + فعل + both + مفعول أول and + مفعول ثانٍ

• I like both Arabic and English.

3 Half (of)

نصف

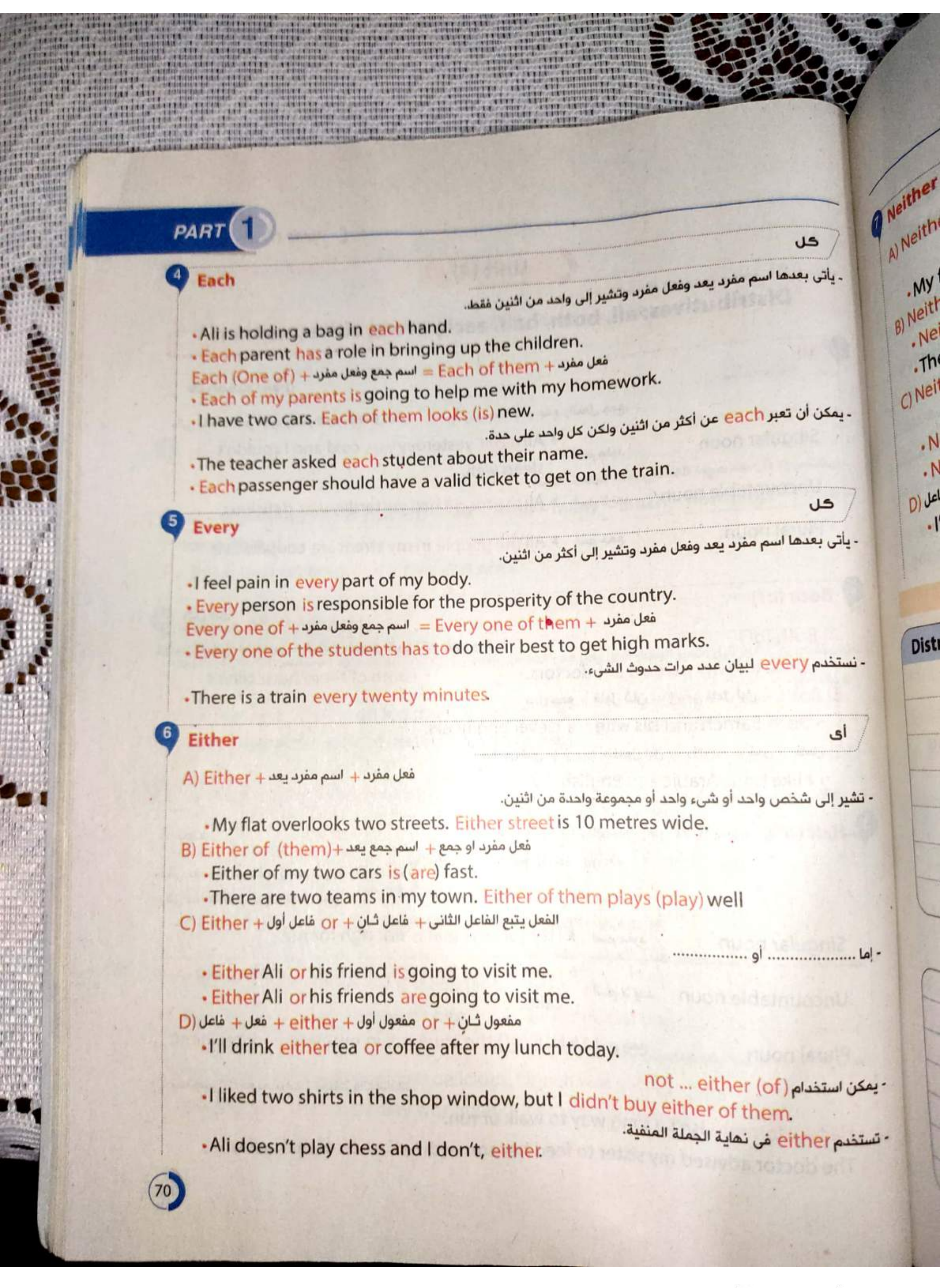
• يأتى بعدها اسم مفرد واسم لا يعد والفعل مفرد.
• يأتى بعدها اسم جمع والفعل جمع.

Singular noun	اسم مفرد	▸ Half (of) the loaf is enough for me.
Uncountable noun	اسم لا يعد	▸ Half (of) the flour isn't enough to make a big cake.
Plural noun	اسم جمع	▸ Half (of) the students in my class are intelligent.

- لا نستخدم of مع تعبيرات الكميات والمسافات.

• Half a kilometre isn't a long way to walk or run.
• The doctor advised my sister to feed her son with half a kilo of milk a day.





PART 1

4 Each

كل

- يأتى بعدها اسم مفرد يعد وفعل مفرد وتشير إلى واحد من اثنين فقط.

- Ali is holding a bag in each hand.
- Each parent has a role in bringing up the children.

Each (One of) + اسم جمع وفعل مفرد = Each of them + فعل مفرد

- Each of my parents is going to help me with my homework.
- I have two cars. Each of them looks (is) new.

- يمكن أن تعبر each عن أكثر من اثنين ولكن كل واحد على حدة.

- The teacher asked each student about their name.
- Each passenger should have a valid ticket to get on the train.

5 Every

كل

- يأتى بعدها اسم مفرد يعد وفعل مفرد وتشير إلى أكثر من اثنين.

- I feel pain in every part of my body.
- Every person is responsible for the prosperity of the country.

Every one of + اسم جمع وفعل مفرد = Every one of them + فعل مفرد

- Every one of the students has to do their best to get high marks.

- نستخدم every لبيان عدد مرات حدوث الشيء.

- There is a train every twenty minutes.

6 Either

أى

A) Either + اسم مفرد يعد + فعل مفرد

- تشير إلى شخص واحد أو شيء واحد أو مجموعة واحدة من اثنين.

- My flat overlooks two streets. Either street is 10 metres wide.

B) Either of (them)+ اسم جمع يعد + فعل مفرد او جمع

- Either of my two cars is (are) fast.
- There are two teams in my town. Either of them plays (play) well

C) Either + فاعل أول or + فاعل ثانٍ + الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى

- إما .... أو ....

- Either Ali or his friend is going to visit me.
- Either Ali or his friends are going to visit me.

D) فاعل + فعل + either + مفعول أول or + مفعول ثانٍ

- I'll drink either tea or coffee after my lunch today.

- يمكن استخدام not ... either (of)

- I liked two shirts in the shop window, but I didn't buy either of them.

- تستخدم either فى نهاية الجملة المنفية.

- Ali doesn't play chess and I don't, either.

7 Neither

لا هذا ولا ذاك

A) Neither (ولا) + اسم مفرد يعد + فعل مفرد

- تشير إلى شخص واحد أو شيء واحد أو مجموعة واحدة من الاثنين.

- My flat overlooks two streets. Neither street is 20 metres wide.

B) Neither of (them) + اسم جمع يعد + فعل مفرد أو جمع

- Neither of my two cars is (are) fast.
- There are two teams in my town. Neither of them plays (play) well.

C) Neither + فاعل أول nor + فاعل ثان + الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى

- لا .... ولا ....

- Neither Ali nor his friend is going to visit me.
- Neither Ali nor his friends are going to visit me.

D) فاعل + فعل + neither + مفعول أول nor + مفعول ثان

- I'll drink neither tea nor coffee after my lunch today.

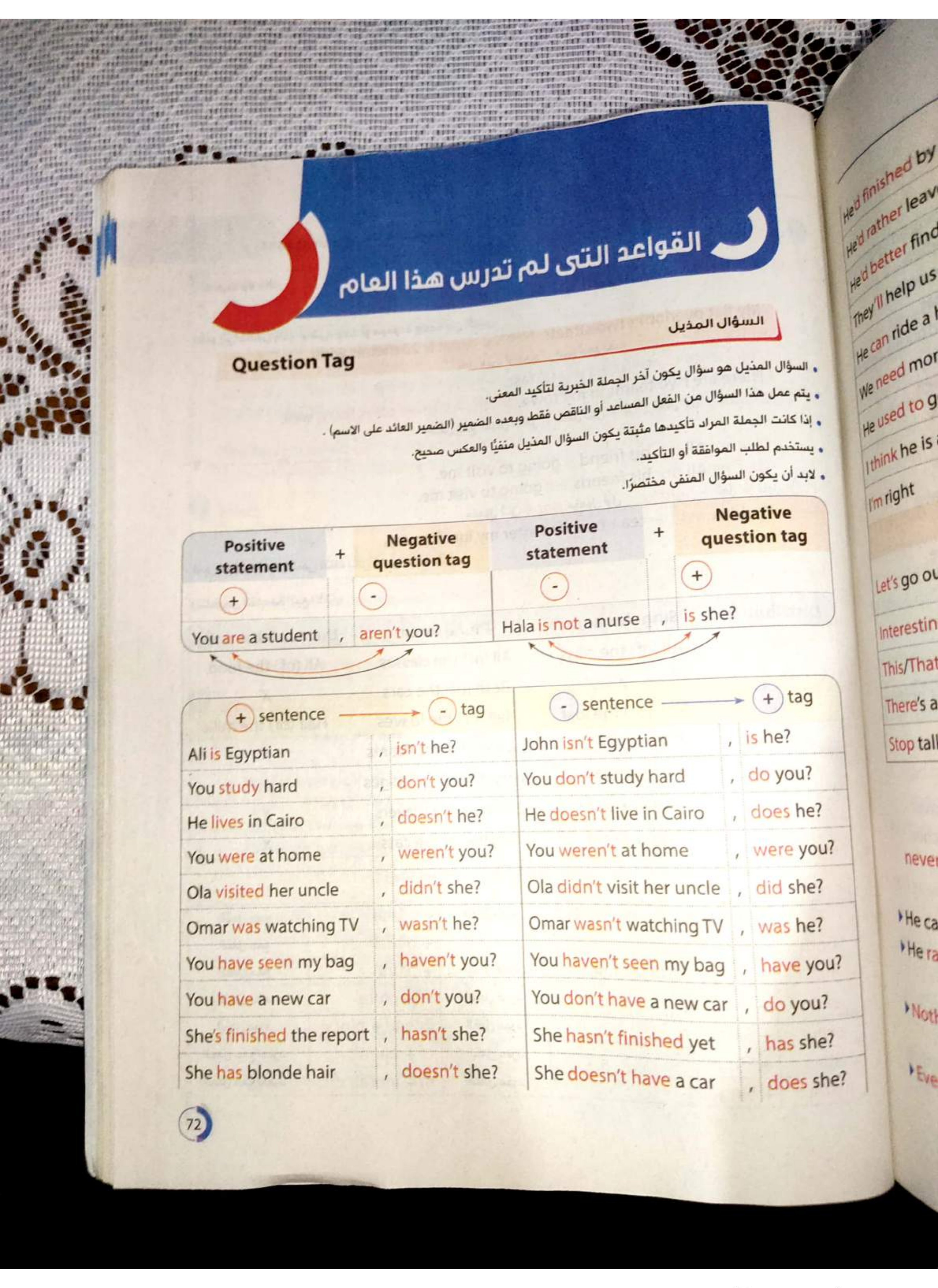
- تعبر neither عن النفى لذلك يأتى الفعل قبلها مثبت.

ولتلخيص القاعدة اتبع الآتى:

Distributive	Singular noun	Plural noun	Uncountable noun
all	All (of) the class	All (of) the classes	All (of) the food
both	✗	Both (of) the cars	✗
half	Half (of) the loaf	Half (of) the loaves	Half (of) the milk
each	Each applicant	Each of the applicants	✗
every	Every page	Every one of the pages	✗
either	Either player	Either of the players	✗
neither	Neither cat	Neither of the cats	✗

The verb after the distributives

all	+ Singular/Uncountable	الفعل مفرد	+ plural	الفعل جمع
both			+ plural	الفعل جمع
half	+ Singular/Uncountable	الفعل مفرد	+ plural	الفعل جمع
each	+ Singular	الفعل مفرد	of + plural	الفعل مفرد
every	+ Singular	الفعل مفرد	one of + plural	الفعل مفرد
either	+ Singular	الفعل مفرد	of + plural	الفعل جمع/مفرد
neither	+ Singular	الفعل مفرد	of + plural	الفعل جمع/مفرد



القواعد التى لم تدرس هذا العام

السؤال المذيل

Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير (الضمير العائد على الاسم).
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفى مختصرًا.

Positive statement	+	Negative question tag	Positive statement	+	Negative question tag
+		-	-		+
You are a student	,	aren't you?	Hala is not a nurse	,	is she?

+ sentence →		- tag	- sentence →		+ tag
Ali is Egyptian	,	isn't he?	John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You study hard	,	don't you?	You don't study hard	,	do you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?	He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?	You weren't at home	,	were you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?	Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar was watching TV	,	wasn't he?	Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?	You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You have a new car	,	don't you?	You don't have a new car	,	do you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?	She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She has blonde hair	,	doesn't she?	She doesn't have a car	,	does she?

He'd finished by 6 p.m.	,	hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m.	,	had he?
He'd rather leave now	,	wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	,	would he?
He'd better find a job	,	hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	,	had he?
They'll help us	,	won't they?	They won't help us	,	will they?
He can ride a horse	,	can't he?	He can't ride a horse	,	can he?
We need more money	,	don't we?	We needn't more money	,	need we?
He used to get up early	,	didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	,	did he?
I think he is a thief	,	isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	,	is he?
I'm right	,	aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	,	am I?
		حالات خاصة			
Let's go out اقتراح	,	shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	,	will/won't you?
Interesting	,	isn't it?	Beautiful	,	isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	,	isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	,	aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	,	isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	,	aren't there?
Stop talking	,	will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	,	will you?

ملاحظات

1. الجملة التى تحتوى على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no
تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتًا.

- He can hardly run, can he?
- He rarely visits you, does he?

2. إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

- Nothing can live without energy, can it?

3. إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they.

- Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?


PART 1

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Einstein, ... couldn't pass his university entrance exam, discovered relativity.
   a) whom b) who c) whose d) when
2. The dog, ... name was Alair, was waiting for its owner until he came.
   a) whose b) which c) who d) that
3. The drugs, ... were hidden in the cakes, made the king unconscious before coronation.
   a) who b) whom c) where d) which
4. Sameh's hobby is photography, ... he spends most of his money.
   a) which b) that c) on which d) where
5. The last person .... will have to turn out the lights.
   a) who left b) that had left c) that leave d) to leave
6. I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find .... I wanted.
   a) that b) what c) which d) whose
7. Do you remember the time .... we all went to see the final match?
   a) who b) where c) when d) which
8. The new manager is nicer than the old one .... the staff disliked.
   a) whom b) whose c) where d) when
9. The President, ... private life the newspapers are so interested, has nothing to hide.
   a) whose b) his c) in whose d) who
10. People .... into Cairo every day are used to the hold-ups.
    a) travelled b) travelling c) who travelled d) whose travel
11. Amr and Hazem spent the whole time arguing, ... annoyed their mother.
    a) which b) who c) whom d) whose
12. The students .... failed the exam can take it again in August.
    a) whose b) which c) when d) who
13. A school bus is a vehicle .... takes students to and from school.
    a) who b) that c) whose d) where
14. A laboratory is a place .... students do science experiments.
    a) where b) which c) when d) who
15. My home town, ... is near Assiut, is very small.
    a) where b) that c) whose d) which

16 His uncle, ... is a millionaire, owns a villa in Cairo.
a) who b) which c) where d) when

17 Eman, ... sister is an actress, is going on holiday to Paris.
a) who b) that c) which d) whose

18 I attached a photo of my family to the email .... to my friend Thomas.
a) was sent b) sending c) sent d) which sent

19 My brother lives in a small town .... there is only one library.
a) where b) whom c) whose d) which

20 My penfriend, ... lives in Sweden, is studying biology at university.
a) whose b) who c) that d) which

21 The man .... next to me had a brown jacket.
a) was sitting b) he was sitting c) sat d) sitting

22 October, 1973, was the month .... our great army restored our dignity.
a) when b) which c) who d) where

23 I'll never forget the food .... in Port Said.
a) where I had b) which I had it c) I had d) I had it

24 We didn't believe all .... the servant had said about the robbery last week.
a) what b) that c) which d) where

25 Why do you blame me for everything .... goes wrong?
a) which b) that c) who d) what

26 He made a shameful mistake .... he apologised.
a) at which b) to which c) in which d) for which

27 I had an uncle in Germany, ... I inherited a bit of money.
a) from whom b) whom c) who d) which

28 I didn't understand .... the teacher had explained.
a) which b) when c) that d) what

29 I really love the new Chinese restaurant, ... we went to last night.
a) which b) where c) when d) whose

30 The reason .... I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.
a) where b) which c) why d) whose

31 She has a lot of money, most of .... was inherited from her aunt.
a) where b) which c) that d) when

32 This is the man .... dream of meeting the President has come true.
a) who b) whom c) that d) whose



33 The road .... the two villages is very narrow.
a) joined b) joining c) which is joined d) who is joining

34 We bought some mangoes from .... we extracted the juice.
a) whom b) that c) whose d) which

35 The horse .... I bought the other day is lame.
a) whom b) that c) whose d) where

36 Those .... are content do not need any wealth.
a) whom b) which c) whose d) who

37 The woman .... diamonds had been stolen complained to the police.
a) whom b) that c) whose d) who

38 He .... has nothing to lose has no worries.
a) whom b) which c) who d) whose

39 He's the man .... house the jewellery was stolen.
a) in which b) from whose c) from whom d) from which

40 The money .... in the robbery was never found.
a) stolen b) are stolen c) stealing d) which stole

41 I'm waiting for three friends. .... of them are late.
a) Both b) Neither c) Either d) All

42 My sister and I are twins. .... of us have the same hair colour.
a) Every b) Both c) Half d) Each

43 You can buy a Mercedes or a Toyota. .... brand is good.
a) Either b) Both c) All d) Neither

44 I looked for Amal and Hanan, but .... of them were there.
a) all b) either c) neither d) each

45 He bought two new jackets and paid 300 pounds for .... of them.
a) neither b) every c) all d) each

46 In a game of tennis there are two or four players. .... player has a racket.
a) Each b) Neither c) Either d) All

47 There were flags flying from almost .... building.
a) either b) all c) every d) both

48 I didn't need all the books so I returned .... of them to the library.
a) every b) half c) either d) neither

49 We had a great weekend as the weather was perfect .... days.
a) all b) either c) both d) each

50 The store has two lifts, and .... are out of order.
a) either b) all c) half d) both

51 I saw two films, but I didn't like .... of them.
a) none b) either c) neither d) every

52 Ali and Osama tried to open the cupboard, but .... of them could do it because it was stuck.
a) neither b) either c) all d) every

53 .... of these people has some useful talent or experience.
a) Both b) All c) Each d) Every

54 Sara sometimes feels as if she was working .... minute of the day.
a) every b) either c) neither d) both

55 The teacher was sad as .... of the students in his class were absent.
a) every b) each c) half d) neither

56 He was thirsty, so he drank .... the juice.
a) every b) neither c) whole d) all

57 If the box is heavy, you can hold it with .... hands.
a) every b) both c) each d) all

58 Doaa doesn't like action films. Yara doesn't like action films, ...
a) each b) both c) neither d) either

59 .... of these two candidates has a degree in English.
a) Neither b) All c) None d) Both

60 .... member of the team is given a particular job to do.
a) Every b) Each c) All d) Both

61 I love this author. I've got .... book she's ever written.
a) all b) both c) every d) neither

62 The teacher asked the students to find the mistake in .... sentence.
a) all b) both c) each d) neither

63 I can't decide whether to go to Italy, France or Germany. They're .... beautiful countries.
a) both b) all c) each d) every

64 .... of the dentists is available. Which one do you want to see?
a) All b) Both c) Every d) Either

65 .... of them seems interested in the offer.
a) Neither b) Both c) All d) Either



66 I gave her .... of the cheese sandwiches because I wasn't really hungry.
a) none b) neither c) half d) every

67 You can take either the apple or the orange. You can't have them ....
a) half b) neither c) all d) both

68 I understood most of what they said but not .... word.
a) all b) neither c) every d) both

69 She gave them .... a kiss on the forehead.
a) both b) all c) every d) each

70 During the war, missiles were being thrown on the city from .... directions.
a) either b) every c) all d) both

71 After the robbery, ... the thieves were caught.
a) all b) each c) every d) neither

72 There were shops on .... side of the street.
a) every b) both c) all d) each

73 .... the Egyptians are standing behind the President and the government to face the hardships.
a) Every b) Each c) All d) Whole

74 The two brothers love .... other.
a) every b) each c) both d) either

75 I enjoyed .... minute of the holiday.
a) every b) all c) both d) every of

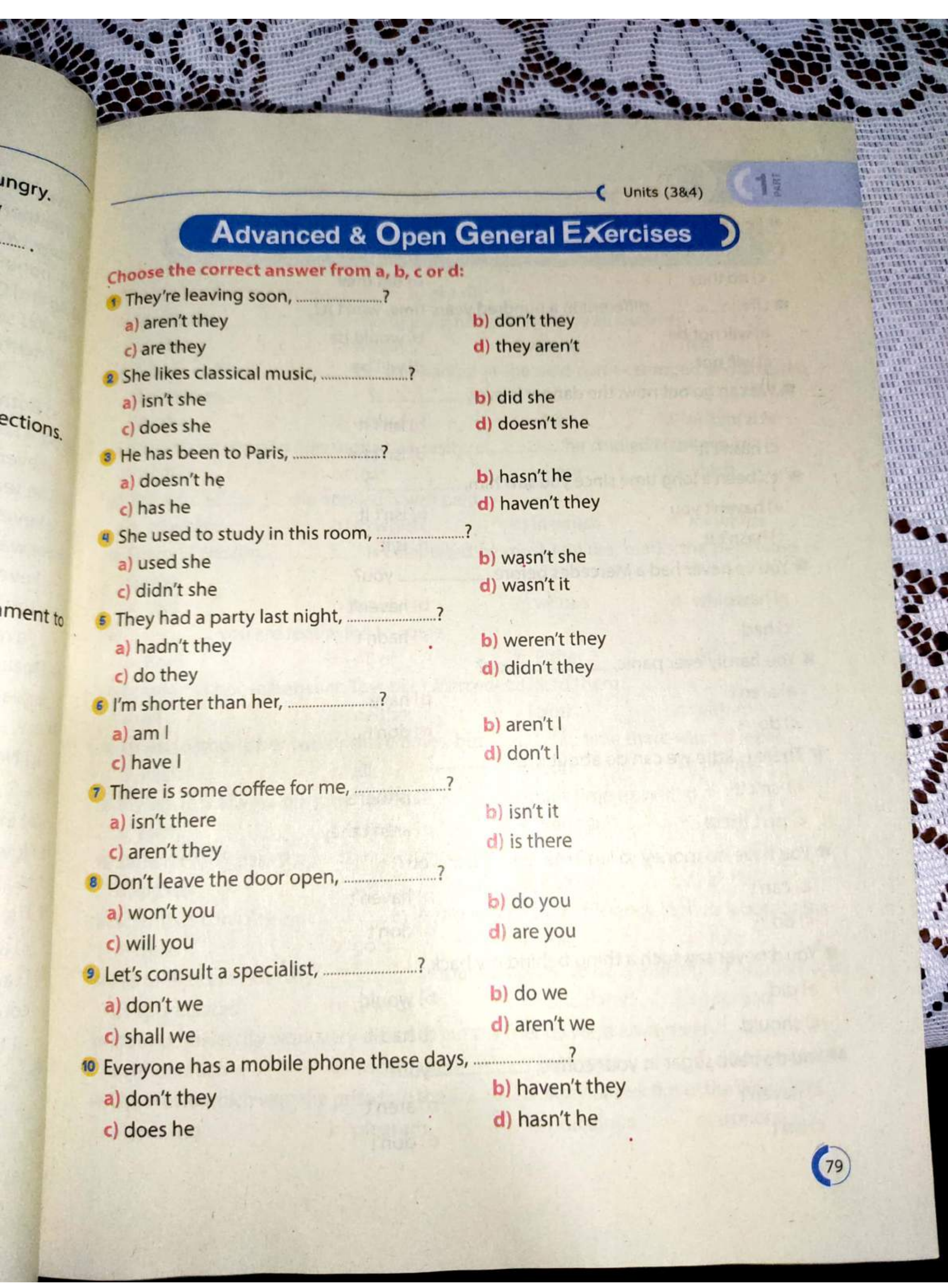
76 .... of my friends is interested in politics.
a) All b) Both c) Either d) None

77 I called them .... but neither answered the phone.
a) every b) all c) both d) either

78 I tried to solve the puzzle twice but failed .... times.
a) both b) every c) each d) all

79 If I were a millionaire, I would travel around the .... world.
a) all b) whole c) every d) each

80 .... us have been invited to the party.
a) All b) Every one of c) All of d) Each of



ungry.

ections.

ment to

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They're leaving soon, ...?
a) aren't they b) don't they
c) are they d) they aren't

2 She likes classical music, ...?
a) isn't she b) did she
c) does she d) doesn't she

3 He has been to Paris, ...?
a) doesn't he b) hasn't he
c) has he d) haven't they

4 She used to study in this room, ...?
a) used she b) wasn't she
c) didn't she d) wasn't it

5 They had a party last night, ...?
a) hadn't they b) weren't they
c) do they d) didn't they

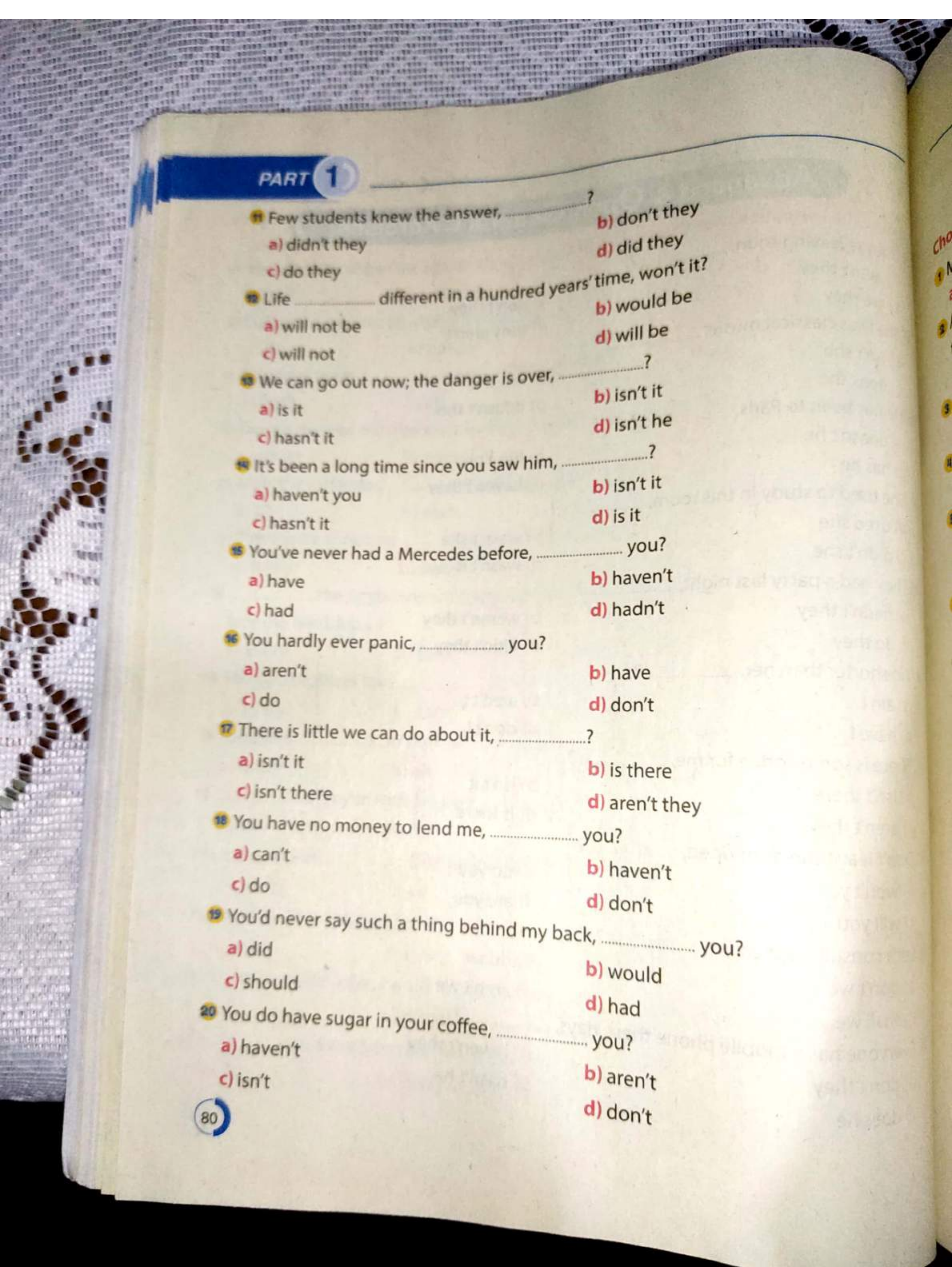
6 I'm shorter than her, ...?
a) am I b) aren't I
c) have I d) don't I

7 There is some coffee for me, ...?
a) isn't there b) isn't it
c) aren't they d) is there

8 Don't leave the door open, ...?
a) won't you b) do you
c) will you d) are you

9 Let's consult a specialist, ...?
a) don't we b) do we
c) shall we d) aren't we

10 Everyone has a mobile phone these days, ...?
a) don't they b) haven't they
c) does he d) hasn't he



PART 1

11 Few students knew the answer, ...?

a) didn't they
b) don't they
c) do they
d) did they

12 Life .... different in a hundred years' time, won't it?

a) will not be
b) would be
c) will not
d) will be

13 We can go out now; the danger is over, ...?

a) is it
b) isn't it
c) hasn't it
d) isn't he

14 It's been a long time since you saw him, ...?

a) haven't you
b) isn't it
c) hasn't it
d) is it

15 You've never had a Mercedes before, ... you?

a) have
b) haven't
c) had
d) hadn't

16 You hardly ever panic, ... you?

a) aren't
b) have
c) do
d) don't

17 There is little we can do about it, ...?

a) isn't it
b) is there
c) isn't there
d) aren't they

18 You have no money to lend me, ... you?

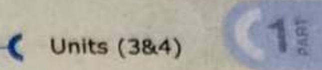
a) can't
b) haven't
c) do
d) don't

19 You'd never say such a thing behind my back, ... you?

a) did
b) would
c) should
d) had

20 You do have sugar in your coffee, ... you?

a) haven't
b) aren't
c) isn't
d) don't



Open Book General Exercises on Units 3 & 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mr. Emad, ... has a strong personality, is loved by all students.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) that

2 A police officer .... car was parked at the next corner stopped and arrested the thieves.
a) who b) whose c) when d) which

3 My brother went to Alexandria University, ... he studied architecture.
a) when b) that c) where d) which

4 The job .... she applied is well paid.
a) at which b) to which c) in which d) for which

5 Sham El-Nessim, ... is celebrated by most families, marks the beginning of spring.
a) that b) when c) whose d) which

6 .... you are requested to come.
a) Both b) All of c) Either d) All

7 I couldn't choose between Toyota or Mercedes. I liked them ....
a) all b) neither c) both d) either

8 I tried to phone her two or three times, but .... time there was no reply.
a) each b) all c) both d) neither

9 My uncle is always busy. He spends .... of his time travelling.
a) each b) every c) neither d) half

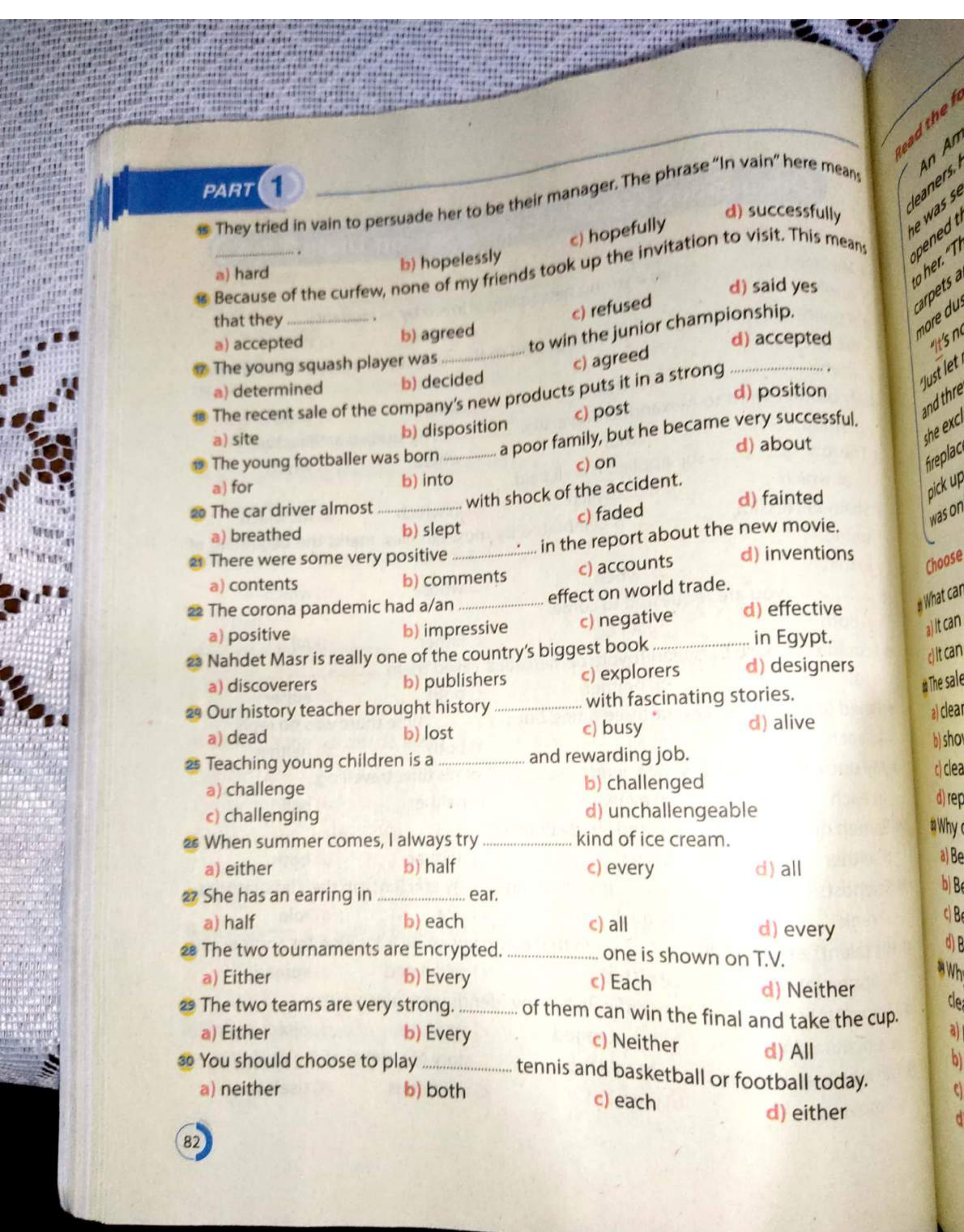
10 Sameh didn't pass the test, and Shady didn't ....
a) either b) too c) neither d) both

11 Scientists can play a .... in improving energy efficiency in their laboratories.
a) rank b) goal c) rule d) role

12 His talents are not fully .... in that company, so he is looking for another one.
a) appreciated b) tasted c) calculated d) spread

13 I found university work very difficult, but my friends were always very ....
a) encouraging b) encouraged c) courage d) discouraging

14 The movie which won the prize told the .... story of a victim of the World War.
a) moving b) pleasant c) ridiculous d) useless



15 They tried in vain to persuade her to be their manager. The phrase "In vain" here means ....
a) hard b) hopelessly c) hopefully d) successfully

16 Because of the curfew, none of my friends took up the invitation to visit. This means that they ....
a) accepted b) agreed c) refused d) said yes

17 The young squash player was .... to win the junior championship.
a) determined b) decided c) agreed d) accepted

18 The recent sale of the company's new products puts it in a strong ....
a) site b) disposition c) post d) position

19 The young footballer was born .... a poor family, but he became very successful.
a) for b) into c) on d) about

20 The car driver almost .... with shock of the accident.
a) breathed b) slept c) faded d) fainted

21 There were some very positive .... in the report about the new movie.
a) contents b) comments c) accounts d) inventions

22 The corona pandemic had a/an .... effect on world trade.
a) positive b) impressive c) negative d) effective

23 Nahdet Masr is really one of the country's biggest book .... in Egypt.
a) discoverers b) publishers c) explorers d) designers

24 Our history teacher brought history .... with fascinating stories.
a) dead b) lost c) busy d) alive

25 Teaching young children is a .... and rewarding job.
a) challenge b) challenged
c) challenging d) unchallengeable

26 When summer comes, I always try .... kind of ice cream.
a) either b) half c) every d) all

27 She has an earring in .... ear.
a) half b) each c) all d) every

28 The two tournaments are Encrypted. .... one is shown on T.V.
a) Either b) Every c) Each d) Neither

29 The two teams are very strong. .... of them can win the final and take the cup.
a) Either b) Every c) Neither d) All

30 You should choose to play .... tennis and basketball or football today.
a) neither b) both c) each d) either

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

An American salesman used to go from house to house selling vacuum cleaners. He always took one with him to show the housewives what the machines he was selling can do. One day he went to a house in a farm. The farmer's wife opened the door, and the salesman went in at once to demonstrate his machine to her. "This powerful vacuum cleaner will remove all the dust and dirt from your carpets and rugs," he said. "No more old-fashioned beating with a stick, making more dust than you get out of the carpet."

"It's no use to me," the woman said "you're wasting your time here young man". "Just let me show you!" the salesman said. Then he opened a bag he was carrying and threw a great pile of dirt over the carpet. "Good Heavens! What are you doing?" she exclaimed. "Don't worry, madam!" he answered, adding some ashes from the fireplace to the pile of dirt. "I'll eat every bit of dirt that my vacuum cleaner doesn't pick up." "Well, in that case I'll get you a spoon at once," the woman answered. "I was only trying to tell you that we don't have electricity on this farm."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

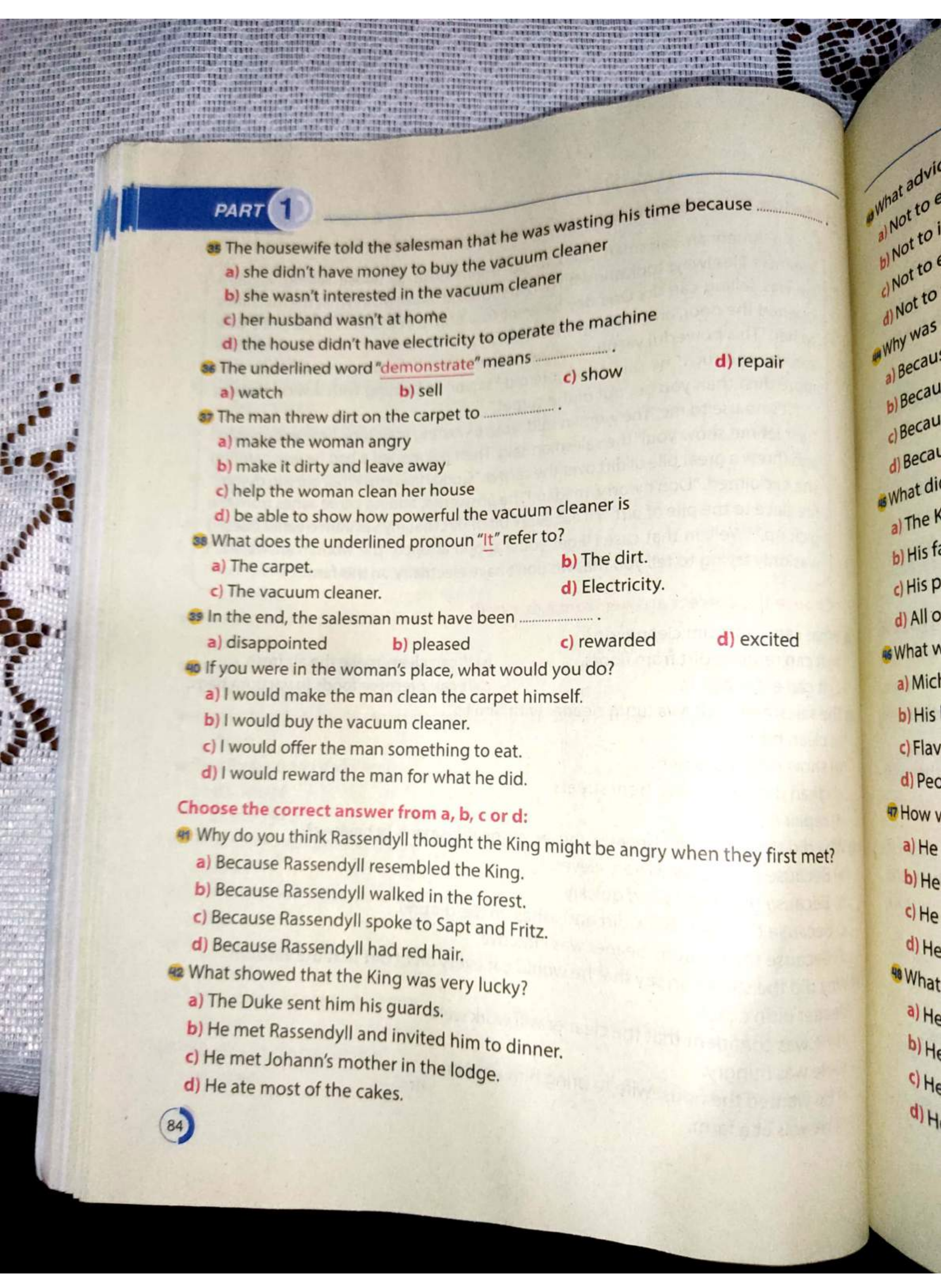
31 What can a vacuum cleaner do?
a) It can remove dirt from floors.
b) It can clean/make the air fresh.
c) It can eat rubbish.
d) It can preserve foods in vacuum bags.

32 The salesman took a vacuum cleaner with him to ....
a) clean houses
b) show it to customers
c) clean dust and ashes from streets
d) repair it

33 Why did the housewife seem surprised at the salesman's behaviour?
a) Because the man was very clever.
b) Because the man talked quickly.
c) Because the man threw dirt and ashes on the ground.
d) Because the vacuum cleaner was effective.

34 Why did the salesman say that he would eat every bit of dirt that the vacuum cleaner didn't eat?
a) He was confident that the cleaner will work well.
b) He was hungry.
c) He wanted the housewife to bring him a spoon.
d) He was at a farm.





35 The housewife told the salesman that he was wasting his time because ....
a) she didn't have money to buy the vacuum cleaner
b) she wasn't interested in the vacuum cleaner
c) her husband wasn't at home
d) the house didn't have electricity to operate the machine

36 The underlined word "demonstrate" means ....
a) watch b) sell c) show d) repair

37 The man threw dirt on the carpet to ....
a) make the woman angry
b) make it dirty and leave away
c) help the woman clean her house
d) be able to show how powerful the vacuum cleaner is

38 What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
a) The carpet. b) The dirt.
c) The vacuum cleaner. d) Electricity.

39 In the end, the salesman must have been ....
a) disappointed b) pleased c) rewarded d) excited

40 If you were in the woman's place, what would you do?
a) I would make the man clean the carpet himself.
b) I would buy the vacuum cleaner.
c) I would offer the man something to eat.
d) I would reward the man for what he did.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

41 Why do you think Rassendyll thought the King might be angry when they first met?
a) Because Rassendyll resembled the King.
b) Because Rassendyll walked in the forest.
c) Because Rassendyll spoke to Sapt and Fritz.
d) Because Rassendyll had red hair.

42 What showed that the King was very lucky?
a) The Duke sent him his guards.
b) He met Rassendyll and invited him to dinner.
c) He met Johann's mother in the lodge.
d) He ate most of the cakes.

43 What advice do Fritz and Sapt give the King?

a) Not to eat much and sleep early.

b) Not to invite Rassendyll.

c) Not to eat the cakes.

d) Not to trust Josef.

44 Why was Mr Rassendyll angry when Colonel Sapt awakened him?

a) Because he didn't sleep well.

b) Because Sapt had thrown water over him.

c) Because it was early in the morning.

d) Because Sapt kicked him with his leg.

45 What did Mr Rassendyll notice on the King in the morning?

a) The King was lying on the floor.

b) His face was red and he was breathing heavily.

c) His pulse was very weak and slow.

d) All of the above

46 What would happen if the King wasn't crowned on the appointed day?

a) Michael would be sad.

b) His half-brother would take the throne.

c) Flavia would kill herself.

d) People would wait for him the next day.

47 How was Michael wicked?

a) He poisoned his half-brother to be King.

b) He persuaded Rassendyll to be King.

c) He imprisoned Sapt and Fritz.

d) He made Fritz kill the King.

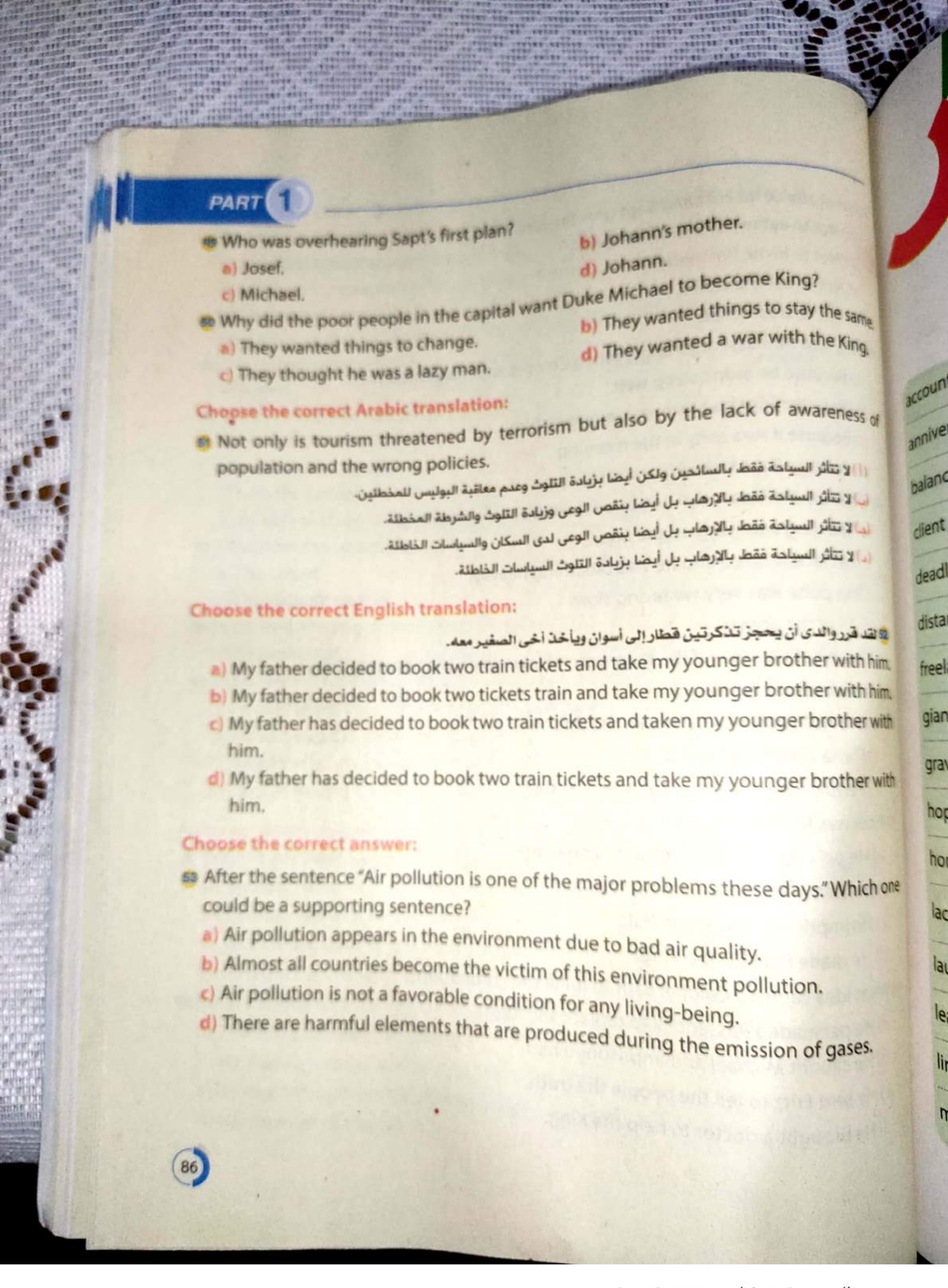
48 What idea came to Colonel Sapt to fulfill the coronation?

a) He persuaded Rassendyll to replace the King.

b) He caught Michael and imprisoned him.

c) He sent Fritz to tell the people the truth.

d) He brought a doctor to help the King.



49 Who was overhearing Sapt's first plan?

a) Josef.
b) Johann's mother.
c) Michael.
d) Johann.

50 Why did the poor people in the capital want Duke Michael to become King?

a) They wanted things to change.
b) They wanted things to stay the same.
c) They thought he was a lazy man.
d) They wanted a war with the King.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 Not only is tourism threatened by terrorism but also by the lack of awareness of population and the wrong policies.

أ) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالسائحين ولكن أيضا بزيادة التلوث وعدم معاقبة البوليس للمخطئين.
ب) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالإرهاب بل أيضا بنقص الوعى وزيادة التلوث والشرطة المخطئة.
جـ) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالإرهاب بل أيضا بنقص الوعى لدى السكان والسياسات الخاطئة.
د) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالإرهاب بل أيضا بزيادة التلوث السياسات الخاطئة.

Choose the correct English translation:

52 لقد قرر والدى أن يحجز تذكرتين قطار إلى أسوان ويأخذ أخى الصغير معه.

a) My father decided to book two train tickets and take my younger brother with him.
b) My father decided to book two tickets train and take my younger brother with him.
c) My father has decided to book two train tickets and taken my younger brother with him.
d) My father has decided to book two train tickets and take my younger brother with him.

Choose the correct answer:

53 After the sentence "Air pollution is one of the major problems these days." Which one could be a supporting sentence?

a) Air pollution appears in the environment due to bad air quality.
b) Almost all countries become the victim of this environment pollution.
c) Air pollution is not a favorable condition for any living-being.
d) There are harmful elements that are produced during the emission of gases.




Units 5&6



Key Vocabulary

account (n)	حساب
anniversary (n)	ذكرى سنوية/يوبيل
balance (n) (v) (d)	توازن/يوازن بين
client (n)	عميل
deadline (n)	الموعد النهائي (المحدد)
distance (n)	مسافة
freelance (adj)	حر/مستقل
giant (adj)	عملاق
gravity (n)	جاذبية/خطورة
hopeful (adj)	مشجع/مبشر
horrible (adj)	فظيع
lack (n) (v) (ed)	نقص/ينقصه
launch (v) (ed) (n)	يطلق/إطلاق
leak (n) (v) (ed)	تسريب/يتسرب
limit (v) (ed) (n)	يحدد/حد
mission (n)	مهمة/بعثة
organisation (n)	منظمة
regular (adj)	منتظم
representative (n)	مندوب/ممثل
separate (v) (d) (adj)	يفصل/منفصل
side effects (n)	آثار جانبية
sociable (adj)	اجتماعى
spin (v)	يدور حول محوره
stress (n)	ضغط/توتر
stressful (adj)	مجهد
suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
take off (v)	يتغيب عن العمل
take on (v)	يتحمل مسئولية/يقبل عملًا
task (n)	مهمة
tourism (n)	السياحة
weightless (adj)	عديم الوزن

PART 1

Helpful Vocabulary

accountant (n)	محاسب
activity (n)	نشاط
air conditioning	تكييف الهواء
allow (v) (ed)	يسمح
almost (adv)	تقريبًا
area (n)	منطقة
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
athlete (n)	رياضي
attach (v) (ed)	يربط/يضم
attached (adj)	متصل
available (adj)	متوفر
battery (n)	بطارية
briefly (adv)	باختصار
carry on (v) (~~y~~ ied)	يستمر فى
comfortably (adv)	براحة
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل/اتصال
decision (n)	قرار
depend on (v) (ed)	يعتمد على
designer (n)	مصمم
directions (n)	اتجاهات
equipment (n)	معدات/تجهيزات
examine (v) (d)	يفحص
exhausted (adj)	مرهق
expect (v) (ed)	
experts (n)	
exploration (n)	تشاف
fear (n) (v) (ed)	و/يخشى
flexible (adj)	
focus (v) (ed) (n)	ز/تركيز
force (n) (v) (d)	ة/يجبر
global warming (n)	تباس الحرارى
graduate (n)	رج
independently (adv)	ستقلال
instant (adj)	ورى/عاجل
interrupt (v) (ed)	قطع/يعترض
mainly (adv)	ساسًا
manage (v) (d)	بير
management (n)	دارة
minus (prep)	سالب/ناقص
occupation (n)	ظيفة
orbit (v) (ed) (n)	يدور فى مدار/مدار
particular (adj)	اص/محدد
perform (v) (ed)	ؤدى/يفعل
period (n)	فترة
pessimistic (adj)	متشائم
physical exercise (n)	رياضة بدنية

planet (n)	كوكب
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ
provide (n) (d)	يزود/يوفر
purpose (n)	غرض
quality time (n)	وقت الجودة (تمضيه مع العائلة)
recipe (n)	وصفة(طعام)
record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى/يستريح
repair (v) (ed) (n)	يصلح/إصلاح
repeated (adj)	مكرر
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
rocket (n)	صاروخ
satellite (n)	قمر صناعى
Saturn (n)	كوكب زحل
space station (n)	محطة فضاء
spacewalk (n)	السير فى الفضاء

spectator (n)	متفرج
studio (n)	استوديو
system (n)	نظام
tank (n)	حوض/خزان
tips (n)	تلميحات/نصائح
training (n)	تدريب
transport (n)	النقل
treatment (n)	علاج/دواء
unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع
United Nations (n)	الأمم المتحدة
unknown (adj)	غير معروف
waste (n)	تبذير/إضاعة
weightlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
well-known (adj)	معروف/مشهور
wheel (n)	عجلة
working hour (n)	ساعة عمل

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقًا لـ
all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم
ask .... for advice	يطلب النصيحة من
at a height of	على ارتفاع
at all times	فى جميع الأوقات
at the end	فى النهاية

book a holiday	يحجز إجازة
do (make) repairs	يرمم/يقوم بإصلاحات
do space walks	يقوم بالسير فى الفضاء
do weightless sports	يمارس رياضة انعدام الوزن
feel calm	يشعر بالهدوء
for sure	بالتأكيد

go for a walk	يقوم بالتمشية
go on a mission	يذهب في مهمة
go running	يمارس الجرى
go shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
have an illness	يعانى من مرضًا
have plans	لديه خطط
make a difficult decision	يتخذ قرارًا صعبًا
meet the deadlines	يلبي المواعيد النهائية
on your own	بمفردك
over the years	على مر السنين
reach for the stars	تحقيق هدف صعب
sat-nav system	نظام الملاحة بالأقمار الصناعية
stand still	يقف بلا حراك
take breaks	يأخذ فترات راحة

Prepositions

attached to	مرتبط بـ
available for	متوافر لـ
benefit from	يستفيد من
break down	يتعطل
compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ
depend on	يعتمد على
dislike about	يكره عن
expert in (on/at)	خبير في
focus on	يركز على
look down on	ينظر إلى أسفل
look forward to	يتطلع إلى
remind of	يذكر بـ
responsible for	مسئول عن
separate from	ينفصل عن
spend ... on	ينفق ... على
suffer from	يعاني من
thank for	يشكر على
train for	يتدرب من أجل
treatment for	علاج لـ
waste of	ضياع/إهدار لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition	إضافة	additional	إضافى
balance	يوازن بين	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصال	communicative	تواصلى
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
depend	يعتمد على	dependence	اعتماد/اتكال	dependent	معتمد
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
exhaust	يرهق	exhaustion	إرهاق	exhausted	مرهق
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافى
leak	يتسرب	leak	تسريب	leaky	مسرب
limit	يحد	limit	حد	limited	محدود
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إدارى
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictive	تنبلى
relax	يسترخى/يستريح	relaxation	راحة/استرخاء	relaxing relaxed	مريح مسترخ
save	يوفر/يحمى/ينقذ	saving (n)	توفير/ادخار	------------------------------	
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty weightless	ذو شأن/هام عديم الوزن

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
activity	نشاط	movement	idleness	كسل/عدم حركة
balance	توازن	harmony	imbalance	عدم توازن
freelance	حر/مستقل	self-employed	employed	موظف
giant	عملاق	titan	tiny	صغير
gravity	الجاذبية	heaviness	weightlessness	انعدام الوزن
hopeful	مشجع/مبشر	confident	hopeless	يائس
horrible	فظيع	awful	attractive	جذاب
lack	نقص	absence	abundance	غزارة
launch	يطلق	fire	stop	يوقف
limit	يحدد	restrict	extend	يمد/يوسع
manage	يدير	run	mismanage	يسيء الإدارة
mission	مهمة	task	recreation	ترفيه
provide	يزود/يوفر	supply	deprive	يحرم
regular	منتظم	constant	irregular	غير منتظم
repair	يصلح/إصلاح	mend	damage	يتلف
separate	يفصل	detach	attach	يصل
sociable	اجتماعي	outgoing	unsociable	غير اجتماعي
spin	يدور/يلف حول نفسه	revolve	steady	يثبت
stressful	مجهد	troublesome	easy	مستريح
suffer	يعاني	agonise	resist	يقاوم

Important Language Notes



Words with related meanings



- كثير من الكلمات والتعبيرات فى اللغة الإنجليزية تستخدم بمعانٍ متقاربة مع فارق بسيط فى المعنى مثل:

suffer	يعانى (غالبًا شيئًا سيئًا)	feel	يشعر (بألم/حزن/فرح)
exercise	تمرين (روتينى للحفاظ على الصحة واللياقة)	training	تدريب(للقوة أو المشاركة فى مسابقة)
at work	قائم بالعمل/فى فترة العمل	available for work	متوافر (مؤهل) للعمل أو التوظيف
tell	يخبر	remind	يذكر

take off

- يستخدم (take off) بمعانٍ مختلفة مثل:

- I rang my boss and arranged to take some time off. — يتغيب عن العمل
- I'd better take my shoes off. — يخلع (ملابسه/حذائه إلخ)
- The plane should take off on time. — تقلع (طائرة)
- Her business has really taken off. — ينجح

- لاحظ أيضًا المعانى التالية مع الفعل (take):

take ... back	يُرجع/يذكر بالماضى	take apart	يفصل
take in	يستضيف/يفهم/يخدع	take down	يدون
take over	يتولى عمل/يسيطر على	take out	يخرج/يصطحب للخارج/يدمر
take to	يعتاد على/ينجذب إلى	take through	يشرح/يفسر



reach

- يستخدم الفعل (reach) بمعانٍ مختلفة فى اللغة الإنجليزية منها:



- The plane reached Cairo Airport at 8 o'clock. — reach: يصل إلى مكان
- She fell while reaching down a vase from the top shelf. — reach: يمد يده نحو
- The girl's hair reaches down to her waist. — reach: يصل طوله/ارتفاعه إلى
- Temperatures are expected to reach 40 degrees this summer. — reach: تصل درجة الحرارة إلى
- The Egyptian Football team could reach the final of the last African Cup. — reach: يصل إلى/يحرز (تقدم)
- It isn't easy to reach your ambition. — reach: يصل إلى/يحقق (شىء معنوى)
- I couldn't reach my boss on the phone, so I sent him an email. — reach: يستطيع التحدث إلى

Suffix اللاحقة

ى مقاطع تضاف آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو نوع الكلمة منها:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples			
ful	تعطى معنى (ملىء بـ) أو (به)	hopeful	مبشر	painful	ؤلم
		fearful	مخيف	helpful	ين/مساعد
less	تعطى معنى (بلا) أو (بدون)	hopeless	بائس	homeless	شرد/بلا مأوى
		painless	غير مؤلم	powerless	جز/بلا قوة

Additional Language Notes



1

- **include** يتضمن/يشمل/يضم (خاصة فى القوائم)
  - The price of the trip includes transport.
- **contain** يحتوى على (داخل شىء)
  - The new gallery contains many original paintings
- **consist (of)** يتكون من
  - My new apartment consisted of three rooms.
- **enclose** ١- يرفق (بداخل خطاب/طرد مثلًا)
  - I enclosed a photo in my letter to my cousin.
  - ٢- يحيط بسور
  - The swimming pool was enclosed by a high fence

2

- **allow + obj. + to + inf.** يسمح/يدع
  - My cousin only allows her children to watch television at weekends.
- **let + obj. + inf.** يسمح/يدع (بعدها المصدر)
  - I stepped back and let the old man pass.

3

- **limit** يحدد/يقصر (يضع حدًا لـ)
  - The government made a law to limit imports of foreign cars.
- **mark** ١- يحدد (على خريطة/كتاب)
  - I've marked the pages you need to look at.
  - ٢- يحدد/يميز
  - A party was held to mark the occasion.

4

- **sociable** اجتماعى (شخص يتعامل مع الآخرين بسهولة)
  - My friend is very sociable. He enjoys parties and games.
- **social** اجتماعى (خاص بالمجتمع)
  - Violence has become a social problem in Egypt lately.

5	**freelance**	حر/مستقل	Working as a freelance photographer, my friend earns good money.
	free	١-حر (غير مقيد) ٢-مجانى	I can go with you to the cinema. I'm free today. Some restaurants offer free meals for poor people.
6	**launch**	١- يطلق قذيفة/مركبة فضائية/قمر صناعى ٢- طرح منتج معين فى الأسواق أو خدمة للجمهور	A test satellite was launched from the base. The company hopes to launch the new medicine by next October.
	release	١- يطلق سراح شخص أو حيوان من محبسه ٢- يتوقف عن الإمساك بشىء لينطلق فى الهواء	The man was released from prison yesterday. The children released some balloons to celebrate the arrival of guests.
7	**explore**	يستكشف مكان	Paris is a wonderful city to explore.
	discover	يكتشف	The Curies are best known for discovering radium.
	invent	يخترع	Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.
	find out	يكتشف حقيقة	He asked me to find out what your plans are after you leave.
8	**reach**	يصل إلى (بدون حروف جر)	We reached the Cairo Tower at 9 o'clock.
	arrive	يصل (يتبعها in-at بمعنى إلى)	The children arrived at school five minutes late.
9	**anniversary**	ذكرى سنوية	My parents celebrated their twentieth wedding anniversary in January.
	memory	ذاكرة/ذكرى	He has lots of happy memories of his stay in London.
10	**affect (v)**	يؤثر على	Smoking affected my uncle's health badly.
	effect (n)	تأثير	Smoking had a bad effect on my uncle's health.



قيادة ساعتين بالسيارة

a two-hour drive



لاحظ أن two-hour صفة لما بعدها وأن hour تأتى مفرد وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء ونحذف a

a two-hour + اسم مفرد

ten-minute + اسم جمع

طريق ذو اتجاهين

- a two-way road

طرق كل منها ذو اتجاهين

- two-way roads

فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

- ten-minute breaks

12

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن المقارنة بين موقفين (زيادة أو نقصانًا) أو (تغيرًا طرديًا أو عكسيًا)

The + صفة مقارنة

The + صفة مقارنة ..... كلما ــــ كلما

- The harder you work, the more successful you will be.

كلما اجتهدت أكثر، كلما ازددت نجاحًا.

- The more people want to buy something, the cheaper it will become.

كلما زاد عدد الناس الذين يرغبون فى شراء شيء ما ،كلما أصبح رخيصًا.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. The final match was shown on a/an .... screen outside the main stadium in the city.
a) imaginary b) tiny c) giant d) secondary
2. The Minister of Health is .... that the situation in hospitals would get better soon.
a) painful b) hopeful c) lawful d) playful
3. Experts always warn of the harmful side .... of using chemicals to kill pesticides.
a) effects b) purposes c) results d) reasons
4. Janet's been under a lot of .... since her mother's illness. She has to do all the housework in addition to her academic studies.
a) management b) pleasure c) treasure d) stress
5. The .... industry was the most affected economic sector due to the coronavirus. Most hotels and beaches were totally closed.
a) agriculture b) tourism c) finance d) sports
6. The manager asked the new clerk to finish the company .... before the weekend.
a) skills b) achievements c) accounts d) loses
7. My cousin works as .... photographer and travels to many places looking for good shots.
a) freelance b) free c) busy d) vacant
8. Doctors believe that .... exercise is vital for your health.
a) gradual b) regular c) dull d) custom
9. If we can't meet the ...., our company will have great loses.
a) end line b) speed line c) start line d) deadline
10. The lawyer apologised saying that he can't .... any more work at the moment.
a) take off b) take on c) take in d) take down
11. Customer Service clerks receive special training to help them deal with difficult ....
a) officers b) dealers c) sellers d) clients
12. Nowadays teamwork is important to a company, so it helps to be ....
a) skilful b) fluent c) ambitious d) sociable

13 The report about the new disease was accepted by the World Health ....

a) Company b) Department c) Organisation d) Section

14 Oil and water don't mix and even if you shake them together, they .... into layers.

a) separate b) ignore c) combine d) share

15 Exams are ...., so students feel under pressure.

a) stress b) stressed c) stressing d) stressful

16 Most of us work hard to .... work and family duties.

a) weigh b) balance c) measure d) lighten

17 Many people are now suffering from the stress of modern life ....

a) feeling b) fearing c) suffering d) astonishing

18 The government's main .... is to improve the economy.

a) task b) profession c) position d) work

19 One disadvantage of living in the town is the .... of safe places for the child to play.

a) leak b) lack c) lake d) leaking

20 The residents' main demand is to .... the amount of heavy traffic using the str

a) strip b) limit c) inhabit d) mark

21 There was a big concert to mark the .... of Egypt's victory over Israel.

a) anniversary b) memory c) memorial d) failure

22 My father is thinking of buying a new car because he drives a long .... to his r office.

a) gap b) space c) distance d) age

23 It's hoped that Egypt will .... a weather satellite in the near future.

a) launch b) rise c) do d) release

24 The company discovered that oil was .... from the pipeline.

a) locking b) lacking c) leaking d) blocking

25 Helping poor and disabled people is a noble .... in life.

a) career b) benefit c) work d) mission

26 He is the .... of the foreign company in Egypt. He works as its agent.

a) operator b) actor c) representative d) performer

27 It is .... to know that millions of trees are cut down every year.
a) horrible b) pleasant c) delightful d) natural

28 Astronauts are trained in some .... exercises to adapt to life in space.
a) weighting b) weight c) weightless d) weighty

29 In the past, people used a/an .... wheel to make cotton.
a) twisting b) orbiting c) turning d) spinning

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

30 When you are .... and expect the worst, your attitude is often negative and you'll never succeed.
a) optimistic b) pessimistic c) hopeful d) harmful

31 The young footballer hurt his arm in a/an .... session last Friday.
a) lecture b) exercise c) training d) scene

32 I always need some notes to .... me what to say.
a) tell b) remember c) remind d) forget

33 I'm lucky because my job has .... hours, and I can come and go as much as I want.
a) rough b) tough c) strict d) flexible

34 The .... of the research is to find out about the causes of the disease.
a) consequence b) result c) cause d) purpose

35 The waiter told me that the bill of the restaurant .... taxes.
a) consists b) encloses c) includes d) contains

36 Mr. Hany always .... his children watch cartoons on Saturdays.
a) licenses b) permits c) allows d) lets

37 Young people need help with choosing a suitable ....
a) nursery b) salary c) occupation d) work

38 My sister was punished because she rudely .... father's speech.
a) admitted b) interrupted c) obeyed d) corrupted

39 Baking a cake isn't difficult - it's just a matter of following the ....
a) receipt b) form c) recipe d) formula

40 My uncle is keen on spending enough .... time with his children every day.
a) quality b) press c) quantity d) busy

41 The tour guide gave me some .... about the best places to visit in Cairo.
a) taps b) tapes c) tops d) tips

42 Experts who .... the painting believe it is really by Michael Angelo.

a) excavated b) examined c) tested d) looked

43 Scientists are optimistic about the future of space .... although it costs a lot of money.

a) exploration b) explanation c) expectation d) exemption

44 The bank is looking for a suitable .... for the new branch.

a) existence b) destination c) location d) distance

45 We were very exhausted after a .... trip to Sharm El Sheikh.

a) five-hours b) five-hour c) five-hours' d) fifth-hour

46 Newton discovered the law of .... due to a simple fall of an apple.

a) degree b) density c) gravity d) humidity

47 Many people needed hospital .... after the accident.

a) solution b) treatment c) deal d) reply

48 Space cruisers will probably .... the Earth at a height of 320 kilometres.

a) move b) wander c) fly d) orbit

49 It's still not possible to accurately .... when earthquakes take place.

a) predict b) protect c) prevent d) protest

50 The deeper the oil well is, the .... we get oil.

a) difficulties b) more difficult c) difficult d) most difficult

51 The plan to live on other planets is really .... for the stars.

a) reaching b) arriving c) going d) travelling

52 You should .... a photo to your application form.

a) attack b) catch c) join d) attach

53 I .... you'll do better in next year's exam.

a) accept b) except c) expect d) approve

54 This opera was first .... in 1992 by a professional band.

a) performed b) operated c) pretended d) processed

55 Some people keep on destroying the environment by throwing factory .... rivers and seas.

a) waist b) waste c) paste d) haste

56 His father's sudden death .... him to leave his studies to look for work.

a) encouraged b) pulled c) forced d) discouraged

57 One of the spokes on my bike .... was broken when I hit a stone.
a) pedal b) horn c) circle d) wheel

58 Although it's dangerous, the astronauts decided to go on a .... to repair a leak on the space station.
a) spacewalk b) spaceship c) spaceman d) spaceport

59 My friend had elderly parents who could no longer live .... He has to look after them.
a) dependently b) peacefully c) probably d) independently

60 Most young people stay in .... by email or via social media these days.
a) compact b) contact c) attract d) connect

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

61 The word "revolve" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) spin b) land c) float d) dive

62 If you carry .... spending money like that, you'll end up in debt.
a) around b) on c) out d) up

63 I asked the mechanic to .... repairs to the brakes of my car.
a) perform b) get c) do d) have

64 This famous lawyer is considered an expert .... family cases.
a) in b) with c) by d) off

65 To solve the global warming, we should reduce our .... on oil as a source of energy.
a) depend b) dependent c) depended d) dependence

66 The adjective "attractive" can be the opposite of the adjective ....
a) remarkable b) convincing c) excited d) horrible

67 Our boss told us that we need to focus .... finishing the project.
a) for b) in c) on d) as

68 There was a pool of water in the corner where water was dripping from a .... pipe.
a) leak b) leaky c) lacking d) lacked

69 Everyone in the office is working extremely hard to .... the deadline of the big project.
a) meet b) miss c) have d) face

70 The verb "restrict" is a synonym to the verb ....

a) expand b) increase c) limit d) develop

71 I'm taking Monday .... to go visit my friend in hospital.

a) in b) off c) at d) on

72 Father asked us to .... still while he took us a photo.

a) remove b) move c) stand d) train

73 The word "attach" is an antonym to the word ....

a) join b) separate c) attack d) prevent

74 A child shouldn't be out .... his own at a late time at night.

a) on b) at c) in d) for

75 I think that the weather is good enough to .... for a walk.

a) travel b) go c) move d) stay

76 If you're worried about using this medicine, you can .... your doctor for adv

a) tell b) give c) take d) ask

77 Our small garden is separated .... the factory by a tall fence.

a) on b) in c) at d) from

78 A new .... system might be the solution for the company's problems.

a) manage b) management c) manager d) managed

79 It's advisable to do something .... before going to bed such as reading a b
or taking a hot bath.

a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxing d) relaxed

80 Weather satellites orbit the earth at a.................... of 2000 kilometres.

a) weight b) height c) length d) width

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young woman's singing career took .... after her TV appearance.
a) at
b) off
c) on
d) for

2 The new owner plans to make changes to the company's ....
a) foundation
b) organisation
c) association
d) plantation

3 I had to see a new doctor because my .... doctor was on vacation.
a) regular
b) gradual
c) average
d) package

4 In the experiments, the children learnt that the magnet .... out scrap iron from other things.
a) divides
b) shares
c) builds
d) separates

5 The car driver was too shocked to give a/an .... of what had happened at the accident.
a) offence
b) decision
c) account
d) result

6 On ...., the company has had a successful year because of the profits they made.
a) balance
b) account
c) ordinary
d) common

7 Some people believe that living every day to the full is a .... for happiness.
a) list
b) recall
c) recipe
d) remark

8 The tobacco companies have been taken to .... for exposing their cigarette brands to kids.
a) duty
b) task
c) job
d) punish

9 The manager prefers to keep employees at a .... He is very serious.
a) space
b) range
c) rate
d) distance

10 Criminal law does not treat traffic crimes with the .... they deserve.

a) portion
b) gravity
c) purpose
d) rule

11 Thousands of young .... were tested for the role of the hero at the new movie.

a) directors
b) applicants
c) hopefuls
d) services

12 Experts advise us not to .... into exercise without warming up first.

a) launch
b) start
c) land
d) fly

13 The famous footballer always makes sure that his private life is off .... to the pres

a) borders
b) results
c) limits
d) result

14 Many people were saved and hosted in a .... Church in African wars.

a) task
b) test
c) job
d) mission

15 Palestine is nearly the only area which is still under .... in the whole world.

a) occupation
b) profession
c) organisation
d) training

16 The museum exhibits include a widely .... collection of Greek vases.

a) alike
b) correspondent
c) representative
d) typical

17 The sudden fall on the stock market due to the coronavirus crisis sent brokers into a/an ....

a) spin
b) orbit
c) astonishment
d) loss

18 Our office is taking .... 50 new staff this year.

a) at
b) off
c) on
d) for

19 The world's soft drinks market is dominated by the US ...., Pepsi and Coca Co

a) giants
b) corporates
c) statues
d) titans

20 The young scientist devised a new product for the .... of industrial waste.

a) healing
b) behaviour
c) health
d) treatment



Grammar Revision



Unit (5)

so/such .... that; enough/too .... to

1 so + adjective/adverb + that + sentence

جدًا .... لدرجة أن

- تستخدم so قبل الصفة بدون اسم وقبل الحال أيضًا.

- The film was so interesting that I watched it twice.
- The team played so badly that they couldn't score any goals.
- I was so busy doing my homework all night that I forgot to have my dinner.

2 such + adjective + noun + that + sentence

جدًا .... لدرجة أن

such	a/an + صفة + اسم مفرد يعد	It's such a nice shirt that I've decided to buy it.
	+ صفة + اسم مفرد لا يعد	It's such nice weather that we'll go out soon.
	+ صفة + اسم جمع	They are such nice shirts that I want to buy them.

3 adjective/adverb + enough to + inf.

بدرجة كافية

- نستخدم قبل enough صفة أو حال بمعنى إيجابي، أى بدرجة كافية للموقف الذى فيه.

- The boy was clever enough to answer the question.
- The question was easy enough to answer.
- Ali ran quickly enough to catch the train.
- The suit wasn't cheap enough for me to buy.

enough + noun

- I don't have enough sugar to make two cups of tea.

4 too + adjective/adverb + to + inf.

جدًا .... لدرجة ألا

- تعطى too معنى الزيادة على الحد الضرورى أو المطلوب.

- The tea is too hot to drink.
- The suit was too expensive to buy.

- تستخدم too فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أيضًا.

- My brother speaks English well and I do, too.

ملاحظات

so much/little	+ uncountable noun	I have so little money that I can't buy the ca
so many/few	+ plural noun	There were so few chairs that we stood all the time.
such a lot of	+ plural/uncountable	I have such a lot of books that I spend all the time reading.

ملخص لما سبق

so	+ adjective + adverb + many/few +plural noun + much/little + uncountable noun		.... that ....
such	+ a/an + adj. + اسم مفرد يعد + adj. + اسم مفرد لا يعد + adj. + اسم جمع + a lot of + noun		.... that ....
too	+ adjective + adverb + many/much +noun		+ to + inf. + For someone to do somethin
(not)	+ adjective + adverb	enough	+ to + inf. + For someone to do somethin
enough/ (not) enough	+ noun ------------------------------------		+ to + inf. + For someone to do somethin





Unit (6)

Active & Passive voice المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active المبنى للمعلوم

- نستخدم المبنى للمعلوم عندما يكون الفاعل (سواء عاقل أو غير عاقل) أكثر أهمية من المفعول.

▸ The car hit the boy last week.

وتتكون الجملة فى المبنى للمعلوم من:

subject (S)	+ verb الزمن (V)	+ object (O)
The car	hit	The boy.

Passive المبني للمجهول

- نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من الفاعل:

The food is cooked well in this restaurant. (It is not important who did it.)

المبنى للمجهول: هو الجملة التى نبدأ فيها بالمفعول فربما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو هو معروف جدًا وتتكون الجملة من:

Object	+ verb to be	+ P.P.
المفعول يصبح فاعل	am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على شكل الفعل فى المبنى للمعلوم	التصريف الثالث
The car	is being	repaired

Present simple/present continuous/future simple/passive infinitive

1 Present simple المضارع البسيط

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
He/She/It + V.s/es/ies I/They/We/You + inf. ▸ People like peace all over the world.	Obj. + am/is/are + P.P ▸ Peace is liked all over the world.
Passive Negative النفى	**Passive Interrogative الاستفهام**
Obj + am/is/are + not + P.P ▸ War isn't liked all over the world.	Is/Are + obj. + P.P.? Wh-word + is/are + obj. + P.P.? ▸ Is peace liked all over the world? ▸ Why is peace liked all over the world?

PART 1

2 Present continuous
المضارع المستمر

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Subj. + am/is/are + v.ing ▸ Look ! they are building a stage in the square.	Obj. + am/is/are + being + P.P. ▸ Look ! A stage is being built in the square.
Passive Negative النفى	**Passive Interrogative الاستفهام**
Obj. + am/is/are + not + being + P.P. ▸ A stage isn't being built in the square.	Is/Are + obj. + being + P.P.? Wh-word + is/are + obj. + being + P.P.? ▸ Is a stage being built in the square? ▸ Why is a stage being built in the square?

3 Future simple
المستقبل البسيط

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Subj. + will + inf. ▸ We expect that our teacher will explain the lesson again.	Obj. + will + be + P.P. ▸ We expect that the lesson will be explained again.
Passive Negative النفى	**Passive Interrogative الاستفهام**
Obj. + will not + be +P.P. ▸ The lesson won't be explained again.	Will + obj. + be + P.P.? Wh-word + will + obj. + be. + P.P.? ▸ Will the lesson be explained again? ▸ When will the lesson be explained again?

4 Passive infinitive
المبنى للمجهول مع الأفعال التى تأخذ المصدر

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
الفعل الذى يتبعه المصدر + to + inf. ▸ We need to build many hotels.	الفعل الذى يتبعه المصدر + to be + P.P. ▸ Many hotels need to be built.
Passive Negative النفى	**Passive Interrogative الاستفهام**
don't/doesn't + الفعل الذى يتبعه المصدر + to + be + P.P. ▸ Many hotels don't need to be built.	Do/Does + الفعل الذى يتبعه المصدر + to be + inf.? Wh-word + do/does + الفعل الذى يتبعه المصدر + to be + inf.? ▸ Do many hotels need to be built? ▸ When do many hotels need to be built?

- الأفعال التى يتبعها .to + inf فى المبنى للمعلوم يأتى بعدها (to be + P.P.) فى المبنى للمجهول.

ought to	يجب أن	need to	يحتاج
have to	يجب أن	seem to	يبدو
has to	يجب أن	appear to	يبدو
had to	وجب أن	(be) going to	سوف
will have to	سيجب أن	(be) about to	على وشك
am to	يجب أن	(be) supposed to	مفروض
is to	يجب أن	needn't	لست فى حاجة
are to	يجب أن	want to	يريد
was to/were to	وجب أن	expect ... to	يتوقع
used to	اعتاد أن	hope to	يأمل



القواعد التى لم تدرس هذا العام

1 Participle clauses

عبارات اسم الفاعل

Participle clauses are groups of words which begin with a verb in the -ing form. These clause can come before or after the main part of a sentence.

عبارات اسم الفاعل هى مجموعة من الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ ing. هذه العبارات تأتى قبل أو بعد الجملة الرئيسية.



1. Use participle clauses instead of clauses starting with as or when:

• تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل لاستبدال الجمل التى بها When/As/While/After وبعدهم فاعل وفعل.

- As Sara was walking to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.
- Walking to town yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- When they arrived home late, they found that the door was locked.
- Arriving home late, they found that the door was locked.

2. Participle clauses can also be used instead of clauses starting with and.

• تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من الجمل التى تبدأ بـ and:

- The bird flew away and made a very loud noise.
- The bird flew away, making a very loud noise.

3. The subject of the participle clause must be the same as the subject of the main clause:

• فاعل عبارة اسم الفاعل يجب أن يكون هو نفس الفاعل للجملة الرئيسية.

- I heard the phone ring and I picked it up.
- Hearing the phone ring, I picked it up.
- The car crashed into a garden and knocked down a tree.
- The car crashed into a garden, knocking down a tree.

4. To replace a clause of reason (because, as, since + subject + verb).

• تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من جمل السببية (because, as, since).

- Because I felt extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.
- Feeling extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.

5. To replace a relative clause in the active voice.

• لاستبدال عبارة موصولة فى المبنى للمعلوم.

- The boy who is talking to Jim is my brother.
- The boy talking to Jim is my brother.

6. **To form the negative of participles, we add not before the participles.**

- لصياغة النفى من اسم الفاعل أو اسم المفعول به فإننا نضيف not قبلهما.

- Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.

7. **After the verbs of sensation see, hear, feel, smell, listen, watch and notice.**

بعد أفعال الشعور والإحساس السابقة لتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث وعند سماع أو رؤية الحدث كاملا نستخدم المصدر.

- I saw my neighbours leaving the house early this morning.

8. **After: catch, find, leave, go, come, spend time, waste time and be busy:**

- He was busy painting the room.
- They wasted the time playing cards.
- I left my children doing their homework.



Past participle clauses

عبارات اسم المفعول

الفعل فى التصريف الثالث يدعى past participle ويمكن استخدامه فى الآتى:

1. يمكن أن يكون صفه تسبق الاسم فى أى مكان فى الجملة.

Our armed forces are making good efforts to keep us safe.
This market sells only canned food.

2. بدل ضمائر الوصل who/which والجملة المبنية للمجهول بعدهما.

The meat eaten yesterday was delicious.
= the meat which was eaten ....
The boy punished last week had made serious mistakes.
= the boy who was punished ....

3. يستخدم التصريف الثالث أول الكلام ويكون له معنى المبنى للمجهول فى الأحوال الآتية:

١- يستخدم بنفس معنى if الشرطية.

- Taken **three times a day**, this medicine will have a good effect.
(If this medicine is taken three times ....).

٢- يستخدم لإعطاء الأسباب مثل because.

- Bitten **by a scorpion**, she was carried to hospital at once.
= Because she was bitten ....
- Left **alone at home**, Sara felt unhappy.
= Because Sara was left alone ....
- Blown by the wind, Ahmed fell to his knees = Because Ahmed was blown, ...

PART 1

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was .... delicious cheese that all of it was eaten and nothing was left.
   a) such a b) so c) such d) enough
2. My father looks .... young that everyone thinks that he is my brother.
   a) such b) so c) too d) such a
3. They worked so .... that the boss rewarded them all.
   a) hardly b) hardness c) hardy d) hard
4. She is .... to turn off all the taps before leaving.
   a) too careful b) careful enough c) enough careful d) such careful
5. She was wearing .... elegant clothes that all people admired her.
   a) such an b) such a c) such d) so
6. He is .... keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night.
   a) so b) too c) enough d) such
7. The bus is .... old to go further than 80 k/h.
   a) so b) such c) enough d) too
8. I was once .... to run a very long way.
   a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit
9. I was .... tired that I couldn't keep my eyes open.
   a) too b) such a c) enough d) so
10. It was .... important lecture that all students were keen to attend it.
    a) such a b) such an c) so d) too
11. He is .... to go out to buy food for himself.
    a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired
12. He speaks .... rudely to all his neighbours that they avoid him and his family.
    a) too b) enough c) so d) such
13. The king was .... to meet Mr Rassendyll in the forest before the coronation.
    a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky d) so lucky
14. He's got .... little patience with children that he can't be a teacher.
    a) too b) such c) enough d) so
15. It was .... big party that I couldn't speak to half of the people there.
    a) such b) so c) such a d) too

16 The bank was .... crowded to find a seat for my grandfather.

a) too b) so c) such d) enough

17 This rucksack isn't .... to get everything in.

a) too big b) big enough c) enough big d) so big

18 I'm .... of the long walk to school every day that I wish I could have a car.

a) tired enough b) too tired c) so tired d) such a tired

19 She speaks .... good English that you'd think it was her native language.

a) so b) too c) enough d) such

20 Ali's father always says that he is .... young to understand politics.

a) so b) too c) such d) enough

21 The guide didn't speak .... for everyone to hear clearly.

a) loud enough b) so loudly c) too loudly d) loudly enough

22 The music was .... loud that you could hear it from miles away.

a) such a b) so c) too d) enough

23 I had .... big breakfast that I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.

a) such a b) too c) enough d) so

24 In winter it's .... cold to stay outdoors especially at night.

a) so b) enough c) such d) too

25 Fortunately, the table was .... for all of us to sit round.

a) too big b) so big c) big enough d) such big

26 I have got .... many things to do that I don't know where to begin.

a) such b) enough c) such a d) so

27 We had .... a good time on holiday that we didn't want to come home.

a) so b) too c) such d) enough

28 Will the stadium be .... to have 100,000 spectators?

a) large enough b) too large c) so large d) enough large

29 It was .... horrible weather that we spent the whole day indoors.

a) so b) too c) such d) such an

30 She was .... to listen to anyone speaking around her.

a) too angry b) angry enough c) so angry d) such angry

31 The light wasn't shining ....for anyone to notice it.

a) enough bright b) too bright c) bright enough d) brightly enough

32 The question was .... difficult for the students that set for the exam to answer.

a) so b) such c) enough d) too

33 It is .... useful book that you can gain a lot of information by reading it.

a) such an b) so c) such a d) too

34 It was .... amazing performance that everyone left the theatre happily.

a) such an b) such c) so d) enough

35 The earthquake was .... that the entire town was destroyed.

a) powerful enough b) too powerful
c) such powerful d) so powerful

36 Which of the following sentences has a negative meaning?

a) This room is too big. b) This room is big enough.
c) This room is so big. d) It's such a big room.

37 If you drink ...., you won't get good sleep.

a) too much coffee b) so many coffee
c) enough coffee d) such coffee enough

38 There were so many footballs that I didn't know which one to choose.
Which expression substitutes "so many" in the previous sentence?

a) many enough b) such many c) so much d) such a lot of

39 "It wasn't warm enough for me to go swimming means the same as ....

a) It was too cold for me to swim b) It was enough warm for me to swim
c) It was so hot for me to swim d) It was too warm for me to swim

40 Which one of the following isn't true?

a) It was so hot that I feel like having an ice-cream.
b) It was such a hot day that I feel like having an ice-cream.
c) It was too hot that I feel like having an ice-cream.
d) It was so hot a day that I feel like having an ice-cream.

41 Do you know what language .... in New Zealand?

a) speaks b) will be spoken c) is spoken d) is speaking

42 This book must .... to the library by the date above.

a) be returning b) return c) be returned d) to be returned

43 Large numbers of people .... on the roads because of accidents.

a) must be killed b) are killing c) have killed

44 The drugs found by the police .... soon.
a) was destroyed
b) will be destroyed
c) had been destroyed
d) will destroy

45 Stamps .... at any post office and they aren't expensive.
a) must to be bought
b) were bought
c) can be bought
d) will buy

46 Animals should really .... in their natural habitat.
a) see
b) have seen
c) be seen
d) to be seen

47 Meals .... every day. They should be healthy.
a) prepare
b) have prepared
c) have to be prepared
d) has prepared

48 Drivers are advised .... an alternative route in case of emergency.
a) to use
b) to be used
c) use
d) being used

49 The milk is brought to my flat but letters .... in the entrance of the house.
a) have left
b) are left
c) are being left
d) are leaving

50 Normally this street .... every day, but it wasn't swept last week.
a) has been swept
b) was swept
c) is swept
d) is being swept

51 This dress can't be washed, it must ....
a) dry cleaned
b) be dried-clean
c) be dry-cleaned
d) to dry-cleaned

52 Fruit .... very early otherwise it can't be got to the market.
a) have been picked
b) has to be picked
c) has to pick
d) have to be picked

53 My house .... by the cameras that have been recently installed.
a) is watching
b) had been watched
c) was watching
d) is being watched

54 The professor .... by a number of reporters.
a) should meet
b) will meet
c) will be met
d) met

55 New measures against crime .... by the government.
a) will be introduced
b) will introduce
c) is introduced
d) are introducing

56 My uncle's house .... by a famous designer.
a) is decorating
b) should decorate
c) will decorate
d) is going to be redecorated

57 Hot meals are served till 10.00 at this restaurant and coffee and sandwiches .... up to 11.00.

a) may order b) can be ordered c) are ordering d) were ordered

58 Dogs must .... in the gardens not with their owners in flats.

a) be left b) leave c) to leave d) leaving

59 How many languages .... in 2100?

a) will speak b) were spoken c) will be spoken d) are spoken

60 Where is your TV set ? It has been broken and .... by an electrician.

a) was repaired b) is being repaired
c) had been repaired d) is repaired

61 The entire block of flats .... as it is very old and dangerous.

a) are demolishing b) are being demolished
c) is being demolished d) is demolishing

62 These calculations used to .... by men; now they are done by a computer.

a) were done b) do c) doing d) be done

63 Don't worry, you .... when you should go in to see the doctor.

a) have been told b) will be told c) are telling d) can tell

64 A rare Picasso painting .... at the National Gallery next Monday.

a) can exhibit b) will be exhibited c) is exhibited d) was exhibited

65 Look ! That big tree .... and I think it will block the street.

a) is cutting b) will cut c) is cut d) is being cut

66 Before printing was invented everything had .... by hand.

a) written b) to be written c) been writing d) be written

67 Please, I want to .... with those two heavy bags. I can't carry them.

a) helping b) help c) be helped d) be helping

68 This car is too old . I don't think it ....

a) was stolen b) will be stolen c) won't be stolen d) isn't stolen

69 You .... if you illegally dump rubbish in the street.

a) will fine b) must to fined c) may be fined d) have fined

70 The new office building is huge. Over 500 people .... there.

a) are employed b) are employing c) employ d)

71 The mail .... by Friday.

a) is arrived
b) will have been arrived
c) will be arrived
d) will have arrived

72 Regular exercise .... to be good for you.

a) believes
b) is believed
c) is believing
d) has believed

73 The boys try .... how to use the new computer.

a) to learn
b) to be learned
c) to be learning
d) being learned

74 What time .... into the hotel?

a) their luggage are going to be brought
b) are their luggage going to be brought
c) is their luggage going to be brought
d) is their luggage going to bring

75 His excellent behaviour .... many people.

a) fascinates
b) is fascinated
c) is fascinated by
d) is being fascinated

76 It .... that too little money .... by the government on roads.

a) is said/spends
b) is being said/is being spent
c) has said/is spent
d) has been said/is spending

77 The office carpet is so dirty. It needs ....

a) cleaning
b) to be cleaned
c) to clean
d) both (a) and (b)

78 Do not beat the dog. Let the dog ....

a) isn't beaten
b) not to be beaten
c) not be beaten
d) isn't being beaten

79 Changing the sentence "I want someone to love me." Into passive will be ....

a) someone is wanted to love me.
b) I want to be loved.
c) someone is loved by me.
d) someone wants to be loved.

80 Which one of the following is not true?

a) People claim the temple is the oldest in the world.
b) The temple is claimed to be the oldest in the world.
c) It's claimed that the temple is the oldest in the world
d) It's claimed that the temple to be the oldest in the world

PART 1

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We broke the computer .... to my father.
   a) belonged b) belongs
   c) which belonging d) belonging
2. .... to meet his friend, the boy didn't go to school.
   a) Wanting b) Not wanting
   c) Wanted d) To want
3. .... for her gloves, she dug through the entire wardrobe.
   a) Search b) Searched
   c) Searching d) Being searched
4. .... in the street, he was accused of helping the thieves to enter the shop.
   a) Whistling b) Whistle
   c) to whistle d) Whistled
5. People .... late will not be allowed to enter.
   a) arrived b) arrive
   c) to arrive d) arriving
6. .... to the bus stop, she lost her shoe.
   a) Run b) To run
   c) Running d) Ran
7. .... on their beds, the children couldn't do their homework.
   a) Sitting b) Sat
   c) Sit d) To sit
8. The man .... a blue jumper is in the garden.
   a) wore b) wearing
   c) to wear d) wear
9. .... enough courage, they couldn't walk during the night.
   a) Had had b) Had
   c) Having d) Not having
10. .... my brother in trouble, I offered to help him solve his problem.
    a) To find b) Found
    c) Finding d) Find

1 .... by the sun, the driver didn't see the stop sign.
a) Blind b) Blinding
c) To blind d) Blinded

2 The television .... twenty years ago was stolen.
a) buying b) bought
c) buy d) was bought

3 .... by the chef himself, the dinner will be a real treat.
a) Preparing b) Prepare
c) Prepared d) To prepare

4 I often buy cheese .... from Paris and Russia.
a) imported b) import
c) importing d) imports

5 Though .... in England, she spent most of her childhood in the United States.
a) bear b) was born
c) bearing d) born

6 I don't know much about the games .... by children nowadays.
a) playing b) played
c) play d) were played

7 .... by a sudden storm, they had to seek shelter under a tree.
a) Surprised b) Surprise
c) Surprising d) To surprise

8 I really loved the flowers .... in London.
a) grow b) growing
c) grown d) were grown

9 The money .... in the street has been given to charity.
a) find b) finding
c) was found d) found

10 We all praised the cake .... by my mother.
a) bake b) baked
c) baking d) was baked

PART 1

Open Book General Exercises on Units 5 & 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The mobile phone wasn't .... for me to buy.
   a) enough cheap b) so cheap c) too cheap d) cheap enough
2. They had .... terrible fight that they hate each other now.
   a) so b) enough c) such a d) too
3. He drove .... carelessly that he crashed into a big tree.
   a) such b) so c) too d) enough
4. The house is .... for her to live in alone.
   a) so big b) such big c) too big d) big enough
5. She has .... pretty dresses that everyone admires them.
   a) such b) so c) such a d) enough
6. At the beginning of the experiment, the chemicals .... in the beaker.
   a) placing b) place c) are placing d) are placed
7. If there is an emergency, a whistle ....
   a) will be blown b) was blown c) blowing d) blew
8. Electricity .... for all kinds of purposes.
   a) uses b) is used c) is using d) use
9. This lesson .... without attending the class.
   a) can understand b) understands
   c) can be understood d) is understanding
10. Our house .... so we are staying with friends at the moment.
    a) decorates b) was decorated c) is decorating d) is being decorated
11. Some research has shown that people without brothers and sisters tend to be less ....
    a) active b) sociable c) intelligent d) wealthy
12. The .... of Nile Sat 101 marked Egypt's entry in the field of space.
    a) launch b) start c) set off d) beginning
13. People usually celebrate the .... of their important events.
    a) anomalous b) anonymous c) anniversary d) advisory
14. The effect of the medicine was so strong that it made my head ....
    a) orbits b) spin c) move d) track
15. Many scientists think that sending a spaceship with humans in it is really .... for the stars.
    a) aiming b) getting c) arriving d) reaching

16 Osama was taking off his shirt when the phone rang. That means that he ....
a) was removing a piece of clothing
b) was rising into the air from the ground
c) was starting to be successful
d) was having a holiday from work

17 Michael Phelps, the American swimmer, ... many world records during his career.
a) broke b) killed c) won d) hit

18 Before the exam, a student should do more ....
a) examination b) revision c) reform d) mark

19 My boss's official .... is Financial Manager.
a) address b) title c) grade d) rank

20 It is advisable to keep meat .... from other food in the fridge.
a) close b) united c) separate d) except

21 Electric wires are usually .... and can be bent easily.
a) tough b) flexible c) strict d) rough

22 The singer is regarded as a/an .... of the youth of her generation.
a) operator b) actor c) representative d) performer

23 You should .... all the goods you buy online for damage on arrival.
a) carve b) purchase c) apply d) examine

24 Astronauts have problems moving around in the spacecraft because they are ....
a) weighting b) weight c) weightless d) weighty

25 The secretary .... a file with pictures of the company's products to the e-mail she sent the client.
a) attracted b) tied c) joined d) attached

26 Diseases spread .... much faster in winter than in summer.
a) so b) too c) a lot d) such

27 COVID19 is still .... a mystery that there is no cure for it yet.
a) so b) such c) too d) enough

28 The traffic isn't moving .... to reach our destination on time.
a) enough quickly b) quicker enough
c) quickly enough d) quick

29 It's .... to swim here because of sharks.
a) so dangerous b) dangerous enough
c) such dangerous d) too dangerous

30 Lots of new buildings .... in our area nowadays.
a) are building b) are being built c) build d) built

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people think of the Egyptians when the origin of paper is mentioned. A plant called papyrus grew in the marshes along the Nile River. The Egyptians cut thin strips of the plant, softened them in the water and left them to dry. Then they pounded them flat and laid the pieces at right angles to each other to form a mat. These sheets worked well for writing for the Egyptians, Greeks and Romans. The word paper comes from this word papyrus. Several other surfaces for writing were created by the Mayans and people in the Pacific Islands.

China was the source of what we call paper. Silk cloth with text written on them was found in the tombs. The art of paper making spread into Vietnam and Tibet about 250 A.D, then to Korea in the 300's and Japan in the 500's A. D. Papermaking continues to be a fine art in Japan. The craft went west in the 1100's by the Moors in North Africa. Europeans preferred to use parchment made from animal skin. Early European paper was made from rags, old cotton and linen until realising that wood was the correct product.

In the west, the art of making paper by hand has disappeared. In Thailand however, this art continues. The traditional paper is not really made from rice although it is called 'rice paper.' It is made from the mulberry tree. The industry creates paper for newspapers, magazines, books, paper bags, toilet paper, money and many other purposes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

31 From which of the following did paper as we know it come?

a) Egypt. b) Africa. c) England. d) China.

32 Which of the following surfaces were the Europeans using for writing before the introduction of paper?

a) Papyrus. b) Parchment. c) Snakeskin. d) Mulberry.

33 In which of the following countries does the tradition of making paper by hand continue?

a) Egypt. b) Thailand. c) India. d) Greece.

34 Which of the following statements is true?

a) Rice paper is made from rice plants.
b) Paper in Thailand was made from mulberry tree.
c) No one in the world makes paper by hand.
d) The word paper comes from the word parchment.

The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a) paper b) rice
c) Thailand d) linen

The underlined verb "pounded" in the first paragraph is similar in meaning to the verb ....

a) made b) planted
c) polished d) hit

What is the difference between ancient Egyptian paper and other ways of making paper?

a) The ancient Egyptian used papyrus while others used cotton or wood.
b) The ancient Egyptian paper last longer than the others.
c) Paper made by ancient Egyptian is worse than the others.
d) Ancient Egyptians made paper from animal skin.

38 A suitable title for the passage is "........................".

a) Ancient Egyptian paper b) The history of paper making
c) Making paper in modern times d) Using parchments for writing

39 One of the following isn't a purpose for using paper.

a) Printing newspapers. b) Printing money.
c) Making shopping bags. d) Making e-books.

40 It took nearly .... for paper making to spread in Europe from China.

a) half a century b) a century and a half
c) ten decades d) a millennium and a half

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

41 Why was it dangerous for Mr Rassendyll to go into the poor area?

a) Because Michael would be hidden there.
b) Because there were no guards with him.
c) Because people there had known he wasn't the real King.
d) Because people there were loyal to Duke Michael.

42 Why did Mr Rassendyll insist on walking through the poor area alone?

a) Because he wanted the people to see that their King trusted them.
b) Because he wanted all people to like him.
c) He wanted to show all of them that the new King is courageous.
d) All of these.

43 What showed you that the poor loved the Duke a lot?
- a) They cheered saying "long live Michael".
- b) They threw stones at Rassendyll.
- c) They had the Duke's picture hung in their windows.
- d) They stopped the coronation.

44 When did Rassendyll realise that the poor began to love him?
- a) When he heard them cheering.
- b) When they insulted Michael.
- c) When they tried to take photos with him.
- d) When they said "long live the King."

45 Who was Flavia?
- a) She was Duke Michael's cousin.
- b) She was The Duke's future wife.
- c) She was the Queen of Ruritania.
- d) She was Rassendyll's wife.

46 Who was the only one that realised that the man crowned wasn't the real King?
- a) Lord Topham.
- b) Princess Flavia.
- c) Duke Michael.
- d) The Marshal.

47 Which one wasn't true about Lord Topham?
- a) He was from England.
- b) He met Rassendyll after the coronation.
- c) He had poor eyesight.
- d) He met and greeted Rassendyll as an English man.

48 What had the Princess heard about Rassendyll that made her surprised?
- a) That he became thinner than before.
- b) That he looked more tired and serious.
- c) That he rode through the old town alone.
- d) That he had changed and looked different.

49 What did Fritz blame Rassendyll for?
- a) Pretending that he was the real King.
- b) Riding alone through the old town.
- c) Going in a coach around the streets with the Princess.
- d) Sitting next to Duke Michael in the palace.

50 Who did Sapt suspect must have told the Duke about what had happened in the lodge?
- a) The Innkeeper.
- b) Max's mother.
- c) Josef.
- d) Johann.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 If you have the right to do what you like, don't be negative towards others. You ought to respect the person you are dealing with. Let everyone express their opinions freely.

(أ) إذا كان لديـك الحـق فـى أن تفعل ما تريد، فلا تكن سلبيـًا تجاه الآخرين. يجب أن تحترم الشـخص الذى تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.

(ب) لو أنك محق فيما تفعل فلا تنفي وتعارض ما يفعله الأخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشخص الذي تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.

(جـ) لو أنك محق فيما تفعل فلا تعارض ما يفعله الأخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشـخص الذى تتواصل معه. دع كل شـخص يعبر عن رأيه بحرية.

(د) إذا كان لديك الحق فى أن تفعل ما تريد فلا تنفى وتعارض ما يفعله الآخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشـخص الذى تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.

Choose the correct English translation:

52 لقد ساهمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى جعل العالم قرية كونية صغيرة ومكنت جميع الدول من تبادل المنتجات الزراعية والصناعية بسهولة ويسر.

a) Modern technology has contributed to make the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange the agricultural and industrial products easily.

b) The modern technology has contributed to make the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange the agricultural and industrial products easily.

c) The modern technology has contributed to making the world a small global village and has enabled all countries to exchange the industrial and agricultural products easily.

d) Modern technology has contributed to making the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange agricultural and industrial products easily.

Choose the correct answer:

53 Which of the following sentences could be a concluding sentence in an essay about "school"?

a) It is said that schools shape us to become more responsible adults.

b) School is the place where we learn to read and write.

c) School life is the period that makes up most of your childhood memories.

d) We must remember that some of our happiest times have been spent in school.



Units 7&8



Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

(be) about to	يوشك أن	invisible (adj)	غير مرئى/خفى
cancer (n)	سرطان	link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/صلة/يربط/يصل
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب	mast (n)	سارى/عمود (محمول/إذاعة)
consultant (n)	مستشار	physics (n)	الفيزياء
controls (n)	أجهزة تشغيل و تحكم	pressure (n)	الضغط
director (n)	مدير/مخرج	process (n) (v) (ed)	عملية/يجرى عملية/يعالج
emergency (n)	طوارئ	radar (n)	جهاز رادار
foundation (n)	أساس/مؤسسة	release (v) (d) (n)	يطلق (فى الهواء)/إطلاق
gain (v) (ed)	يكتسب	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
horrified (adj)	مذعور/مرعوب	signal (n) (v) (led)	إشارة/يرسل إشارة
illness (n)	مرض	technician (n)	فنى (شخص)
install (v) (ed)	يركب (جهازا)	threaten (v) (ed)	يهدد
interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض	zero-gravity (n)	انعدام الجاذبية

Helpful Vocabulary

accurate (adj)	دقيق	capture (v) (d)	يمسك/يأسر/يحتل
add (v) (ed)	يضيف	cell (n)	خلية
ambulance (n)	عربة إسعاف	chemical (n) (adj)	مادة كيميائية/كيميائى
amount (n)	كمية/مقدار	complain (v) (ed)	يشكو
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار	confident (adj)	واثق
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الصناعى	connection (n)	اتصال/ربط
awake (adj)	مستيقظ	cons (n)	عيوب
benefit (v) (ed)	يستفيد	damage (v) (d)	يتلف/يؤذى
breathe (v) (d)	يتنفس	develop (v) (ed)	يطور

device (n)	جهاز
diabetes (n)	مرض السكر
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى
disease (n)	مرض
downside (n)	عيب
dry (v) (yied)	يجفف
editor (n)	محرر صحفى/رئيس تحرير
electrical (adj)	كهربى
electrician (n)	فنى كهرباء
energy (n)	طاقة
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
extra (adj)	إضافى/زائد
fiction (n)	خيال/قصص خيالى
float (v) (ed)	يطفو
form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل- نوع/يشكل- يكون
formal (adj)	رسمى
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
goods (n)	بضائع
government (n)	حكومة
graduate (v) (d)	يتخرج
infected (adj)	مريض/مصاب بعدوى
limit (v) (ed)	يحدد/يقصر
measure (v) (d)	يقيس
message (n)	رسالة
name (v) (d)	يسمى
negative (adj)	سلبى
occur (v) (ed)	يحدث
Odyssey (n)	ملحمة
poisonous (adj)	سام
pole (n)	عمود
polite (adj)	مؤدب
politician (n)	رجل سياسة
position (n)	موضع/مكانة
pot (n)	إناء
powerful (adj)	قوى
practical (adj)	عملى
promote (v) (d)	يرقى/يطور
proof (n)	إثبات/دليل
pros (n)	مميزات
prove (v) (d)	يثبت
radio (n)	لا سلكى
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
recharge (v) (d)	يعيد شحن
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
remote (adj)	بعيد/ناء
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
research (v) (ed) (n)	يجرى بحثًا/بحث
result (n)	نتيجة
science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل
soil (n)	تربة
space shuttle (n)	مكوك فضاء
spaceship (n)	سفينة فضاء
storm (n)	عاصفة
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
teenage (adj)	فى مرحلة المراهقة
test (v) (ed)	يختبر
theory (n)	نظرية
tolerant (adj)	متسامح
tour guide (n)	مرشد سياحى
visible (adj)	مرئى
wave (n)	موجة
weight (n)	وزن
wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
wire (n)	سلك

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

at the end of	فى نهاية
(be) remembered as	يتم تذكره كـ
(be) named after	يتسمى باسم
come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقة
damage our health	يؤذى صحتنا
do(carry out) an experiment on	يجرى تجربة على
fall off his bike	يسقط من على الدراجة
for the first time	لأول مرة
gain weight	يزداد فى الوزن
give advice	يعطى النصيحة
go wrong	يسوء/يتعطل
in particular	بشكل خاص
lose contact	يفقد الاتصال
prove a theory	يبرهن على صحة نظرية
send .... into space	يرسل .... إلى الفضاء
test a theory with	يختبر نظرية بـ

Prepositions

arrive in/at	يصل إلى
benefit from	يستفيد من
cause of	سبب لـ
complain about	يشكو من
famous for	مشهور بـ
graduate in	يتخرج فى (التخصص/السنة)
help with	مساعدة بخصوص
important for	هام لـ
look after	يعتنى بـ
move into	ينتقل إلى
release .... into	يطلق ... فى
remove from	يزيل من
send to	يرسل إلى
similar to	مشابه لـ
travel to	يسافر إلى
worry about	يقلق عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
------------------------		archaeology	علم الآثار		
------------------------		archaeologist	عالم آثار	archaeological	أثرى
		cancer	سرطان	cancerous	سرطانى
consult	يستشير	consultant	مستشار	consultative	استشارى
------------------------		diabetes	مرض السكرى	diabetic	مصاب بالسكر
------------------------		fiction	خيال/قصص خيالى	fictional (adj)	خيالى
found	يؤسس	foundation	أساس/مؤسسة	------------------------	
graduate	يتخرج	graduation	التخرج	------------------------	
		graduate	خريج		
horrify	يرعب/يخيف	horror	فزع/رعب	horrified	مذعور/مرعوب
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected	مريض/مصاب بعدوى
				infectious	معدى
install	يركب (جهاز)	installation	تركيب (جهاز)	installed	مثبت
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطع
------------------------		invisibility	خفاء	invisible	غير مرئى/خفى
press	يضغط	pressure	الضغط	pressurised	مضغوط
process	يجرى عملية/يعالج	process	عملية	processed	معالج/مجرى عليه عملية
promote	يرقى/يطور	promotion	ترقية/تطور	promotional	تطورى/ترويجى
prove	يثبت	proof	إثبات/دليل	proven	مثبت
remove	يزيل	removal	إزالة	removable	قابل للإزالة
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	------------------------	
survive	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة	survival	النجاة/البقاء حيا	surviving	ناجى
theorise	يضع نظرية	theory	نظرية	theoretical	نظرى/غير عملى
threaten	يهدد	threat	تهديد	threatened	مهدَد
				threatening	مهدِد
tolerate	يتسامح	tolerance	التسامح	tolerant	متسامح
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	overweight	ذو وزن زائد

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
cause	سبب	explanation	result	نتيجة
complain	يشكو	protest	approve	يستحسن
develop	يطور	evolve	decline	يتدهور
emergency	طوارئ	necessity	calmness	هدوء
extra	إضافي/زائد	additional	main	أساسي
fiction	خيال	imagination	non-fiction	واقع
frequently	بشكل متكرر	regularly	rarely	نادرًا
gain	يكتسب	acquire	lose	يخسر/يفقد
horrified	مذعور/مرعوب	frightened	calm	هادئ
install	يركب	place	remove	يزيل
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	disturb	assist	يساعد
invisible	غير مرئي/خفي	unseen	visible	مرئي
link	رابط/صلة	connection	separation	انفصال
pressure	الضغط	stress	ease	راحة
process	عملية	action	inactivity	عدم نشاط
proof	إثبات/دليل	evidence	hypothesis	افتراض
release	يُطلق	drop	hold	يمسك
replace	يستبدل	change	keep	يحفظ
threaten	يهدد	endanger	protect	يحمي
tolerant	متسامح	forgiving	intolerant	غير متسامح

Important Language Notes



Suffixes for jobs اللواحق الخاصة بالوظائف



- كثير من الكلمات المعبرة عن الوظائف تتكون من اسم أو فعل باستخدام بعض اللواحق منها:

Suffix	Examples					
ian	technician	فنى	politician	رجل سياسة	historian	مؤرخ
ist	scientist	عالم	archaeologist	عالم آثار	chemist	صيدلى
er	baker	خباز	farmer	فلاح	gardener	بستانى/جناينى
or	actor	ممثل	conductor	كمسارى	sailor	بحار
ant	accountant	محاسب	assistant	بائع/مساعد	consultant	مستشار



Prefix البادئة



- البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا.

هناك أكثر من بادئة تعطى العكس ومنها (in – im – un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Suffix	Examples				
in	invisible	غير مرئى	intolerant	غير متسامح	informal غير رسمى
im	impolite	غير مؤدب	impatient	غير صبور	لاحظ أنها غالبًا تستخدم مع الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ (m-p)
im	impossible	غير ممكن	impassive	غير سلبى	
un	unintelligent	غير ذكى	uninjured	غير مصاب	لاحظ أنها غالبًا تستخدم مع الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ (in)
un	unimproved	غير محسن	uninformed	غير مبلغ	



about



- يستخدم الظرف (about) بمعانى مختلفة فى اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

about	على التقريب	▸ They left school at about 1.30.
about	يوشك أن	▸ Samy was about to turn on the TV when his father arrived.
about	تقريبًا	▸ Mona was about ready to start cooking.
about	قريب	▸ The manager asked if the new clerk was about.
about	حول/فى اتجاهات مختلفة	▸ The students were rushing about when they saw the headmaster.



mast & & pole & tower & stick

mast

١- صارى (سفينة/قارب)

٢- عمود/برج (محمول/إذاعة)

- Every sailing ship has a mast just around the middle.
- Many tall buildings are used for building mobile phone masts.

pole

١- عمود (معدن أو خشب لتدعيم شيء)

٢- عمود/صارى (علم)

- The pole of the tent must be strong to hold it carefully.
- The national stadium has a lot of flag poles for different countries celebrating the Olympics.

ملحوظة يمكن استخدام (mast) أيضًا فى المعنى الأخير.

tower

برج (داخل قلعة أو قصر أو معدنى لرؤية أفضل لمنظر جميل)

- Every old castle had many towers which were used for guarding it.

stick

عصا أو مضرب (هوكى)

- We bought a new stick for our grandfather for his birthday.

Additional Language Notes



1 **position**	١- موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلًا) ٢- مكانة/وظيفة	The couple lay in a comfortable position. I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.
location	موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)	Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.
2 **develop**	يتطور/ينمو	Scientists are developing new drugs to treat arthritis.
developing	نام (فى مراحل التطور)	Most of the Middle East countries are developing ones.
developed	متطور بالفعل/متقدم	Developed countries are doing efforts to help poor ones.
3 **breathe**	يتنفس	The room filled with smoke, and it was becoming difficult to breathe.
breath	نفس/تنفس	Yasser took a deep breath, then jumped into the pool.
breeze	النسيم	It was a beautiful day with a blue sky and a gentle breeze.

4	**treat** يعالج شخصًا	▸ It was difficult to treat patients because of a shortage of medicine.
	cure ١- يشفى/يعالج من مرض ٢- علاج	▸ Many types of cancer can now be cured.
	heal يندمل/يلتئم (مع الحروق والقطع و الجروح و الإصابات)	▸ It took three months for my arm to heal properly.
5	**signal** ١- إشارة (تليفون - إذاعة - تليفزيون) ٢- إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء	▸ This new TV channel sends signals via satellite to cable companies. ▸ The soldiers were waiting for the signal to start firing.
	sign ١- لافتة (ورقية - معدنية) لمعلومة - تحذير - تعليمات. ٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة).	▸ There was a big sign above the entrance of the shopping centre. ▸ There are now signs of an improvement in the economy.
6	**install** ١- يركب جهازًا ويعده للتشغيل. ٢- يثبت برنامجًا فى جهاز كمبيوتر.	▸ Security cameras have been installed in the city centre. ▸ You have to install a program to start taking pictures with your camera.
	fix ١- يثبت شيئًا فى شىء آخر ليبقى مدة طويلة. ٢- يصلح.	▸ The shelves should be fixed to the wall with screws. ▸ I was able to fix the bicycle myself.
7	**process** ١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء. ٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء).	▸ Repetition can help the learning process in primary schools. ▸ Coal forms by a slow process of chemical change.
	operation ١- عملية جراحية. ٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة	▸ She's going to need an operation on her leg. ▸ The company has a new operation in Luxor.

PART 1

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1 Stephen Spielberg is the .... of the series of movies called 'Jurassic Park'.
a) seller b) critic c) director d) customer

2 A .... is an expert or a professional person whose job is to give help and advice on a particular subject.
a) consultant b) painter c) spectator d) provider

3 Traffic police use a kind of .... to discover drivers who exceed the speed limits.
a) laser b) radar c) radio d) firework

4 I complained to the gas company because the .... they sent wasn't very efficient.
a) illustrator b) designer c) technician d) musician

5 To me, ... is a fascinating subject. I like to learn the natural forces such as light and heat.
a) history b) geography c) maths d) physics

6 I couldn't continue the game with my friend as the .... didn't work well.
a) sockets b) controls c) wires d) machines

7 Wafaa tried to explain why she came late, but the teacher .... her angrily.
a) praised b) involved c) included d) interrupted

8 My parents .... to punish me severely if I got bad marks in maths the next month.
a) threatened b) advised c) discussed d) replied

9 You can call 122 as for help if there is a/an ....
a) competition b) emergency c) race d) incident

10 The British Heart .... gives all help and support for heat patients all over the country.
a) Company b) Party c) Corporation d) Foundation

11 We don't know what .... the machine to fail.
a) resulted b) caused c) occurred d) knocked

12 .... is a serious disease in which cells in someone's body grow in a way that is not normal.
a) Fever b) Paralysis c) Flu d) Cancer

13 Biologists will raise the young bears until they can .... them in the wild.
a) realise b) recognise c) release d) specialise

14 Watch this film to understand the .... of photosynthesis, how a plant makes food.
a) process b) release c) achievement d) operation

15 The .... Man is a famous novel and film about a man who could not be seen by anyone.
a) Incredible b) Diabetic c) Invisible d) Invincible

16 The area has now been .... from the list of dangerous destinations.
a) removed b) disapproved c) bought d) built

17 They are using a very powerful transmitter to send .... to the astronauts.
a) actions b) rays c) signs d) signals

18 The centre provides help for people suffering from mental ....
a) progress b) illness c) thinking d) ability

19 My brother hopes to .... experience by working abroad for a year.
a) earn b) win c) gain d) lose

20 Modern ships had no sails or ....; yet they moved at great speed through the water.
a) poles b) sticks c) towers d) masts

21 The police have found no evidence of a terrorist .... with the murder.
a) tie b) clash c) hint d) link

22 My father suffers from high blood .... and that's why he is taking medicine.
a) pressure b) power c) press d) pipe

23 All the people were .... by what had happened after the bomb explosion.
a) horrified b) pleased c) fantastic d) relaxed

24 Security cameras should be .... in local places.
a) repaired b) installed c) broken d) designed

25 It is believed that living and working in zero- .... has some side effects for astronauts.
a) temperature b) gravity c) heat d) weather

26 We were just .... to leave for the party when my cousin arrived at our house.
a) for b) with c) inside d) about

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

27 The athlete had been running and he was .... hard.
a) releasing b) breathing c) flushing d) flashing

28 The ship sank because of the .... the storm caused.
a) thunder b) wages c) waves d) wolves

29 Our neighbour, Mr. Samir, is the .... of a famous newspaper in Cairo.
a) musician b) editor c) seller d) artist

30 The development of .... intelligence will be a quality of this century.
a) normal b) artificial c) natural d) industrial

31 Companies are making use of social .... in order to advertise their goods.
a) studies b) chats c) media d) videos

32 Astronauts are trained to get used to .... in space.
a) floating b) swimming c) diving d) waiting

33 Teachers will never be .... by computers in the classroom.
a) replaced b) placed c) taken d) attended

34 Accidents .... more frequently when the roads are busy.
a) take part b) come in c) cause d) occur

35 In class, I usually get myself into a comfortable .... to understand the lessons w
a) sight b) base c) location d) position

36 Plants change the sun's energy into .... energy.
a) chemical b) chemist c) chemistry d) solar

37 You have to consider all the .... and cons of the matter before you make a decisi
a) pools b) pores c) pros d) peers

38 It is a shame that poverty still .... in some countries in Africa.
a) disappears b) exists c) includes d) involves

39 Sabry spent the last ten years of his life in a .... after a terrible accident.
a) station b) wheel box c) vehicle d) wheelchair

40 The aircraft was greatly damaged by a great sand .... in the desert area.
a) storm b) dune c) bar d) beach

41 My father says that I won't go anywhere until I get the exam ....
a) results b) resolution c) solution d) conclusion

42 The police suspected that the wife had killed her husband, but they could never actually .... that it was her.

a) improve b) deprive c) provide d) prove

43 Scientists are .... a series of experiments on animals to develop a new drug for cancer.

a) carrying out b) making c) breaking d) taking

44 One day, scientists will find a .... for all serious illnesses.

a) heal b) care c) cure d) deal

45 .... is one of the most dangerous diseases from which many people suffer nowadays.

a) Debates b) Databases c) Diabetes d) Debits

46 A/An .... is an explanation for something that has not yet been proved to be true.

a) theory b) practice c) experience d) experiment

47 The company had to .... the new washing machine well before putting it into market.

a) destroy b) test c) examine d) weigh

48 The factory was closed because of the .... of damage it had done to the area.

a) account b) calculation c) quality d) amount

49 The World Health Organisation spends a lot of money to .... new treatments for diseases.

a) exam b) research c) search d) look

50 The doctor .... the visitors to the patients with heart transplant.

a) strips b) inhabits c) limits d) bangs

51 Some people have .... more from modern technology than others.

a) won b) used c) wasted d) benefited

52 She had never imagined being able to visit such .... countries.

a) nearly b) nearby c) remote d) near

53 When my brother travelled abroad, I .... how much I like him.

a) informed b) educated c) recognised d) realised

54 The dry rocky .... is suitable for planting palm trees.
a) roof b) soil c) floor d) sand

55 The United Nations was originally .... in 1945.
a) demolished b) destroyed c) formed d) built

56 Mother always .... that she never has time to herself.
a) complains b) continues c) completes d) tells

57 Most of the soldiers had been either killed or .... in the fight.
a) murdered b) captured c) died d) hijacked

58 She was able to give the police an .... description of her attacker.
a) ugly b) empty c) illegal d) accurate

59 This training course will provide you with the necessary .... for the job of secretary.
a) skills b) skulls c) factors d) skins

60 I need to replace my mobile battery as it takes much time to ....
a) install b) repair c) recharge d) rehang

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

61 The noun "imagination" is a synonym to the noun ....
a) fiction b) literature c) fact d) reality

62 It is not so easy to send a satellite .... space. It is a difficult process.
a) for b) into c) at d) about

63 My father runs a company which specialises in the .... and maintenance of alarm systems.
a) install b) installed c) installation d) insistence

64 Something .... wrong with my car yesterday.
a) had b) came c) worked d) went

65 The street where we live is .... after the famous Indian leader, Nehro.
a) called b) built c) named d) demolished

66 The adverb "rarely" is an antonym to the adverb ....
a) gradually b) occasionally c) terribly d) frequently

67 Car prices .... particular have fallen in recent months.

a) on b) of c) at d) in

68 A balanced diet helps to .... good health and normal development.

a) promote b) promotion c) promoted d) promotional

69 My friend's ideas about jobs are quite similar .... mine.

a) for b) at c) to d) in

70 The word "separation" can be the opposite of the word ....

a) link b) division c) acceptance d) dimension

71 My cousin has .... weight since he gave up smoking.

a) got b) won c) gained d) fixed

72 Only ten students graduated .... Chinese studies last year.

a) in b) from c) at d) about

73 The verb "disturb" is similar in meaning to the verb ....

a) promote b) interrupt c) develop d) establish

74 After 21 years of marriage, our dream of owning a home .... true.

a) went b) came c) got d) fell

75 Customers always complain .... the price increases.

a) for b) about c) with d) at

76 The patient's only chance of .... was a heart transplant.

a) survive b) survives c) survived d) survival

77 I think in the old days people were more .... towards each other.

a) tolerate b) tolerance c) tolerant d) tolerated

78 A new .... site which include a great tomb has been discovered in Luxor lately.

a) archaeology b) archaeologist c) archaeological d) archaic

79 The Prisoner of Zenda is set in a .... country called "Ruritania".

a) fiction b) fictional c) fictionist d) fictionally

80 The University is doing a promising study for a new drug for .... children.

a) diabetes b) debates c) dermatitis d) diabetic

PART 1

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The lawyer is delaying the trial to .... time to prepare his defence.
   a) win b) lose
   c) gain d) save

2. Unfortunately, many health problems had gone completely off the .... due to the coronavirus crisis.
   a) radar b) software
   c) application d) article

3. I've never done any cooking and I'm not .... to start in the near future.
   a) among b) about
   c) between d) for

4. The young doctor's father was the main .... of Heart Surgery in a famous hospital in Cairo.
   a) minister b) advisor
   c) collector d) consultant

5. Unfortunately, violence has become a/an .... in many societies all over the world.
   a) inference b) diabetes
   c) cancer d) invention

6. Nelson Mandela gave his life in the .... of his country's freedom and independence.
   a) cause b) reason
   c) consequence d) respect

7. Tests on healthy people may will the .... for a vaccine to prevent coronavirus.
   a) asset b) foundation
   c) source d) resource

8. The famous doctor was recently .... as president of the National Medical Association.
   a) fixed b) fitted
   c) updated d) installed

9. The passengers went through passport .... into the departure lounge.
   a) control b) office
   c) management d) focus

10 There were no other buildings to .... the view of the valley and its scenery.

a) compel
b) admit
c) interrupt
d) associate

11 The X-ray operator must work at a safe .... in a separate room.

a) palace
b) device
c) apparatus
d) remove

12 Egypt can gain much through .... exports such as tourism, technical skill and artistry.

a) visible
b) invisible
c) visual
d) virtual

13 We left the park when we saw the dark clouds as they .... rain.

a) attacked
b) resulted
c) threatened
d) attracted

14 India has enormous wealth at one ...., and poverty at the other.

a) mast
b) tower
c) stick
d) pole

15 You should allow two weeks for your visa application to be ....

a) launched
b) processed
c) written
d) printed

16 The band hopes to .... their new album by next summer.

a) capture
b) fire
c) release
d) hold

17 The election results in any country can .... the start of a new era.

a) signal
b) sign
c) apply
d) reply

18 Tesla is one of the first manufacturers to produce a car powered by electric fuel ....

a) calls
b) cells
c) cables
d) spares

19 In ...., more competition means lower prices for consumers.

a) average
b) research
c) theory
d) experiment

20 The chain which father bought me was too long so I removed a few of the ....

a) ties
b) connections
c) contacts
d) links



Unit (7)

Passive forms: Past Tenses
Past simple/ Present perfect / Past continuous/ Past perfect

1 Past simple passive

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Subj.+ التصريف الثانى للفعل	Obj. +was/ were + P.P.
▸ Ali invited me to his wedding party.	▸ I was invited to Ali's wedding party.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
Was/Were + obj.+ P.P.?	Obj. +was/ were+ not + P.P.
Wh-word+ was/were + obj. + P.P.?	▸ I wasn't invited to Ali's wedding party.
▸ Were you invited to Ali's wedding party?	
▸ By whom were you invited to Ali's wedding party?	

2 Present perfect passive

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Subj.+ have/has +P.P.	Obj. +have/has+ been + P.P.
▸ Ali has invited me to his wedding party.	▸ I have been invited to Ali's wedding party.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
Have/Has+ obj.+ been + P.P.?	Obj. +have/has+ not +been + P.P.
Wh-word +have/has+ obj.+ been + P.P.?	▸ I haven't been invited to Ali's wedding party.
▸ Have you been invited to Ali's wedding party?	
▸ By whom have you been invited to Ali's wedding party?	

3 Past continuous passive

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Subj.+ was/were +v-ing	Obj.+ was/were +being + P.P.
▸ We were watching the match at 7 pm yesterday.	▸ The match was being watched at 7 pm yesterday.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
Was/Were+ obj. + being+ P.P.? Wh-word +was/were+ obj. + being+ P.P.?	obj.+was/were+ not being+ P.P.
▸ Was the match being watched at 7 pm yesterday? ▸ When was the match being watched?	▸ The match wasn't being watched at 7 pm yesterday.

4 Past perfect passive

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Subj. + had + P.P.	Obj.+ had been + P.P.
▸ I had finished the homework by 7 pm yesterday.	▸ The homework had been finished by 7 pm yesterday.
Passive Interrogative الاستفهام	**Passive Negative النفى**
Had + obj. + been + P.P.? Wh-word + had + obj. + been + P.P.?	Obj. + hadn't been + P.P.
▸ Had the homework been finished by 7 pm yesterday? ▸ When had the homework been finished yesterday?	▸ The homework hadn't been finished by 7 pm yesterday.



ملاحظات

1 الأفعال اللازمة (التى لا يتبعها مفعول) لا تحول إلى المبنى للمجهول:

▸ A team of explorers disappeared in the jungle last week.

2 بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تحول للمجهول وهى : have, fit , suit etc

▸ I have a shower every morning. (Not: ~~A shower is had by me~~.)

PART 1

في حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (v.+ ing) نستخدم (being + P.P.)

- I hate people telling me lies.
- I hate being told lies.

إذا كان الفاعل والمفعول واحدًا مع الفعل (let) نستخدم ضميرًا منعكسًا ثم (be) ثم (P.P.)

- He doesn't let others deceive him.
- He doesn't let himself be deceived.

نستخدم with ثم المادة المصنوع منها الشيء أو الأداة المستخدمة أو المقادير

- The kite will be made by Omar. It will be made with paper, paint and string.

عند استخدام الأسئلة فى المبنى للمجهول نستخدم by مع who, whom, which, what فى آخر السؤال.

- Who takes your children to school? (Active)
- Who are your children taken to school by? (passive)

إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمجهول وبها ضمائر الوصل who/which فيمكن حذف who/which + v. to be وترك التصريف الثالث فقط.

- The meat which was eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The meat ~~which was~~ eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The boy who was punished yesterday was mistaken.
- The boy ~~who was~~ punished yesterday was mistaken.

الأفعال الآتية يتبعها المصدر فى المبنى للمعلوم (hear, help, see and make) ويسبق المصدر بـ to فى المبنى للمجهول.

- They saw him leave the building.
- He was seen to leave the building.

ولكن إذا جاء بعد hear, see, watch الفعل به ing فان الفعل يظل كما هو به ing.

- They saw him running down the stairs.
- He was seen running down the stairs.

يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) عند التحويل إلى المبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

(catch / arrest / damage / destroy / kill / marry / burn / beat)

- The police caught/arrested the bank robbers.
- The bank robbers got caught/arrested.

Causative (Active and passive)

السببية



The active causative (have and get)

Have + object عاقل + infinitive / Get + object عاقل + to + infinitive

- The teacher had us do some extra work today.
- Please get Yasser to help you.

A) Have + object (عاقل) + infinitive

تُستخدم للتعبير أن شخص يجعل أو يتسبب أو يطلب من شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئًا.

- The boss had the secretary type the letter.
- (He asked her to type the letter)

B) Get + object (عاقل) + to + infinitive

تُستخدم للتعبير أن شخص يقنع شخصًا آخر أن يفعل شيء.

- He got his mother to buy him a chocolate. (He persuaded her to buy him a chocolate.)



The passive causative (have and get)

Have / get + object (غير عاقل) + P.P.

- I don't cut my hair. I have my hair cut.
- Do you usually get your room cleaned? No, I clean it myself.

نستخدم هذا الشكل لنقول إننا رتبنا لشخص أن يفعل شيئًا لنا.

- Osama had a house built. (He didn't do it himself - the builder did it.)

نبدأ في المعلوم بالفاعل

	Active		Tense
The mechanic	repairs	my car	مضارع بسيط
	repaired		ماضٍ بسيط
	is repairing		مضارع مستمر
	was repairing		ماضٍ مستمر
	has repaired		مضارع تام
	had repaired		ماضٍ تام
	will repair		مستقبل
	can repair		المصدر
	must repair		المصدر

دا فى المبنى للمجهول بالمفعول

	Passive		Tense
My car	is repaired	(by the mechanic)	مضارع بسيط
	was repaired		ماضٍ بسيط
	is being repaired		مضارع مستمر
	was being repaired		ماضٍ مستمر
	has been repaired		مضارع تام
	had been repaired		ماضٍ تام
	will be repaired		مستقبل
	can be repaired		المصدر
	must be repaired		المصدر

دا فى السببية بالشخص صاحب الشىء

الشخص صاحب الشىء + v.to have + الشىء (المفعول) + P.P.

	Causative			Tense
I	have	my car	repaired	مضارع بسيط
	had			ماضٍ بسيط
	am having			مضارع مستمر
	was having			ماضٍ مستمر
	have had			مضارع تام
	had had			ماضٍ تام
	will have			مستقبل
	can have			المصدر
	must have			المصدر




ملاحظات

❶ السببية فى السؤال (نستخدم do/ does للمضارع البسيط و did للماضى البسيط).

❷ السببية فى النفى (نستخدم don't /doesn't للمضارع البسيط و didn't للماضى البسيط).

- Did you have your meal prepared?
- No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

❸ وفى الأزمنة الأخرى نستخدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود فى أول السؤال.

- Are you going to have your tooth pulled out by the dentist?
- Have you had your car checked at the garage?
- Will you have your house painted?

❹ يمكن استخدام الفعل make بدلًا من have فى المعلوم بمعنى الإصرار وليس الطلب؛

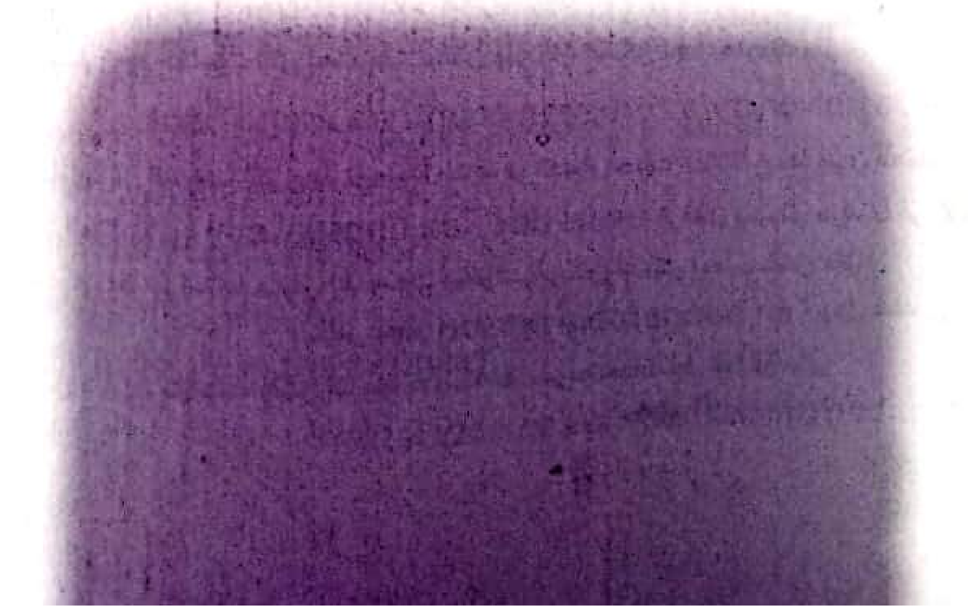
- The teacher made us write the homework twice. (He insisted that we should.....)

❺ تستخدم get بدلًا من have ليفيد الصعوبة أحيانًا.

- He finally got the seats booked.

❻ يمكن القول أن have تأتى على شكل الفعل الذى يكون فى المعلوم فلو كان الفعل به ing فإننا نستخدم having وإن كان الفعل مصدرًا نستخدم have وإن كان الفعل to +inf. فإننا نستخدم to have مثل:

- She likes cleaning her house.
- She likes having her house cleaned.
- She'd like (likes) to clean her house.
- She'd like (likes) to have her house cleaned.



Definite and Indefinite Articles

أدوات النكرة والمعرفة

أداة النكرة هي الأداة التي تستخدم قبل:
١- الاسم ٢- النكرة (أي ليس به أل التعريف). ٣- المفرد الذي يعد أو اسم لا يعد ويعامل كمفرد.
أداة التعريف هي الأداة التي تستخدم قبل الاسم لتجعله معرفًا بـ أل . (ليس شرطًا أن يكون الاسم يعد أو لا يعد أو مفردًا أو جمعًا)
ملحوظة: هذا الدرس هام جدًا في اللغة الإنجليزية فلا يستطيع شخص أن يتحدث أو يكتب جملة صحيحة إلا إذا أتقن فهم أدوات النكرة والمعرفة.

The Indefinite articles "A / An"

أدوات النكرة

a + صوت ساكن (b /d/ f/ p/ m/, etc.) قبل الاسم النكرة المفرد المبدوء بصوت ساكن.
an + صوت متحرك (a / e/ i/ o/ u) قبل الاسم النكرة المفرد المبدوء بصوت متحرك.

Usage الاستخدام

1. He is a tall boy. It's an egg. — ١- مع الأسماء المعدودة بعد v-to be
2. She goes shopping twice a month. — ٢- مع تعبيرات مثل: a week/a month/a year
3. He has bought a mobile phone. — ٣- بمعنى one لشيء غير محدد.
4. I'm looking for a flat. I want a big one. — ٤- مع one التي قبلها صفة.
5. He paid a/one hundred pounds for the camera. We need a /one kilo of tomatoes. — ٥- مع التعبيرات الدالة على الوقت والمسافة والوزن ويمكن استخدام one محلها.
6. A bird can work in a team. — ٦- عند ذكر شيء لأول مرة.
7. She is a civil engineer. — ٧- للإشارة إلى وظيفة شخص.

ملاحظات

❶ نستخدم a مع الكلمات التي لها صوت ساكن ولو كان الشكل يبدأ بمتحرك مثل:
a uniform/a unit/a union اتحاد /a university/a European country/a useful book.
ولو تأملت كل الكلمات التي بعد a وتبدأ بحرف u تجد أن هناك اختلافًا بينها وبين المتحرك umbrella مثلًا.
وتأمل المثال الآتي: a usual day / an unusual day فهل يُنْطَق حرف u في الأولى مثل الثانية؟

❷ نستخدم an مع الكلمات التي لها صوت متحرك ولو كان الشكل يبدأ بساكن مثل:
▸ an hour / an honest man رجل مخلص / an honourable person شخص موقر

❸ تختص a/an بالأسماء ولكن إذا وجدنا صفة للاسم نضعهما قبل الصفة مثل:
▸ She offered me a nice present on my birthday. It's an easy lesson.

The definite article "The"

أداه التعريف

أداة التعريف هى إضافة (الـ) للكلمة وتأتى مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.

- The woman, the trees, the music, the water, etc.

من المتعارف عليه أنه إذا وجدنا (الـ) نستخدم the مثل:

الولد ينظر إلى النافذة.

- The boy is looking at the window.

ولكن هناك كلمات بها (الـ) ولا تأخذ the وهذا هو اهتمامنا الأن لأن هذا هو الشاذ الذى يجب حفظه:

"The" is not used لا تستخدم مع الآتى

1. مع الأسماء الجمع والمفرد الذى لا يعد عندما تشير إلى شىء عام (غير مخصص).

- Trees give us shade. — تعطينا الأشجار الظل (الأشجار كلمة عامة والظل أيضًا غير مخصص).
- Water is necessary for life. — الماء ضرورى للحياة (الماء اسم مفرد لا يعد عامًا والحياة كذلك).
- The water of the Nile is polluted. — هنا خصصنا الماء بماء النيل (ليس الماء العام).

2. مع الأسماء المعنوية العامة (الاسم المعنوى لا يحس ولا يمس ولا يرى).

- Freedom is all peoples' hope.
- A lot of money is spent on education and health.

3. مع أسماء القارات و البلاد والمدن والشوارع والحدائق والجبال المفردة والجزر المفردة والبحيرات المفردة والمحطات والكبارى:

- Africa , Algeria الجزائر, Cairo, Abassia street, Mount Everest, lake Victoria, Maadi station, Tower bridge ... etc.

4. مع أسماء الشخصيات وما يتعلق بها من ألقاب.

- Tarek is my friend. Dr. / professor / Mr. / Lord / president Tarek.

5. مع كلمات school, bed, hospital, university, court, prison, home, sea, college إذا كانت للغرض الرئيسى الذى بنيت من أجله أما إذا كانت للزيارة مثلًا تأخذ the.

- John was in prison. (a prisoner).
- His mother went to the prison to see him.(a visitor)

6. مع الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والأيام والشهور والاحتفالات والألوان والمشروبات واللغات إذا لم تتبع بكلمة language.

- I speak English.
- The English Language is spoken all over the world.
- I'm meeting him on Monday.
- Football is my favourite sport.
- I prefer green to yellow.
- I usually have tea in the morning.

7. مع وسائل المواصلات by (plane/car/train/bus)



مع الوجبات الرئيسية المتعارف عليها فى أوقاتها.

- Lunch is my main meal.
- Don't call them now; they will be having dinner.

مع المواد الدراسية وكلمة work والمواد الخام وفصول السنة (اختيارى).

- We always go to Alex. In (the) summer.
- Chemistry is easier than Biology.
- Gold is more expensive than Silver.
- I go to work at 8 am.

لاحظ: أى اسم يُخَصَّص يأخذ the سواء معدود أو غير معدود.

"The" is used تستخدم مع الآتى

الاسم المفرد الذى يشير إلى فصيلة أو شىء عام.

- The giraffe lives in Africa. فهنا نقصد فصيلة الزراف وليست واحدة بعينها.
- The lion is a wild animal. (We mean all lions) = Lions are wild animals.

عند ذكر الاسم للمرة الثانية.

- I bought a shirt and a pair of shoes but the shirt is expensive.

مع الأشياء الفريدة the sun / the moon / the earth.

مع أسماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحارى وسلاسل الجبال والجزر الجمع والبحيرات الجمع.

- the Nile/ the Red Sea / the Pacific Ocean / the Alps/ the Sahara/ the Great Lakes.

مع البلاد المركبة (التى بها كلمات مملكة، ولاية، إمارة أو جمهورية).

- the U.S.A / the A.R.E / the K.S.A / the U.K

مع الأدوات الموسيقية the piano / the violin / the lute.

مع أسماء الفنادق والمسارح والسينمات والسفن والمنظمات والجرائد والمتاحف.

- the Sheraton Hotel / the UN / the Times/ the Louvre

أسماء الجنسيات وأسماء العائلات The Egyptians / The Johnsons.

مع الألقاب التى لم يذكر الاسم معها.

- the queen / the president / the professor

مع كلمات morning / afternoon / evening / shop / library / city / cinema / station

مع صفات التفضيل the healthiest / the best / the longest / the most / the shortest

مع الصفات بدون اسم فتحولها إلى جمع.

- the poor الفقراء/ the rich الأغنياء/ the young الشباب / the sick المرضى / the dead الموتى

مع الاختراعات the computer/ the internet / the radio / the television

مع التركيبة الآتية مع صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما .... كلما)

- The faster you run, the earlier you arrive.

مع الأسماء التى تحدد غالبا بالأسماء الموصولة which / who/ that ...etc.

- The thief who stole the money was sent to prison for life مدى الحياة.

هناك بلاد شاذة تأخذ the مثل : the Sudan / the Netherlands

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The man .... at the scene of the robbery, but the police suspected him.
a) is seen b) was never seen c) will be seen d) doesn't see

2 Has my parcel .... by anyone?
a) posted b) post c) been posted d) been posting

3 They didn't leave the restaurant until the bill ....
a) had been paid b) has been paid c) will pay d) is paid

4 When the thief broke into the store, we .... by the assistant.
a) are being serviced b) were being serviced
c) were servicing d) have been serviced

5 After the accident, the sick man .... to hospital by an ambulance.
a) is taken b) was taken c) had been taken d) will take

6 A large amount of valuable jewellery .... from a nearby shop recently.
a) have stolen b) has been stolen c) has stolen d) will be stolen

7 We couldn't take the car: it .... by the mechanic at the garage.
a) was repaired b) repaired
c) was being repaired d) is repaired

8 I didn't read the newspaper, it .... by the time I left for school.
a) hadn't been delivered b) won't be delivered
c) was delivered d) delivered

9 My bag was left in the classroom yesterday and it .... by the cleaner.
a) will be found b) was found c) had been found d) is found

10 All the copies of the book .... and some more have been ordered.
a) have sold b) are selling c) have been sold d) are being sold

11 I didn't go to her party because I .... invited.
a) will be b) won't c) hadn't been d) was

12 All the sandwiches were eaten and all the coffee was drunk by the guests. Nothing ....
a) have been left b) was left c) is leaving d) have left

13 The windows are really dirty: they .... for weeks.
a) won't be cleaned b) haven't been cleaned
c) haven't cleaned d) weren't cleaned

14 When we arrived home, we found out that one of our windows ....
a) is broken b) had been broken c) has been broken d) were broken

15 When I was a kid, I .... to stay up until 11 pm on Friday nights.
a) am allowed b) was allowed c) am allowing d) was allowing

16 She .... by a bus while walking across the street.
a) was hitting b) hit c) has been hit d) was hit

17 After the will ...., there were angry exclamations.
a) had been read
b) had read
c) had read
d) had been reading

18 We couldn't play as the tennis court .... by two other teams.
a) is being used b) has been used c) had used d) was being used

19 The thief who tried to get in the house was seen and .... by a fierce dog.
a) chasing b) chased c) was chasing d) be chased

20 My keys were returned to me; they .... up in the street.
a) were being picked
b) had been picked
c) have been picked
d) are picked

21 Look ! We are being followed by a man .... a big hat.
a) wears b) being worn c) wearing d) to be wearing

22 Articles .... during the sale cannot be exchanged.
a) bought
b) which have bought
c) were bought
d) have bought

23 I don't like .... by other people.
a) deceiving b) being deceived c) to deceive d) to deceiving

24 I'd like .... at the airport as I'll arrive late at night and I have much luggage.
a) to meet b) being met c) to be met d) meeting

25 Most people object to .... like animals.
a) treating b) treat c) be treated d) being treated

26 I'm looking forward to .... for the college football team.
a) being chosen b) be chosen c) choosing d) choose

27 The children are excited about .... to the zoo.
a) be taken b) been taken c) being taken d) taking

28 After the mail ...., I received it and gave it to my father.
a) was arrived b) had arrived c) had been arrived d) has arrived

29 I remember my father .... me to the funfair.
a) being taken b) take c) taking d) to take

30 I hate .... while working.
a) photographed
b) was photographed
c) being photographed
d) be photographed

31 Has the invitation .... by them?
a) been accepted
b) accepted
c) been accepting
d) be accepted

32 I have known her for a long time. She ....to me for a long time.
a) have been known
b) has been known
c) has known
d) is known

33 The main suspect .... the country.
a) was believed to leave the country
b) was believed to have left the country
c) believed to have left the country
d) is believed that he left

34 The film ....on TV last week fascinated all of the viewers.
a) was shown
b) which showed
c) showing
d) shown

35 When the teacher asked me a difficult question, I ....
a) got confused
b) confused
c) had confused
d) were confused

36 .... by his excellent marks, he wanted to join the Faculty of Medicine.
a) Encouraging
b) Was encouraged
c) Encouraged
d) Were encouraged

37 My bike which .... was brought back only when a 20-pound-reward ....
a) was stolen / was offered
b) has been stolen / has been offered
c) was stolen / has offered
d) was being stolen / was being offered

38 It .... that the victim .... with poison.
a) was thought / must have killed
b) is thought / has killed
c) was thought / had been killed
d) thought / had been killed

39 Which one of the following is not true?
a) It is believed that money brings happiness.
b) people believe that money to bring happiness.
c) Happiness is believed to be brought with money.
d) Money is believed to bring happiness.

40 Changing the sentence "We avoided people seeing us." Into passive will be ....
a) we avoided to be seen
b) people were avoided seeing us
c) people avoided seeing us
d) we avoided being seen

41 My mom always has me .... my room on Saturday mornings.
a) cleaning up
b) cleaned up
c) to clean up
d) clean up

42 Your car is making a lot of noise. You should have it ....
a) service
b) serviced
c) to service
d) being serviced

PART 1

43 The wife got her husband .... the living room last weekend.
a) paint b) have painted c) to paint d) painted

44 You should take your car to the mechanic to have the brakes ....
a) repairing b) repaired c) to repair d) been repaired

45 We had our landlord .... the broken window.
a) fixing b) to fix c) fix d) fixed

46 She couldn't understand the document, so she had .... by her colleague.
a) it translated b) translated it c) it translating d) it translate

47 We got the computer programmer .... the new software for us.
a) install b) installed c) to install d) installing

48 For their wedding anniversary, Maha had a big cake .... by a good cook.
a) make b) to make c) made d) being made

49 Your air conditioner is making some strange sounds. Why don't you have a technician .... at it?
a) to look b) look c) to have looked d) looking

50 Are they going to paint the kitchen themselves, or are they going to have it ....?
a) paint b) to be painted c) been painted d) painted

51 The headmaster got me .... overtime with the students who have dyslexia.
a) spent b) spending c) to spend d) to have spent

52 I have to have my photos ...., otherwise I can't get my passport on time.
a) to develop b) developed c) develop d) been developed

53 The teacher had his students .... a composition about predicting the future.
a) write b) writing c) to write d) has written

54 We usually have the bedrooms .... every two years.
a) to decorate b) decorate c) been decorated d) redecorated

55 I should get Omar .... me a train ticket when he goes to get his.
a) buy b) buying c) to buy d) be bought

56 "Did George repair your roof?" "No, we had it .... by a builder that he knows."
a) done b) did c) to do d) do

57 Just wait here. I'll have someone .... your suitcases up to your room.
a) bring b) has brought c) to bring d) brought

58 I'm going to do my food shopping online and I'm going to have the food .... to my house.
a) delivering b) to deliver c) deliver d) delivered

59 We've got to get our neighbours .... having loud parties every weekend.

a) stop b) stopping c) to stop d) stopped

60 We had the wardrobe .... by a carpenter and he said it was worth over 3 thousand pounds.

a) to value b) value c) been valued d) valued

61 My parents had me .... English for two hours every day and now I'm an excellent student.

a) to study b) study c) studying d) studied

62 If you can't see properly, you should have your eyes ....

a) test b) been tested c) tested d) to test

63 My little girl got us .... her stay overnight at her friend's place.

a) to let b) let c) lets d) letting

64 We should have the pool .... before the summer begins. It's looking dirty.

a) to clean b) cleaning c) cleaned d) clean

65 Have your friend .... me if he has any other questions.

a) to call b) call c) calling d) called

66 I got my parents .... into a new flat.

a) to move b) move c) moved d) moving

67 After the car accident, the driver had to have his nose .... and looked as he did before.

a) reshape b) reshaped c) to reshape d) reshaping

68 Instead of buying a new car, why don't you have your old one ....?

a) fix b) fixing c) to fix d) fixed

69 I think you should have your doctor .... at that cut on your arm. It looks serious.

a) looks b) look c) to look d) looked

70 Sarah isn't making her own wedding dress, she's having it .... by a designer in Italy.

a) made b) to make c) makes d) had made

71 'My god! Have you seen Mona? She ....

a) has got her leg to break

b) has got someone to break her leg

c) has had someone break her leg

d) has had her leg broken

72 I got the students to stop sleeping in class. This means I .... them.

a) forced b) persuaded c) punished d) blamed

73 My mom had the curtains changed. This means that ....

a) she changed them herself
b) someone persuaded her to change them
c) someone changed them for her
d) she changed them for someone

74 My sister got the dresses delivered to the customers. This means ....

a) she asked the customers to take the dresses
b) someone delivered them
c) the customers got the dresses themselves
d) she delivered them herself

75 Mr. Osama made his students .... the homework twice.

a) to write b) writing c) wrote d) write

76 The poor harvest caused prices .... sharply.

a) to rise b) rise c) rising d) risen

77 Look at Hadir's fair hair. She has had it ....

a) dye b) to dye c) to be dyed d) dyed

78 My brother .... the mechanic .... his car yesterday.

a) had / to repair
b) got / to repair
c) got / repair
d) had / repairing

79 "Do you know where I can ....?"

a) clean a suit
b) get a suit cleaned
c) have a suit clean
d) have cleaned a suit

80 Which one of the following is not true?

a) Ahmed got his car repaired.
b) Ahmed had his car repaired.
c) Ahmed had a mechanic to repair his car.
d) Ahmed got a mechanic to repair his car.

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is .... custom to give presents at birthdays.

a) a b) an
c) the d) no article

2 Don't go out in .... rain without an umbrella.

a) a b) an
c) the d) no article

3 Would you like .... glass of milk?

a) a b) an
c) some d) no article

4 They saw a white lion and .... elephant in the safari park.

a) a b) an
c) the d) no article

5 Don't stay in that hotel .... beds are very uncomfortable.

a) a b) an
c) the d) no article

6 Ahmed gave me .... useful information about applying to universities.

a) a b) an
c) any d) no article

7 You know, there's .... excellent film on TV tonight.

a) a b) an
c) the d) no article

8 We've got a house near .... sea.

a) one b) an
c) the d) no article

9 .... children have gone to the playground.

a) A b) An
c) The d) No article

10 .... Latin language is hardly used now.

a) A b) An
c) The d) No article

PART 1

11 I want to buy .... piano, but I can't play it.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

12 Two of the biggest problems facing our society are .... crime and unemployment.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

13 The Tower of London is .... popular tourist attraction.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

14 .... Burj AlArab Airport is in .... Western Egypt.

a) —/—
b) The/—
c) —/the
d) The/the

15 He was .... only person to disagree.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

16 Anna was born in .... Italy but she lives in .... ARE now.

a) —/—
b) —/the
c) the/—
d) the/the

17 Are you interested in art or .... architecture?

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

18 The other day the fire brigade had to go to .... prison to put out the fire.

a) a
b) an
c) the
d) no article

19 Which of the following sentence is incorrect?

a) The sky is blue.
b) The earth is round.
c) The moon shines by night.
d) A sky is blue.

20 The article "the" is used ....

a) to make something specific
b) to make things general
c) has no use or meaning
d) to make a thing real

Open Book General Exercises on Units 7 & 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I was young, my parents always made me .... to school as the bus was always late.
a) walk b) walking c) to walk d) walked

2 He didn't take part in the conference because he .... informed.
a) has been b) hadn't been c) isn't d) won't be

3 Where did you get your car ....? We're looking for a good mechanic to fix our car.
a) to repair b) repair c) repaired d) repairing

4 The new contract .... signed yet.
a) hasn't been b) was c) will be d) is

5 The students got the teacher .... their test until the following week.
a) will postpone b) postponed c) postpone d) to postpone

6 All the students .... about the next trip to the museum recently.
a) have told b) have been told c) are told d) were told

7 Ali needs to have his computer .... out for viruses.
a) to check b) check c) checking d) checked

8 Osama had to have his mobile phone .... after he dropped it in the water.
a) to fix b) fix c) fixed d) fixing

9 While the room ...., Hala found her gold ring.
a) was cleaning b) was being cleaned c) was cleaned d) cleaning

10 As she finishes her work late , she has got her husband .... after their children.
a) look b) to look c) looking d) looked

11 The fire station staff are trained to be always ready when there is a/an ....
a) event b) emergency c) competition d) incident

12 Mary .... the teacher to ask about the date of the monthly exam.
a) ignored b) annoyed c) interpreted d) interrupted

13 .... is a disease in which the body cannot control the level of sugar in the blood.
a) Cancer b) Diabetes c) Hepatitis d) Dermatitis

14 A good teacher is the one who actively involves his students in the learning ....
a) process b) destination c) consolidation d) operation

15 One of the following isn't a meaning of the word "invisible".

a) disguised b) hidden c) obvious d) unseen

16 I thought I had finally cured him of this annoying habit. "Cured" here means ....

a) stopped him from behaving badly

b) treating him from an illness.

c) moved him from one place to another.

d) made him feel happy

17 My little sister Naglaa was named .... our grandmother.

a) at b) after c) at d) for

18 My friend's father works as an economic .... for an important company.

a) consultant b) partner c) professor d) customer

19 Now, there are special devices which train new astronauts on loss of ....

a) gravity b) waiting c) spin d) air

20 The scientists are trying to find a .... for Alzheimer's Disease.

a) treat b) care c) cure d) pain

21 Samia's parents .... have meetings with the teachers at her school.

a) totally b) gradually c) slowly d) regularly

22 Terrorist actions aim at giving out the wrong .... to investors.

a) note b) ray c) sign d) signal

23 Every school playground has a tall .... on which the Egyptian flag is hung.

a) sword b) stick c) tower d) mast

24 Reforming education is one of the most important issues on the Egyptian government's ....

a) laser b) radar c) beam d) device

25 We had an opportunity to meet some actors and film .... when we visited the film studios in 6th October City.

a) audience b) critics c) directors d) workers

26 I had to walk to work while my car ....

a) is repaired b) was repaired

c) had been repaired d) was being repaired

27 Don't worry, the kids .... and they are satisfied now.

a) were feeding b) had already fed

c) have already been fed d) have already fed

My brother was happy as his wallet ....

a) has been found
b) had been found
c) was finding
d) wasn't found

When you saw me yesterday, I was having my car ....

a) repair
b) was repaired
c) to repair
d) repaired

The teacher had the students .... the homework twice as a kind of punishment.

a) do
b) to do
c) doing
d) done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many great inventions are initially greeted with ridicule and disbelief. The invention of the airplane was no exception. Although many people who heard about the first flight on December 17, 1903 were excited and impressed, others reacted with a lot of laughter. Some people called Wilbur and Orville Wright, the inventors of the first flying machine, fools. Negative reactions, however, did not stop the Wrights. Driven by their desire to succeed, they continued their experiments.

Orville and Wilbur Wright had always had a great interest in flying and mechanics. As young boys, they earned money by making and selling kites and mechanical toys. Later, they designed a newspaper-folding machine, built a printing press, and operated a bicycle-repair shop. In 1900 and 1901, the Wrights tested various gliders. In 1903 the Wrights built their first airplane, which cost less than 1,000 dollars. They even designed and made a lightweight petrol engine to power the plane. When they started the engine on December 17, the airplane shook wildly before taking off. The plane managed to fly for 12 seconds, and it flew 120 feet.

By 1905, the Wrights had perfected the first airplane that could turn, circle, and remain in flight for half an hour at a time. Others had flown in balloons and gliders, but the Wright brothers were the first to build a full-size machine that could fly under its own power. As the contributors of one of the most outstanding engineering achievements in history, the Wright brothers are accurately called the fathers of aviation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

31 The idea of flying an aircraft was .... to some people.

a) boring
b) distasteful
c) exciting
d) needless

32 The first flying machine the Wright Brothers made flew for ....

a) half an hour
b) 12 seconds
c) 120 seconds
d) 1000 seconds

33 Some people thought that the Wright brothers had .... when they made the first machine.

a) acted without thinking
b) been negatively influenced
c) been too careful
d) been mistaken

34 What did the Wright brothers design in addition to the first aircraft?

a) A printing press.
b) A newspaper-folding machine.
c) A bike.
d) A rocket.

35 Why did the Wrights designed a petrol engine?

a) To sell it to factories.
b) To use it in their airplane.
c) To power their bikes.
d) To make kites.

36 The underlined word 'power' is similar in meaning to ....

a) run
b) change
c) modify
d) design

37 What was the problem of their first flying machine?

a) It didn't start.
b) It burnt.
c) It couldn't leave the ground.
d) It shook wildly.

38 What is the suitable title for the passage?

a) The fathers of aviation.
b) The first plane.
c) How to learn flying.
d) How to invent things.

39 What do you think made the Wright Brothers successful in life?

a) Their low skills.
b) Their family's help.
c) Money.
d) Their persistence and hard work.

40 What does the underlined pronoun 'its' refer to?

a) The petrol engine.
b) The flying machine.
c) The printing press.
d) The glider.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

41 Why did Colonel Sapt suggest that Rassendyll return to the capital?

a) To meet the real King.
b) To kill Michael.
c) To continue pretending to be the King.
d) To save Fritz from Michael.

5. Which one of the following wasn't right about Michael and his men?
   a) They couldn't declare that Rassendyll wasn't the real King.
   b) They wanted to kill Rassendyll and bring the King to his place.
   c) They couldn't kill the King as long as Rassendyll was still in Strelsau.
   d) They wanted to get rid of both the King and Rassendyll.
6. What would happen if the real King was killed?
   a) Michael would be king.
   b) Flavia would be a queen.
   c) Michael would tell people the truth.
   d) Rassendyll would stay king forever.
7. Why were Michael's men carrying spades?
   a) To cover the blood on the floor.
   b) To bury Josef's body.
   c) To destroy the hunting lodge.
   d) To fight Rassendyll and his men.
8. Why was Rasssendyll injured in his finger?
   a) He caught his finger in a door.
   b) One of Michael's men shot him.
   c) One of Michael's men cut it with a sword.
   d) It was twisted while fighting.
6. Where did Sapt and Rassendyll stop on their way back to the capital?
   a) At a farm.
   b) At the gate.
   c) At the Inn.
   d) At the castle.
7. What did they ask the former for?
   a) Money.
   b) Food.
   c) Protection.
   d) Medicine.
8. Who came to see the King after his injury in the castle?
   a) Flavia's servant.
   b) Flavia.
   c) Michael.
   d) Sapt's servant.
9. Who was the servant Rassendyll used replacing?
   a) Johann.
   b) Freyler.
   c) Josef.
   d) Fritz.
10. What do you know about Michael's six men?
   a) They were six special soldiers who Michael kept in his house.
   b) They were completely loyal to Michael.
   c) Three were from Ruritania and three were foreigners.
   d) All of these.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 The smart car sounds like a great invention in our modern age. It can tell the motorist which way he/she should take. Moreover, it defines the problem and gives the solution.

أ) أن صوت السيارة الذكية اختراعا رائعا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار الموتور بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها وعلاوة على ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

ب) تبدو السيارة الذكية اختراعا رائعا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار الموتور بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها/تسلكها ومع ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

جـ) تبدو السيارة الذكية اختراعا رائعا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار السائق بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها/تسلكها وعلاوة على ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

د) تبدو السيارة الجميلة اختراعا رائعا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار السائق بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها/تسلكها وعلاوة على ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

Choose the correct English translation:

52 لقد تأثرت السياحة فى كل أنحاء العالم تأثرا بالغا بالأعمال الإرهابية الجبانة والأمراض الفتاكة مثل فيروس كورونا المستجد وتحاول كل بلد جاهدة أن تجد حلولا لهذه العقبات.

a) Tourism everywhere has been affected great effect by cowardly terrorism and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.

b) Tourism in all parts of the world has been severely affected by cowardly terrorist acts and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.

c) Tourism in all parts of the world has affected severely by cowardly terrorism actions and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.

d) Tourism everywhere has been affected severe effects by cowardly terrorist actions and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.

Choose the correct answer:

53 After the sentence "Global warming is the increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere." Which one could be a supporting sentence?

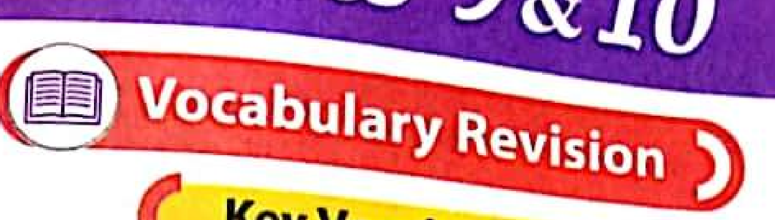
a) Plants use carbon dioxide to prepare their food and release oxygen.

b) Global warming can have disastrous effects on Earth.

c) Global warming is caused by the rise in carbon dioxide levels in the atmosphere, which leads to an increase in temperature.

d) Planting trees can reduce the carbon dioxide levels in the atmosphere.

Units 9 & 10



Vocabulary Revision



Key Vocabulary

ambassador (n)	سفير	grain (n)	قمح/ ذرة رمل
applicant (n)	متقدم للوظيفة	Mandarin (n)	اللغة الصينية
appointment (n)	موعد	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/ الحى
candidate (n)	مرشح	pharmacy (n)	صيدلية
choir (n)	الكورال (مجموعة مغنيين)	president (n)	رئيس الدولة
conscientious (adj)	ذو ضمير حى/ مُجد	product (n)	منتَج
CV (Curriculum Vitae)	السيرة الذاتية	reputation (n)	سمعة/ شهرة
daycare centre (n)	مركز رعاية نهارى	sales (n)	مبيعات
established (adj)	ثابت/ ذو مكانة	sociable (adj)	اجتماعى (شخص)
fellow (n)	رجل/ رفيق	throughout (prep)	عبر/ خلال
fluent (adj)	طليق/ فصيح	toiler (n)	كادح/ سائر بصعوبة
grade (n)	درجة/ تقدير	will (n) (v)	وصية/ يوصى بـ

Helpful Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	ambitious (adj)	طموح
academic (adj)	أكاديمى	area (n)	منطقة/ مساحة
accept (v) (ed)	يقبل	athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
achievement (n)	إنجاز	attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
activities (n)	أنشطة	award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة/ وسام/ يمنح
aged (adj)	فى عمر	biology (n)	علم الأحياء
agent (n)	وكيل/ موظف	blow (v)	تهب
ambition (n)	طُموح	care (v) (d)	يهتم



chemistry (n)	كيمياء
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل بـ/ اتصال
continent (n)	قارة
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ ينتج/يبدع
crop (n)	محصول
customer service (n)	خدمة العملاء
degree (n)	درجة جامعية
details (n)	تفاصيل
diplomat (n)	دبلوماسي
disabled (adj)	معاق
document (n)	وثيقة
experience (n)	خبرة
express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن
feelings (n)	مشاعر
fresh water (n)	مياه عذبة
frozen (n)	متجمد
get on (v)	ينسجم
hostel (n)	نزل/ بيت شباب
information technology (n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
inquire (v) (d)	يستفسر
interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة/ يجرى مقابلة
intonation (n)	نبرة صوت
job title	مسمى وظيفى
landform (n)	شكل الأرض/ تضاريس
leader (n)	قائد
licence (n)	رخصة
meaning (n)	معنى
midnight (n)	منتصف الليل
missing (adj)	مفقود/ مفتقد

object (n)	شيء
offer (v) (ed)	يعرض
official (adj) (n)	رسمى/ موظف رسمى
paraphrase (v) (d)	يعيد صياغة
particular (adj)	خاص
personification (n)	تشخيص
personnel (n)	هيئة العاملين
physical (adj)	مادى
population (n)	السكان
profession (n)	مهنة
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
qualities (n)	صفات/ خصائص
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى
representative (n)	مندوب
result (n)	نتيجة
sales assistant	بائع
share (v) (d)	يشارك
shocked (adj)	مصدوم
skill (n)	مهارة
specialise (v) (d)	يتخصص
surprising (adj)	مدهش
task (n)	مهمة
teenager (n)	مراهق
verse (n)	بيت شعرى
voluntary (adj)	تطوعى
volunteering (n)	تطوع
well-organised (adj)	منظم جيدا
wheat (n)	قمح

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

at the present time	فى الوقت الحالى
become friends	يتصادق
do a course in	يدرس مقررًا فى
do the accounts	يقوم (يتولى) الحسابات
gain experience	يكتسب خبرة
have a degree in	لديه شهادة فى
have a driving licence	يحمل رخصة قيادة
have in common	لديهم أشياء مشتركة
in vain	بلا جدوى
make a note	يدون ملاحظات
make an appointment	يرتب موعدًا
on time	فى الوقت المحدد
the same activity as	نفس النشاط كـ
turn red	يتحول للون الأحمر

Prepositions

ambassador to	سفير لـ
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ
award for	جائزة على
candidate for	مرشح لـ
care about/for	يهتم بـ
effective at	مؤثر/ فعال فى
fluent in	طليق فى
focus on	يركز على
graduate from	يتخرج من
result of	نتيجة لـ
talk about	يتحدث عن
translate into	يترجم إلى
use of	استخدام لـ
work as	يعمل كـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	ينجز/ يتم	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
affect	يؤثر على	effect		effective	مؤثر/ فعّال
----------------------------		conscience	ضمير	conscientious	ذو ضمير حى/ مُجد
explain	يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	مفسر
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
freeze	يجمد/يتجمد	freezing	تجميد	frozen	متجمد
----------------------------		fluency	طلاقة/ فصاحة	fluent	طليق/ فصيح
----------------------------		neighbourhood neighbour	الجيرة/ الحى جار	neighbourly	حسن الجوار/ ودى
personify	يشخص	personification	تشخيص	----------------------------	
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	اقناع	persuasive	مقنع
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	مسترخ/مريح مريح
----------------------------		skill	مهارة	skilled/ skillful	بارع/ ماهر
specialise	يتخصص	specialisation specialist	اختصاص/ تخصص اخصائى	specialised	متخصص
toil	يكدح/ يسير بصعوبة	toiler	كادح/ سائر بصعوبة	----------------------------	

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
academic	أكاديمى	scholastic	ignorant	جاهل
ambitious	طموح	enthusiastic	content	راضٍ/قنوع
choir	الكورال	chorus	soloist	مؤدى منفرد
conscientious	ذو ضمير حى/ مُجد	honest	dishonest	غير مجتهد
create	ينتج	construct	demolish	يهدم
expert	خبير	professional	amateur	هاوٍ
explain	يفسر	illustrate	conceal	يخفى
fluent	طليق/ فصيح	eloquent	hesitant influent	متردد غير فصيح
grade	درجة/ تقدير	standard	disorganisation	عدم تنظيم
member	عضو/ فرد	representative	opponent	خصم
persuade	يقنع	convince	discourage	يثبط العزيمة
reputation	سمعة/ شهرة	fame	unimportance	عدم أهمية
shape	شكل	form	difference	اختلاف
skill	مهارة	proficiency	inability	عدم قدرة
sociable	اجتماعى (شخص)	neighbourly	unfriendly	غير لطيف
statement	بيان	announcement	question	استجواب
toil	يكدح	sweat	relax	يسترخى
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ



Important Language Notes

Word family

بعض الكلمات تشتق من كلمات أخرى باستخدام اللاحقة (suffix) التى تحول الفعل إلى اسم أو صفة مثل التالى:

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
account	يفسر/يقدم بيانات	account accountant	حساب محاسب	accountable	يمكن حسابه
apply	يتقدم بطلب	applicant application	متقدم لوظيفة طلب وظيفة	------------------------	
consult	يستشير	consultant	مستشار	consultative	استشارى
assist		assistant	مساعد	------------------------	
------------------------		reputation	سمعة	reputable	محترم لعمله الجيد
------------------------		profession	مهنة	professional	مهنى/ احترافى
appoint	يحدد وقت	appointment	موعد	------------------------	
------------------------		conscience	ضمير	conscientious	ذو ضمير حى
qualify	يؤهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	possessive	تملكى/ خاص بالملكية
achieve	يحقق/ ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن إنجازه
permit	يسمح	permission	إذن/ تصريح	permitted	مسموح

Abbreviations

- هناك بعض الاختصارات المتفق عليها فى عالم الوظائف والأعمال مثل:

B.Sc.	bachelor of science	بكالوريوس فى العلوم
BA	bachelor of arts	بكالوريوس (درجة جامعية)
CV	curriculum vitae	السيرة الذاتية
DOB	date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
F/T	full time	كامل الوقت
GSEC	General Secondary Education Certificate	شهادة الثانوية العامة
IT	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
M.Sc.	Master of science	درجة الماجستير فى العلوم
P/T	part time	بعض الوقت/ جزء من الوقت
PhD	doctor of philosophy	درجة الدكتوراه فى الفلسفة

blow/ fall/ pour/ rise/ set

blow
- A strong wind was blowing across the area. تهب (الرياح)

fall
- We were having a picnic when the rain started to fall. يسقط (المطر)

pour
- The thunder and lightning stopped, but it continued to pour. ينهمر/ يسقط بشدة(المطر)

rise
- As the sun rose in the sky the temperature climbed. تشرق (الشمس)

set
- We sat on the beach and watched the sun set. تغرب (الشمس)



blizzard/ downpour/ gale

blizzard
- Roads were closed due to severe blizzards. عاصفة ثلجية

downpour
- A sudden downpour made us run for shelter and the river was very high. هطول أمطار (مطر غزير)

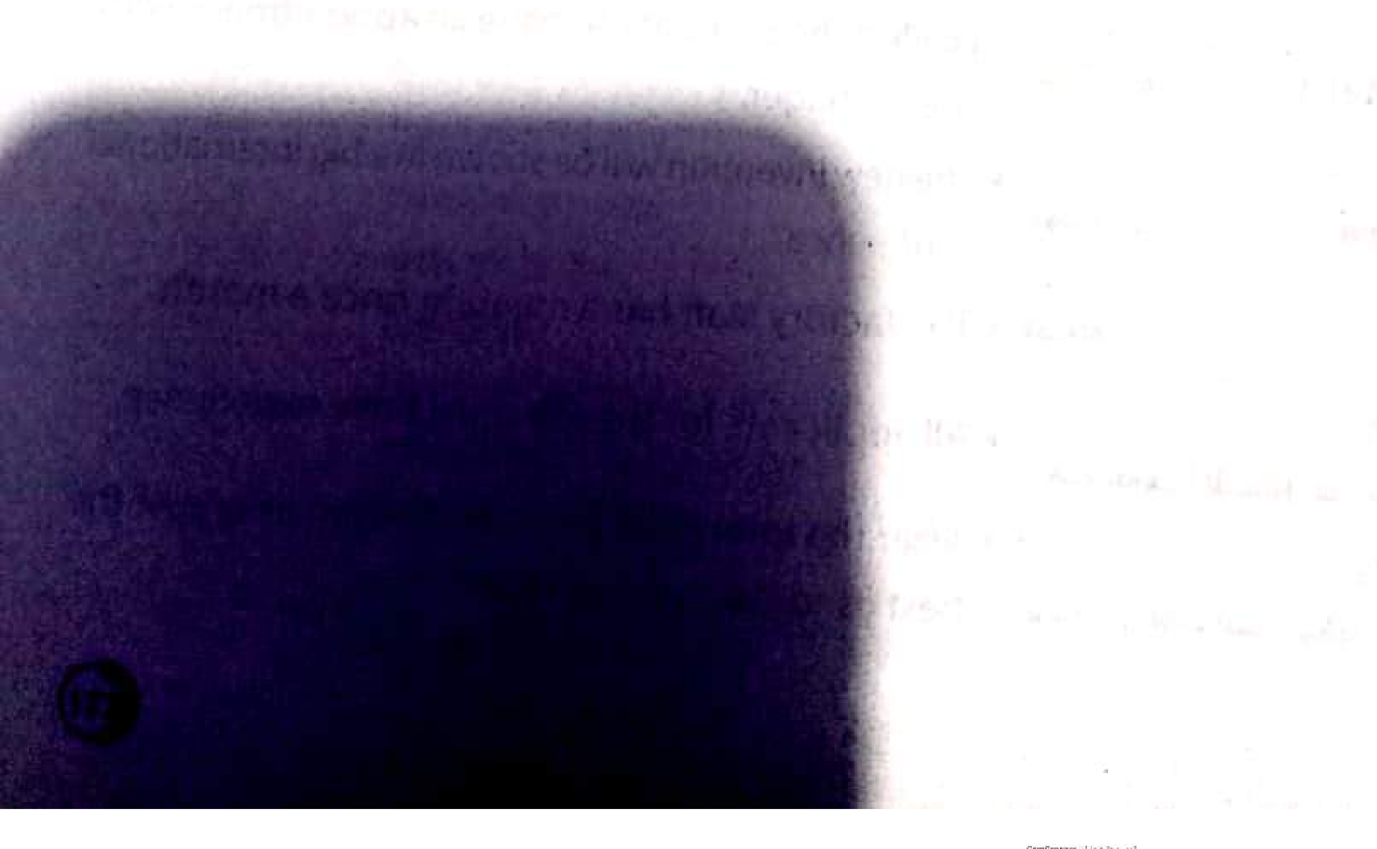
gale
- Severe gales disrupted road and railway travel throughout Britain. عاصفة (هبوب شديد للرياح)

Additional Language Notes



1	interview	مقابلة شخصية	Yasser has an interview for a new job.
	appointment	موعد/ ميعاد	I called the secretary to have an appointment with the manager.
	conference	مؤتمر	The new invention will be shown in a big international conference.
	meeting	اجتماع	The factory staff has a meeting once a month.
2	applicant	متقدم (بطلب) للحصول على شيء	All applicants for the job must have experience.
	candidate	مرشح (في الانتخابات/ لوظيفة)	After the interview, Ziad was chosen as one of the best candidates for the job.

3	**degree**	درجة /شهادة جامعية	▸ My uncle has a degree in economics from Cai University.
	certificate	وثيقة/ شهادة (دراسية كالثانوية)	▸ Students who complete the program receive skills certificate.
4	**grade**	تقدير شهادة/ امتحان	▸ My son got a grade A in maths and science.
	rank	رُتبة (عسكرية/ اجتماعية)	▸ He joined the police in 1998, and quickly rose t the rank of inspector.
5	**share**	يشارك/ يشترك (بدون قسم)	▸ I share my room with my little brother.
	divide	يقسم/ يفصل	▸ The playground was divided into two sections f more sports.
6	**sensible**	متعقل/ حساس (يظهر الحكم السليم)	▸ It would be sensible to consult your parents first
	sensitive	حساس (يفهم مشاعر الناس ومشاكلهم)	▸ The government should be more sensitive to th needs of people.



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1 My sister was a very .... student and attended all her lectures.

a) lazy b) wasteful c) playful d) conscientious

2 A/An .... is a small area of town or the people who live there.

a) region b) neighbourhood c) location d) empire

3 Mariam worked hard and got good .... in her university course.

a) grades b) awards c) prizes d) certificates

4 Our family has a well- .... business. It was started by my grandfather in 1935.

a) cooked b) detached c) drawn d) established

5 It is important for nurses to get on with their patients, so the hospital is looking for .... young people to train.

a) social b) lazy c) sociable d) unfriendly

6 The job advertisement said that all .... should have a BSc in chemistry.

a) applicants b) correspondents c) craftsmen d) cannibals

7 When they are applying for a job, some people start their .... with personal details. Others put their qualifications first.

a) BSc b) AD c) DVD d) CV

8 It wasn't until she had arrived home that she remembered her .... with the doctor.

a) appointment b) interview c) conference d) seminar

9 A .... centre is a place where people who are old or ill can be looked after during the day.

a) day b) daily c) daycare d) daytime

10 To make our economy flourish, all Egyptian .... should be of high quality.

a) productivity b) production c) produce d) products

11 He works in the .... department of the company.

a) solar b) solo c) seller d) sales

12 This factory has the .... of being one of the best producers of plastic in the country.

a) repetition b) competition c) deputation d) reputation

13 My grandfather left me some money in his ....

a) paper b) book c) biography d) will

14 The last African Summit conference was attended by most African ....
a) players b) presidents c) managers d) members

15 My father stayed by our mother's side .... her long illness.
a) through b) out c) into d) throughout

16 We must cooperate with our .... men for the sake of our country.
a) fellow b) follow c) master d) vector

17 After the storm, most of our garden plans were covered with .... of sand.
a) pieces b) slices c) grains d) stones

18 A/ An .... is an important official that a government sends to another country to manage relations with that country.
a) politician b) president c) inventor d) ambassador

19 The young novelist is the prime .... for the national award this year.
a) employer b) candidate c) voter d) interviewer

20 The children's .... will perform some Christmas songs in the church tonight.
a) team b) school c) lab d) choir

21 .... is spoken in Hong Kong and some parts of Asia beside China.
a) Spanish b) Mandarin c) Arabic d) Persian

22 You can buy most hair creams from the .... without a prescription.
a) laundry b) station c) pharmacy d) bakery

23 The new secretary speaks .... German and a little French.
a) fluent b) free c) affluent d) failure

24 Our grandfathers were .... They had to do hard physical work to live well.
a) boilers b) toilers c) filers d) filters

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

25 She doubts whether she'll ever be able to achieve her ....
a) ambition b) nightmare c) score d) failure

26 My brother has decided to do a .... in computing to get a better job.
a) coarse b) course c) force d) resource

27 The director was given the names of three officials to .... if I have a complaint.
a) compact b) connect c) attract d) contact

28 Mr Fouad has a .... in arts and education from Cairo University.
a) degree b) licence c) grade d) witness

29 He is the .... of the foreign company in Egypt. He works as its agent.
a) operator b) actor c) representative d) performer

30 He .... a lot of useful experience working for an oil company.
a) beat b) earned c) won d) gained

31 You'll never get a good job if you don't have any ....
a) qualities b) qualifications c) quantities d) equalities

32 These exercises develop the student's reading and writing ....
a) gifts b) strength c) skills d) fitness

33 If you have a job ...., you should prepare yourself well.
a) conference b) interview c) advertisement d) announcement

34 I think the greatest .... of any scientist is to win the Nobel Prize.
a) achieves b) achieving c) achieve d) achievement

35 The .... manager is checking Walid's qualifications for the new post.
a) personal b) personnel c) personality d) personification

36 My uncle has a travel company that .... in European tours.
a) releases b) considers c) specialises d) results

37 Our school is very well- .... The staff and students are always on time and everyone knows exactly what they have to do.
a) disorganised b) organised c) social d) friendly

38 Most birds go back to their nests before the sun .... and it gets dark.
a) falls b) rises c) pours d) sets

39 The road near the coast was closed because the rain was .... down heavily.
a) pouring b) rising c) starting d) raising

40 Nearly 70 percent of the .... in Egypt still live in the countryside.
a) pollution b) population c) workers d) areas

41 The language of poetry always represents the .... of many beautiful things in our life.
a) shaping b) paraphrasing c) exploration d) personification

42 The population increase will surely .... many economic problems.
a) create b) consume c) apply d) solve

43 It was a hard .... to arrange for the new conference.
a) task b) work c) profession d) expedition

44 My family has lived in this .... of Cairo for years.
a) period b) division c) parcel d) area

45 My cousin .... a flat with five other students who live away from home.
a) divides b) expands c) shares d) hires

46 Words can't .... how angry we felt after what my son did.
a) retire b) express c) object d) impress

47 Staying at comfortable youth .... can encourage more Egyptians to travel around Egypt.
a) hostels b) flats c) clubs d) races

48 The player had to get .... permission from the coach to travel abroad.
a) work b) official c) documentary d) leave

49 Tennis and table tennis .... much in common.
a) share b) enjoy c) have d) own

50 The new book describes a .... look at the economic problems in the Arab region.
a) folk b) raw c) cooked d) fresh

51 The 21st century challenge for any country is to have a/an .... labour force.
a) amateur b) skilled c) trainee d) fluent

52 My father got a promotion and now his new job .... is 'vice manager'.
a) name b) address c) caption d) title

53 My friend refused to .... why he wouldn't accept my invitation to the cinema.
a) speak b) explain c) inquire d) recommend

54 Most tourists usually admire the .... in Sinai.
a) landform b) landslide c) landfill d) landlord

55 I called the school to .... about the application process.
a) acquire b) require c) inquire d) quire

56 Most charities rely on .... contributions from the public.
a) voluntary b) economic c) profitable d) sociable

57 The little girl .... calm and waited till father had finished shouting at her.
a) relaxed b) moved c) remained d) remembered

58 How long has she been taking part in the international .... competitions?
a) athlete b) athletic c) athletes d) athletics

59 The wooden fence of our garden was broken as it was blowing a .... last night.
a) downpour b) gale c) blizzard d) breeze

60 An important classified .... has been leaked to the media.
a) will b) form c) document d) search

C Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

61 The High Dam was an .... engineering project that Egypt carried out quite well.
a) ambit b) ambition c) implying d) ambitious

62 I care .... my children and hate to see them hurt.
a) in b) at c) with d) about

63 The word "hesitant" is an antonym to the word ....
a) fluent b) affluent c) abundant d) applied

64 The new clerk's job is to .... all the accounts at the supermarket.
a) do b) make c) devise d) change

65 Graduates who apply .... this job must be fluent in English.
a) at b) for c) about d) with

66 The noun "fame" is a synonym to the noun ....
a) avoidance b) reputation c) collection d) deputy

67 My brother is more sociable than me. He gets .... with everyone he meets.
a) off b) away c) to d) on

68 There was a worried .... on mother's face when my little brother was ill.
a) express b) expression c) expressive d) expressed

69 The verb "demolish" can be the opposite of the verb ....
a) consume b) provide c) create d) astonish

70 The leaves of some trees .... red in autumn.
a) fall b) light c) change d) turn

71 He is very punctual. He always goes to work .... time.
a) on b) for c) at d) from

72 The United Nations always asserts the importance of .... relations between countries.
a) neighbour b) neighbourly c) neighbouring d) neighbourhood

73 The adjective "honest" is similar in meaning to the adjective ....
a) evil b) established c) disloyal d) conscientious

74 Although they are brothers, the two boys don't have much in ....
a) strange b) common c) public d) private

75 The evidence against the accused man was not .... enough for the judge.
a) persuade b) persuading c) persuasive d) persuaded

76 A well known legal .... was employed to work on the case.
a) specialised b) specialise c) specialisation d) specialist

77 Most of the players appeared .... and confident before the match.
a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxed d) relaxing

78 You have to .... an appointment to visit this special museum
a) make b) do c) devise d) revise

79 My uncle works .... a consultant for a design company.
a) for b) in c) as d) with

80 Naguib Mahfouz's books were translated .... many languages.
a) in b) at c) for d) into

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Youssef Shaheen made a lot of good films and he was a good .... for the industry.
   a) politician   b) ambassador
   c) diplomat   d) electrician
2. We all congratulated our uncle on his .... as chairman of his company.
   a) committee   b) ceremony
   c) appointment   d) session
3. Unfortunately, doctors say that my father is an obvious .... for a heart attack.
   a) candidate   b) applicant
   c) employer   d) player
4. We admired the competitors' .... movement across the dance floor.
   a) lazy   b) hasty
   c) puzzled   d) fluent
5. The best students at the final exams are .... A.
   a) degreed   b) rewarded
   c) graded   d) punished
6. It really goes against the .... to have to work on a national holiday.
   a) wheat   b) grain
   c) sand   d) plant
7. .... is a type of small orange with loose skin that comes off easily.
   a) Mandarin   b) Melon
   c) Marlin   d) Maize
8. The young singer's new album sold in the .... of 1,000 copies.
   a) neighbourly   b) neighbourhood
   c) neighbours   d) neighbouring
9. The .... of the new bank said that their objective is to have at least 50 branches in Egypt.
   a) advisor   b) diplomat
   c) president   d) ambassador
10. The teacher asked the children in primary 1 to find the .... of 21 and 16 without using a calculator.
    a) product   b) produce
    c) production   d) productive

11 The restaurant certainly lived up to its ....; the food was delicious.

a) repetition
b) intention
c) intonation
d) reputation

12 The government has a strong political .... to reform the economic system.

a) document
b) will
c) certificate
d) form

13 The staff said that they're all ready to support the new principal to some ....

a) grade
b) rank
c) degree
d) certificate

14 The old man lives in a .... for the homeless after his house was destroyed in the earthquake.

a) hostel
b) house
c) hotel
d) stadium

15 The politician had a difficult year, but his supporters remained loyal ....

a) outside
b) throughout
c) through
d) along

16 Experts always warn ships that oil spillages are disastrous for fish ....

a) governorates
b) districts
c) peoples
d) populations

17 The new store sells .... furniture at reasonable prices.

a) quality
b) quantity
c) qualified
d) equality

18 The medicine is an effective .... for the treatment of asthma.

a) clerk
b) agent
c) director
d) employee

19 Grandma is very .... about the kind of olive oil she uses.

a) private
b) violent
c) particular
d) specialised

20 The comic actor's speech was greeted with a .... of laughter.

a) gale
b) downpour
c) blow
d) wind







Grammar Revision



Unit (9)

Reported Speech الكلام المنقول (الغير مباشر)

Reported statements الجمل الخبرية

- يكون فعل القول فى الجملة الخبرية said أو told ويأتى بعد told المفعول به سواء اسم أم ضمير مفعول مثل me/ him/ her/us/them.
- لا نجد علامات اقتباس فى الجملة المحولة ونربط الجملة الخبرية بـ that ويمكن حذفها.
- بعد that دائمًا جملة كاملة بدايتها الفاعل (اسم أو ضمير) والضمائر تكون موافقة لسياق الجملة.
- إذا كان فعل القول (said/ told) ماضيًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعدهم إلا فى الحالات الخاصة.
- نعود بالزمن درجة للأقدم كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
play / plays	played	will play	would play
played	had played	shall play	would play /should play
is / are playing	was/were playing	may play	might play
have / has played	had played	can play	could play
has / have been playing	had been playing	must play	had to play / must play
was / were playing	had been playing	will have to play	had to/ would have to play

ظروف الزمان والمكان وضمائر الإشارة تكون موافقة للكلام المنقول أيضًا وهى كالتالى:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
now	then	tonight	that night
this	that	tomorrow	the next day
these	those	next week	the following week
here	there	today	that day
(two days) ago	(two days)before / earlier	come here	go there
last week	the week before the previous week	yesterday	the day before the previous day
tomorrow morning	the next morning	this afternoon	that afternoon
next Friday	the following Friday	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time

Direct	Indirect
"The children are in the garden."	Omar said (that) the children were in the garden.
"My smart phone isn't working."	He said (that) his smart phone wasn't working.
"I have a meeting at 4.00."	She said (that) she had a meeting at 4.00.
"Ola has passed her exam."	Sally told me (that) Ola had passed her exam.
"I will probably be late."	I thought(that) I would probably be late.
"You can have three tickets."	The man said (that) I could have three tickets.
"The train leaves at 6.00."	The timetable said the train left at 6.00.
"We all speak English."	She said (that) they all spoke English.
"I forgot my keys."	He said (that) he had forgotten his keys.




ملاحظات هامة:

❶ لا يتغير الزمن فى الجملة المحولة فى الحالات الآتية:

(أ) الحقائق (facts)

- The teacher told us that the Nile is the longest river in the world.

(ب) إذا كان الكلام يُقالُ حالًا أى به كلمات مثل (just now/ a moment ago)

- My father said just now that he is going to Alexandria tomorrow.

(جـ) إذا كان فعل القول فى أحد أزمنة المضارع أو المستقبل.

- Ahmad says / has said that he is ready for the exam.

(د) الماضى التام والماضى من had better /used to و modal verbs يبقى كما هو.

- He said that they could see the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.

❷ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said:

claimed / complained / mentioned / indicated / asserted / agreed / reported explained / shout

- The man said,"The woman was killed yesterday."
- The man reported that the woman had been killed the day before.

يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية ويأتى بعدها v + ing:

suggest / admit / deny / apologize for/objected to/insisted on + (v-ing)

- He said, " Let's look for another flat ."

  He suggested looking for another flat.

بعد deny/ admit يمكن تحويل الجملة باستخدام that وبعدها جملة:

- He said, " I didn't steal the bag."

  He denied stealing the bag.

- He denied that he had stolen the bag. (الفعل بعد deny مثبت)

يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية ويأتى بعدها to + inf.:

promise/ offer /agree/threaten/refuse/remind/decide /warn / ask / advise / allow / + (to + inf.)

- He said, "I'll help you with your homework."
- He promised to help me with my homework.

الماضى المستمر يمكن أن يحول إلى ماضى تام مستمر أو يظل كما هو للحفاظ على وحدة الزمن.

- He said that he had been studying all day the day before.
- He said that he fell down while he was playing.

هناك أفعال يجب استخدام that بعدها مثل: explained/ complained/ exclaim/ remark/ inform

والأفعال الآتية فى حالة عدم وجود to + inf أو v-ing

(agree/deny/ promise/claim /threaten/ remind/ boast /suggest / claim)

- He complained that the service in that restaurant was not good.

تحول الحالة الأولى من if إلى الحالة الثانية ولكن الماضى غير الحقيقى فى الحالة الثانية والثالثة والتمنى لا يحول.

- "If you ask Ali, he'll help you." Omar said. (1st conditional)

  Omar said (that) if I asked Ali, he would help me.

- "If my children were older, I'd immigrate." Samy said to me. (2nd conditional)

  Samy told me (that) if his children were older, he would immigrate."

Unit (10)

Reported Questions

الجمل الاستفهامية فى الكلام غير المباشر

1. يكون فعل القول فى الجملة الاستفهامية asked وبعدها مفعول أو بدون مفعول.
2. لا نجد علامات اقتباس فى السؤال المحول ونربط السؤال بنفس كلمة الاستفهام (Wh) أو if/ whether.
3. بعد الربط تكون الجملة خبرية بدايتها الفاعل (اسم أو ضمير) ثم الفعل ثم باقى السؤال.
4. تختف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة.
5. إذا كان فعل القول (asked) ماضى فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعدها إلا فى الحالات الخاصة.
6. فى تحويل الأسئلة نغير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما فى النوع الخبرى.

- "Where will you go next week?"
- She asked him where he would go the following week.
- "Do you often write poems?"
- I asked him if/ whether he often wrote poems.
- "Where did you find your bag?"
- She asked me where I had found my bag.

7. عندما تستخدم shall فى طلب النصيحة والاقتراح والعروض تحول الى should ولكن فى تحويل الجمل العادية والسؤال عن معلومات تحول إلى would .

- "When shall we have our dinner?" Salah said. (information)
- Salah asked when they would have their dinner.
- "How shall I install Windows 10?" Ali said. (advice)
- Ali asked how he should install Windows 10.

8. يمكن استخدام أفعال أخرى غير ask وهى أفعال لا يأتى بعدها مفعول مثل:

Wonder / inquire / want to know / don't know/ have no idea

9. لا يحول الزمن إلى الدرجة الأقل مثل الجمل الخبرية مع:

(أ) الحقائق. (ب) الكلام الذى يقال حالًا. (جـ) القوانين. (د) فعل القول فى المضارع.

10. يمكن أن يبدأ السؤال بـ Do you know/ Can (Could) you tell me.....? وهنا نضع علامة استفهام آخر السؤال لأنه يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو modal verb .

- Do you know when Ahmed arrived at the station?

11. لا يأتى الفاعل بعد كلمة الاستفهام إذا كانت تسأل عن الفاعل مثل who و what

- The policeman said, "What caused the fire?"
- The policeman asked what had caused the fire.



القواعد التى لم تدرس هذا العام





1 Had better/ Would rather/ Prefer

Had better + Inf. = should / ought to   Had better not + inf.

نستخدم had better بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها المصدر وفى النفى not + inf.

- He'd better book his flight early.
- I'd better not take out a loan; I won't be able to pay it back.

Would rather = prefer +v-ing

نستخدم would rather بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها المصدر وفى النفى not + inf وهى تفيد تفضيل شيء على شيء لذلك يمكن استخدام than ثم المصدر معها.

- I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.
- I'd rather not have gone to the dinner party last night.
- I'd rather stay at home than go out.   'd rather + inf. than + inf.

إذا جاء اسم أو ضمير بعد rather نستخدم الماضى البسيط أو الماضى التام بنفس معنى wish نستخدم الماضى للتعبير عن المضارع والماضى التام للتعبير عن الماضى.

- I'd rather you stayed with us tonight.   'd rather + subject. + past
- I'd rather Ramy hadn't taken his father's car yesterday.

Prefer + ing form /noun + to + ing form / noun   (general preference)

- I prefer playing tennis to playing football.   I prefer tennis to football.

Prefer + to + inf./noun + rather than + inf. / noun   (general preference)

- I prefer to eat fish rather than (eat) meat.

Would Prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf.   (specific preference)

- I'd prefer to walk home rather than take the bus.



Unreal Past

الماضى غير الحقيقى

- يمكن استخدام الماضى البسيط للإشارة إلى الحاضر (الحاضر غير الواقعى) عندما نتحدث عن مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق فى الوقت الحاضر.
- يمكن استخدام الماضى التام للإشارة إلى مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق فى الماضى (الماضى غير الحقيقى).

Past Simple is used with:

Conditionals Type 2

- If I were you, I would pay.

wish (present)

- I wish he were here now.

Suppose/Supposing

- Suppose you were asked to move out, what would you do?

I'd rather+ sb ... (present)

- I'd rather you went now.

as if/as though كما لو

- He isn't French but he speaks French as if he were from France.

It's (about/high) time

- It's time you retired.

It's time for + Subj. +to + inf.

Past Perfect is used with:

Conditionals Type 3

- If I had seen him, I would have told you.

wish (past)

- I wish you had taken his advice when he gave it.

Suppose/Supposing

- Suppose you had seen the crime being committed, what would you have done?

I'd rather+ sb ... (past)

- I'd rather you hadn't told all those lies.

as if/as though

- He wasn't awarded the first prize but he behaved as if he had been awarded it.

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala .... the lesson had already started when he arrived.
   a) asked b) told c) said d) wanted to know
2. Mazen admitted that he was not proud of what he ....
   a) will do b) was done c) has done d) had done
3. Samy told his wife he .... a party on his 50th birthday.
   a) haven't wanted b) didn't want c) don't want d) won't want
4. Fahmy declared that he .... his classmates the following month.
   a) is going to see b) will see c) was going to see d) may see
5. They .... that they had been waiting for hours.
   a) complained b) told c) asked d) wondered
6. Reda said if he .... late for work, his boss would be furious.
   a) is b) has been c) was d) had been
7. He said he .... a party with his friends the next weekend.
   a) had b) was having c) had had d) has had
8. He said water .... when it's heated.
   a) would boil b) boiled c) was boiling d) boils
9. Sally assured me that if she .... the answer she would have told me.
   a) had known b) knew c) knows d) would know
10. The surgeon said that he .... the operation that morning.
    a) is doing b) had done c) has done d) will do
11. She promised she .... me as soon as the plane landed.
    a) will phone b) phoned c) would phone d) phone
12. The teacher told us that a lot of English words .... from other languages.
    a) borrowed b) borrow c) had borrowed d) are borrowed
13. She told me that her father .... ill since June.
    a) has been b) was c) had been d) would be
14. Ramy says that when he was young, he never .... attention to his parents' advice.
    a) paid b) is paying c) pays d) pay
15. She complained that her son never got up early and he .... always late for school.
    a) had b) is c) would be d) was

16 She promised her friend that she .... lose her necklace.
a) won't b) wouldn't c) didn't d) couldn't

17 He said that he .... the match when the postman came with the bank report.
a) was watching b) watched c) had watched d) could watch

18 He told them that he .... anything for 7 hours.
a) has eaten b) had eaten c) wouldn't eat d) hadn't eaten

19 The teacher said the earth .... around the sun.
a) has moved b) moves c) was moving d) had moved

20 The weather forecast said that it .... probably rain later that day.
a) would b) will c) can d) should

21 Belal told me that he .... able to see me that afternoon because he had a lot to do.
a) wouldn't be b) isn't c) can't be d) had to be

22 He told the police that he always .... the doors and windows to avoid being burgled.
a) locks b) lock c) locked d) was locking

23 Amgad said that he .... to the concert that day since he had no money.
a) hasn't gone b) didn't go c) won't go d) couldn't go

24 She tells her friends that she .... often late because she doesn't wear a watch.
a) is b) was c) has been d) would be

25 Ramy says that when he was young, he never .... attention to his parents' advice.
a) is paying b) paid c) pays d) pay

26 He said that I .... in the sea as there were dangerous fish.
a) can't bathe b) hadn't bathed c) may bathe d) couldn't bathe

27 Salem said he couldn't live on his basic salary and he .... ask to do overtime.
a) will have to b) would have to c) has to d) may

28 They said they .... for the school bus and it was late.
a) are waiting b) waited c) were waiting d) have waited

29 Ali said he was living with his parents at the moment but he .... to have a flat of his own.
a) hoped b) hopes c) is hoping d) has hoped

30 Nasser said he'd just bought a car but it wasn't insured yet so he .... take me for a drive.
a) can't b) couldn't c) mustn't d) may

31 Ola said that she lived in a dead village as all the young people .... away to the towns.
a) were drifted b) are drifting c) have drifted d) had drifted

32 She said she .... to join one of the English courses the next day.
a) wanted b) wants c) had wanted d) has wanted

33 Mariam said if I lent her the camera, she .... it back in two days' time.
a) will bring b) had brought c) would bring d) was bringing

34 Ahmed said he usually .... his children out for a walk when he was free on Fridays.
a) takes b) took c) has taken d) taking

35 Rana told the police that someone .... to murder her and she kept his threatening e-mails.
a) is trying b) has tried c) tries d) was trying

36 She said that she .... and help me at twelve.
a) would come b) came c) had come d) was coming

37 They .... me what I had to do was to call the ambulance.
a) asked b) said c) told d) warned

38 She said she .... until seven or eight pm every night.
a) had worked b) had to work c) has to work d) was working

39 I said," I like sweets". I said ....
a) he liked sweets b) you like sweets c) I liked sweets d) I likes sweets

40 Which one of the following isn't true?
a) She complained that her son always arrived after midnight.
b) She complained that her son had always arrived after midnight.
c) She complained that her son was always arriving after midnight.
d) She complained that her son would always arrive after midnight.

41 The tour guide asked the tourists if they .... to see the Sphinx.
a) want b) were wanting c) wanted d) have wanted

42 The boss asked Sherief if he .... working on the night shifts.
a) minds b) has minded c) was minding d) minded

43 My father wondered who I .... the money to.
a) give b) had given c) have given d) will give

44 The tourist wanted to know how long it .... to get to Aswan by coach.
a) took b) take c) has taken d) will take

45 My brother asked how much I thought the trip ....
a) will cost b) has cost c) would cost d) costs

46 The reporter asked the interviewer what he had missed most when he .... in prison.
a) were b) had been c) is d) has been

47 The mother asked her daughter how she .... on with her mother-in-law.
a) will get b) gets c) got d) can get

48 They asked him how he .... into the house when the door was locked.
a) had got b) can get c) has got d) gets

49 She wondered if I .... her why Osama had left without telling anyone.
a) can tell b) could tell c) told d) will tell

50 The detective wanted to know how many people .... what was in the safe.
a) will know b) have known c) know d) knew

51 She asked who .... using her computer.
a) is b) has been c) had been d) will be

52 Leila .... if there were any letters for her.
a) asked b) told c) warned d) complained

53 He didn't know how long I .... learning English.
a) have been b) had been c) was d) can be

54 I asked where they .... for their summer holidays.
a) have gone b) go c) will be going d) were going

55 Emad asked me what I .... to do with my old car.
a) was going b) am going c) go d) went

56 They wanted to know if they .... for a walk if the weather was fine.
a) go b) will go c) would go d) may go

57 The doctor wanted to know .... I had had the symptoms for a long time.
a) what b) if c) that d) why

58 He asked me what .... done if I had been a celebrity.
a) would I have b) I will have c) I had d) I would have

59 They wanted to know why they hadn't been allowed to park there the month ....
a) next b) then c) before d) ago

60 The officer wanted to know if his soldiers .... enough weapons.
a) had b) do have c) have d) have been

61 They asked me if I .... Tom at the cinema the night before.
a) would see b) had seen c) saw d) have seen

62 Tamer asked me if .... use my phone.
a) could he b) he can c) can he d) he could

63 He asked the students to leave quietly when they ....
a) finish b) had finished c) have finished d) would finish

64 She wanted to know if I .... about the meeting the day before.
a) was informed b) had been informed
c) have been informed d) would be informed

65 Please tell me what you .... for a wedding present.
a) can like b) will like c) are liking d) would like

66 I would like to know why he .... work so early yesterday.
a) has left b) had left c) left d) leaves

67 She asked .... I had finished with the computer.
a) if b) why c) what d) weather

68 The boy asked me if it was the place we .... the week before.
a) were visiting b) visited c) have visited d) had visited

69 The teacher wanted to know who .... the mess when he was out.
a) had caused b) causes c) has caused d) is causing

70 The captain asked the guide when they .... to the coast.
a) get b) will get c) would get d) had got

71 My mother asked Mona where she .... the next week.
a) would travel b) will travel c) travelled d) had travelled

72 He asked me why .... early the night before.
a) I have left b) I had left c) did I leave d) had I left

73 She asked me how often I .... to the cinema.
a) have gone b) was going c) has gone d) went

74 He asked me when the next exam .... take place.
a) will b) does c) would d) can

75 Noha asked her friend what she .... at her friend's birthday party.
a) had worn b) should wear c) would wear d) wore

76 I ordered him to .... the truth. I can't stand lies.
a) say b) ask c) tell d) wonder

77 He asked who .... the tickets for me.
a) he booked b) had he booked c) he had booked d) had booked

78 Could you tell me .... or not Ahmed will visit London?
a) whether b) weather c) if d) unless

79 Which one of the following isn't true?
a) My friend asked me what I had wanted to drink after having lunch.
b) My friend asked me what I wanted to drink after having lunch.
c) My friend asked me what I would want to drink after having lunch.
d) My friend asks me what I want to drink after having lunch.

80 She asked me when I had finished my training course. The real question is ....
a) "When have you finished your.....?" b) "When did you finish your.....?"
c) "When had you finished your.....?" d) "When were you finished your.....?"

Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I would prefer to eat in .... go to a restaurant.
a) than
b) to
c) rather than
d) instead of

2 I'd rather look for a new flat .... stay in this house any longer.
a) than
b) to
c) rather than
d) instead of

3 I prefer watching TV to .... out.
a) to go
b) going
c) go
d) went

4 I think I .... to spend my money on a holiday rather than on a new car.
a) 'd rather
b) prefer
c) 'd better
d) would prefer

5 I prefer brown sugar .... white sugar.
a) than
b) to
c) rather than
d) that

6 I like trekking in the mountains, but I prefer .... on a sandy beach.
a) to lying
b) lie
c) lying
d) than lie

7 I usually have tea, but today I'd prefer .... coffee, please.
a) to have
b) have
c) having
d) to having

8 I'd rather you .... here with me and the kids.
a) to stay
b) stay
c) stayed
d) staying

9 I prefer travelling by bus .... by train.
a) to travel
b) to travelling
c) rather than travel
d) than travel

10 My wife would like to rent a house in New York but I would .... camp in the desert.
a) like
b) rather to
c) prefer
d) rather

11 It's time we .... to do something about this situation.

a) would try
b) try
c) tried
d) will try

12 I'd rather you .... taking your medication for a few days. Let's say until ne
Monday.

a) will continue
b) continue
c) had continued
d) continued

13 I wish you .... your stuff everywhere all the time. I'm tired of tidying up afte
you.

a) had left
b) wouldn't leave
c) hadn't left
d) don't leave

14 If only we .... sooner. We could have prevented the situation.

a) had known
b) knew
c) would know
d) know

15 Would you rather I .... at your place next weekend?

a) stayed
b) had stayed
c) would stay
d) stay

16 I'd rather you .... that comment last night. You hurt me.

a) don't make
b) didn't make
c) hadn't made
d) wouldn't make

17 It's time for you .... what you started.

a) would finish
b) finished
c) had finished
d) to finish

18 We'd rather you .... come too late tonight.

a) hadn't
b) didn't
c) don't
d) don't

19 Suppose you .... enough money to invest? Where would you invest it?

a) had
b) had had
c) would have
d) have

20 It's time you .... seriously about what you want to do with your life.

a) would think
b) had thought
c) thought
d) think

Open Book General Exercises on Units 9 & 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The company is looking to hire a dependable and .... accountant.
   a) unreliable b) conscientious c) social d) lazy
2. There were lots of kids in my .... when I was growing up.
   a) neighbouring b) neighborly
   c) neighbourhood d) neighbours
3. The government has announced a/an .... programme to modernize the railway network.
   a) ambitious b) grateful c) graceful d) sociable
4. Adel had to .... a language course to improve his English and get a better job.
   a) do b) run c) provide d) make
5. Amany said she would go and .... some milk for her children.
   a) heated b) heating c) heats d) heat
6. My brother .... that he was confident of passing the exams.
   a) told b) wondered c) said d) suggested
7. Our teacher .... he used to play football when he was younger.
   a) talked b) says c) told d) spoke
8. The tourist told me he .... the way, so there was no need to take a map.
   a) knows b) has known c) will know d) knew
9. When Albert Einstein was 10, a teacher told him that he .... never be a scientist.
   a) will b) is c) would d) has
10. Ola asked what she .... do with the cracked cup and her mother advised her to throw it.
    a) would b) should c) will d) can
11. I didn't know .... Ahmed worked at the bank or at the post office.
    a) weather b) who c) that d) whether
12. After the lecture all people asked him what ....
    a) his telephone number was b) was his telephone number.
    c) his telephone number is. d) is his telephone number.
13. The interviewer wanted to know why I .... to change my job.
    a) have wanted b) want c) wanted d) will want

14 Do you know what this word "Italics" .... ?

a) means b) meant c) had meant d) would mean

15 Each citizen needs to apply the same standards to himself as to others. Apply he[re]

means ....

a) make a formal request for a job

b) put a heavy load on

c) use something

d) study hard

16 Even though she was in terrible pain, she never lost the will to live. That means th[at]

she had ....

a) a legal document to give money to others

b) success in the future

c) enough medicine for her illness

d) a strong determination

17 The company .... training courses for its employees.

a) qualifies b) provides c) promotes d) practises

18 To get a ...., you have to make outstanding achievements.

a) motion b) mission c) promotion d) permission

19 I think that the new skills in this course will make you more ....

a) employment b) employer c) unemployed d) employable

20 Many teenagers think that they have the .... to understand life properly.

a) maturity b) mortality c) majority d) minority

21 Dalia said that this book is difficult to read but it is .... I'll learn a lot abo[ut]

life from it.

a) qualified b) similar c) unkind d) worthwhile

22 The newly unemployed will need some .... to go back into the job market.

a) retraining b) maturing c) thinking d) rewarding

23 Last week, he .... on an evening course to improve his language.

a) entered b) entitled c) enrolled d) employed

24 We all want to find .... careers that pay well and provide satisfaction.

a) employable b) rewarding c) quality d) mature

25 A/An .... is an important official that a government sends to another country t[o]

manage relations with that country.

a) politician b) president c) inventor d) ambassador

26 She said that she .... to be a police officer when she grew up.
a) wants b) had wanted c) would want d) wanted

27 He told his friends that he .... ice cream.
a) has never tried b) is always trying c) had never tried d) will never try

28 The teacher asked the students what a policeman always .... to catch dangerous criminals.
a) had done b) does c) has done d) was doing

29 The boss asked me whether I .... at the meeting next Monday.
a) would be b) was being c) was d) had been

30 My father asked me .... I wanted to go by car or by train.
a) either b) why c) weather d) if

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die. At one time people drank blood to make them strong.

When doctors understood how blood went around inside the body, they tried ways of giving blood to people who needed it. They used a rubber tube to take blood from healthy people and give it to people who needed it. This is called blood transfusion. The blood went through a rubber tube from the arm of the healthy person into the arm of the sick person.

But there were two problems. First it did not always work. Sometimes people died. Later, doctors found the reason for this. We do not all have the same kind of blood. There was another problem. To give blood of the right kind, the doctors had to find a person of the right blood group. Often they could not find a person in time. If they had a way to keep the blood until someone needed it, they could always have the right kind of blood. In the end, they found a way of keeping blood for a very long time. Now people can give or donate blood every three months, if they want to. The blood is put in bottles or special bags and then kept until someone needs it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

31 Why did people drink blood?
a) To make up for losing blood. b) To become strong.
c) To taste it. d) To be able to donate blood.

32 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
a) doctors b) blood kinds c) patients d) donators

33 Now doctors can keep blood for ....
a) 15 minutes b) 20 minutes c) a long time d) a short time

34 People don't usually have .... blood group.
a) the same b) different c) alike d) similar

35 Why did people sometimes die after receiving blood transfusion?
a) They were very ill.
b) The doctors weren't clever.
c) The rubber tubes were infected.
d) They had the wrong blood group

36 Why did the doctors think of ways to keep blood?
a) It wasn't easy to find blood donors.
b) Some people's blood was bad.
c) It was difficult to find the right donator in time.
d) They wanted to sell it to other people.

37 Find phrase from the passage which means "blood circulation".
a) How blood went around inside the body.
b) How to lose blood.
c) To take blood from healthy people.
d) Put in bottles or special bags.

38 What is meant by blood transfusion?
a) To lose a lot of blood.
b) To take blood from healthy people and give it to people who needed it.
c) To find the right kind of blood.
d) To help people donate blood.

39 The main idea of the passage is "........".
a) The different kinds of blood.
b) Blood transplant.
c) Blood donation.
d) Blood transfusion and donation

40 How do you think we can solve the problem of finding the right blood donors in future?
a) We should prevent people from having cuts.
b) We should invent ways to make artificial blood.
c) We should develop the rubber tubes giving blood.
d) We should change the way people donate blood.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

What made the people in Ruritania forgave Rassendyll's occasional bad decisions?
a) Because he was popular with them.
b) Because he was like the King.
c) Because he threatened them.
d) Because he spoke German well.

How many people did Sapt order to guard Rassendyll?
a) Three men. b) Six men. c) Two men. d) Five men.

Who was the letter given to Rassendyll from?
a) Rose. b) The Princess.
c) Antoinette de Mauban. d) Johann.

Where would Rassendyll and the writer of the letter meet?
a) The summer house. b) The castle.
c) Zenda. d) The hunting lodge.

What would happen if Rassendyll showed the letter to anyone?
a) Michael would punish Rassendyll.
b) Michael would punish Antoinette de Mauban.
c) People would know Rassendyll wasn't the real King.
d) People would know that Michael kept the king prisoner.

How could Antoinette de Mauban be useful to Sapt and Rassendyll?
a) She had information about Michael.
b) She could help the King escape.
c) She hated Michael and was ready to deceive him.
d) She could kill Michael and his men.

What wasn't in the room in which Antoinette de Mauban and Rassendyll met?
a) A small candle. b) A ladder.
c) A small iron table. d) Two chairs.

Why was Antoinette ready to help Rassendyll?
a) She didn't like to see people being killed.
b) She wanted Rassendyll to travel to his family quickly.
c) She wanted Rassendyll to be the King.
d) She wanted to save Sapt and Fritz.

49 According to the report, why were the people in Strelsau not happy?

a) Because they wanted the King to kill the Duke.
b) Because they wanted the King to marry the Princess.
c) Because they wanted the Duke to marry the Princess.
d) Because they wanted to arrange a ball for the King.

50 Why was it difficult for Rassendyll to tell anyone the truth?

a) They would think he was mad.
b) Michael would kill him.
c) Sapt and Fritz would be killed.
d) Because he was pleased to be the King.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 It is thought that the mobile phone is a double-edged weapon and it depends o
each one's use.

أ) يعتقد الناس أن الهواتف المحمولة سلاح ذو حدين ويعتمد هذا على استخدام كل شخص.
ب) يُعْتَقَدُ أن الهواتف المحمولة سلاح ذو حدين ويعتمد على استخدام كل شخص.
ج) يفكر البعض أن الهواتف المحمولة سلاح ذو حدين ويعتمد على استخدام كل شخص.
د) يُعتقد أن الهواتف المحمولة سلاح ذو حدين ويعتمد هذا على استخدام كل شخص.

Choose the correct English translation:

يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين إذ إنه السبب فى كثير من الأمراض المزمنة.

a) Doctors warn people from smoking, as it is the cause for many chronic diseases.
b) Doctors warn people against smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic disease
c) Doctors warn people for smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic diseases.
d) The Doctors warn people against smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic disease

Choose the correct answer:

53 Which of the following sentences could be a concluding sentence in an essay abo
'Road Safety'?

a) Keep the standards and guidelines of street security as the main concern durin
driving.
b) People on foot, cyclists represent half of the passing on streets.
c) Traffic rules and laws help you to keep away from street accidents.
d) Street accidents have become the main reason for death of the young between 15-2



Units 11 & 12



Vocabulary Revision



Key Vocabulary

clear ... up (v)	ينظف/يوضح/يزيل غموض
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز
concern (n)	اهتمام
creative (adj)	إبداعي/مبتكر
defeat (v) (ed) (n)	يهزم/انهزام
department (n)	قسم/إدارة
enrol/ enroll (v) (ed)	يدرج الاسم/يسجل
evil (adj)	شرير
gap (n)	فجوة
lecture (n)	محاضرة
manage (v) (d)	ينجح/يتمكن
mature (adj)	ناضج/بالغ

non-fiction (adj)	واقعي/غير خيالي
Open University	الجامعة المفتوحة
promotion (n)	ترقية
qualified (adj)	مؤهل/كفء
receptionist (n)	موظف استقبال
redundant (adj)	مفصول من العمل (عاطل)
retrain (v) (ed)	يعيد تدريب
rule (v) (d)	يحكم
Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
transport (v) (ed) (n)	ينقل/نقل
worthwhile (adj)	جدير بالاهتمام
writing (n)	كتابة

Helpful Vocabulary

acquire (v) (d)	يكتسب
actor (n)	ممثل
adviser/advisor (n)	ناصح/مستشار
appreciate (v) (d)	يقدر/يقيِّم
bottom (n)	قاع
career (n)	مهنة/حياة عملية
cave (n)	كهف
challenge (v) (d) (n)	يتحدى/ تحدٍ

character (n)	شخصية
colleague (n)	زميل عمل
college (n)	كلية
come round (v)	يزور
confusing (adj)	مربك
constant (adj)	دائم/متواصل
corridor (n)	ممر/ممشى
course (n)	مقرر دراسي

degree (n)	درجة علمية
detective (n)	مخبر/ضابط مباحث
discuss (v) (ed)	يناقش
distance learning (n)	التعلم عن بعد
educational (adj)	تعليمى
equipment (n)	معدات
essential (adj)	ضرورى
extra (adj)	زائد/إضافى
fence (n)	سور
finance (n)	مالية
free (adj)	حر
frightened (adj)	مرعوب
full-time (adj)	كامل الوقت
go back (v)	يرجع
graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج/خريج
grow up (v)	ينمو/يكبر
grown up (n)	بالغ/راشد
ideal (adj)	مثالى
imaginary (adj)	خيالى
impressive (adj)	مؤثر
individual (n) (adj)	شخص/فرد/فردى
informal (adj)	غير رسمى
intervals (n)	فواصل/فترات فاصلة
leave behind (v)	يخلف/يترك خلفه
lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة
master's degree (n)	درجة الماجستير
metal bar (n)	قضيب معدنى

missing (adj)	مفقود
moral (n)	مغزى/درس أخلاقى
mysterious (adj)	غامض
part-time (adj)	جزء من الوقت
position (n)	وظيفة/مركز
possessions (n)	ممتلكات
primary (adj)	ابتدائى
provide (v) (d)	يزود/يمد
referee (n)	حَكَم
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
retire (v) (d)	يتقاعد
reward (v) (ed) (n)	يكافئ/مكافأة
rewarding (adj)	مجزٍ/مرضٍ
satisfied (adj)	قانع/راضٍ
sensible (adj)	متعقل/حكيم
similar (adj)	متشابه
stand for (v)	يمثل
suitable (adj)	مناسب
summary (n)	ملخص
text (n)	نص
trouble (n)	متاعب
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
upset (v) (adj)	يزعج/منزعج
warning (n)	تحذير
working life (n)	الحياة العملية
wrinkle (n)	تجعيد (فى وجه شخص كبير السن)

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

at any age	فى أى سن
at intervals	على فترات
(be) on a course	ملتحق بمقرر دراسى
by the end of	بنهاية
do a degree course	يدرس مقررًا جامعيًا
feel concern for	يشعر بالاهتمام بشأن
full-time job	وظيفة ذات وقت كامل
get into a university	يلتحق بالجامعة
give lectures	يلقى محاضرات
go back to education	يعود للتعليم
have qualifications for	لديه مؤهلات فى
have the chance to	لديه الفرصة لكى
have the same kind	لديه نفس النوع من
made into a film	متحول لفيلم
make up his mind	يقرر
miss opportunities	تفوته الفرص
out of interest	بدافع من الاهتمام
part-time job	وظيفة ذات وقت جزئى
progress through life	يتقدم خلال الحياة
take up opportunities	يستفيد من الفرص
travel into space	يسافر للفضاء
without a break	بدون راحة/توقف
work on a project	يعمل على إنجاز مشروع

Prepositions

concentrate on	يركز على
concern for/about	اهتمام بشأن
enroll on/for/in	يُسجل/يدرج فى
free from	حر/خالٍ من
gap in	فجوة فى
go round	يزور
help with/by	يساعد بخصوص
hope for	يأمل فى
look round	يطوف/يتجول
manage to	ينجح/يتمكن أن
member of	عضو/فرد من
provide for	يوفر لـ
study at	يدرس فى
transport to	ينقل إلى
travel through	يسافر عبر
work for	يعمل لدى



Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر/فعّال
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدٍ	challenging	متحدٍ
create	يخلق/يبدع	creativity	إبداع/ابتكار	creative	إبداعي/مبتكر
enroll/enrol	يدرج الاسم/يسجل	enrolment	إدراج الاسم/تسجيل	----------	
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	مفسر
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	مُعبر
finance	يمول	finance	المالية	financial	مالي
freeze	يجمد/يتجمد	freezing	تجميد	frozen	متجمد
graduate	يتخرج	graduation	تخرج	----------	
idealise	يجعله مثاليًا	idealism	المثالية	ideal	مثالي
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إداري
mature	ينضج	maturity	بلوغ/نضج/إدراك	mature	ناضج/بالغ
personify	يشخص	personification	تشخيص	----------	
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
promote	يرقي	promotion	ترقية	promotional	ترويجي
qualify	يتأهل	qualification	كفاءة/أهلية	qualified	مؤهل/كفؤ
----------		redundancy	فصل من العمل	redundant	مفصول من العمل
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	مسترخٍ/مرتاح مريح
retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	retired	متقاعد
----------		similarity	تشابه	similar	متشابه
toil	يكدح/يسير بصعوبة	toiler	كادح/سائر بصعوبة	----------	
satisfy	يرضي/يقنع	satisfaction	رضا/قناعة	satisfied	قانع/راضٍ

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
acquire	يكتسب	obtain	fail	يفشل
constant	دائم/متواصل	ceaseless	ceasing	متوقف
creative	إبداعى/مبتكر	imaginative	uncreative	غير مبدع
enroll/enrol	يدرج الاسم/يسجل	register	ignore	يتجاهل
expert	خبير	professional	amateur	هاوٍ
explain	يفسر	illustrate	conceal	يخفى
ideal	مثالى	perfect	common	شائع
intervals	فواصل/فترات فاصلة	interruptions	continuation	استمرار
mature	ناضج/بالغ	grown-up	immature	غير ناضج
persuade	يقنع	convince	discourage	يثبط العزيمة
promotion	ترقية	advancement	deterioration	تدهور
qualified	مؤهل/كفؤ	proficient	inefficient	غير كفء
shape	شكل	form	difference	اختلاف
similar	متشابه	alike	different	مختلف
statement	بيان	announcement	question	استجواب
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام	beneficial	useless	بلا فائدة

Important Language Notes

Make up

make up — ن/يتكون من/يشكل

- Women **make up** 40 percent of the workforce in this factory.

make up — ع/يؤلف (قصة أو كذبة)

- They **made up** a little poem and wrote it in the card.

make up for — ض عن/يخفف عن

- I don't eat breakfast but I **make up for** it at lunch.

make up to — ق شخص

- The new clerk is **making up to** the manager – it's quite not fair.

make up one's mind — /يتخذ قرارًا

- Many young people find it difficult to **make up their mind** about joining a certain college.

Employ



ستخدم الفعل (employ) بمعنى يوظف ومع إضافة بادئة أو لاحقة قد يتغير المعنى مثل:

employable (adj)	صالح للتوظيف	unemployed (adj)	ر موظف
employee (n)	موظف	unemployable (adj)	ر قابل للتوظيف
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	unemployment (n)	بطالة
employment (n)	توظيف		

Phrasal verbs with "come"

بتبع الفعل (come) بعض حروف الجر لتعطى معنى مختلفًا عن المعنى الأصلى للفعل:

come about	(يحدث) بالمصادفة غالبًا	come around/round	يزور
come along	يصل	come by	يمر على/ يزور بسرعة
come back	يرجع/يعود	come out	يخرج/يصدر (كتابًا/جريدة)/ تـزال البقعة
come in	يدخل/يصل	come through	يجتاز
come together	يتجمع		
come across	يمر بـ (يقابل شخصًا/يجد شيئًا)	come up with	يقترح/يقدم فكرة

Additional Language Notes



1 **acquire**	يكتسب/يحرز/يحوز	The college acquired a reputation for very high standards.
require	يتطلب	Most houseplants require regular watering.
inquire	يستفسر	I am writing to inquire whether you have any positions available.
2 **retire**	يتقاعد/يعتزل (العمل)	He was forced to retire early because of poor health.
resign	يستقيل من عمله	She resigned from the government last week.
3 **appreciate**	يقدّر (يعتبره شيئًا جيدًا أو مهمًا)	We appreciate that caring for children is an important job.
estimate	يقدّر (يقيّم كمية أو عدد)	It's difficult to estimate the cost of the repairs to the damaged building.
4 **imaginary**	خيالى (غير واقعى)	A lonely child sometimes creates an imaginary friend to play with.
imaginative	خيالى/مبدع	They suggested some very imaginative ways of reducing costs.
5 **present**	يقدم (شيئًا)	He presented the report to his colleagues at the meeting.
introduce	١- يقدم (شخصًا) ٢- يقدم فكرة أو اكتشاف جديد	I would like to introduce you to my friend Martin. The store have introduced a new type of food for children.
6 **strange**	غريب	When you arrive in a new country, everything seems strange.
foreign	أجنبى	Spain was the first foreign country I had visited.
7 **discussion**	مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)	We need to have a discussion about your school work.
debate	مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفين	Naguib Mahfouz's books have been the subject of much debate.

PART 1

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1 We really need .... solutions for our difficult problems in Egypt.
a) creative b) ordinary c) strange d) imaginary

2 In the movie, the hero has to rescue the world from a/an .... scientist.
a) devil b) evil c) pure d) imaginative

3 Most of the people in my university group are in their twenties, but there are also three .... students.
a) pure b) impure c) mature d) secure

4 I've always wanted to paint; that's why I've .... on an art course.
a) enrolled b) entitled c) entered d) employed

5 My uncle is a professor in the English .... at Cairo University.
a) division b) section c) part d) department

6 The company .... meat across the country in refrigerated containers.
a) transmits b) transfers c) transports d) transplants

7 She was made .... a year ago and hasn't found any work ever since.
a) redundant b) homeless c) uneducated d) unconscious

8 My sister wants to be a teacher. She believes teaching is a/an .... career.
a) aimless b) rewarding c) worthless d) awarding

9 Doing things for other people can be a very .... experience.
a) worthless b) meaningless c) worthwhile d) useless

10 A fox got into the garden through a .... in the wall.
a) wire b) brick c) plant d) gap

11 Although the current was strong, I .... to swim to the other bank.
a) succeeded b) managed c) refused d) persisted

12 The professor had to cancel his last .... because he travelled abroad.
a) report b) play c) lecture d) party

13 The policemen worked hard for a week trying to .... up the mystery of the murder.
a) clear b) clean c) solve d) push

14 I have always liked to read .... books. I'm not fond of stories.
a) fictional b) non-fiction c) fairy d) angel

15. Mother asked me to turn off the TV and .... on my homework.
a) pass b) apply c) depend d) concentrate

16. The guides are .... to lead groups into the mountains during safari trips.
a) graded b) pleased c) qualified d) rewarded

17. The pharaohs who .... ancient Egypt usually built great temples and statues.
a) captured b) ruled c) freed d) damaged

18. There is a real .... that the giant panda will soon become extinct.
a) concern b) excitement c) appeal d) admiration

19. We celebrated our uncle's .... to manager with a small party.
a) graduation b) award c) promotion d) prize

20. We were sad as our local football team were .... in yesterday's game.
a) lost b) retrained c) awarded d) defeated

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

21. Mr Soliman is the .... sort of teacher – direct, friendly and informal.
a) ideal b) undull c) idle d) idol

22. .... learning is a method of study that involves working at home and sending your work to your teacher.
a) Distant b) Distance c) Far away d) Open

23. My father has been working in the national bank since his ....
a) birth b) innovation c) graduation d) invitation

24. The police offered a/an .... for information that would lead to the arrest of the thieves.
a) truce b) present c) award d) reward

25. It would have been more .... to save the money than to spend it all on clothes.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sense

26. New businesses will .... a lot of people in the city.
a) destroy b) employ c) enjoy d) expand

27. This training provides opportunities to .... new skills.
a) require b) inquire c) acquire d) earn

28. The .... of the story is that honesty is always the best policy.
a) moral b) brief c) summary d) introduction

29. The police have been searching the countryside for the .... girl.
a) winning b) affecting c) losing d) missing

30 .... learning means learning that goes on for life.
a) Lifelong b) Distance c) Life d) Lifeless

31 Finding a solution to this problem is one of the greatest .... faced by scientists today.
a) challenges b) forces c) changes d) charges

32 Universities .... the country with highly qualified young people.
a) do b) provide c) make d) perform

33 In order not to be sent off, the player avoided being given a red card by the ....
a) conductor b) judge c) referee d) coach

34 I've enjoyed my career in banking, but now I'm looking forward to ....
a) resigning b) retiring c) retreating d) withdrawing

35 A .... is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff or under the ground.
a) cottage b) tunnel c) hut d) cave

36 Mohamed Salah's talents are fully .... in the Egyptian team and Liverpool.
a) appreciated b) tasted c) calculated d) spread

37 Mona had to use her .... of persuasion to persuade her father to let her go in her journey.
a) energy b) power c) greed d) doubt

38 Having .... in some parts of the body is a natural sign of old age.
a) cracks b) bruises c) wrinkles d) scratches

39 Mary Curie was .... the Nobel Prize for Chemistry and Physics twice.
a) awarded b) got c) won d) rewarded

40 If I read all the story, I will try to make a/an .... of it.
a) chapter b) address c) press d) summary

41 Women complain that their male .... are given higher wages than them.
a) colleges b) colleagues c) buyers d) sellers

42 If you pass the ...., you will get a diploma in economics.
a) course b) coarse c) study d) questionnaire

43 The young woman has resigned from her .... as secretary for a better job.
a) location b) situation c) position d) sight

44 Our neighbour travelled to America for work, ... his children behind with their mother.
a) taking b) leaving c) migrating d) living

Watching .... TV programmes will be one of the most important means of learning this year.

a) talk show b) entertaining c) quiz d) educational

Stephen Spielberg is an .... filmmaker who made many science fiction films.

a) imaginative b) imaginary c) affecting d) impressed

The candidates participated in several .... before the election was held.

a) discussions b) debates c) views d) matches

Mary is still very .... about her uncle's accident.

a) pleased b) satisfied c) upset d) arrogant

The criminal was arrested by clever .... soon after his crime.

a) clerks b) conductors c) researchers d) detectives

It isn't advisable to wear .... clothes for a job interview. You'd better wear a suit.

a) formal b) luxurious c) informal d) synthetic

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

51 I found the book really .... I kept forgetting who the characters were.

a) confuse b) confused c) confusing d) confusion

52 The art gallery has an .... collection of modern paintings that are popular today.

a) impress b) impressed c) impressive d) impression

53 He went back to university to .... up opportunities to learn things he couldn't, earlier in his life.

a) give b) make c) do d) take

54 The young couple have already made up their .... about where to go for their honeymoon.

a) brains b) heads c) eyes d) minds

55 It is advisable that we teach young people that self-control is a sign of ....

a) mature b) maturity c) maturely d) amateur

56 Nahla wants to keep .... the latest developments in information technology.

a) with b) on c) up d) up with

57 My father works for a multi-national corporation with 140,000 .... worldwide.

a) employs b) employees c) employers d) employment

58 Some films are not .... for young children with the violent scenes in it.

a) suiting b) suit c) unsuitable d) suitable

59 I hope the new skills I am learning at college will make me more ....

a) employable
b) unemployed
c) employer
d) employee

60 I hope that my employer will give me some training so that I get .... quickly.

a) promote
b) promotional
c) promoted
d) affected

61 The word "**ceasing**" is an antonym to the word ".....................".

a) constant
b) mysterious
c) hidden
d) pure

62 The adjective "**beneficial**" is a synonym to the adjective ".....................".

a) worthless
b) worthwhile
c) accepted
d) hopeful

63 The word "**inefficient**" can be the opposite of the adjective ....

a) acquainted
b) quarrelled
c) qualified
d) disqualified

64 The adjective "**perfect**" is similar in meaning to the adjective ....

a) idle
b) uncertain
c) infected
d) ideal

65 We arrived early at the theatre and spent a few minutes looking ....

a) back
b) around
c) after
d) up

66 We are looking for graduates who .... academic qualifications in maths or science.

a) have
b) give
c) award
d) reward

67 The French professor .... lectures on modern literature at the new university.

a) takes
b) delivers
c) gives
d) speaks

68 Employees from many different branches have come .... to try to solve the bank problems.

a) back
b) forward
c) by
d) together

69 If you're not .... with our product, you can get your money back.

a) satisfy
b) satisfaction
c) satisfied
d) dissatisfied

70 The product is guaranteed to be free .... big defects.

a) from
b) with
c) against
d) at

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 On .... thinking, we have decided to refuse the company's offer.
a) rich
b) teenage
c) mature
d) immature

2 With three matches remaining, there are six teams in the .... race.
a) development
b) recommendation
c) promotion
d) announcement

3 The author edited the news report and removed any .... information or statements.
a) redundant
b) employed
c) applied
d) promoted

4 The Ministry of Education encourages teaching methods that .... computers in innovative and useful ways.
a) waste
b) employ
c) capture
d) imply

5 Is this orange juice fresh or is it made from ....?
a) mixture
b) combination
c) concentrate
d) syrup

6 The two friends met again after a .... of ten years as they both travelled abroad.
a) break
b) gap
c) crack
d) hole

7 My father is always .... me about the way I dress.
a) lecturing
b) relieving
c) studying
d) graduating

8 The new film .... the spectators back to the historical era of Salah Eddin.
a) dates
b) transfuses
c) transports
d) transmits

9 Poverty is one of the greatest social .... which affects a lot of people.
a) benefits
b) good
c) procedures
d) evils

10 The sales side of our factory is my partner's ....
a) concern
b) excitement
c) profit
d) rate

11 The director's suggestion received only heavily .... approval from the firm board.

a) applied
b) qualified
c) disqualified
d) joined

12 Animals are not .... creatures and are not responsible for their actions.

a) normal
b) living
c) moral
d) graduated

13 The airport controller radioed the pilot to change his .... because of some trouble.

a) firm
b) style
c) examination
d) course

14 The young actress recently .... from being an assistant to having a small ro in a movie.

a) taught
b) learned
c) graduated
d) studied

15 After dinner, my father likes to .... to his study for a cup of coffee.

a) resign
b) retire
c) migrate
d) recuperate

16 Rafael Nadal is a tennis player with a highly .... style.

a) collective
b) vague
c) individual
d) applied

17 The footballer has been .... out of the match with a knee injury.

a) ruled
b) lined
c) put
d) signed

18 The professor finally found a solution to the problem that had .... many oth researchers.

a) passed
b) accepted
c) assisted
d) defeated

19 My skin .... up when I started using the new cream.

a) cleaned
b) cleared
c) cured
d) treated

20 The flags were spaced at two-metre .... along the road.

a) heights
b) hills
c) intervals
d) summits

Grammar Revision

Unit (11)

Reported Speech الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر)

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice (الأمر والاقتراح والنصيحة)

١- يتنوع فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية بين :

(أ) أفعال يتبعها المفعول ثم to (not to) + inf. وهم:

advise	ينصح	help	يساعد	teach	يعلم
ask	يسأل	instruct	يوجه/ يعلم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يشجع	invite	يدعو	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	order	يأمر	warn	يحذر

- "Open your books."
- The teacher told/asked/ordered us to open our books.
- "If I were you, I'd take your coat."
- My mother advised me to take my coat.
- "Don't waste time."
- My father advised me not to waste time.
- "Study science at university."
- Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

(ب) أفعال يتبعها المفعول ثم v-ing أو that + subject + infinitive without to وهم:

suggest يقترح/ recommend يُزكى/ يُوصى بِـ

- "Do Exercise 2 again."
- Leila suggested doing/that I do Exercise 2 again.
- "You should revise quietly."
- My friend recommended revising/that I revise quietly.

٢- لا نجد علامات تنصيص فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ثم المصدر.

٣- إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا فلا يوجد إلا المصدر الذى بعد to والحالات الخاصة.

٤- يتم تحويل الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما في النوعين: الخبري والاستفهامي.

٥- بالإضافة إلى الاقتراح وتقديم النصيحة تستخدم الجملة الأمرية أيضا للتعبير عن إعطاء التعليمات والأوامر والطلب والاستعطاف والترجي باستخدام أفعال مثل:

يأمر/يطلب order, يعرض offer, يحث urge, يستعطف beg

• "Please, forgive me!" she said.

▸ She begged me to forgive her.

٦- تستخدم to + inf. بعد wonder what/where/how إذا كان الفاعل قبل فعل القول هو نفس الفاعل الذي قبل المصدر في الجملة التي بين الأقواس.

▸ He asked himself, "Where shall I go?"

▸ He wondered where to go.

٧- إذا جاء شخص بعد recommend مباشرة نستخدم to + inf.

▸ He recommended the workers to finish the task and then have a break.

وتأتي بمعنى يرشح شخصا أو شيئا لشخص وتأخذ to + inf.

▸ I recommend you "Animal farm" to read or watch.

٨- يأتي بعد الفعل warn أما to + inf. أو not to + inf. حسب المعنى.

▸ My father always warns me not to walk home alone.

▸ Good teachers warn their students to avoid smoking.

٩- الفعلان agree/refuse يأتي بعدهما to + inf. إذا كان الفاعل داخل علامات التنصيص يعود على القائل نفسه.

"Yes, I'll do it." I said.

▸ I agreed to do it.

"No, I won't help him."

▸ I refused to help him.

أما إذا كان الفاعل مختلفًا مع agree نستخدم التحويل العادي للجملة الخبرية ولا نستخدم that مع refuse.

"Yes, she is angry." I said.

▸ I agreed that she was very angry.

١٠- يمكن حذف that بعد suggest ويبقى الفاعل والمصدر كما هما:

▸ I suggest we have dinner first, and then watch the film.

١١- يمكن استخدام that + clause بعد admit/advise/insist/threaten/warn/remind

▸ He insisted that I (should) work on Friday.

▸ The teacher advised us that we should study at least 5 hours a day.

Unit (12)

Modal verbs of necessity, lack of necessity and prohibition

1. Necessity
2. Lack of necessity
3. Prohibition

1 Necessity

الضرورة

Present/ Future		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for .... to + inf.	had to	It was necessary for .... to + inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for .... to + inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need/ needs to		needed to		will need to	

Have to/has to

- نستخدم have to/has to بمعنى يجب أن/لزامًا عندما لا يكون لدينا اختيار فعل شيء.

• You have to show your passport when you leave the country.

- نستخدم must بمعنى يجب أن للتعبير عن المشاعر القوية والنصيحة القوية والدعوة الحارة.

Must

strong advice	نصيحة قوية	You must wash your hands before you eat.
a warm invitation	دعوة حارة	You must come and see us at the weekend.
a strong reminder	تذكرة قوية	We mustn't forget that tourism is important.
laws	قوانين	Drivers must stop when the light is red.

- الماضي من have to/has to/must هو had to بمعنى شيء كان ضروريًا في الماضي وتم فعله.

• We had to take the bus to school because my father's car was not working.



2 Lack of necessity

عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to + inf. doesn't have to + inf. needn't + inf. (to بدون) don't/ doesn't need to + inf.	It isn't necessary for ...... to + inf.	didn't have to + inf. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله. needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله. didn't need to + inf.	It wasn't necessary for ...... to + inf.	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for ...... to + inf.

• نستخدم don't/doesn't have to/needn't + inf. للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة.

• She isn't late for school so she doesn't have to/needn't hurry.

• الماضي من عدم الضرورة هو didn't have to أو needn't have + P.P. ولكن هناك اختلافًا في المعنى:

لم يكن ضروريًا فلم أفعل didn't have to + inf.

لم يكن ضروريًا ولكنى فعلت needn't have + P.P.

• I didn't have to go to school on Friday as it was a holiday.

• لم اضطر إلى الذهاب إلى المدرسة يوم الجمعة لأنه كان إجازة.

• I needn't have taken a taxi as it wasn't far, but I did.

• لم يكن ضروريًا أن أخذ تاكسى لأنها لم تكن بعيدة ولكنى فعلت.

3 Prohibition

المنع / الحظر / التحريم

It's	banned / forbidden / prohibited / not allowed	to park here.
Parking is	banned / forbidden / prohibited / not allowed	here.

• نستخدم mustn't + inf. للتعبير عن المنع والحظر.

• You mustn't (can't) park here. It is not allowed.
• You aren't allowed to park here.
• You are forbidden from parking here.

Summary

Modal verbs of necessity, prohibition, lack of necessity, advice, regret and deduction:

Use	Present/future	Past
Necessity Obligation	have to/has to/must - I have to put petrol in the car. - I must visit my uncle. - I must go on a diet. (I say so) - I have to go on a diet. (the doctor says so) - You must visit me. (warm invitation) - You must obey your parents. (strong advice) - We mustn't forget our duties. (reminder) - Drivers must hold valid licences. (law)	had to - I had to buy a new jacket. - He had to find a large flat last month. - تعبر had to عن الضرورة التى تم فعلها.
Lack of Necessity	don't have to/doesn't have to/needn't - Ali doesn't have to find another job. - We don't have to stay up late. - He needn't borrow my dictionary.	didn't have to needn't have + P.P. - I didn't have to buy a car. لم اشترى - I needn't have bought a car. اشتريت
Prohibition	be not allowed to/mustn't/can't - We aren't allowed to park here. - We mustn't (can't) park here.	be not allowed to/couldn't - They couldn't smoke there. - They weren't allowed to ....

مراجعة سريعة للنقاط الهامة:

١- نستخدم have to/has to بمعنى يجب أن/ لزاما عندما لا يكون لدينا اختيار فعل شىء.

٢- نستخدم must بمعنى يجب أن للتعبير عن المشاعر القوية والنصيحة القوية والدعوة الحارة.

٣- الماضى من have to/has to/must هو had to بمعنى شىء كان ضروريًا فى الماضى وتم فعله.

٤- نستخدم don't/doesn't have to/needn't + inf. للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة.

٥- نستخدم didn't have to عن شىء لم يكن ضروريًا فلم نفعله.

٦- نستخدم needn't have + p.p عن شىء لم يكن ضروريًا ولكن فعلناه.

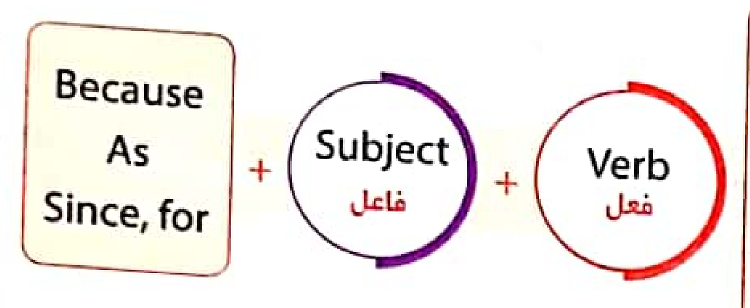
٧- نستخدم can't/mustn't + inf. للتعبير عن المنع والحظر.

Linking words (Conjunctions)

أدوات الربط

1 Cause

أدوات ربط السبب



Because of On account of As a result of Owing to Due to Thanks to Through	بسبب / نتيجة لـ بفضل

\+ Noun / Adj.+ Noun

- Because (As/Since) he is clever, he always comes first.
- Because of his cleverness (Being clever), he always comes first.

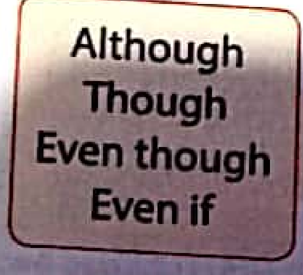
Being لكونه/لكونها + Adj. Being polite, his teachers respect and love him.

- Because of the fact that he made mistakes, he was punished.

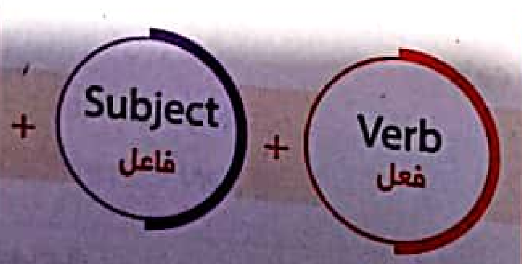
لاحظ: (Because of/Due to the fact that + جملة)

2 Contrast

أدوات ربط التناقض

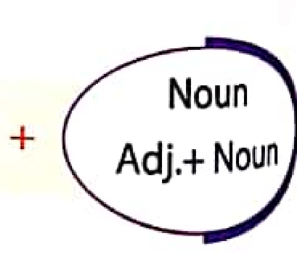


\+

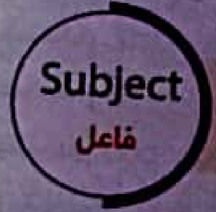


Despite In spite of For all Regardless of

\+

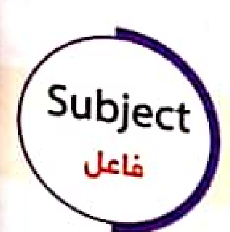


- Although (Though) he is strong, he can't carry the bag.
- Despite (In spite of) his strength (Being strong), he can't carry the bag.



\+ Verb فعل

, but .However, ; however, , yet,



\+



- He is strong, but (. However,/, however,) he can't carry the bag.

ملحوظة:

يمكن استخدام although/despite فى أول الجملة أو وسطها.

- Although our team played badly, they won the match.
- Our team won the match although they played badly.

لاحظ: (In spite of/Despite the fact that + جملة)

- In spite of the fact that he ran fast, he couldn't win the race.

However مهما	+	Adj./Adv.	+	فاعل	+	فعل
Whatever مهما	+	Noun	+	فاعل	+	فعل
Adj. كل صفة حسب معناها	+	as	+	فاعل	+	فعل

- However strong he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Strong as he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever strength he has, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever you do, I'll forgive you.

3 Addition

أدوات ربط الإضافة

In addition to As well as Besides	بالإضافة إلى:	+ v.ing , Subject فاعل + Verb فعل
In addition to As well as Besides	studying her lessons, Mona helped her mother.	

فاعل	فعل	مفعول	as well as in addition to and	مفعول ثان/اسم
Osama	plays	football		tennis.

فاعل	+	as well as	+	فاعل ثان	+	فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول
Omar		as well as		his friends		is a doctor.

ليس فقط .... ولكن أيضا

- Not only .... but also.

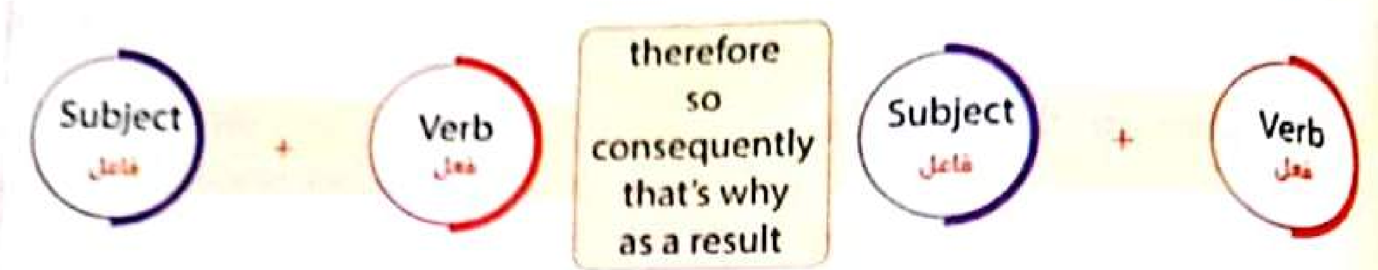
لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى

- Not only Ahmed but also his friends are going to the party.
- Not only did Manal do her homework but also she helped her mother.

لاحظ أن الفعل يأتى فى صيغة الاستفهام.



4 Result
أدوات ربط النتيجة

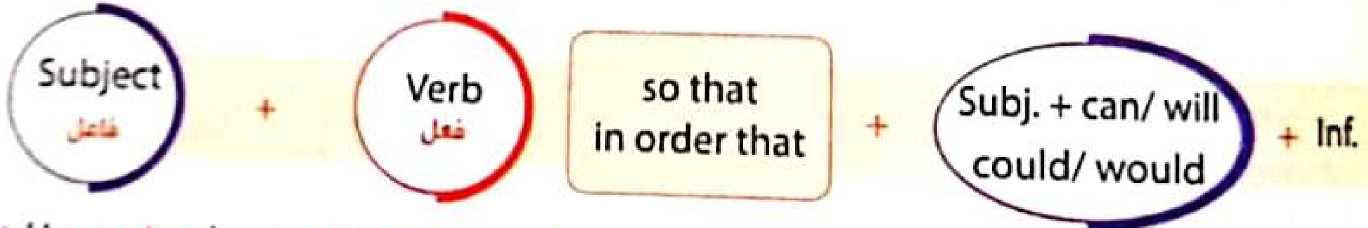


- Our team played badly, so/therefore they lost the match.
- Forests are being destroyed. As a result a lot of animals are losing their homes.

5 Purpose
أدوات ربط الهدف/الغرض



- He studies hard to/so as to/in order to get high marks.



- He studies hard so that/in order that he can get high marks.
- He studied hard so that/in order that he could get high marks.



- He went to the doctor's for a check-up.

لاحظ إننا نستخدم for +v.ing للتعبير عن الغرض العام من الشيء وليس لماذا يفعل الشخص الشيء.

- We use a pen for writing. I use this brush for washing the dishes. Or (to wash)
- I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes. (not for washing)

في النفي نستخدم so as not to/in order not to

- He put his keys in his briefcase in order not to lose them.

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I advised her .... Ramy any money as he never paid his debts.
a) to lend b) lending c) not to lend d) that she lends

2 Hany's mother told him .... sticky things in his pockets.
a) not to put b) to put c) that he put d) putting

3 The teacher .... the students to read the questions twice, and not to write the margin.
a) warned b) recommended c) told d) suggested

4 He warned the boys not to play there or they .... punished.
a) have been b) had been c) will be d) would be

5 My father encouraged me .... for the job as it would just suit me.
a) applying b) to apply c) not to d) that I apply

6 He .... me to open a bank account to save money for the time of need.
a) advised b) recommended c) warned d) suggested

7 He asked me .... my case as it was blocking the door.
a) moving b) where I move c) why to move d) to move

8 The policeman warned the drivers .... the high way as there was going to be a storm.
a) not to avoid b) avoiding c) to avoid d) that avoid

9 The flight attendant asked the passengers .... fasten their safety belts before takeoff.
a) why b) to c) that d) if

10 The doctor warned me .... more than two pills at a time.
a) to take b) taking c) take d) not to take

11 She .... him to book a table at the restaurant that night.
a) suggested b) inquired c) reminded d) recommended

12 Omar invited Samy to lunch that day but Samy refused .... with him as he was busy.
a) to go b) going c) go d) that to go

13 I recommended that Ahmed .... to a dentist before his toothache got any worse.
a) going b) go c) had gone d) to go

14 Ahmed denied that he .... my computer.
a) using b) hadn't used c) had used d) having used

15 He suggested .... to the cinema explaining that they hadn't seen a film for months.
a) to go b) going c) that I had gone d) go

16 The teacher frequently asked them .... speak during the lesson.
a) that b) whether c) for d) not to

17 She begged him .... anything dangerous.
a) not to do b) to do c) doing d) that do

18 He advised me .... nothing about the problem unless I was asked.
a) not to say b) to say c) saying d) said

19 She .... them to wait in the departure lounge till their flight number was called.
a) suggested b) recommended c) warned d) asked

20 He .... me to hold the box firmly as it contained fragile objects.
a) advised b) inquired c) said d) recommended

21 My mother warned me .... my money lying about everywhere.
a) to leave b) leaving c) not to leave d) leave

22 The manager asked me to speak to Doaa and .... her that he had news for her.
a) telling b) tell c) told d) tells

23 The grocer encouraged me .... more sugar as its price would go up.
a) not to buy b) buying c) that buy d) to buy

24 The air hostess .... them to fasten their seat belts as there might be little turbulence.
a) told b) warned c) inquired d) said

25 She asked him .... back in half an hour as she was busy at the moment.
a) why to ring b) ringing c) to ring d) to ringing

26 He warned me .... through fog with only a fog light on.
a) to drive b) not to drive c) driving d) that drive

27 She suggested .... the colour of the bathroom as it was gloomy.
a) not to change b) to change c) change d) that we change

28 She recommended .... much money on food and not on the luxuries.
a) spending b) not to spend c) to spend d) spend

29 My friend suggested .... the rest of the day off.
a) not to take b) to take c) taking d) take

30 He advised me .... the river water without boiling.
a) to drink b) drinking c) drank d) not to drink

31 My friend encouraged me .... nervous before the sports match.
a) to be b) not to be c) that I be d) be

32 We were hungry, so my father suggested .... to the restaurant for lunch.
a) going b) that we going c) go d) to go

33 The students recommended .... a test at the end of the month.
a) giving b) the teacher giving
c) that the teacher give them d) the teacher gives

34 Good teachers warn their students .... smoking.
a) to avoiding b) to be avoided c) not to avoid d) to avoid

35 I suggest .... dinner first, and then watch the film.
a) Ali has b) Ali have c) having d) not having

36 The teacher asked the class .... their best in the test.
a) to do b) not to do c) do d) doing

37 I recommend you "this novel" ....
a) not to read b) reading c) to read d) to be read

38 He said, " Yes, Ali travelled abroad." He agreed .... abroad.
a) Ali to travel abroad b) that Ali had travelled
c) that Ali to travel d) to Ali's travelling

39 My teacher always encourages .... hard to get the best marks.
a) studying b) to study c) that we study d) to studying

40 Which one of the following is untrue?
a) My sister suggested that we should clean the flat.
b) My sister suggested we should clean the flat.
c) My sister suggested we clean the flat.
d) My sister suggested that we cleaning the flat.

41 You .... wash those glasses. They're dean.
a) mustn't b) have to c) needn't d) must

42 I .... buy a newspaper yesterday. I wanted to see the racing results.
a) had to b) must c) have to d) didn't have to

43 You .... wear your best clothes. You can wear what you like.
a) had to b) have to c) mustn't d) needn't

44 You .... wear your best clothes. You'll get them dirty.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) didn't have to d) had to

45 Youssif .... go to the bank. He hasn't got any money.
a) mustn't b) has to c) needn't d) doesn't have to

46 You .... drop those glasses. They'll break.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) have to d) don't have to

47 You really .... make less noise. I'm trying to concentrate.
a) mustn't b) have to c) must d) had to

48 I think you .... pay to park here. I'll just go and read that notice.
a) didn't have to b) mustn't c) had to d) have to

49 The food was free. We .... pay for it.
a) don't need to b) didn't need to c) mustn't d) can't

50 You really .... hurry up, Tamer. We don't want to be late.
a) must b) don't have to c) needn't d) had to

51 We .... go to the supermarket because we had plenty of food.
a) had to b) must c) didn't need to d) have to

52 Service was included in the bill, so you .... the waiter. It was a waste of money
a) had to tip b) needn't have tipped
c) didn't have to tip d) don't have to tip

53 Why does Anas .... study every evening?
a) need b) has to c) had to d) have to

54 I'm sorry I couldn't come yesterday. I .... work late.
a) had to b) have to c) must d) should

55 We've got plenty of time. We .... hurry.
a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) needn't

56 You .... come and visit us the next time you come to Cairo.
a) have to b) must c) had to d) need to

57 I .... get up early tomorrow. I'm going away and my train leaves at 7:30.
a) needn't b) had to c) will have to d) need

58 You .... eat so much chocolate, you'll be sick.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) don't need

59 My grandfather .... work six days a week when he was young.
a) has to b) needn't c) doesn't have to d) had to

60 I'm not working tomorrow, so I .... get up early.
a) don't need b) don't have to c) didn't have to d) need to

61 I went to the bank this morning. There was no queue, so I .... wait.
a) didn't have to b) don't have to c) don't need d) need to

62 We .... lock the car. It's safe here.
a) mustn't b) don't need to c) shouldn't d) can't

63 We .... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) must d) have to

64 When you arrive in another country, you .... show your passport.
a) don't need to b) have to c) haven't d) mustn't

65 Since his car was being repaired, he .... go to Alexandria by train.
a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) had to

66 You .... be an athlete to go snorkeling.
a) don't have to b) mustn't c) can't be d) shouldn't

67 Drivers .... carry a valid driving licence when operating a motor vehicle.
a) need to b) doesn't need to c) have to d) must

8. You .... smoke inside the building. Smoking is forbidden indoors.
   a) could b) can't c) can d) couldn't
9. We couldn't repair the car ourselves. We .... take it to a garage.
   a) have to b) had to c) needn't d) didn't have to
10. I .... cut the grass myself. My brother did it.
   a) had to b) don't have to
   c) needn't have d) didn't have to
11. As it is absolute necessity, the doctor says that I .... exercise every day.
   a) had to b) have to c) should d) can
12. .... I carry this bag? It seems heavy and my back hurts.
   a) Must b) Would c) Could d) Might
13. She .... start dieting because she wants to lose weight.
   a) need b) had to c) have got to d) must
14. She .... start dieting because her husband wants her to lose weight.
   a) needs b) has got to c) had to d) must
15. Children under five years old .... swim without an adult.
   a) don't have to b) are supposed to c) must not d) have to
16. I must tidy up my room but I .... tidy up my sister's room.
   a) needn't b) must c) had to d) have to
17. The girls needn't be home early but they .... be home by midnight.
   a) needn't b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't
18. It was a national holiday so all workers .... to their work.
   a) mustn't go b) had to go
   c) needn't have gone d) didn't have to go
19. I .... everything the lecturer said as many things weren't included in the course.
   a) must write b) had to write
   c) needn't have written d) have to write
20. Which one of the following isn't true?
   a) You shouldn't use your flash inside the museum, it's forbidden.
   b) You mustn't use your flash inside the museum, it's forbidden.
   c) You can't use your flash inside the museum, it's forbidden.
   d) You aren't allowed to use your flash inside the museum, it's forbidden.

Advanced & Open ...

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It was .... his stupidity that we got into trouble.
a) as
b) because
c) because of
d) as a result

2 He found it difficult to work in China .... he could not understand Chinese
a) because of
b) because
c) due to
d) so

3 Ramy didn't play .... his illness.
a) because
b) as
c) for
d) owing to

4 She was very unhappy, ... she missed her children.
a) for
b) owing to
c) due to
d) because of

5 .... the bad weather, we cancelled the trip.
a) As
b) Because
c) Due to
d) Owing

6 .... he was injured, he continued to play.
a) Despite
b) However
c) But
d) Though

7 She did not get the job .... the fact that she did well in the interview.
a) in spite
b) in spite of
c) despite of
d) although

8 My husband did not like the movie; ...., I enjoyed it a lot.
a) however
b) despite
c) in spite
d) in spite of

9 .... fast our car was, we took 5 hours to reach Assuit.
a) Whatever
b) Although
c) However
d) As

10 .... mistakes he made, he wasn't punished.
a) However
b) Although
c) Owing to
d) Whatever

11 The rent has increased drastically ……………… , we've decided to change the flat.

a) although
b) because
c) consequently
d) however

12 ……………… doing her homework, she helped her mother.

a) Not only
b) As well
c) In addition to
d) In addition

13 The teachers ……………… the principal were there.

a) as well as
b) in addition
c) as well
d) but also

14 She has got not only a motorbike, ……………… a car.

a) as well as
b) and
c) but
d) but also

15 I've always wanted to study philosophy, ……………… I've decided to go back to school.

a) as
b) so
c) because
d) but

16 I went to his office ……………… meet him.

a) so that
b) because
c) so
d) in order to

17 I am planning to move house ……………… be closer to my place of work.

a) so
b) so as to
c) so that
d) because of

18 I talked to the shy girl ……………… she would not feel left out.

a) in order to
b) so as not to
c) so that
d) because

19 A barometer is used ……………… measuring pressure.

a) for
b) to
c) owing to
d) thanks to

20 He got up early ……………… miss the first bus to the factory.

a) so as to
b) so as not to
c) so that
d) to

Open Book General Exercises on Units 11 & 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The company .... training courses for its employees.
   a) qualifies b) provides c) promotes d) practises
2. We all want to find .... careers that pay well and provide satisfaction.
   a) employable b) mature c) quality d) rewarding
3. Adel had to .... a language course to improve his English and get a better job.
   a) do b) run c) provide d) make
4. Dalia said that this book is difficult to read but it is .... I'll learn a lot about life from it.
   a) qualified b) similar c) worthwhile d) unkind
5. Last week, he .... on an evening course to improve his language.
   a) entitled b) enrolled c) entered d) employed
6. Egypt is always helping the .... of better relations between neighboring countries.
   a) development b) recommendation c) promotion d) announcement
7. Medhat offered Ashraf a cigarette. Ashraf .... him and said he didn't smoke.
   a) recommended b) apologised c) threatened d) thanked
8. Police are warning all women in the area .... extra care when going out alone.
   a) to take b) not to take c) taking d) that they take
9. The doctor always tells her .... about her illness as it is easily cured now.
   a) to worry b) not to worry c) to be worried d) worrying
10. We .... everyone that the time had been changed.
    a) informed b) said c) inquired d) asked
11. I suggest .... dinner and watch the film after that.
    a) having b) have c) we have d) to have
12. I .... wear a school uniform when I was a child.
    a) don't have to b) needn't c) had to d) have to
13. In England, most school children .... wear a uniform.
    a) needn't b) can't c) must d) have to
14. You really .... work harder if you want to pass the examination.
    a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) shouldn't

15 The car park is free; you .... pay to park your car there.
a) must b) ought to c) needn't d) have to

16 Why are you sitting here doing nothing? You .... be working.
a) ought to b) must c) can't d) will

17 The report says that the .... between the rich and the poor has increased.
a) wire b) brick c) plant d) gap

18 Queen Victoria was a great queen who .... England for 60 years.
a) marked b) ruled c) limited d) repaired

19 The Chemistry .... was complicated and difficult to follow.
a) event b) scene c) lecture d) paper

20 She tried to .... on reading her book but couldn't.
a) pass b) apply c) depend d) concentrate

21 Most businesses see government regulation as a necessary ....
a) devil b) evil c) pure d) imaginative

22 Slow learners find it difficult to keep .... with the rest of the class.
a) with b) on c) up d) up with

23 Mass media always advise people to be .... about the amount of water they use.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sense

24 My cousin was lucky to find a job immediately after ....
a) birth b) innovation c) graduation d) invitation

25 The woman complains of some fine .... around her eyes fearing that she is getting old.
a) cracks b) bruises c) wrinkles d) scratches

26 It might rain. I advise you .... your umbrella with you.
a) should take b) taking c) to take d) not to take

27 He warned his son .... with bad people.
a) to involve b) not to involve c) from involving d) if he involved

28 They suggested that Ali .... a course to improve his English.
a) takes b) take c) took d) taking

29 You .... get your bandage wet, or your leg might not heal properly.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) needn't

30 He .... tell the police when his jewels disappeared.
a) can't tell b) might tell
c) shouldn't have told d) had to

ead the following passage, then answer the questions:

Earthquakes are natural disasters that humans cannot control. Sometimes earthquakes can be very dangerous and people need to know more about where earthquakes come from, and how to protect themselves from them and any other natural disasters.

Earthquakes are the shaking, rolling or sudden shock of the earth's surface. They are the earth's natural means of releasing pressure. More than a million earthquakes occur in the world each year. Earthquakes can be felt over large areas although they usually last less than a minute. However, earthquakes cannot be predicted although scientists are still working on the problem.

There are about 20 plates along the surface of the earth that move continuously and slowly past each other. When the plates squeeze or stretch, huge rocks form at their edges and the rocks shift with great force, causing an earthquake. As the plates move, they put forces on themselves and each other. When the force is large enough, the crust is forced to break.

Shaking and ground breaking are the main effects created by earthquakes, principally resulting in more or less severe damage to buildings and other structures. The severity of the effect depends on the complex combination of the earthquake magnitude. Ground break is a major risk for large engineering structures such as dams, bridges and nuclear power stations and requires careful mapping of existing faults to identify any likely to break the ground surface within the life of the structure.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Earthquake are considered natural disaster because ....

a) they are man-made
b) man has no control over them
c) man can control them
d) they are always expected

Earthquakes are considered disastrous for people and properties because ....

a) earthquakes happen in cities
b) man can control them
c) they are unpredictable
d) they result in little destruction

According to the text, how long does an earthquake usually last?

a) Few minutes.
b) Less than a minute.
c) More than a minute.
d) Exactly a minute.

34 Which of the following is NOT TRUE about an earthquake?

a) An earthquake is a controllable disaster.

b) An earthquake is always unpredictable.

c) An earthquake causes severe damage.

d) The earth is cracked when an earthquake occurs.

35 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) areas
b) earthquakes
c) scientists
d) crusts

36 What do people want to know about earthquakes?

a) People need to know more about where earthquakes come from.

b) People need to know how to protect themselves from them and any other natural disasters.

c) Both a and b.

d) None of these.

37 Which one of the following is much affected by ground breaks?

a) Lakes.
b) Rivers.
c) Forests.
d) Engineering structures.

38 Find words from the passage that have the same meaning as "upper layer of the earth".

a) rock
b) plate
c) surface
d) crust

39 According to the passage, how do earthquakes help the earth?

a) They are the earth's natural means of releasing pressure.

b) They force us to study the earth.

c) They help animals and forests.

d) They renew the earth's environment.

40 According to the passage, how can we try to protect a structure from earthquakes?

a) By inventing devices to prevent earthquakes.

b) By building structures in deserts.

c) By careful mapping of existing faults in them to fix.

d) By releasing the force of crusts.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

41 Why couldn't Michael legally become a king?

a) As his brother refused that.
b) As his mother was not royal.
c) As his father didn't want him to be a king.
d) As his father was not royal.

42 Why did the Marshal fear that the people wouldn't believe him?

a) Because the King's writing was different from his usual.

b) Because they hated him.

c) Because he was used to lying to them.

d) Because the King was still among them.

43 What mission would Flavia have if the King (Rassendyll) didn't come back?

a) She would be on a mission to rescue Ruritania and be a queen.

b) She would kill Michael and his men.

c) She would assign the Marshal to lead the country.

d) She would marry Michael and he would become a king.

44 Where was the modern country house?

a) It was on the opposite side of the town to where the castle stood.

b) It was beside the castle of Zenda.

c) It was next to the mansion where the Duke stayed.

d) It was between the Inn and the hunting lodge.

45 What did Rassendyll tell the ten men about their mission?

a) That Michael had tried to kill him.

b) That a good friend of the King was held prisoner in the castle.

c) To be brave and loyal not to ask any more questions.

d) All of these.

46 Where did Rassendyll and Fritz go during their visit to Zenda? Why?

a) To the Inn as he wanted the innkeeper's daughter's help.

b) To the castle as he wanted to rescue the King.

c) To the hunting lodge for hunting.

d) To the Inn as he wanted to reward the innkeeper and her daughter

47 Why did Rupert pay another visit to Rassendyll at the modern house?

a) He came to invite him to the mansion.

b) He came with a message from the Duke.

c) He came as he was invited to Tarlenheim.

d) He came to take a message for Michael.

48 How did Rupert deceive Rassendyll while leaving the modern country house?

a) He asked Rassendyll to shake hands and stabbed him in his shoulder with his knife

b) He took the money and gave him nothing.

c) He promised to work with him but he didn't keep his promise.

d) He killed the King, Sapt and Fritz.

49 How was Rassendyll lucky when Rupert stabbed him?

a) As he wasn't killed by that cowardly attack.

b) As he was wearing heavy clothes.

c) As it was not a bad injury.

d) a and c.

50 What was the best qualities of Johann?

a) He was a weak man.

b) He wasn't a wicked man.

c) He was wealthy.

d) He was a cheerful one.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 Students should take part in the conversation inside the classroom to feel more confident in themselves.

(أ) يجب أن يشارك الطلاب فى المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.

(ب) يجب أن يأخذ الطلاب جزءًا فى المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.

(جـ) يجب أن يتكلم الطلاب المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.

(د) لا يجب أن يشارك الطلاب فى المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.

Choose the correct English translation:

52 على كل فرد أن يشارك فى تحمل المسئولية للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية.

a) Everyone should share responsible for overcoming our economic, social and environmental problems.

b) Everyone should share responsibility for overcoming our economic, social and environment problems.

c) Everyone should share responsibility for overcoming our economic, social and environmental problems.

d) Everyone should share responsibility for overcome our economic, social and environmental problems.

Choose the correct answer:

53 Which sentence is correct?

a) Sometimes parents dream of their kids to be at high professions like doctors or engineers.

b) Sometimes parents dream of their kids to be at high work like doctors or engineers,

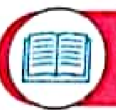
c) Parents sometimes dreams of their kids to be at high professions like doctors or engineers.

d) Sometimes parents' dream of their kids to be at high professions like doctors or engineers.



Units 13 & 14





Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

bark (n)	اللحاء/القشرة الخارجية
base (n) (v) (d)	قاعدة/أساس/يؤسس
calculate (v) (d)	يحسب
cardboard (n)	ورق مقوى/كرتونى
carve (v) (d)	ينحت
cliff (n)	منحدر صخرى
commuter (n)	مسافر/راكب
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
diameter (n)	قطر الدائرة
drill (n) (v) (ed)	تنقيب/ينقب عن/يحفر
emission (n)	انبعاث (غاز)
extract (v) (ed)	يستخلص/ينزع
harden (v) (ed)	يجمد/يقوى
illuminate (v) (d)	يضيء
investment (n)	استثمار

massive (adj)	ضخم
position (n) (v) (ed)	موضع/يضع فى مكان
power cut (n)	انقطاع طاقة (كهرباء)
power station (n)	محطة طاقة (كهرباء)
ray (n)	شعاع
ring (n)	حلقة
rubber (n)	مطاط
sap (n)	سائل داخل الشجرة (نسغ)
solar panel (n)	لوح شمسى
solar (adj)	شمسى
tube (n)	أنبوب/أنبوبة
tunnel (n) (v) (led)	نفق/يحفر/يشق الأنفاق
turpentine (n)	زيت التربنتين
valuable (adj)	قيّم
width (n)	عرض

Helpful Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	يضيف
amazing (adj)	مذهل
attach (v) (ed)	يربط/يصل
attackers (n)	مهاجمون
attractive (adj)	جذاب

beam (n)	شعاع
branch (n)	غصن/فرع
breathe (v) (d)	يتنفس
cable car	عربة قطار هوائى
cells (n)	خلايا

chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائي/ مادة كيمائية
climate (n)	المناخ
combination (n)	مجموعة/ اتحاد
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
concrete (n)	خرسانة
cut down (v)	يقطع
deduce (v) (d)	يستنتج
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
dig (v)	يحفر
drill (v) (ed)	يحفر/ يثقب
emperor (n)	إمبراطور
enemy (n)	عدو
engineering (n) (adj)	هندسة/ هندسي
environment (n)	البيئة
equipment (n)	معدات/ تجهيزات
eventually (adv)	في النهاية/ أخيرًا
extra (adj)	إضافي
fertiliser (n)	سماد
flat (adj)	مسطح/ مستوٍ
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/ يفيض
form (v) (ed)	يشكل/ يكوّن
freeze (v)	يتجمد
fuel (n) (v) (led)	وقود/ يزود بالوقود
furniture (n)	أثاث
gate (n)	بوابة
giant (adj)	عملاق
global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري
gloves (n)	قفاز/ جوانتي
heat (n) (v) (ed)	حرارة/ يسخن
historical (adj)	تاريخي
hole (n)	ثقب/ فتحة
instructions (n)	تعليمات
instruments (n)	آلات/ أدوات
leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر
liquid (n)	سائل
materials (n)	مواد
mix (v) (ed)	يخلط
monuments (n)	آثار
mud bricks (n)	الطوب اللبن (من الطين)
nuts (n)	بندق/ مكسرات
pick (v) (ed)	يقطف
pour (v) (ed)	يصب/ يسكب
products (n)	منتجات
protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
railway (n)	سكك حديدية
recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
refer (v) (red)	يشير
remover (n)	مزيل
re-open (v) (ed)	يعيد افتتاح
rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ/ ينقذ
rise (n)	ترتفع/ تشرق (الشمس)
roots (n)	جذور
sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
seed (n)	بذرة

shape (n)	شكل
short (adj)	قصير
simple (adj)	بسيط
site (n)	موقع
skin (n)	جلد
soft (adj)	لين/ناعم
soil (n)	تربة
solve (v) (d)	يحل
statue (n)	تمثال
steam (n)	بخار
steep (adj)	مائل/منحدر
structure (n)	بناء/تركيب/مبنى
surface (n)	سطح
take in (v)	يمتص
take place (v)	يحدث/يتم
threaten (v) (ed)	يهدد
tie (v) (d)	يربط
toothpaste (n)	معجون أسنان
underground (adj)	تحت الأرض
valley (n)	وادٍ
valuable (adj)	ثمين
weather (n)	الطقس

Expressions & Idioms

(be) cut into pieces	يُقطع إلى قطع
(be) carved into a cliff	منحوت في المنحدر الصخرى
carry water from ... to	ينقل الماء من ... إلى
catch the train	يلحق بالقطار
come to an agreement on	يصل إلى اتفاق على
cut into rock	يحفر في الصخر
do damage to	يسبب ضررًا لـ
draw up a plan	يرسم خطة
fall over in the wind	يسقط أثناء هبوب الرياح
get better at	يتحسن في
give instructions	يعطي تعليمات
grow on trees	ينمو على الأشجار
have in common	لديهم أشياء مشتركة
keep ... away from	يبعد ... عن
keep the attackers out	يبعد المهاجمين
make plans	يعد خططًا
miss the train	يفوته القطار
reach a length of	يصل طوله إلى
set of instructions	مجموعة تعليمات
sound like	يبدو كأنه
take the underground	يركب (يستقل) المترو
use wood as a fuel	يستخدم الخشب كوقود

Phrases & Prepositions

attract ... to	يجذب لـ	move to	ينقل إلى
attractive to	جذاب لـ	pour ... into	يصب ... فى
centre for	مركز لـ	press with	يضغط بـ
drill into	يثقب فى	protect from	يحمى من
enough for	كافٍ لـ	proud of	فخور بـ
extract from	يستخلص من	refer to	يشير إلى
grown for	مزروع من أجل	remind of	يذكر بـ
important for	هام لـ	remove from	يزيل من
instead of	بدلًا من	right for	صحيح لـ
investment in	استثمار فى	tie to	يربط لـ
made from	مصنوع من	turn into	يتحول إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
attack	يهاجم	attack attacker	هجوم مهاجم	attacking	مهاجم
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
breathe	يتنفس	breath	نفس	breathless	لاهث/منقطع النفس
combine	يتحد/يضم/يجمع	combination	مجموعة/اتحاد	combined	متحد/مجمع
commute	يسافر	commuter	مسافر/راكب	----------------	
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerable	معتبر
deduce	يستنتج	deduction	استنتاج	deductive	استنتاجي
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق



demonstrate	يشرح/يتظاهر	demonstration	شرح	demonstrative	توضيحي
emit	يخرج/يطلق (غاز)	emission	انبعاث (غاز)	------------	
equip	يجهز/يمد بـ	equipment	معدات/تجهيزات	equipped	مجهز
extract	يستخلص/ينزع	extraction	استخلاص/نزع	------------	
harden	يجمد/يقوى	hardness	صلابة	hard	صلب/جامد
heighten	يرفع/يجعله عاليًا	height	ارتفاع	high	عالٍ/مرتفع
improve	يحسن/يطور	improvement	تحسين/تطوير	improved	محسن
invest	يستثمر	investment investor	استثمار مستثمر	------------	
lengthen	يطول	length	طول	long	طويل
------------		mass	كتلة	massive	ضخم
produce	ينتج	production product	انتاج منتَج	productive	منتج
protect	يحمى	protection	وقاية/حماية	protective	واقٍ
------------		rubber	مطاط	rubbery	مطاطى
sharpen	يجعله حادًا	sharpness	حدة	sharp	حاد
strengthen	يقوى	strength	قوة	strong	قوى
threaten	يهدد	threat	تهديد	threatening	مهدد/تهديدى
value	يقدّر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيّم
weaken	يضعف	weakness	ضعف	weak	ضعيف
widen	يوسع	width	عرض	wide	واسع/عريض



Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
attractive	جذاب	charming	boring	ممل
base	قاعدة/أساس	foundation	top	قمة
carve	ينحت	dig	mend	يصلح
compare	يقارن	contrast	disregard	لا يعتبر
consider	يعتبر	believe	ignore	يتجاهل
deduce	يستنتج	assume	misunderstand	يسيء فهم
emission	انبعاث	discharge	concealment	إخفاء
illuminate	ينير	light up	darken	يظلم
investment	استثمار	financing	divestment	تجريد
position	يضع في موضع	locate	displace	يزيح
rescue	ينقذ	save	endanger	يعرض للخطر
structure	تركيب	formation	disorganisation	عدم تنظيم
calculate	يحسب	estimate	disregard	يتجاهل
extract	يستخلص/ينزع	extort	spread	ينشر
giant	عملاق	enormous	tiny	صغير
hole	ثقب/فتحة	gap	closure	غلق
narrow	ضيق	tight	wide	عريض
soft	لين/ناعم	flexible	rough	خشن/قاس
valuable	قيم	expensive	cheap	رخيص

Additional Language Notes

1 rise (rose/ risen) يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه/ تشرق/يزداد/يستيقظ/ يقف/يتصاعد (لا يأتى بعده مفعول)	▸ Smoke from the factory was rising high in the sky. ▸ Family expenses have risen a lot these days. ▸ The child couldn't rise up as he was tired.
arise (arose/ arisen) يحدث (لا يأتى بعده مفعول) /يظهر/ينشا	▸ Some financial problems arose because of the rise in prices.
raise (raised/ raised) يزيد (يأتى بعده مفعول)/يربى/يجمع/يرفع/ يثير raise: hopes آمال/ fears مخاوف/ suspicions شكوك/ interest اهتمام	▸ Most workers always ask the government to raise the wages. ▸ The teacher asked the student to raise his voice to answer his question. ▸ Most charities are organising events to raise money.
arouse (aroused/ aroused) يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين/عاطفة لدى الناس) (يأتى بعده مفعول) arouse: feelings مشاعر/interest اهتمام/ fears مخاوف/suspicions (doubts) شكوك	▸ The new law aroused a lot of criticism النقد.
2 take place يحدث	▸ The Olympic Games take place every four years in a different city.
take someone's place يحل محل	▸ The manager asked his son to take his place as a manager when he travelled abroad.
3 produce (v) ينتج	▸ Logs of some certain trees are used to produce paper. لاحظ استخدام produce كاسم بمعنى إنتاج زراعى فقط. ▸ Egypt exports much of her produce such as oranges and potatoes to other countries.
product (n) مُنتَج (سلعة)	▸ My father insists on buying fresh dairy products believing that they are healthy.
producer (n) مُنتِج (شخص)	▸ The producer of the film is the one who is responsible for all expenses.
productive (adj) مُنتِج (غزير الإنتاج)	▸ My sister has been very productive at home; she does much of the housework.
production (n) الإنتاج	▸ We should improve the quality of our production to sell more goods.

4 **use + object + to + inf.** يستخدم لكى
- We use a special machine to compress the mixture of paper into sheets.

use + object + for + (v-ing.) يستخدم من أجل
- We use a special machine for compressing the mixture of paper into sheets.

use + object + as يستخدم كـ
- Some villages still use wood as a fuel for heating and cooking.

5 **base** قاعدة/أساس (الجزء الأسفل الذى يحمل فوقه باقى الشىء)
- The statue stands on a large round base.

basis أساس/قاعدة (الأفكار والحقائق الهامة التى منها يمكن للشىء أن يتطور)
- This document will form the basis for our discussion.

basic أساسى/جوهرى (أهم جزء فى الشىء الذى بدونه لا يمكن لهذا الشىء أن يوجد)
- Rice is the basic ingredient of the dish.

6 **historic** تاريخى (لأنه قديم أو مؤثر ذو أهمية تاريخية)
- Tourists like to visit historic monuments in Egypt.

historical تاريخى (مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ أو بالماضى)
- She specialises in historical novels set in eighteenth-century England.

7 **site** موقع
- This is the site of the accident where a lot of people died.

sight بصر/منظر
- I'm having laser treatment to improve my sight.
- I can't stand the sight of blood.

sights مواقع أثرية
- We enjoyed seeing the sights of Rome.

8 **carve** ينحت (يحفر فى شىء أو من شىء)
- He carved the wood to resemble a small bird.

dig يحفر (فى الأرض)
- We dug a hole and planted the tree.

drill يحفر (باستخدام أداة) غالبًا بحثًا عن شىء أو لأداء شىء
- The company has been licensed to drill for oil in the area.

(9) **system**	نظام (عمل/تشغيل)	▸ The manager made great efforts to improve the accounting system in the company.
discipline	نظام (انضباط)	▸ School life is designed to teach students discipline.
(10) **tunnel**	نفق (طريق/ممر) محفور في شيء	▸ The Giza underground line goes into a tunnel under the Nile.
canal	قناة(مائية)/ترعة	▸ In order to turn the deserts into fertile land, we built an 800-km canal.
channel	قناة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية)	▸ He changed the channel to a news programme.
(11) **connected to**	متصل بـ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر)	▸ Every house must have a computer connected to the Internet nowadays.
connected with	مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بـ	▸ There are many problems connected with drug misuse.
contact	يتصل بـ	▸ You can always contact me on my home number.
(12) **ring**	١- حلقة (شيء /مجموعة على شكل دائرة)	▸ The city was overlooked by a ring of high-rise buildings.
	٢- خاتم	▸ She wore a gold ring on his right hand.
circle	١- دائرة (شكل هندسي)	▸ Draw a circle around the right answer.
	٢- دائرة محيطين (مجموعة مشتركة الاهتمامات)	▸ Over the years she had established a circle of good friends.
(13) **pour**	يصب(سائلًا في شيء) عن قصد	▸ He poured the last of his drink down the sink.
spill	يسكب(سائلًا) عن غير قصد	▸ Oh no! I've spilt coffee all down my shirt!
(14) **list**	قائمة (أسماء/أرقام/أشياء) لمراجعتها أو القيام بها.	▸ I'd better make a list, or I'll forget who I've invited.
menu	- قائمة طعام (في مطعم)	▸ We asked the waiter for a menu.
	- قائمة (مهام) في جهاز يمكن الاختيار منها.	▸ From the Edit menu, you can select Cut or Copy.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. Many new laws were issued to limit harmful gas .... into the atmosphere.
   a) emission b) absorption c) consuming d) farming
2. A solar .... is a piece of equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity.
   a) power b) radiator c) panel d) machine
3. The decision has not yet been made whether to .... under the river or build a bridge over it.
   a) tunnel b) funnel c) channel d) canal
4. The tunnel which was dug under the Nile is eight metres in ....
   a) length b) diameter c) speed d) distance
5. The government is planning to attract foreign .... to help the economy.
   a) policy b) encouragement c) investment d) certificate
6. The sculptor's name can be found at the .... of the statue.
   a) basis b) role c) rule d) base
7. The trains are always full of .... at this time of the day.
   a) drivers b) engineers c) commuters d) computers
8. He put the papers into a .... folder and tied it carefully.
   a) dashboard b) cardboard c) blackboard d) whiteboard
9. Artists use .... for making paint thinner and for cleaning paint from brushes.
   a) turpentine b) turbine c) turtles d) tubes
10. When I saw that my neighbour's house was .... by spotlights, I knew that he had come back from his travel.
   a) beamed b) darkened c) eliminated d) illuminated
11. The Great Wall of China was a .... project which took hundreds of years to complete.
   a) heavy b) mass c) massive d) long
12. .... is a strong substance that is used for making things such as tyres and boots.
   a) Rubber b) Wood c) Turpentine d) Sap
13. I didn't know you played hockey - what .... do you play?
   a) sight b) base c) location d) position

14 The skin of babies and young children needs very special protection from the .... of the sun.

a) rails b) lines c) rays d) lights

15 This artist .... many of his famous statues out of old branches.

a) curved b) caused c) carved d) dug

16 The man stood on the top of a steep .... and looked out to the sea.

a) street b) stiff c) staff d) cliff

17 The oil which is .... from olives is used for cooking.

a) contracted b) extracted c) excavated d) included

18 The hard .... is the material that forms the surface of the wood of a tree.

a) leaves b) roots c) bark d) branches

19 The children sat around their grandfather in a .... eager to hear his story.

a) ring b) root c) fruit d) leaves

20 It's difficult to .... how long the project will take.

a) count b) suppose c) calculate d) appreciate

21 My brother's new job at the United Nations gave him an opportunity to gain .... experience.

a) valueless b) helpless c) estimated d) valuable

22 Egypt is building its first nuclear power .... near Matrouh.

a) station b) panel c) rocket d) stop

23 .... is the liquid that carries food and salts in trees.

a) Soup b) Soap c) Sap d) Tube

24 In every tree, there is a circle of soft cells which .... every spring or summer.

a) harden b) drop c) stay d) go

25 The .... of the rings of trees depends on the climate and the amount of rain every year.

a) length b) width c) strength d) height

26 They .... into the tree and extracted a thin piece of wood.

a) felled b) pulled c) called d) drilled

27 Pelé is widely .... to be the greatest footballer ever.

a) ignored b) considered c) expected d) expected

28 We are angry because the power .... left us in the dark for five hours.

a) reactor b) supply c) division d) cut

29 Egypt has one of the largest .... energy stations in Aswan where the sun shines all the year round.

a) lunar b) wind c) solar d) molecular

30 The old man had to be fed through a feeding .... for several days after the operation.

a) tube b) pipe c) wire d) tunnel

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

31 New York City streets are lined with modern steel and glass ....
a) tombs b) temples c) structures d) graves

32 To make students understand well, you should use a .... of text, illustration and graphics.
a) collect b) blend c) companion d) combination

33 There are plans to .... the railway station after it has been renewed.
a) reopen b) open c) build d) construct

34 Our washing machine broke down yesterday and .... the kitchen.
a) floated b) flooded c) fought d) fled

35 The bank robbers .... the guards and killed one of them.
a) attracted b) attended c) attempted d) attacked

36 In many public places we find .... built to celebrate important persons or events.
a) mountains b) moments c) monuments d) memories

37 We're going to replace the old wooden bridge with one made of ....
a) glass b) concrete c) mud d) soil

38 The job requires efficient young men with a degree in .... from a good university.
a) engineering b) walking c) working d) speech

39 .... warming is a problem that affects every country in the world.
a) National b) Global c) International d) Universal

40 A large group of firefighters worked hard to .... people from the burning fire.
a) blame b) appoint c) rescue d) ask

41 This essay's still too long, I'll have to .... it.
a) broaden b) widen c) deepen d) shorten

42 Egypt is full of examples of amazing .... of ancient and modern engineering and building skills.
a) works b) jobs c) tasks d) professions

43 Children are advised to use .... regularly to protect their teeth.
a) rubber b) toothpaste c) plastic d) protein

44 The latest road accidents .... a number of questions about the roads safety.
a) raise b) rise c) arise d) rouse

45 You mustn't break the .... and laws of the country you live in.
a) roles b) rails c) reels d) rules

46 The .... grow out from the trunk and support the leaves.
a) roots b) barks c) branches d) fruits

47 My uncle owns a small factory which sells dairy .... in our city.
a) forms b) operations c) processes d) products

48 The .... was so cold yesterday, so we didn't go out.
a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) sky

49 Coal, oil and gas are fossil ...., which have been formed under the ground millions of years ago.
a) soils b) products c) fuels d) shapes

50 The .... is the part of a plant that grows under the ground and absorbs water and minerals.
a) fruit b) root c) bark d) trunk

51 The .... near the river is fertile and produces the best crops.
a) ground b) floor c) sail d) soil

52 She has a lot of sports .... in her house which she uses to practise sports.
a) equipment b) styles c) techniques d) ways

53 The .... of this evergreen tree doesn't fall in autumn.
a) roots b) leaves c) bark d) branches

54 A cello is a musical .... which produces a sound similar to a violin.
a) tool b) equipment c) player d) instrument

55 Wax passes from the solid state to the .... state when you heat it.
a) water b) solid c) liquid d) moisture

56 A new factory was set up in our village to .... animal waste to produce fertilisers.
a) remake b) reproduce c) reshape d) recycle

57 The government has announced the .... for the new airport.
a) site b) sight c) view d) scene

58 Big Ben is one of London's oldest existing .... that attract tourists.
a) fractures b) structures c) exposures d) inspectors

59 The tunnel of the underground Giza metro is about 30 metres below the .... of the Nile.
a) ceiling b) roof c) surface d) wall

60 The chef .... the garlic sauce over the hot chicken pieces to give it a better taste.
a) split b) spilt c) spoiled d) poured

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

61 The word "darken" is an antonym to the word "........".
a) harden b) illuminate c) extract d) construct

62 My grandfather owned a big house with an .... garden.
a) attractive b) attracted c) attract d) attraction

63 He compared the Cairo underground .... those in London and Paris.
a) by b) in c) with d) of

64 If you want to save a lot of time, you can .... the underground to Giza.
a) come b) take c) lead d) miss

65 My brother used a paint .... to clean his shirt.
a) remove b) removal c) removing d) remover

66 The word "foundation" is similar in meaning to the word ".........................."
a) base b) discipline c) software d) inspection

67 Professor Magdy referred .... the new research results in his last lecture.
a) in b) to c) at d) on

68 The verb "locate" is a synonym to the verb ....
a) defy b) magnify c) position d) extract

69 The adjective "tiny" can be the opposite to the adjective ....
a) small b) light c) unimportant d) giant

70 Tennis and table tennis are two games which .... much in common.
a) give b) take c) have d) do

71 A lot of local farmers are against plans to .... the road near their fields.
a) widen b) width c) wide d) widening

72 We can examine the bones of dinosaurs and make a/an .... about how they lived.
a) deduce b) deduction c) deductive d) induction

73 A sunscreen gives your skin a .... layer against the sun's harmful rays.
a) protect b) protection c) protective d) protected

74 The Abu Simbel Temple near Aswan was cut .... rock.
a) for b) off c) at d) into

75 The manager .... all the staff instructions to be in the factory by six o'clock next Thursday.
a) gave b) had c) followed d) refused

76 The first line of Cairo metro .... a length of 44 kilometres and was opened in 1989.
a) arrived b) reached c) came d) got

77 This kind of horror films is attractive .... young people these days.
a) in b) at c) to d) of

78 My elder brother likes this song which reminds him .... his wedding day.
a) about b) at c) from d) of

79 Technology and good management are really a winning .... for any business nowadays.
a) combine b) combination c) combined d) combinative

80 The Chinese built the Great Wall to keep the attackers ....
a) out b) at c) of d) into

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of the baby's cough woke the other children.
   a) bark b) branch
   c) laughter d) voice
2. The teacher was .... the class in the forms of the past tense.
   a) digging b) carving
   c) drilling d) shaping
3. I've only seen short .... from the film, but I liked it much.
   a) revisions b) extracts
   c) papers d) documents
4. The report .... the difficult problems we face in our schools.
   a) lengthened b) shortened
   c) lighted d) illuminated
5. We take the .... that these changes are to be welcomed.
   a) location b) position
   c) structure d) post
6. The freelance accountant uses his home as the .... for his accounting busines
   a) foundation b) top
   c) base d) statue
7. The school rules are not .... in stone. They can be changed.
   a) dug b) carved
   c) built d) demolished
8. The baby was a .... of sunshine to his parents as he made them very happy.
   a) beam b) memorial
   c) shrine d) ray
9. The government has to take .... steps to reduce gas emissions in the area.
   a) concrete b) brick
   c) metal d) mud
10. The announcements about the new COVID-19 vaccine in Russia was really a light at the end of the ....
   a) mill b) way
   c) tunnel d) station

11 The four men were arrested as they are accused of running a drug smuggling ....
a) circle
b) bell
c) ring
d) shade

12 My father often travels on the .... saying that it is the easiest way.
a) road
b) pipe
c) tunnel
d) tube

13 Many experts believe that Egypt offers an excellent business ....
a) weather
b) orbit
c) climate
d) space

14 The teacher .... her voice when she saw that the students weren't listening.
a) lengthened
b) hardened
c) forgot
d) followed

15 The poor boy was homeless after his parents' death, so we took him ....
a) up
b) off
c) in
d) at

16 Commuters usually .... out of metro stations at this time of the day.
a) spill
b) pour
c) destroy
d) split

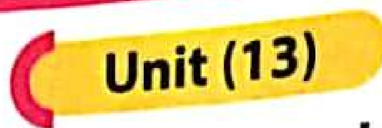
17 The company website received a .... of mail about the new product.
a) wind
b) report
c) tool
d) flood

18 Egyptian squash players are usually .... in first places in international tournaments.
a) seeded
b) grown
c) rooted
d) accepted

19 Artists believe that movies can be useful .... of social change.
a) machines
b) instruments
c) positions
d) beams

20 Some people say that the fashion world just keeps .... old ideas.
a) creating
b) reposting
c) recycling
d) rewriting





Modal verbs of deduction, advice and regret

Deduction استنتاج

Degree	Present	Past	Examples
Certain مؤكد	Verb to be (am-is-are) أى فعل فى المضارع يعتبر مؤكد	Verb to be (was-were) أى فعل فى الماضى يعتبر مؤكد	- My father is a doctor. - Hany speaks English well. - My brother travelled abroad. - My grandmother died in 1990.
Near certain شبه مؤكد	Must be (Verb) أكيد	Must have been (P.P.) كان مؤكدًا فى الماضى	- Ahmed must be wrong. I'm sure he is. - Trees must get their food from the soil and a - Osama must have been ill yesterday. We didn't see him at school.
Uncertain غير مؤكد	May be (verb) ربما	May have been (P.P.) ربما	- They may visit us tomorrow but I'm not sur - Perhaps, he passed the exam. He may hav passed the exam. - I don't know what happened. They may have punished him.
Very uncertain غير مؤكد إلى حد كبير	Might/could be (verb) ربما	Could/might have been (P.P.) ربما	- Don't put the vase here. It could fall off easily. - The lights are still on. Omar might have forgotten to turn them off.
Negative النفى	Can't be لا يمكن أن يكون	Can't have been (P.P.) لا يمكن انه كان	- He can't be ill. He is at school. - You can't know my brother. He lives abroad
	May not be Might not be Couldn't be	May not have + P.P. Might not have + P.P. Couldn't have + P.P.	- You should introduce yourself; he may/ might not remember you. - I had better call Anne. She may/might not have read my e-mail.

Advice and regret

النصيحة والندم

Present/ Future	Past
Advice	**Regret**
should (shouldn't) + inf.	should (shouldn't) have + P.P.
ought to (oughtn't to) + inf.	ought to (oughtn't to) have + P.P.

- I should/ought to make a study plan.
- He should have studied/ought to have studied harder to pass the exam.
- I oughtn't to have insulted/shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.
- should have + P.P. كان ينبغي عليك فعل شيء لم تفعله.
- shouldn't have + P.P. فعلت شيئًا لم يكن واجبًا فعله.



Modal verbs of necessity, prohibition, lack of necessity, advice, regret and deduction

Use	Present / Future	Past
Advice/ Regret	Advice should/ ought to/ had better They should help the poor. We shouldn't waste our time. They ought to study hard. He had better not use the phone a lot.	Regret should/ ought to have + P.P. You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night. I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time.
Deduction	must be (verb) - can't be (verb) She must be working. (positive) She can't be over forty. (negative) He may be mistaken. (I'm not sure) He might/ could be mistaken. He might not/couldn't be mistaken.	must have + P.P./can't have + P.P. She must have been working. She can't have been over forty. He may have been mistaken. He might have been mistaken.

مراجعة سريعة للنقاط الهامة:

١- تستخدم must be (verb) عندما نشعر بأن شيئًا ما حقيقي بسبب وجود دليل قوي.

- He must be clever because he always gives the correct answers.

٢- تستخدم may/might/could عندما نعتقد بأن شيئا ما ممكن ولكن لسنا متأكدين.

- We'll try to get there early but we may arrive late if there's a lot of traffic.

٣- تستخدم can't عندما نشعر بأن شيئًا ما غير حقيقي بسبب وجود دليل قوي.

- He has to work on the feast Day? He can't feel very happy about that.





الجملة الشرطية

The conditional sentence

1 The Zero Conditional

Type (0) | If | Present simple مضارع بسيط , | Present simple مضارع بسيط

تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شيء لا نتحكم فيه).

- If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.
- If/When we heat air, it rises.

تستخدم الحالة الصفرية أيضًا مع الأشياء التى أصبحت عادة لدى الشخص.

- If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed.
- If/When I use the computer for long, I always have a headache.

لاحظ استخدام when بدلًا من if فى الحالة الصفرية.

- When I go to bed, I always take much time to sleep.
- When I eat, I begin with salad as I'm on a diet.

2 The First Conditional

Type (1) | If | Present simple مضارع بسيط | will / may / can / should للنصيحة / فعل أمر | + inf.

تستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

- If Ali arrives late again, the headmaster will punish him.
- If she doesn't earn much money, she won't be able to fly to the USA.

تستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة أو الاستحباب و(have to) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

يمكن استخدام may للاحتمال و can للاستطاعة.

- If you know more than one language, they may give you the job.
- If my father buys me a computer, I will be able to (can) log on the internet.

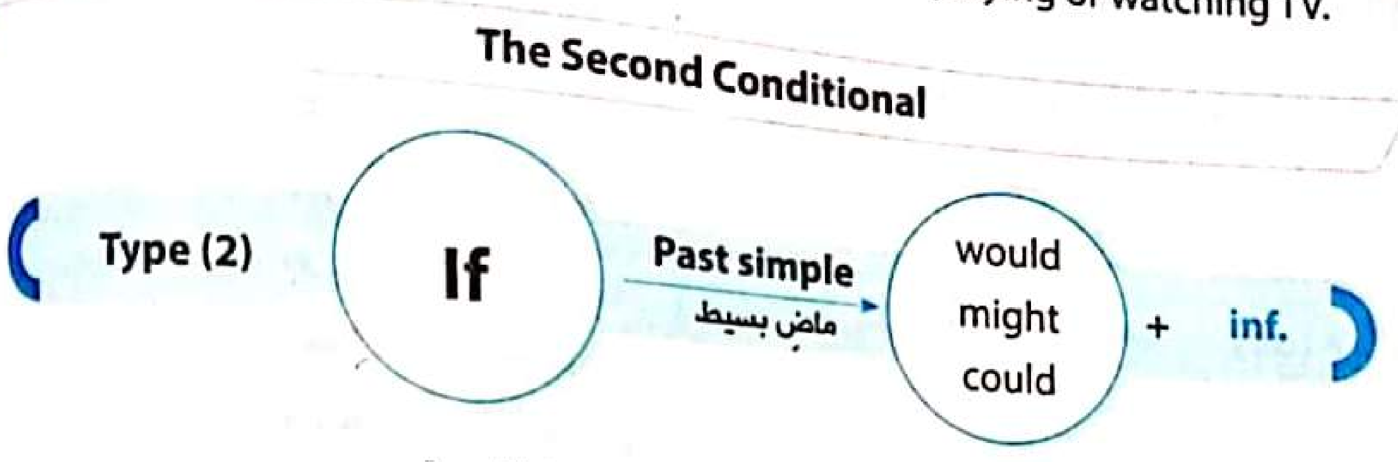
- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو امنية أو تهديد.

- If you win the gold medal, I will reward you.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

- يمكن أن يبدأ جواب الشرط فى الحالة الأولى بأمر (مصدر) أو نهى:

- If you like, stay for another two days.
- If you want to get high marks, don't waste much time playing or watching TV.

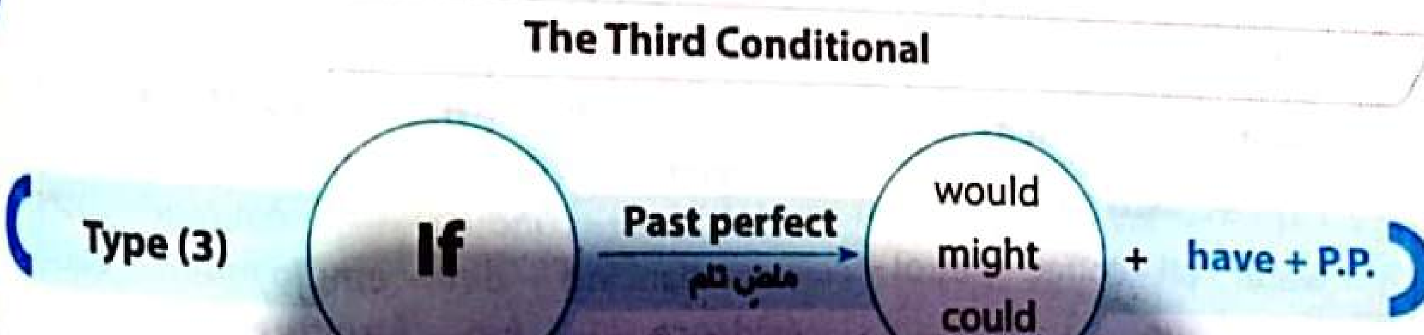
The Second Conditional



- تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل فى المضارع أو المستقبل وفى إعطاء النصيحة.

- If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird, untrue in the present)
- If I were you, I'd help him. (Giving advice)

The Third Conditional



- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

- If they had known I was ill, they would have visited me. (لم يعلموا بمرضى ولم يزورونى)

Subject-verb agreement

توافق الفعل مع الفاعل

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

الاسم التى يعد تسبقه (a - an) فى المفرد وتحذفان فى الجمع ونضيف s/es/ies الجمع أو أن يكون الجمع شاذًا لا يأخذ s.

a pen	قلم	→ pens	a man	رجل	→ men
a watch	ساعة	→ watches	a foot	قدم	→ feet
a baby	رضيع	→ babies	a mouse	فأر	→ mice
a leaf	ورقة	→ leaves	a means	وسيلة	→ means
a child	طفل	→ children	a species	فصيلة/نوع	→ species

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء الغير المعدودة

الأسماء التى لا تعد تعامل مفرد ولا تجمع أى تأخذ is/has/was/does/s/es مع الفعل.

1. Food الطعام meat - cheese - rice - sugar.	6. Other nouns: accommodation - advice - applause الهتاف - assistanc - baggage - camping - cash - chaos الفوضى - chess - clothing اللبس - conduct السلوك - courage - cutlery ادوات المائدة - dancing - dirt - employment - equipmen - evidence دليل - fun - furniture - harm - health - homework - housing - information - leisure وقت الفراغ - litter - luck - luggage - machinery - money - mud - music - news - nonsense - parking - pay - permission - photography - poetry - pollution - produce - progres - publicity الذيوع - research - rubbish - safety - scener - shopping - sightseeing زيارة الأماكن السياحية - sunshine - transport - violence - weather - work - traffic - ange - blood - bread - business - education - gold - help - laughter
2. Liquids السوائل water - oil - coffee - petrol - milk - soup	
3. Materials المواد wood - plastic - glass - paper	
4. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة knowledge - beauty - freedom - justice العدل	
5. School subjects المواد الدراسية physics - chemistry - mathematics - history, etc.	

Nouns which are always plural

أسماء دائما جمع

people - police - cattle ماشية - goods بضائع - belongings ممتلكات - clothes - looks نظرات, earnings أرباح - outskirts الضواحي - riches ثروات - stairs سلالم - greens خضراوات - surroundings البيئة المحيطة

- People are asked to love their country.
- Be careful .The stairs are very slippery.

Nouns ending in (s) but singular

أسماء تنتهي بـ (s) لكنها مفرد

athletics الألعاب الرياضية - news - economics الاقتصاد - politics السياسة - mathematics علم الحساب - physics الفيزياء - gymnastics الألعاب الرياضية/جُمباز - statistics إحصائيات - classics الأدب اليوناني القديم - electronics - diabetes مرض السكر - measles الحصبة

- Diabetes is a serious disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood.
- The news isn't very encouraging.
- Physics is a very difficult subject.

Nouns which refer to groups

أسماء تشير إلى مجموعات

team فريق - class فصل - army جيش - company شركة - staff هيئة - crew طاقم - crowd حشد - family - gang عصابة - group مجموعة - navy البحرية - population سكان - club نادي - university جامعة - the public العامة - audience جمهور - couple زوج - The couple جمع) الزوجان - committee لجنة

معظم الأسماء التي تشير إلى مجموعات يمكن أن يُستخدم معها فعل مفرد أو جمع.

- There are 32 teams in the world cup and our team is one of them.
- The Egyptian team are receiving the medals.

Nouns which are (countable and uncountable) أسماء لا تعد لها معنى وتعد بمعنى آخر

coffee بن/قهوة → a coffee فنجان قهوة	hair الشعر → a hair شعرة
light النور/الضوء → a light مصباح	paper ورق → a paper صحيفة
time وقت/زمن → a time مرة واحدة	orange اللون البرتقالي → an orange برتقالة
chicken لحم الفراخ → a chicken فرخة	glass الزجاج → a glass كوب
iron الحديد → an iron مكواة	cold البرد عموما → a cold نزلة برد
school الدراسة → a school مدرسة	experience خبرة → an experience تجربة
wood خشب → woods الغابات	room فراغ → a room حجرة

- Einstein changed the way we think about space and time.
- I phoned him three times مرات yesterday.
- My five-year-old sister will start school in September.
- The government is going to build a school in this area.

المدرسة/الدراسة (لا تعد)
مدرسة (تعد)

7 Nouns which look plural but they are singular

أسماء تبدو جمعًا لكنها مفرد

المبالغ المالية والمسافات والكميات والوقت ودرجات الحرارة والوزن تبدو جمعًا ولكنها مفرد.

- 2 thousand pounds isn't enough for a family to live on.
- Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.
- Two hours is a long time to wait.
- 500 kilometres is a long way to travel.
- Fifty degrees is a very high temperature.
- Five kilometres is a long way to walk if you are carrying a heavy bag.

. ولكن لاحظ أننا نقول:

- Three one-pound coins are on the desk.

- ثلاث عملات معدنية من فئة الجنيه (هذه التركيبة تعامل على أنها جمع).

8 How to make the uncountable countable?

كيف تجعل الذى لا يعد يعد؟

يمكن استخدام أدوات تجزئة مع الكلمات التي لا تعـد و فى حالة الجمع تجمع أداة التجزئة مثل:

a piece of jewellery	قطعة مجوهرات	an item of information	بند من المعرفة
a glass of lemonade	كوب ليمون	a bottle of milk	زجاجة لبن
a bar of chocolate	قطعة شوكولاته	a piece of furniture	قطعة من الأثاث
a piece of advice	نصيحة	a tube of toothpaste	أنبوبة معجون أسنان
a jar of jam	برطمان مربى	a bar of soap	قطعة صابون
a piece of luggage	أحد الأمتعة	a slice of cake/meat	شريحة كيك/لحم
a loaf of bread	رغيف خبز	a cup of coffee	فنجان قهوة
a sheet/a packet of paper	فرخ/رزمة ورق		




Countable and Uncountable nouns with some adjectives and determiners.

some/much/all, etc. :الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة مع بعض الصفات والكلمات المحددة مثل

Countable		Uncountable	Examples
✓	all	✓	e.g. All cats are animals. They have eaten all the food.
✓	most	✓	e.g. Most students are absent. I like most Egyptian food.
	much	✓	e.g. I don't need much tea. How much time have we got?
✓	many		e.g. He doesn't need many shirts. How many books did you buy?
✓	a lot of	✓	e.g. There were a lot of people at the meeting. There was a lot of rain.
✓	plenty	✓	e.g. I've plenty of time/chances.
✓	some	✓	e.g. Some of his books are exciting. We need some butter. Would you like some tea? (offer) العرض
✓	any	✓	e.g. Do you want any books? فى السؤال I don't need any books/ water. فى النفى
✓	several		e.g. Several buildings were damaged by the explosion.
	a little	✓	e.g. They have a little money. (قليل ولكن يكفى)
	little	✓	e.g. They have very little money. (not enough لا يكفى)
✓	a few		e.g. I knew a few of the people there. = some قليل ويكفى للعدد
✓	few		e.g. Few people came to the meeting, so we postponed it. قليل ولا يكفى
✓	none	✓	e.g. None of the trains is/ are going to Assuit. لا احد None of the information given to me was helpful. لا شىء

ملاحظات

بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:

- She had a good education.
- We had a wonderful lunch yesterday.

تستخدم أداة التعريف the مع الاسم المفرد أو الجمع المخصص الذى لا يشير إلى شىء عام.

- The water of the Nile is used for irrigation and producing electricity.
- The people in our street are friendly and neighbourly.

تستخدم كلمة some أحيانًا للدلالة على بعض الشيء وليس أشياء كثيرة .

- I wrote my address on some paper and gave it to my colleague.

يأتى بعد one of اسم جمع لأن معناها واحد من شىء كثير معدود.

أو اسم من الأسماء التى تشير إلى المجموعات collective nouns ونستخدم الفعل بعدها مفردًا.

- One of the criminals admitted committing the crime so all of them were hanged.
- One of our team is leaving to Paris tomorrow.

كلمات gloves/trousers/glasses تعامل على أنها جمع، أما إذا جاء قبلها كلمة a pair of تعامل على أنها مفرد.

- My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much.
- A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

تعامل كلمة a number of معاملة الجمع بينما كلمة the number تعامل على أنها مفرد.

- A number of my friends are coming to the party tomorrow.
- The number of cars in the street is increasing in an incredible rate.

يمكن استخدام a lot of/lots of بنفس المعنى للمعدود وغير المعدود.

- We have got a lot of/lots of work to do.

تستخدم كلمة plenty of بمعنى كثرة من/وفرة من للمعدود وغير المعدود.

- Plenty of students applied for the course.

أسماء الكتب وأسماء الجرائد والأفلام والمسرحيات تعامل معاملة المفرد حتى ولو كانت جمعًا.

- "Gulliver's Travels" was written by Jonathan Swift.
- "The Times" is a famous English paper.

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) Go and look in the kitchen for your gloves. They .... be in there.
a) can't b) have to c) must d) shouldn't

2) He has to work on the Feast Day. He .... feel very happy about that.
a) must b) should c) may d) can't

3) I got really wet walking home last night, ... an umbrella.
a) needn't have taken b) I should take
c) should have taken d) must have taken

4) Ahmed .... the bus. I expect he missed it.
a) may not have caught b) needn't have caught
c) caught d) must have caught

5) That's the second new car they have bought this year. They .... be very rich!
a) can't b) shouldn't c) have to d) must

6) I .... written down the number incorrectly. I've just called a hospital not the restaurant.
a) don't have b) can't have c) must have d) may have

7) Young children .... watch violent TV shows.
a) must b) don't have c) shouldn't d) oughtn't

8) He .... very happy when he was told about his promotion.
a) must have been b) can't have been
c) should have been d) must be

9) The man .... her because he was on his holiday in Spain that time.
a) must kill b) must have killed
c) may have killed d) can't have killed

10) Nasser .... the bus. It doesn't run on Sundays.
a) must have caught b) couldn't have caught
c) may catch d) must catch

11) It was wrong of him to leave the door open. He .... that.
a) shouldn't do b) should do
c) shouldn't have done d) should have done

12) Our phone is ringing. Dad .... the phone bill.
a) must have paid b) can't pay c) should pay d) can't have paid

13) She .... misunderstood my directions. Why else is she late?
a) must be b) can't be c) can't have d) must have

14 I .... the exam. I don't feel very confident.
a) must pass b) may not pass c) can pass d) shouldn't pass

15 Come inside and get warm - you .... freezing out there.
a) shouldn't be b) aren't c) must be d) can't be

16 You .... to bed earlier, now you have missed the train.
a) couldn't have gone b) should have gone
c) must have gone d) shouldn't have gone

17 He .... all the cookies. There's none left in the fridge.
a) may eat b) must have eaten
c) should have eaten d) can't have eaten

18 They are wearing heavy clothes. It .... summer here.
a) must be b) could be c) can't be d) should be

19 It was a terrible accident. The drivers .... driving slowly.
a) can't have been b) must have been
c) might have been d) were

20 I .... my friend yesterday but I couldn't find his telephone number.
a) called b) should have called
c) had to call d) must have called

21 He .... his phone at home again. He's not answering.
a) can't forget b) must forget
c) should forget d) must have forgotten

22 The exam was too difficult. He .... it.
a) couldn't have passed b) could have passed
c) must have passed d) can't have failed

23 They are carrying him on a litter نقالة. He .... his back.
a) can injure b) can't have injured
c) must have injured d) may injure

24 He got 98% in his final exam. He .... hard during the year.
a) should study studying b) must have been studying
c) can't have been studying d) can't study

25 Yesterday, I left the car unlocked. It .... stolen, but luckily it wasn't.
a) could have b) must have been
c) can't have been d) could have been

26 I .... to university but I decided to get a job.
a) couldn't have gone b) must have gone
c) could have gone d) could go

27 They .... away for the weekend but I'm not sure.
a) might be b) must be c) can't be d) should be

28 He knows a lot about flying planes. He .... a pilot when he was young.
a) must be b) can't be
c) can't have been d) must have been

29 I .... you the money. Why didn't you ask me?
a) could lend b) could have lent
c) can't have lent d) must have lent

30 Fatma walked past me without speaking. She .... me.
a) might have seen b) must have seen
c) can't have seen d) should have seen

31 The thieves .... in through the window; the flat is on the 21st floor!
a) can't have got b) must get
c) should have got d) must have got

32 A: Do you think she saw you?
B: No, she was too far away. She .... me.
a) could have seen b) might have seen
c) must have seen d) couldn't have seen

33 He .... gone to the city centre. He did say he wanted to go shopping.
a) could have b) must have c) may have d) can't have

34 He .... much for the exam because he failed horribly.
a) must study b) can't study
c) can't have studied d) must have studied

35 Ali isn't at work today. He .... ill.
a) must be b) can't be
c) can't have been d) must have been

36 It was really wrong of him. He .... you before borrowing your car.
a) must have asked b) should have asked
c) can't have asked d) might have asked

37 He was obliged to work on the last feast. He .... happy.
a) shouldn't have been b) must have been
c) should have been d) can't have been

38 He exceeded the speed limit and was fined. He .... done that.
a) must have b) can't have c) shouldn't have d) mustn't have

39 Don't move him - he .... have internal injuries. Somebody call an ambulance.
a) mustn't b) might c) should d) can't

40 Ali could have gone to school by bus, but he went on foot. This means that ......

a) I'm sure that Ali went to school by bus

b) I'm not sure that Ali went to school by bus

c) I'm sure that Ali didn't go to school by bus although it was possible

d) I'm sure that it was impossible for Ali to go to school by bus

41 When we select reverse gear, the car .... backwards.

a) will go b) would go c) went d) goes

42 You can stay here tonight if you .... anywhere else to stay.

a) had b) don't have c) didn't have d) hadn't had

43 If they .... that old opera house, we would not have any historical architecture left in the city.

a) demolish b) had demolished c) demolished d) didn't demolish

44 I didn't have a car. But if I .... a car, I would have given you a lift to work.

a) had had b) had c) have d) didn't have

45 The machine .... if it doesn't have enough oil.

a) doesn't work b) didn't work c) hadn't worked d) works

46 If Shady ...., tell him to meet me at the station.

a) phoned b) had phoned c) phones d) would phone

47 If the government increased income tax, I .... be able to survive.

a) wouldn't have b) would not c) won't d) can't

48 What would you have done if you .... to help the disabled last week?

a) had asked b) hadn't asked c) asked d) had been asked

49 If you freeze water, it .... a solid.

a) will become b) may become c) becomes d) became

50 If they .... tired, they will go to sleep early tonight.

a) be b) were c) will be d) are

51 If a balloon .... with hot air, it rises.

a) fills b) is filled c) is full d) filled

52 If I saw someone committing a robbery, I .... the police.

a) would call b) called c) will call d) can call

53 If you cook vegetables for too long, they .... awful.

a) would taste b) taste c) tasted d) had tasted

54 .... me if you finish your work early?

a) Will help b) Helped c) Help d) Will you help

He is ill. But if he were well, he .... to the party.
a) could come b) comes c) will come d) can come

If I go to bed late, I always .... tired the next day.
a) will feel b) feel c) felt d) may feel

What .... if you lost your passport?
a) will you do b) would you do
c) had you done d) would you have done

We .... you a lift if you hadn't had your bike with you.
a) would have given b) would give c) will give d) may give

We get water if we .... hydrogen and oxygen.
a) don't mix b) mixed c) mix d) had mixed

If the mechanic .... our car on time, we can drive to Luxor.
a) would fix b) will fix c) fixed d) fixes

If you ate so many sweets, you .... stomachache.
a) would get b) have got c) will get d) gets

Oil .... if you pour it on water.
a) will float b) floats c) float d) would float

If my wife has a cold, I usually .... it.
a) caught b) will catch c) catch d) catches

If the hurricane .... Miami, thousands of people might have lost their lives.
a) had hit b) would hit c) has hit d) hit

If I have enough money, I .... a new pair of shoes.
a) would have bought b) buy
c) would buy d) will buy

You couldn't visit any country if you .... a passport.
a) don't have b) didn't have c) hadn't had d) had

If he .... guilty, he would have gone to jail for 30 years.
a) had found b) was found c) had been found d) found

Water .... if the temperature falls below zero.
a) freezes b) will freeze c) freeze d) frozen

If it .... fine tomorrow, we may go for a swim.
a) were b) will be c) would be d) is

If the sun .... us heat and light, we would die.
a) doesn't give b) didn't give c) gives d) gave

71 He was not wearing a motorcycle helmet. If he had crashed into that car, he ... killed.

a) would have
b) will have
c) would have been
d) wouldn't have been

72 If he's angry, his face always .... bright red.

a) goes
b) will go
c) go
d) went

73 The kidnappers won't release the child if the ransom ....

a) will pay
b) pays
c) is paid
d) isn't paid

74 If you had put that bottle of water in the freezer, it .... into ice.

a) turns
b) will turn
c) would have turned
d) turned

75 If you want to stay at a luxurious hotel, you .... go to the Sheraton.

a) should
b) will
c) won't
d) need

76 If I .... 5 million pounds tomorrow, I'd leave my crowded street and h... a villa of my own.

a) had had
b) have
c) had
d) was having

77 If you wash woolen clothes in hot water, they ....

a) will shrink
b) would shrink
c) can shrink
d) shrink

78 If I have enough time this weekend, I .... my grandmother.

a) will visit
b) am visiting
c) visited
d) would visit

79 If you ...., I'd have never spoken to you again.

a) had apologised
b) hadn't apologised
c) apologised
d) didn't apologise

80 If the money he had, ... enough, he would have bought the car.

a) had
b) been
c) had been
d) were

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How .... money do you earn in a week?
   a) heavy b) long
   c) many d) much
2. Politics .... a dirty game.
   a) have b) is
   c) are d) were
3. We are all eager to increase our ....
   a) knowledgeable b) knowledges
   c) knowledge d) know
4. Six people lost their .... in the accident.
   a) lives b) life
   c) a life d) the life
5. My children like .... but I prefer the mountains.
   a) sea b) the sea
   c) a sea d) some sea
6. I heard .... news in the morning.
   a) any b) those
   c) these d) this
7. My uncle is a kind man. He always provides .... with food and money.
   a) the blind b) the blinds
   c) any blinds d) some blind
8. The journal has published a .... on this subject.
   a) researches b) research
   c) piece of research d) researching
9. A .... is absolutely essential for success in the show business.
   a) luck b) bit of luck
   c) lucky d) pieces of luck
10. Have you bought the ....?
   a) a grocery b) grocery
   c) groceries d) two grocery

11 A pair of trousers .... hanging in the cupboard.

a) have been
b) were
c) are
d) is

12 There is .... snow on the mountain.

a) no
b) a few
c) many
d) none

13 I feel like going out tonight. Let's go to a/an ....

a) night
b) club
c) entertainment
d) dancing

14 Sorry for being late, but I had a lot of .... to do.

a) work
b) task
c) labour
d) job

15 Thanks for a great weekend! We really had a/an ....

a) hospitality
b) enjoyment
c) good time
d) fun

16 When the police arrived, we were very happy to see ....

a) them
b) it
c) him or her
d) him

17 The car turned over, but luckily it didn't suffer serious ....

a) injuries
b) damages
c) damage
d) injury

18 In order to prove he is innocent, we must find some ....

a) evidence
b) knowledge
c) information
d) means

19 Could you pass me ....? I have spilled some juice on the floor.

a) clothing
b) a cloth
c) clothes
d) a clothing

20 In my opinion, ... mathematics is taught in schools.

a) too much
b) few
c) too many
d) several

Open Book General Exercises on Units 13 & 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She specialises in .... novels set in eighteenth-century England.
   a) historic b) historical c) historian d) history
2. There is a Saudi Arabian proverb which holds that what is learned in youth is .... in stone.
   a) covered b) carved c) craved d) curved
3. The Taj Mahal is a historical .... of the Mogul era.
   a) moment b) memory c) monument d) mount
4. The study of language can help to illuminate how the human mind works. Illuminate here means ....
   a) shine light on
   b) use lights for a special occasion
   c) make something easy to understand
   d) use science to find medicines
5. The United Nations is working on various ways to encourage countries reduce gas .... into the atmosphere.
   a) emission b) absorption c) consuming d) farming
6. The .... of the sun are so strong that they can penetrate the Earth's atmosphere.
   a) rails b) lines c) rays d) lights
7. He has a house in Cairo and another in Tanta. He .... poor.
   a) may be b) must be c) can't be d) is
8. He hasn't eaten for hours. He .... hungry.
   a) must be b) should be c) isn't d) can't be
9. I'm not sure where my keys are, but I .... them on my desk.
   a) should have left b) can't have left
   c) must have left d) may have left
10. Ali is a brilliant surgeon. He .... a clever student.
   a) must be b) can't be
   c) must have been d) can't have been

11 If you wear sandals in the mountains, you .... on the rocks.

a) should slip b) would slip c) slipped d) will slip

12 If Rasha .... her homework, the teacher will give her a low mark.

a) forgot b) forgets

c) has forgotten d) is forgetting

13 He should have received my e-mail if he .... online yesterday evening.

a) was b) were c) had been d) would be

14 If the parents .... the cat, their children would be very happy.

a) bought b) had bought c) buy d) will buy

15 They'd have been able to return the bottle if they .... off the labels.

a) had torn b) hadn't torn c) tear d) didn't tear

16 The bank .... the company 100,000 pounds if they repaid the money within months.

a) lent b) would have lent

c) can lend d) would lend

17 A .... is someone who regularly travels between work and home.

a) traveller b) competitor c) commuter d) contractor

18 I collect postcards which I keep in a .... box.

a) paper b) card c) cardboard d) wood

19 The river can be used by many ships because of its ....

a) wide b) width c) widening d) widened

20 Some additives are added to the cement to .... the concrete quickly.

a) harden b) drop c) stay d) go

21 Experts say that the first .... of driving is to pay attention.

a) role b) rail c) reel d) rule

22 The importance of saying "please" and "thank you" was .... into us as children.

a) drilled b) pulled c) called d) felled

23 Rubbish bags are made of plastic .... from old packaging material.

a) reformed b) reproduced c) reputed d) recycled

24 Scientists believe that global warming is mainly caused by burning fossil ....

a) fuels b) products c) soil d) shapes

25 The new hotel is in a peculiar .... overlooking the sea.

a) site b) sight c) view d) scene

26 He .... happy when his cat disappeared.

a) can't be
b) might have been
c) must have been
d) can't have been

27 She has been chosen as the best ambassador. She .... many languages.

a) must speak
b) must have spoken
c) can't speak
d) will speak

28 Oil floats when it .... onto water.

a) poured
b) pours
c) is poured
d) will pour

29 If you are cold, ... on a coat.

a) puts
b) will you put
c) will put
d) put

30 If he .... so busy, he would take a break.

a) wasn't
b) had
c) had been
d) is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Leaning Tower of Pisa is one of the ancient wonders of the world because it leans. Although it was designed to be perfectly vertical, it started to lean during construction. However, even without this famous characteristic, this building would still be one of the most remarkable architectural structures from medieval Europe. It stands at 60 metres high and until 1990 was leaning at about a 10-degree angle. The construction of the Tower of Pisa began in August 1173 and continued for about 200 years due to the attacks of a series of wars. Till today, the name of the architect is a mystery.

Many ideas have been suggested to straighten the Tower of Pisa, including taking it apart stone by stone and rebuilding it at a different location. In the 1920s the foundations of the tower were injected with cement grouting that has stabilised the tower to some extent. A successful restoration work, which was undertaken from 1999 to 2001, stabilised the tower. Engineers placed weights on the structure's north end, while at the same time extracting soil from below, causing it to slowly sink back in that direction. The Leaning Tower of Pisa still leans south, but now it does so at just 3.99 degrees. Engineers believe it will stay for at least a few hundred years. It has become a living example of the combination of ancient and modern architecture.

PART 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

31 The architect of the Tower of Pisa is ....
a) famous b) well-known c) unknown d) kept a secre

32 The Tower of Pisa is not likely to fall because ....
a) the restoration work rebuilt it
b) the restoration work stopped its leaning
c) the restoration work put cement grouting in the foundations
d) the restoration work reduced its leaning

33 Why did it take a long time to build the Tower?
a) Because it was difficult to build.
b) Because of lack of materials.
c) Because the war stopped building it.
d) Because it leans.

34 What does the underlined word "that" refer to?
a) North. b) South. c) East. d) West.

35 Why didn't the tower fall down?
a) It is well-built.
b) It is made of concrete.
c) The engineers could reduce its leaning.
d) Because it was made a long time ago.

36 Why do you think the Pisa Tower leans?
a) It was designed like that.
b) It is made of bad material.
c) Its architect is unknown.
d) There was a mistake building it.

37 The process of trying to keep the Pisa Tower took about ....
a) 200 years
b) fifty years
c) eighty years
d) one hundred years

38 One of the following wasn't a suggestion to fix the Pisa Tower.
a) Taking it apart stone by stone.
b) Building a concrete Tower beside it.
c) Placing weights on the structure's north end.
d) Injecting the foundations of the Tower were with cement grouting.

39 From the passage, find a synonym to the word(s) "carried out"?
a) Undertaken. b) Stabilised. c) Extracting. d) Architectura

40 Engineers believe the Tower will stay for at least a few hundred years because
a) it leans at just 3.99 degrees
b) engineers failed in their restoration work
c) It was rebuilt in 2001
d) It took about 200 years to build it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why did the Princess insist on going to Zenda?
   a) Because she wanted to fight the Duke.
   b) Because the King was injured.
   c) Because the Duke invited her.
   d) Because Sapt wanted her to come.
2. What did Rassendyll consider the strangest thing in the history of any country?
   a) The war between him and the Duke.
   b) His offer to marry the Princess.
   c) The plan between him and Rupert.
   d) His fight with Rupert.
3. How did Rassendyll go down into the water?
   a) He climbed down a ladder.
   b) He jumped into the water.
   c) He took the stairs.
   d) He climbed down using a rope.
4. What helped Rassendyll not to be seen in the water?
   a) He was hidden.
   b) It was so dark.
   c) Nobody was in the moat.
   d) All the Duke's men were away.
5. How did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?
   a) He stabbed him with a knife.
   b) He shot him.
   c) He fought him with a sword.
   d) He hit him with a hard stick.
6. What showed that the King was in great despair in his imprisonment?
   a) He told Detchard he didn't want to eat.
   b) He didn't want to meet anyone.
   c) He asked Detchard why Michael didn't kill him.
   d) He asked Detchard to put him in prison
7. What did Sapt do to tell the seven men to come and take Max's body?
   a) He signed to them.
   b) He whistled to them.
   c) He used flashes from a torch.
   d) He called out in a loud voice.

48 What loses did Rupert have at the end of the fight?

a) Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed.
b) De Gautet and Detchard were both killed.
c) He lost nothing.
d) Three of his men were killed.

49 How was the relation between Michael and Rupert not a good one?

a) Rupert said that he was ready to arrest him.
b) Rupert said that he always fought with him.
c) Rupert said he injured him before.
d) Rupert said he nearly killed him the night before.

50 What did the doctor advise the Duke to ....

a) keep the King in prison
b) stay with the King
c) take the King to hospital
d) set the King free at once

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 Many people support space exploration because we may need to live in space in future.

أ) يدعم الكثير من الناس اكتشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.
ب) يدعم الكثير من الناس اختراع الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.
جـ) يزعم الكثير من الناس استكشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.
د) يدعم الكثير من الناس استكشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.

Choose the correct English translation:

يُحترم يحى حقى لأسلوبه الفريد فى الأدب المصرى.

a) Yehia Haqqi is respectful for his unique style in the Egyptian Literature.
b) Yehia Haqqi is respected for his unique style in the Egyptian Literature.
c) Yehia Haqqi is respected for his unique style in the Egypt Literature.
d) Yehia Haqqi is respected for his unique style in Egyptian Literature.

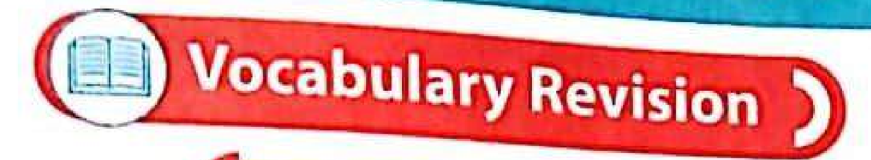
Choose the correct answer:

53 Which sentence is correct?

a) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for each the individual and the nati
b) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for both the individual and the nati
c) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for the entire individual and the nati
d) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for all the individual and the natio



Units 15 & 16



Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
absorb (v) (ed)	يمتص
ancestors (n)	أسلاف
beneath (prep)	أسفل
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور
centigrade (n)	مئوية
correspondent (n)	مراسل
degree (n)	درجة
depression (n)	الكساد/انخفاض/ركود
directly (adv)	مباشرة
drought (n)	الجفاف
eclipse (n) (v) (d)	كسوف/خسوف/تنكسف
evil (n) (adj)	شر/شرير
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار - حريق/يطلق الرصاص
force (n) (v) (d)	قوة/يجبر/يرغم
greed (n)	طمع/جشع
harmful (adj)	ضار
heat (n) (v) (ed)	حرارة/يسخن
lightning (n)	البرق
merchant (n)	تاجر
Mexico (n)	المكسيك
northern (adj)	شمالي
occur (v) (red)	يحدث
pearl (n)	لؤلؤة
phenomenon (n)	ظاهرة (مفرد)
publicity (n)	شيوع/شهرة إعلامية
rainfall (n)	سقوط المطر
scorpion (n)	عقرب
sting (n) (v)	لدغة/يلدغ
success (n)	نجاح
sunburn (n)	حرق الشمس
throw away (v)	يلقي
treat (v) (ed)	يعالج
trick (n) (v) (ed)	خدعة/يخدع
ultraviolet rays (n)	أشعة فوق بنفسجية
violent (adj)	عنيف



Helpful Vocabulary

atmosphere (n)	الغلاف الجوى
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهجم على
attention (n)	اهتمام/عناية
average (n)	متوسط/معدل
ball lightning (n)	كرة البرق
block (v) (ed)	يسد/يعوق
bright (adj)	ساطع/مضىء
cause (v) (d)	تسبب
cave (n)	كهف
century (n)	قرن
chase (v) (d)	يطارد
common (adj)	عام/شائع
creature (n)	مخلوق
cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/يعالج
curved (adj)	منحنِ/مقوس
decision (n)	قرار
discussion (n)	مناقشة
diver (n)	غواص
economy (n)	اقتصاد
electrical storm (n)	عاصفة كهربية
emergency (n)	حالة طوارئ
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
extreme (adj)	شديد
eyesight (n)	بصر
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخاف
flash (n) (v) (ed)	وميض/يومض
float (v) (ed)	يطفو
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/يفيض
freeze (v)	يتجمد/يجمد
gases (n)	غازات
general (adj)	عام
get rid of (v)	يتخلص من
geyser (n)	نبع ماء حار
give out (v)	تطلق/ترسل/تخرج
grapes (n)	عنب/عناقيد
influential (adj)	مؤثر
insect (n)	حشرة
jewellery (n)	جواهر/حلى

landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي/تضاريس
lift (v) (ed)	يرفع
measure (v) (d)	يقيس
nature (n)	طبيعة
necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة
neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحي
oysters (n)	محار
period (n)	فترة
permanently (adv)	بشكل دائم
persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
planet (n)	كوكب
poisonous (adj)	سام
power (n)	قوة
presentation (n)	عرض/تقديم
private (adj)	خصوصي
public (adj)	عام
rare (adj)	نادر
ray (n)	شعاع
record (v) (ed)	يسجل/يدون

safely (adv)	بأمان
serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
skin (n)	جلد/بشرة
snow (n)	ثلج
southern (adj)	جنوبي
speed (n)	سرعة
steal (n) (v)	سرقة/يسرق
storm chasers (n)	متعقبو العواصف
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
surface (n)	سطح
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
tide (n)	المد والجزر
truth (n)	حقيقة
volcano (n)	بركان
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
waves (n)	أمواج
weather forecast (n)	النشرة الجوية
wedding (n)	زواج/عقد قران
wrath (n)	الغضب

Expressions & Idioms

a badly paid job	وظيفة ذات عائد منخفض	go diving	يذهب للغوص
a private person	شخص كتوم	go into town	يذهب إلى المدينة
at the sight of	عند رؤية	go swimming	يمارس للسباحة
(be) respected for	يحترم من أجل ...	have problems with	لديه مشاكل فى
(be) stung by a scorpion	يُلدغ من عقرب	keep children off	يبعد الأطفال عن
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	lift him off his feet	ترفعه من على الأرض
cause/do harm to	يضر/يؤذى	look straight at	ينظر مباشرة إلى
cause/do damage to	يسبب دمارًا لـ	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
change his mind	يغير رأيه	on their journey to	أثناء سفرهم إلى
come into sight	يظهر/يتضح	take pride in	يتباهى/يتفاخر بـ
damage eyesight	يؤذى البصر	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
do the shopping	يتسوق	throw ... into the sea	يرمى ... فى البحر
fire guns at	يطلق النار على	wear sun cream	يضع كريم الشمس
go darker	يصبح داكنا	wear warm clothes	يرتدى ملابس ثقيلة

Phrases & Prepositions

block out/off	يحجب/يعوق	harmful to	ضار لـ
careful with	حريص بشأن	known to	معروف لدى
correspondent for	مراسل لـ	report from	تقرير من
difference in	اختلاف فى	return to	يرجع إلى
explanation for	تفسير لـ	take over	يستولى على
find out about	يكتشف عن	warn about	يحذر عن
go out	تنطفئ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
absorb	يمتص	absorption	امتصاص	absorbent	ماص/نشاف
correspond	يراسل صحفيًا	correspondent correspondence	مراسل مراسلة	------------	
depress	يحزن/يصيب بالكساد	depression	الكساد/انخفاض/ركود	depressed	مكتئب/مصاب بكساد
dive	يغوص/يغطس	diver	غواص	------------	
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existent	موجود
force	يجبر/يرغم	force	قوة	forceful	نشيط/قوى/فعال
------------		greed	طمع/جشع	greedy	طماع/جشع
harm	يؤذى/يضر	harm	ضرر	harmful harmless	ضار غير ضار
hide	يختبئ/يخفى	hiding	إخفاء/اختباء	hidden	مختبئ/مخفى
occur	يحدث	occurrence	حدوث	------------	
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
publicise	يعلن/يقوم بالدعاية	publicity	شيوع/شهرة إعلامية	public	عام
revise	يراجع	revision	مراجعة	revised	مراجع
sting	يلدغ	sting	لدغة	stinging	لاسع/لاذع
treat	يعالج	treatment	علاج	treated	معالج
------------		violence	عنف	violent	عنيف
trick	يخدع	trickery	خديعة/خداع	tricky	مخادع/خادع
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	محذر
------------		wealth	ثروة	wealthy	ثرى

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
absorb	يمتص	soak up	abstain	يخرج
ancestor	جد/سلف	predecessor	descendant	حفيد/خلف
average	متوسط/معدل	standard	exception	استثناء
depression	الكساد/انخفاض/ركود	bankruptcy	recovery	تعافى
drought	الجفاف	dryness	abundance	غزارة
flash	وميض	blaze	darkness	ظلام
harmful	ضار	damaging	helpful	مفيد
influential	مؤثر	powerful	insignificant	غير ذى معنى
occur	يحدث	happen	precede	يسبق
permanently	بشكل دائم	forever	temporarily	مؤقتًا
publicity	شيوع/شهرة إعلامية	propaganda	obscurity	غموض
sting	يلدغ	bite	cure	يعالج
summarise	يلخص	sum up	expand	يمد/يوسع
surface	سطح	exterior	interior	الداخل
treat	يعالج	cure	injure	يؤذى
trick	خدعة/يخدع	cheat	protect	يحمى
violent	عنيف	fierce	gentle	لطيف
wealthy	ثرى	affluent	destitute	معدم

Important Language Notes



The points of the compass

الجهات الأصلية هي: (north – south – east – west) ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern):

- The writer grew up in the north of France.
- Alex is a famous tourist city in northern Egypt.

لاحظ أيضًا استخدام (northerly – southerly – easterly – westerly) بمعنى (فى اتجاه ......):

- The ship was fast sailing in a northerly direction.



Adjectives with weather phenomena



يمكن استخدام بعض الصفات مع ظواهر الطقس للتعبير عن شدة الظاهرة وقد تختلف الصفة من ظاهرة لأخرى:

heavy rain	مطر غزير	violent storms	عواصف عنيفة
high temperature	درجة حرارة عالية	strong wind	رياح عاتية
high waves	أمواج عالية		

Additional Language Notes



1

pay (paid/paid) يدفع	▸ I was surprised at the amount of money which I had to pay the mechanic. ▸ I paid the bill.
pay for يدفع ثمن سلعة	▸ I insisted on paying for the meal I had with my brother.
pay (in) cash يدفع نقدًا	▸ Some people think that paying in cash is safer than credit cards.
pay by (cheque/credit card/cash) يدفع بواسطة	▸ The hotel said that I mustn't pay by cheque; they only accept cash.
pay a visit يزور	▸ I recommended my friends to pay a visit to the art exhibition.

2	**publicity** دعاية/شهرة إعلامية	The New Suez Canal Project had received widespread publicity.
	advertising دعاية/إعلان بغرض البيع	Big companies spend billions of dollars a year on advertising.
3	**propaganda** دعاية سياسية	Experts say that we shouldn't believe all the political propaganda.
4	**rob** يسلب/يسرق (المكان أو الشخص)	A violent gang robbed the National Bank yesterday.
	steal يسرق (الشيء المسروق)	Thieves stole millions of dollars and ran away.
5	**rare** نادر (غير شائع/غير مألوف جدًا)	This is one of the rarest plants in the collection.
	scarce شحيح/قليل (صعب الحصول عليه)	Fresh water and medicines were scarce in the war area.
6	**force** يجبر (يتبعها (المصدر .to + inf))	The bad weather forced us to cancel the trip.
	cause يسبب (يتبعها (المصدر .to + inf))	The earthquake caused many people to leave their houses.
	make يجعل (يتبعها (المصدر بدون to))	The wind made the ship change its route.
7	**phenomenon** ظاهرة	Gravity is a natural phenomenon.
	phenomena ظواهر	Violence and rudeness are new phenomena in the Egyptian society.
	phenomenal رائع/بارز	The success of the Lion King movie was phenomenal.
	phenomenally بشكل غير عادي	This tree has grown phenomenally high.
8	**drought** جفاف	Some African countries suffer from droughts with no rain for months.
	draught تيار هوائي	A draught of cold air blew in the room through the windows.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1 I shouldn't have .... away the receipt. I need it to return this shirt.
a) thrown b) done c) brought d) taken

2 Parents have to teach their kids about right and wrong, good and ....
a) devil b) evil c) pure d) imaginary

3 He left the local paper to become a .... for a famous international newspaper.
a) correspond b) correspondence c) correspondent d) correspondently

4 There has been a lot of .... about the new film: newspaper and magazine stories, TV and radio advertisements.
a) publication b) public c) publicise d) publicity

5 My friend Hussein told me that his .... originally came from Turkey.
a) ancestors b) granddaughters c) children d) grandchildren

6 The .... for power sometimes drives politicians to do illegal actions.
a) greed b) value c) vice d) envy

7 .... is a long period when there is not a lot of business activity.
a) Impression b) Depression c) Compression d) Submission

8 A .... is a valuable small white round object that forms inside an oyster and is used in jewellery.
a) diamond b) stone c) pearl d) necklace

9 The farmers complained that the annual .... was lower this year than ever before.
a) fluid b) liquid c) dew d) rainfall

10 The COVID-19 crisis .... some small companies to close and get out of business.
a) forced b) treated c) made d) attacked

11 A/An .... is a person who buys and sells goods especially with other countries.
a) expert b) merchant c) observer d) researcher

12 The bee's .... had left a red mark on my arm and it took time to heal.
a) string b) spring c) sting d) sink

13 A .... is a dangerous insect as it has a poisonous sting.
a) scorpion b) fly c) cockroach d) butterfly

14 The gang had to think of a .... to get past the guards.
a) track b) speck c) trick d) truck

15 .... is a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live.
a) Draught b) Rainfall c) Desert d) Drought

16 The army soldiers .... their guns at the enemy to stop the attack.
a) fired b) tired c) stood d) stopped

17 The city was destroyed by high waves and .... storms.
a) cruel b) violent c) hard d) severe

18 The atmosphere absorbs most of the sun's .... rays.
a) acceptable b) harmless c) harmful d) incredible

19 The children were afraid when they saw the flash of .... that lit up the sky.
a) fighting b) sighting c) lighting d) lightning

20 It is believed that caffeine is quickly .... into the bloodstream.
a) absorbed b) disappeared c) appeared d) gone

21 Accidents .... more frequently when the roads are busy.
a) take part b) occur c) cause d) come in

22 A/An .... of the sun is an unusual event that a lot of worldwide media cover.
a) ecstasy b) storm c) eclipse d) appearance

23 We all agree that violence in our society is a new and unacceptable ....
a) phenomenon b) look c) response d) view

24 The sun gives out X-rays and .... rays that can be harmful to us.
a) gamma b) beta c) alpha d) ultraviolet

25 The young couple stood on the bridge, looking at the river .... and talking.
a) beneath b) over c) behind d) opposite

26 Mohamed Salah has become a/an .... who is admired all over the world.
a) infinity b) celebrity c) fame d) personality

27 Temperatures are measured either in .... or Fahrenheit.
a) marks b) ranks c) centigrade d) grades

28 Temperatures are expected to drop below 2 .... in the desert in winter.
a) grades b) levels c) angles d) degrees

29 The driver was .... responsible for the accident as he was having drugs.
a) gently b) directly c) regularly d) accidently

30 The new company has achieved considerable .... in the electronics market and it had good profits.
a) success b) failure c) affection d) sorrow

31 You should use a sunscreen to prevent .... on the beach.
a) sun power b) sun heat c) sunburn d) sunset

52 The chef said that the dish should be cooked at a high .... for 10 minutes.
a) cold b) heater c) stove d) heat

53 Antibiotics are widely used to .... bacterial infections.
a) heal b) treat c) detect d) expect

Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes

54 A .... man usually wants to have more money, food, power, etc. than he needs.
a) greedy b) speedy c) thirsty d) hungry

55 I'll report you to the police, if I catch you .... things again.
a) robbing b) stealing c) taking d) getting

56 Doctors say that it is better to prevent rather than .... diseases.
a) heal b) injure c) cure d) stop

57 Italy and Greece are two countries located in .... Europe.
a) southerly b) south c) the south d) southern

58 The first living .... sent into space was a dog named Laika.
a) machine b) man c) creature d) robot

59 .... hospitals can afford to pay much higher salaries than state-run hospitals.
a) Private b) Special c) General d) Public

60 The mountaineers spent the night in a narrow .... to complete their climb towards the summit.
a) cottage b) tunnel c) cave d) palace

61 The gardener used a kind of poison to kill the rats that .... the garden.
a) attracted b) attended c) attempted d) attacked

62 The .... father bought for my mother was very valuable because it was made of gold.
a) pearl b) necklace c) material d) gloves

63 Samy didn't want to come to the party at first, but we .... him to come with us.
a) argued b) persuaded c) discussed d) debated

64 The workers objected to the .... to close down the factory as they lost their jobs.
a) decision b) percussion c) invitation d) precision

65 The press plays an important role in forming .... awareness.
a) private b) special c) public d) popular

66 Famous artists are usually .... by photographers.
a) ran b) attacked c) looked d) chased

47 The police reported that the fire of the factory was .... by an electric fault.
a) reasoned b) caused c) done d) flashed

48 I'm having laser treatment to improve my ....
a) site b) sightseeing c) seeing d) sight

49 A/An .... occurs when we hear loud noises and see bright flashes of light.
a) electrical storm b) electric storm c) geyser d) lightning

50 A/An .... is a natural spring that sends hot water and steam suddenly into th air from a hole in the ground.
a) storm b) earthquake c) geyser d) volcano

51 Iceland is known for its extinct .... which are great geological marvels.
a) storms b) earthquakes c) waves d) volcanoes

52 Bad dreams are fairly .... among children.
a) famous b) common c) known d) commonly

53 The government is setting new laws to reduce harmful .... such as carbo dioxide.
a) substances b) liquids c) solids d) gases

54 They are driving in a .... direction from Cairo towards Assuit and Sohag.
a) southerly b) southern c) south d) northern

55 Not all people are interested in weather .... which try to predict the future.
a) foresee b) forecasts c) powers d) forearm

56 Most people who were born in villages like the green .... wherever they live
a) landscape b) landslide c) landsite d) land storm

57 Water pollution in Egypt has become a .... problem which needs all attentior
a) interesting b) joyful c) harmless d) serious

58 Volcanoes, waves and storms are .... of nature.
a) energies b) strengths c) powers d) firms

59 .... weather conditions have a bad effect on the environment.
a) Extreme b) Extremely c) Extra d) Fine

60 I have worked in a lot of different places. Now I would like a more .... job.
a) rewarded b) accepted c) temporary d) permanent

61 The .... of the water in the pool was just right for swimming.
a) heat b) cold c) temperature d) centigrade

62 Storm .... are people who find and follow storms.
a) chasers b) purchasers c) sellers d) buyers

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

63 The word "destitute" is an antonym to the word "........................".
a) cheap b) wealthy c) healthy d) sound

64 Mary's uncle is a rich and .... businessman in the state.
a) influence b) influenced c) uninfluenced d) influential

65 Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go .... permanently during an eclipse.
a) up b) down c) in d) out

66 We all admire him because he always .... the truth.
a) says b) speaks c) talks d) tells

67 The news of Samy's failure to join the university .... his family.
a) depressed b) depressing c) depression d) presses

68 Lamia opened her sister's letter .... mistake.
a) at b) by c) in d) for

69 The verb "soak up" is a synonym to the verb "........................".
a) exit b) consume c) absorb d) breathe

70 Jack and his wife have taken up .... and they love it.
a) dive b) diving c) diver d) driver

71 Dr El Baz is known .... all the scientists who are interested in remote sensing.
a) in b) of c) about d) to

72 The verb "cheat" is similar in meaning to the verb "........................".
a) trick b) protect c) prevent d) accept

73 Some companies use .... to sell their products using advertisements.
a) trick b) trickery c) tricked d) tractable

74 Our neighbour .... great pride in his children's achievements.
a) gives b) uses c) takes d) assigns

75 The minister had a conference with the correspondents .... foreign newspapers.
a) for b) off c) about d) in

76 Some people doubt the .... of life at the very bottom of the ocean.
a) exist b) existence c) existed d) executive

77 The American President made a .... attack on World Health Organisation due to the Coronavirus.
a) sting b) stung c) stinging d) string

78 The tree outside the window blocks .... the sun.
a) in b) out c) over d) down

79 As we drive on, the Suez Canal .... into sight.
a) came b) got c) gave d) went

80 The adverb "temporarily" can be the opposite of the adverb "........................".
a) gradually b) mistakenly c) lively d) permanently

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young mother went into .... after the death of her children.
   a) laughter b) depression
   c) decrease d) attention
2. The bank guard was .... because of surfing the net during work time.
   a) fired b) shot
   c) hired d) noticed
3. Sharm El Sheikh is considered the .... of Egypt's resorts.
   a) diamond b) landslide
   c) treasury d) pearl
4. He'll try every .... in the book to win the next match.
   a) trap b) cheat
   c) trick d) imposter
5. Babbage's first model of a calculator was the .... of the modern computer.
   a) branch b) ancestor
   c) root d) original
6. The lifeguard moved like .... and saved the little girl from drowning.
   a) lightning b) thunder
   c) wave d) tide
7. Harry Potter was a great book publishing .... as it sold millions of copies all over the world.
   a) elite b) figure
   c) phenomenon d) shape
8. The new computer has a lot of .... to attach printers, speakers or other devices.
   a) harbours b) ports
   c) exits d) entrances
9. Parents should try to create a/an .... of calm and security for their children.
   a) affection b) weather
   c) temperature d) atmosphere
10. The politician's comments created a/an .... of protest in the media.
    a) storm b) hurricane
    c) tornado d) earthquake

1 I was so .... by the new book that I lost track of time.
a) absorbed
b) attacked
c) attached
d) attributed

2 The new educational system simplified the learning process to a certain ....
a) grade
b) degree
c) centigrade
d) export

3 The popularity of television led to the .... of the radio as a means of entertainment.
a) hurricane
b) tornado
c) eclipse
d) sunshine

4 If you keep on borrowing, you are only postponing the .... day when you have to pay it all back.
a) ill
b) devil
c) good
d) evil

5 The new law comes into .... as from midnight tomorrow.
a) force
b) influence
c) prospect
d) infect

6 I think chilli peppers and some spices add taste and .... to food.
a) snow
b) heat
c) detest
d) respect

7 When we were kids, a trip to the beach was a real ....
a) fight
b) threat
c) heal
d) treat

8 Some factory owners complain that cheap imported goods are .... the market.
a) reducing
b) flooding
c) drying
d) wetting

9 The .... of the food in this restaurant made it look very delicious.
a) inspection
b) expectation
c) presentation
d) recipe

10 Our good holiday seemed to be over in a ....
a) lightning
b) thunder
c) scene
d) flash





Wish / If only

Wish & If only	+ past simple	⟶ refers to the present
	+ past perfect	⟶ refers to the past
	+ would/could	⟶ refers to the future

نستخدم wish + past simple للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلفًا.

- I wish he were/was with us now.
- I wish I lived near my school.

بعد wish نستخدم were/was مع I/he/she/it و were فقط مع they/we/you

نستخدم wish + could للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص عدم القدرة على فعل شىء.

- I wish he could know Spanish.
- I wish I could make my own clothes.

نستخدم wish + past perfect للندم عن شىء حدث أو لم يحدث فى الماضى.

- I wish he hadn't insulted his friend.

نستخدم wish + would/could للتعبير عن الرغبة فى تغيير مستقبلى غير محتمل الحدوث أو الرغبة فى التعبير عن عدم الرضا أو الحزن.

- I wish they would build a new station near my home.

نستخدم could مع كل الضمائر ونستخدم would مع كل الضمائر ما عدا I/We.

- If only he would help me.
- I wish I could play squash.

٦- عند استخدام wish وبعدها would لابد أن يكون الفاعلين مختلفين مثل:

- He wishes he could play tennis.
- ~~He wishes he would play tennis.~~

٧- تعبر could بعد wish عن عدم القدرة وتعبر would عن عدم الرغبة

- I wish my son would drive my car. (He doesn't want to ...)
- I wish my son could drive my car. (He can't drive ...)

٨- نستخدم (could have + P.P.) بدلا من الماضى التام للتعبير عن (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى.

- If only I could have studied French at university. I know English only.

٩- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى to + inf.

- My brother wishes to have a better job.



Alternatives to using if

If بدائل

Alternative		Example
Provided that On condition that As long as (حالة أولى وثانية)	جملة	He can go and play with his friends, provided/on condition (that)/as long as he finishes his homework first.
Suppose/Supposing/ Imagine (that)	جملة	Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) you met the President, what would you ask him to do?
Unless		جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية) + فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) I can't buy the car unless I have enough money.
Without	n/v.ing	You won't succeed without studying hard.
But for	Noun	But for doctors, we might die.
In case of	Noun	In case of emergency, call this number.
In case	جملة	Bring the washing from outside in case it rains.
Should (حالة اولى او ثانية)	Subj. + Inf.	Should you take this medicine, take it before meals.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + n/adj.	Were I you, I wouldn't spend so much money.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + to + Inf.	Were he to travel, he'd be sad.
Had حالة ثالثة	Subj. + P.P.	Had you finished early, you'd have watched the film.
If it weren't for (حالة ثانية)	n/v.ing	If it weren't for money, we couldn't buy anything.
If it hadn't been for (حالة ثالثة)	n/v.ing	If it hadn't been for Ahmed, I'd have been helpless.

1 Adjectives
الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الذى بعدها جمعًا.

الصفة: تأتى قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be

- He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية:

- be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.
- She is beautiful.
- The food tastes good.

الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

- Afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.
- They are still alive.
- He was so exhausted that he fell asleep at his desk.

الصفات الآتية يأتى بعدها اسم:

- chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

- old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

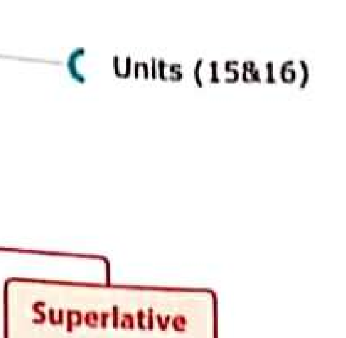
Order of Adjectives
ترتيب الصفات

	opinion	Fact adjectives							noun
		size	age	shape	colour	origin	material	used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

فى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

.... *a beautiful, white wedding dress*





Degrees of Adjectives
دراجات الصفات

Positive
الصفة

Comparative
المقارنة بين شيئين

Superlative
التفضيل

One-syllable adjectives

صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive		Comparison		Superlative	
tall	طويل	taller	than	the tallest	فى المقارنة نضع
young	صغير السن	younger	than	the youngest	adj.+ er + than
soft	ناعم	softer	than	the softest	فى التفضيل نضع
short	قصير	shorter	than	the shortest	the + adj. + est
large	واسع	larger	than	the largest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف e نضع r/st
wide	عريض	wider	than	the widest	
cheap	رخيص	cheaper	than	the cheapest	

Positive		Comparison		Superlative	
big	كبير الحجم	bigger	than	the biggest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضّعف الساكن
hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the hottest	
low	منخفض	lower	than	the lowest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف w قبله o نضع er/est دون تضعيف
few	قليل	fewer	than	the fewest	

Two or more syllable-adjectives ending in y					
ugly	قبيح	uglier	than	the ugliest	إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهى بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest
easy	سهل	easier	than	the easiest	
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the heaviest	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the happiest	
lucky	محظوظ	luckier	than	the luckiest	

صفة المقارنة + than   صفة التفضيل + of/in

xamples:

hady is a young boy.
hady is younger than Ehab.
hady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.

hady is a young boy.	Positive
hady is younger than Ehab.	Comparative
hady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.	Superlative

More than two-syllable adjectives

صفات اكثر من مقطعين

Positive		Comparison	Superlative
		more + الصفة + than	the most + الصفة
modern	عصرى	more modern than	the most modern
careful	حريص	more careful than	the most careful
expensive	غالٍ	more expensive than	the most expensive
wonderful	رائع	more wonderful than	the most wonderful
exciting	مثير	more exciting than	the most exciting
difficult	صعب	more difficult than	the most difficult
interesting	شيق	more interesting than	the most interesting
beautiful	جميل	more beautiful than	the most beautiful

xamples:

English is an interesting subject.	Positive
English is more interesting than Spanish.	Comparative
English is the most interesting subject of all languages.	Superlative

xamples:

hady is a young boy. | Positive
hady is younger than Ehab. | Comparative
hady is the youngest boy in class/of all students. | Superlative

hady is a young boy.	Positive
hady is younger than Ehab.	Comparative
hady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.	Superlative

More than two-syllable adjectives

صفات اكثر من مقطعين

Positive		Comparison	Superlative
		more + الصفة + than	the most + الصفة
modern	عصرى	more modern than	the most modern
careful	حريص	more careful than	the most careful
expensive	غالٍ	more expensive than	the most expensive
wonderful	رائع	more wonderful than	the most wonderful
exciting	مثير	more exciting than	the most exciting
difficult	صعب	more difficult than	the most difficult
interesting	شيق	more interesting than	the most interesting
beautiful	جميل	more beautiful than	the most beautiful

Examples:

English is an interesting subject.	Positive
English is more interesting than Spanish.	Comparative
English is the most interesting subject of all languages.	Superlative

Irregular comparatives and superlatives

الصفات الشاذة

Positive		Comparison	Superlative
good/well	جيد/حسن	better than	the best
bad/badly	سيئ/ردىء	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
much/many/a lot of	كثير	more than	the most
far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Examples:

Addiction is a bad habit.	Positive
Addiction is worse than smoking.	Comparative
Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.	Superlative

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj. + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.



1. نستخدم no/never دائمًا فى صيغة المقارنة.

No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
I've never bought a faster car than Mercedes.

2. نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل.

Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever bought.

3. يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/even
قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er .... أو more

Gold is much/a lot more expensive than salt.
Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

4. نستخدم less + adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Silver is less expensive than gold. This book is less interesting than that one.

5. مع التركيبة الآتية نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما .... كلما)

The more books you read, the more information you get.

2 ing forms or the infinitive

The -ing form is used

يستخدم v.ing كاسم أول الكلام محل الفاعل.

Swimming strengthens your body.

بعد الأفعال الآتية:

suggest/enjoy/fancy يتخيل/finish/admit يعترف بـ
imagine/delay يؤجل/deny ينكر/avoid/consider
continue/discuss/escape/excuse/forgive يسامح
go/involve يشمل/keep/mention يذكر/mind يمانع
miss/postpone يؤجل/practise/prevent يمنع
quit يترك/recall يستدعى/recollect/report/resent
resist يقاوم/risk يخاطر/save/stand/tolerate يتسامح
understand/appreciate يقدر/spend/waste
(time, money, etc.)

▸ They discussed buying a house.

بعد الأفعال الآتية للتعبير عن الرغبة العامة:

dislike, enjoy, hate, like, love.

▸ She likes playing the piano. (رغبة عامة)

بعد التعبيرات الآتية:

I'm busy, it's no use لا فائدة, it's (no) good بدون, it's (not) worth لا يستحق, what's the use of, can't help لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسي من, can't stand أتحمل, have difficulty (in), in addition to, as well as, have trouble, have a hard/difficult time, don't mind / How about...?/ feel like/ There is no point in لا مشكلة في

▸ He is busy doing his homework.

حروف الجر ماعدا to يأتى بعدها المصدر:

▸ He left the shop without paying, so he was accused of stealing.

بعد هذه التعبيرات التى بها to

look forward to, be/get used to يعتاد على, be/get accustomed to معتاد على, object to يعترض على, admit (to)/take to يعتاد على, etc.

▸ I'm looking forward to meeting the President.

بعد الأفعال الآتية وتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث.

Hear, listen, notice, see, watch

▸ I saw them playing football.

The to infinitive is used

١- نستخدم to للتعبير عن الهدف أو الغرض:

To/in order to/so as to لكى

He went to the shops to buy some food.

٢- بعد الأفعال الآتية:

arrange/decide/agree/want/expect/
hope/learn/allow/offer/promise/plan
/advise/appear/prepare/long يشتاق/
warn/attempt يحاول/care/wait/dare يجرؤ/
deserve يستحق/pretend/prove يبرهن/
manage/fail/guarantee يضمن/choose/
wish/forbid يمنع/ determine يصمم/ask/
refuse/threaten/neglect يهمل/happen/
seem يبدو/want/need/remind/expect/
plan/allow, etc.

▸ He refused to help his brother.

٣- بعد الأفعال الآتية للتعبير عن الرغبة في وقت معين:

would like / would love / would/prefer.

▸ I would like to see the manager.

- ويمكن أن تأتى بعد love/ like/prefer بدون would لتعبر عن الرغبة فى وقت معين أو إنها فكرة جيدة.

▸ I like to brush my teeth every day.

٤- بعد الصفات الدالة على المشاعر والعواطف:

(happy, glad, sorry, surprised, etc.)

▸ She was sorry to miss the conference.

٥- بعد too/ enough

▸ He's too shy to meet the strangers.

▸ He's clever enough to pass the test.

٦- بعد only للتعبير عن نتيجة غير مرضية.

▸ He came only to meet his friend Ahmed.

٧- بعد the first/second, etc. / next /last / best, etc.

▸ He was the first to come to the party.

- إذا جاء فاعل بعد expect, hope, promise نستخدم will فى المضارع و would للماضى.

▸ I promise that I will phone him after returning back home.



Verbs + to + inf. Or v.ing

١- أفعال يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو v.ing بدون تغيير فى المعنى.

start / begin/ intend / continue

- It started raining / to rain heavily.

- ولكن إذا لحق بهذه الأفعال v.ing أو كانت تدل على المستقبل يأتى بعدها .to + inf

- It's beginning to rain.
- He is starting to study.
- He will start to work.

٢- أفعال يأتى بعدها .to + inf أو v.ing وهناك تغيير فى المعنى.

A) stop:

stop + v.ing	يتوقف عن فعل شىء لفترة أو يقلع عن الشىء تمامًا.
stop + to + inf.	يتوقف عن شىء ليفعل شيئًا آخر (هدف) وغالبًا عندما يكون ماشيًا.

B) remember:

remember + v.ing	يتذكر أنه فعل شيئًا تم الحدوث أولاً ثم تذكر ثانيًا.
remember + to + inf.	يتذكر أن يفعل شىء يتذكر أولاً ثم يفعل الشىء ثانيًا.

C) forget:

forget + v.ing	تم حدوث الشىء أولاً ثم نسيه أو لم ينْسَهُ بعد ذلك.
forget + to + inf.	نسى أن يفعل الشىء أصلًا فيعتذر أو يذهب ليفعله بعد ذلك.

D) regret:

regret + v.ing	فعل شيئًا ثم ندم بعد ذلك.
regret + to + inf.	يأسف أن يقول شيئًا أو يفعل شيئًا مضطرًا لذلك.

The infinitive without to is used:

نستخدم المصدر فقط بعد الآتى:

- after most modal verbs (can, must, will, etc.). You can leave now if you want.
- after had better / would rather. I'd rather not go out tonight. I'd better stay at home.
- after make / let + object. They made him pay for the damage.
- after hear, listen, notice, see, watch to refer to the whole action.
  I saw them play football. (the whole action)
- know and help are followed by a to infinitive or an infinitive without to.
  Could you help me (to) fix the car?

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Washing clothes on my hands is very tiring. I wish I .... a washing machine.
   a) will have b) would have c) had had d) had
2. Ali proved to be an honest person. I wish I .... him a liar.
   a) had called b) hadn't called c) called d) could call
3. I'm sorry my son gets up so late. I wish he .... to bed earlier.
   a) had gone b) didn't go c) went d) would go
4. I regret coming to this country. I wish I ....
   a) had never come b) had come c) didn't come d) could come
5. Ali wants to use his English. I wish he .... a job where he could use his English.
   a) didn't get b) had got c) gets d) would get
6. It's a pity he didn't do very well in his exams. I wish he .... harder during the term.
   a) hadn't worked b) had worked c) worked d) could work
7. It's foggy and we don't know the way. I wish we .... where we were.
   a) had known b) know c) knew d) would know
8. I stood all the way on the train to Aswan. I wish I .... a seat.
   a) had booked b) booked c) could book d) will book
9. I wish I .... a private jet, I would fly around the world.
   a) have b) had had c) will have d) had
10. Samy told everyone about our plan. I wish I .... him.
    a) hadn't trusted b) had trusted c) trusted d) didn't trust
11. I need help badly. If only you .... me.
    a) had helped b) can help c) will help d) could help
12. I misled the way to the museum. I wish I .... my father how to get there.
    a) asked b) would ask c) had asked d) could ask
13. I wish I .... to set the alarm yesterday.
    a) didn't forget b) hadn't forgotten c) wouldn't forget d) don't forget
14. I wish my neighbours .... shouting. They are always fighting.
    a) had stopped b) stop c) have stopped d) stopped
15. I wish it .... heavily tomorrow, I would go to football practice.
    a) didn't rain b) hadn't rained c) wouldn't rain d) doesn't rain
16. He wishes he .... rich to buy a luxurious car.
    a) were b) is c) has been d) is being

17 She is fat. She wishes she .... the willpower to go on a diet.
a) had had b) had c) will have d) can have

18 I wish my son .... more. He wasted much time playing.
a) studies b) will study c) can study d) had studied

19 I wish Samy .... playing his music so loudly. Why don't you ask him to turn it down?
a) would stop b) had stopped c) can stop d) will stop

20 I wish I .... your advice. I got lost easily.
a) took b) had taken c) could take d) take

21 She wishes she .... near her school as she takes the train every day.
a) had lived b) lives c) lived d) is living

22 If only I .... about the concert, I'd have gone to it.
a) knew b) would know c) had known d) could know

23 He wishes he .... the programme about wildlife yesterday.
a) had seen b) saw c) was seeing d) would see

24 I wish I .... at the children like that.
a) shouted b) would shout c) don't shout d) hadn't shouted

25 I wish you .... your room more often.
a) would tidy b) didn't tidy c) can tidy d) hadn't tidied

26 I wish I .... there when they arrived.
a) was b) will be c) had been d) could be

27 I wish I .... out of school at 14.
a) wouldn't drop b) hadn't dropped c) didn't drop d) can drop

28 I wish dad .... soon. We are waiting him for dinner.
a) would come b) will come c) had come d) is coming

29 I wish I .... work tomorrow. It's my birthday.
a) can't b) don't have to c) didn't have to d) won't

30 I wish you .... on leaving early. We have to discuss many things.
a) hadn't insisted b) wouldn't insist c) would insist d) will insist

31 I wish I .... get a scholarship.
a) could b) can c) should d) would

32 I wish you .... leave me alone.
a) should b) would c) will d) must

33 Do you wish .... juice after meals?
a) I to serve b) me serve c) me to serve d) me serving

34 I .... an appointment with the manager.
a) hope b) 'd rather c) wish d) want

35 I .... you feel better tomorrow.
a) hope b) wish c) want d) 'd rather

36 .... he train harder, he'd be fitter.
a) Were b) If c) Should d) Unless

37 He won't get a better job .... he passes that exam.
a) unless b) if c) without d) as long as

38 .... you follow the instructions exactly, you won't have any difficulty.
a) Unless b) In case of c) Without d) As long as

39 .... I don't arrive till after midnight, will you be waiting for me?
a) As long as b) Supposing c) Unless d) Were

40 .... bad weather, the wedding will be held indoors.
a) In case of b) Without c) Unless d) If

41 I'll make some sandwiches .... we get hungry.
a) unless b) without c) in case d) but for

42 You'll never understand English .... you study this grammar carefully.
a) if b) unless c) as long as d) supposing

43 .... you were in Paris, where would you stay?
a) Without b) But for c) In case of d) Suppose

44 .... your brother travel abroad, he'd better go by plane as it's fast and comforta
a) If b) Should c) When d) As long as

45 .... we helped him, he'd have been pleased.
a) Were b) Should c) Had d) In case

46 He can come with us, ... he pays for his own meals.
a) on condition that b) without c) but for d) in case of

47 You can take my car .... you've a licence.
a) unless b) without c) but for d) as long as

48 .... you have booked a table, you won't be able to eat here tonight.
a) Without b) Unless c) Were d) If

49 Should he .... his order, he'd better contact the customer service departme
a) cancels b) cancelled c) cancel d) cancelling

50 .... you won the lottery, what would you do with the money?
a) Suppose b) Unless c) Should d) Were

51 Take some cash .... they don't accept credit cards.
a) unless b) in case of c) without d) in case

52 .... our savings, we wouldn't have been able to buy the new flat.
a) Unless b) Without c) If d) As long as

53 .... he had had enough time, he wouldn't have gone to the club.
a) If b) Provided that c) Unless d) In case

54 I would have bought that computer .... its high price.
a) unless b) as long as c) in case of d) but for

55 .... he had an umbrella, he wouldn't have got wet in the rain.
a) Had b) Unless c) If d) Should

56 .... you lived near the sea, what would you do?
a) Should b) Were c) Imagine that d) Had

57 Remember to keep your receipt .... you want to change the goods.
a) unless b) in case c) without d) but for

58 .... my father's help, I wouldn't have passed my exams.
a) Unless b) Provided c) In case of d) Without

59 .... he a lawyer, he could help you.
a) But for b) Were c) In case of d) If

60 .... you lost your passport, you'd have to go to the embassy, wouldn't you?
a) Unless b) Should c) Supposing d) Were

61 .... my job, I would use the internet to find a new one.
a) Were I to lose b) Should I lost c) Were I lost d) Had I lost

62 Had they not eaten so much, they .... ill.
a) wouldn't have felt b) would have felt c) would feel d) felt

63 Should he .... me here, he will be really angry.
a) saw b) will see c) see d) sees

64 .... your last exam, you would have graduated in May.
a) Had you failed b) If you failed c) Hadn't you failed d) If you had failed

65 .... you finish before five o'clock, I won't come and pick you up.
a) In case b) Provided c) If d) Unless

66 .... so early, we would have caught the plane.
a) Had we left b) Hadn't we left c) Should we leave d) Were we to leave

67 Animals in the zoo would die .... they weren't fed.
a) In case of b) without c) unless d) if

68 .... you heat iron, it expands.
a) Provided that b) Unless c) when d) In case

69 .... underwater, we'd spend our holidays in warm seas.
a) If we live b) Should we live c) Had we lived d) Were we live

70 .... following my advice, they would have got lost in the desert.
a) Without b) If c) In case of d) Supposing

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My sister thinks she's .... than me, but I don't agree!
a) the most intelligent b) much intelligent
c) intelligent d) more intelligent

2 Of the two options, the .... is more viable.
a) late b) later c) latter d) next

3 The .... chapter is very interesting.
a) late b) last c) latest d) latter

4 Who is .... person in your country?
a) powerful b) more powerful
c) the most powerful d) much powerful

5 How far is .... railway station from here?
a) the nearest b) the nearer c) the near d) the another

6 He is .... of the two.
a) cleverer b) the cleverer c) the cleverest d) the clever

7 He is .... than all of his four brothers.
a) more taller b) the tallest c) the taller d) taller

8 I was not as intelligent as the others, but I was ....
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty

9 I am afraid his situation is going from bad to ....
a) worse b) bad c) worst d) badly

10 Which of the given words is an adjective? "The sun in our solar system will eventual become a red giant."
a) system b) solar c) giant d) sun

11 Of the two sisters, Magda is the ....
a) old b) oldest c) older d) eldest

12 Shimaa is my .... sister.
a) elder b) older c) old d) both a and b

13 As soon as she finished one project, she started working on ....
a) the last b) the nearest c) the next d) the latest

14 You must act without any .... delay.
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest

16 Pick out the adjectives in the following sentence"There was a lot of frantic activity just before the arrival of royal visitors."
a) frantic/royal b) a lot of/arrival c) frantic/visitors d) frantic/before

17 She was happy when she got the job, but two weeks .... she was fired.
a) latter b) later c) latest d) last

18 Both the tiger and the leopard are cats, but the former is much larger than the ....
a) last b) latest c) latter d) later

19 I cannot walk any ....
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) both a and b

19 China is .... than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated c) populated d) as populated

20 .... is she? All her students respect her.
a) How a good teacher b) How good teacher
c) How good a teacher d) How a good a teacher

21 The parents made the child .... the milk as the doctor said.
a) drinking b) drank c) to drink d) drink

22 She prevented him from .... her room.
a) enter b) entering c) being entered d) entered

23 The mother encouraged the boy .... again.
a) trying b) to try c) tried d) try

24 I hope you don't mind my .... early.
a) left b) leave c) leaving d) to leave

25 We left without ....
a) anyone knowing b) they know
c) anyone know d) anyone's knowing

26 Why don't you let me .... to the manager?
a) to speak b) speak c) speaking d) spoke

27 .... on the farm habituated him to rising early.
a) To work b) Working c) Being worked d) Working

28 Alaskans are accustomed to .... in cold weather.
a) live b) being lived c) living d) be lived

29 I saw him .... over the wall and run fast crossing the street.
a) jump b) jumping c) to jump d) jumped

30 We found the house ....
a) desert b) deserted c) to desert d) deserting

Open Book General Exercises on Units 15 & 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Jealousy and .... make us want more money or power than we need.
   a) greed b) fame c) publicity d) affection
2. The stock market crash marked the start of a severe ....
   a) impression b) depression c) compression d) submission
3. A/An .... is when the sun or the moon seems to disappear.
   a) geyser b) tornado c) eclipse d) phenomenon
4. Astronomers can accurately predict the .... of eclipses due to their calculations.
   a) accident b) occurrence c) production d) insistence
5. You need to put sunscreen on your skin because of the .... ultraviolet rays.
   a) blind b) sunny c) harmless d) harmful
6. She suffers from periods of deep depression, when she locks herself away and w... speak to no one for weeks. Depression here means ....
   a) decrease in wealth b) recession
   c) unhappiness and despair d) unsuccessfulness
7. .... my children were more helpful with the housework.
   a) Unless b) If c) If only d) In case
8. .... fire, leave the building as quickly as possible.
   a) In case of b) But for c) In case d) If
9. I wish it .... rain. The garden really needs some water.
   a) can't b) wouldn't c) won't d) would
10. .... I known you were waiting outside, I would have invited you to come in.
    a) Were b) Had c) Should d) If
11. If only people .... committing crimes, we would have a peaceful world.
    a) stopped b) will stop c) had stopped d) stop
12. You can play in the living room .... you don't make a mess.
    a) but for b) unless c) as long as d) in case of
13. I like travelling around the world. If only I .... time to realise my dream.
    a) had b) had had c) have d) have had
14. I'll leave you my mobile number .... there's an emergency while I'm away.
    a) but for b) in case of c) in case d) unless
15. I would have travelled to many countries .... my father's objection.
    a) in case of b) unless c) if d) but for

16. Children cannot watch this film .... they are accompanied by an adult.

a) if b) unless c) without d) as long as

17. The antonym of the word "violence" is ....

a) friendliness b) cruelty c) aggression d) hostility

18. The terrorists financed themselves by .... banks.

a) taking b) burying c) stealing d) robbing

19. One day, scientists will find a .... for all serious illnesses.

a) heal b) care c) cure d) deal

20. The director was .... in persuading the producers to put money into the film.

a) influential b) influentially c) influence d) influenced

21. These trees have grown .... tall in the last two years.

a) phenomenally b) artificially c) accidentally d) traditionally

22. In the future, more electricity will be generated from wind ....

a) force b) activity c) power d) energy

23. The medical company decided to go .... with the research about the coronavirus vaccine.

a) private b) special c) public d) popular

24. Many British politicians made a .... attack on the government policy of facing COVID-19 pandemic.

a) sting b) stung c) stinging d) string

25. We put a heavy curtain on our bedroom window to block .... the light.

a) in b) out c) over d) down

26. The TV announcer is famous for making .... interviews.

a) infinity b) celebrity c) fame d) personality

27. .... you get up now, you will be late for work.

a) Without b) In case c) If d) Unless

28. .... he finished early, we would have had time for a game.

a) Had b) Were c) If d) Unless

29. He bought three sandwiches .... anyone of his colleagues would ask him for one.

a) without b) unless c) in case d) if

30. I wish I .... a car now to be able to reach the airport in time.

a) have b) had c) had had d) am having

31. If only he .... in time, his teacher would be pleased with him.

a) finishes b) finish c) could finish d) had finished

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many experts believe there are too many people in the world. Unless there are big changes in the way people think about the number of children they should have, the world's population will double in 25 years. There will be more than 20 cities with populations greater than 20 million. Now there is only one. People may not have enough food and a lot may die of starvation and diseases.

Some people point to countries such as Australia and say, "There is plenty of room there." Although most of Australia is unpopulated, and much of it is tiny populated, there are reasons for this. Firstly, much of the land is desert and waterless, and secondly, even the land that is not desert is not suitable for anything, not even growing grass.

Another major problem we shall have to face, as the world's population grows, is a shortage of energy. We are using up coal and oil and when they have been used up, we shall have to find something to take their place. It is true that we can make electricity from the heat of the sun and moving water, but we don't yet have the technology to do this in a big way. Perhaps, the biggest problem we shall have when the world's population doubles will be pollution. The air we breathe is already badly polluted. Although there are great efforts to control the population increase, it is difficult to make sure that it will be controlled in the near future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

32 In order to prevent the world's population from being doubled, there must be a change in ....

a) the methods of agriculture
b) sources of energy
c) the way people think about the number of children they should have
d) the education of the great numbers of children

33 Why will there be a problem of energy shortage as the world's population grows?

a) We are using up coal and oil.
b) We have to grow more food.
c) We can make energy from the sun.
d) There will be more pollution.

34 How many present cities have a population of over 20 million?

a) Twenty.
b) Three.
c) Twenty five.
d) One.

35 The underlined word "they" refers to ....

a) experts
b) coal and oil
c) electricity and moving water
d) population and pollution

36 The underlined phrase "tiny populated" means ....

a) having a great number of people
b) having a small number of people
c) not having any people
d) being totally empty

37 According to the passage, what will happen to the problem of energy in the future?

a) We can't make energy from new sources.
b) We can't control pollution.
c) We don't have enough food for everyone.
d) We don't yet have the technology to make electricity from the heat of the sun in a big way.

38 A suitable title for the passage is "..................".

a) The problem of overpopulation
b) How to inhabit Australia
c) How to solve overpopulation
d) How to make cities smaller

39 The passage suggests that it is .... to solve the overpopulation problem.

a) easy
b) controlled
c) difficult
d) scientific

40 According to the passage, why is a great area of Australia unpopulated?

a) People don't like living there.
b) Australian people don't have children.
c) Much of the land is desert and waterless.
d) Australian people don't welcome immigrants.

41 One of the following isn't a problem we will face as a result of overpopulation.

a) A shortage of food.
b) A shortage of energy.
c) Pollution.
d) A shortage of desert land.

PART 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

42 Why did Michael and Rupert fight in Antoinette's room?

a) As Michael wanted to kill Antoinette.
b) As Michael was guarding Antoinette.
c) As Rupert wanted to punish Antoinette.
d) As Rupert insulted Michael.

43 How did Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?

a) He got them after killing Bersonin.
b) He got them after killing Rupert.
c) He found them in De Gautet's clothes.
d) He found them on the floor.

44 How did Rassendyll kill Bersonin?

a) He shot him.
b) He stabbed him with a knife.
c) He struck him with his sword.
d) He pushed him down the steps.

45 .... could kill the doctor, hurt Rassendyll and the King.

a) Detchard
b) Bersonin
c) Rupert
d) De Gautet

46 Rassendyll could hear .... voice on the drawbridge calling for Michael?

a) Sapt's
b) Johann's
c) Rupert's
d) Fritz's

47 Why did Rassendyll follow Rupert?

a) He wanted to take his revenge.
b) He wanted to warn him.
c) He wanted to reward him.
d) He wanted to give him money.

48 Rassendyll could injure Rupert on his .... while he was on the horse.

a) cheek
b) shoulder
c) leg
d) foot

49 Sapt ordered the men to carry the King with .... to the mansion to keep the secret.

a) his hands bandaged
b) his arm treated
c) his face covered
d) his cheek hurt

What did the real King want to reward Rassendyll?

a) He wanted to give him a lot of money.

b) He wanted to make him a Duke.

c) He wanted to give him a medal.

d) He wanted to take him to Strelsau.

Rose and Robert were .... when Rassendyll showed them the newspaper photo.

a) happy

b) amazed

c) frightened

d) annoyed

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

It was a wonderful picnic in the park where we breathed some fresh air.

(أ) لقد كانت نزهة رائعة فى الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء الطازج.

(ب) لقد كانت رحلة رائعة فى الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء النقى.

(جـ) لقد كانت نزهة رائعة فى الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء النقى.

(د) لقد كانت رحلة رائعة فى الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء الجديد.

Choose the correct English translation:

53 يقوم العلماء بأبحاث عديدة للاستفادة من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة كالماء والرياح والطاقة النووية.

a) Scientists do many researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.

b) Scientists do much researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.

c) Scientists make many researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.

d) Scientists make much researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.

Choose the correct answer:

Which sentence is correct?

a) You have to finish your work, such long it takes.

b) You have to finish your work however long it takes.

c) You have to finish your work, however long it takes.

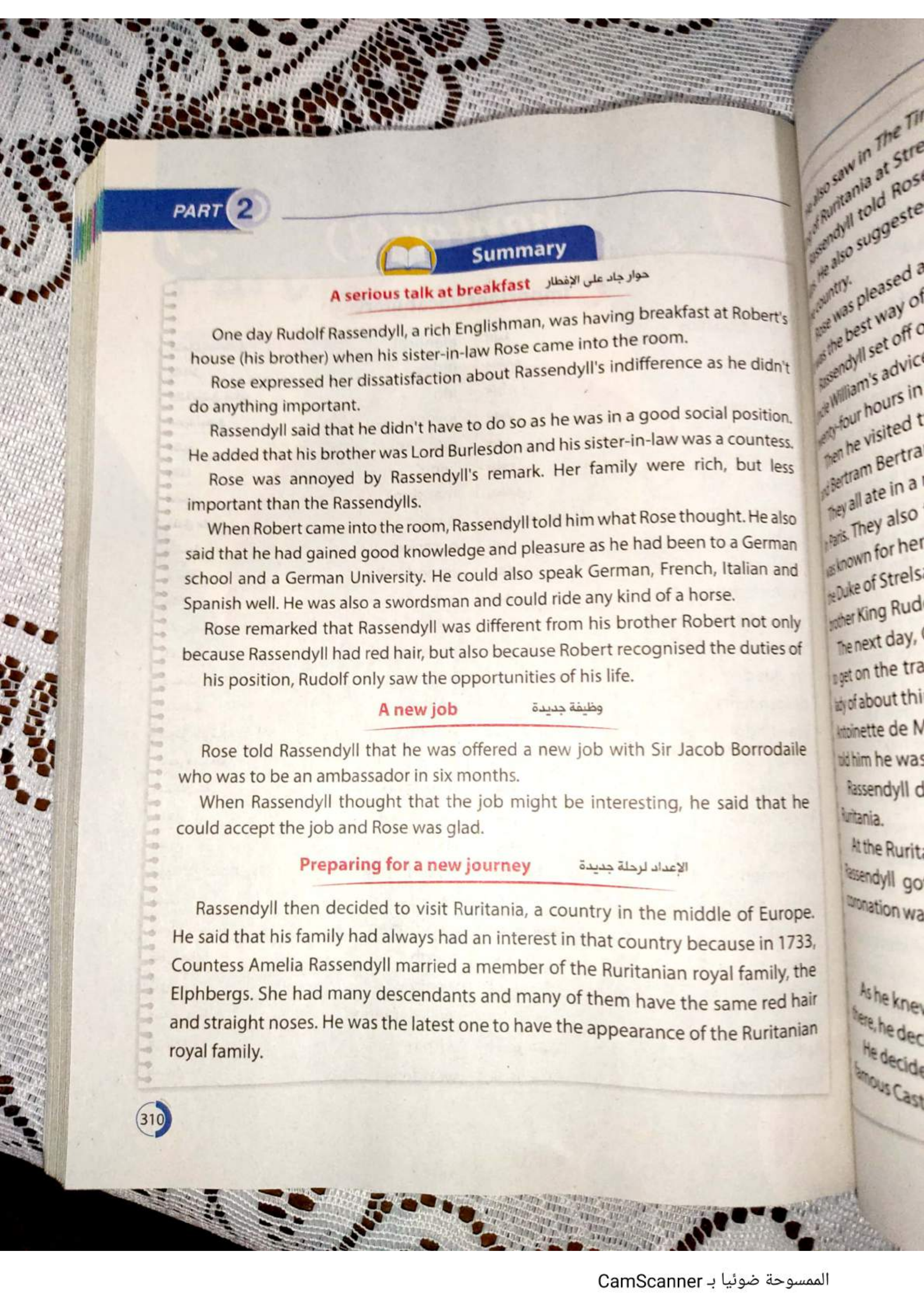
d) You have to finish your work, so long it takes.



Chapter (1)

Important Vocabulary

accommodation	إقامة	identical	متماثل/متطابق
alike	متشابه	indeed	بالفعل
along	عبر	inn	حانة/فندق صغير
amazement	ذهول	joyous	سعيد/بهيج
ambassador	سفير	look like	يشبه
ambition	طموح	lying	راقدا
annoy	يتضايق	mansion	قصر
border	حدود (بين دولتين)	moat	خندق مائى
castle	قلعة	occasion	مناسبة
celebration	احتفال	opportunity	فُرصة
characteristics	خصائص	owner	مالك
conversation	محادثة	peaceful	هادئ/مسالم
coronation	تتويج ملك	personality	شخصية
crowded	مزدحم	physical	جسمانى
descendants	أحفاد	politics	السياسة
drawbridge	جسر متحرك	position	مركز/موقع
Duke	دوق (لقب لشخص نبيل)	remark	يبدى ملاحظة
embassy	سفارة	responsibility	مسئولية
enormous	ضخم	royal	ملكى
events	أحداث	shade	ظل
excitement	متعة/إثارة	sister-in-law	زوجة الأخ/أخت الزوجة
extraordinary	متميز	sword	سيف
festival	مهرجان/احتفال	swordsman	المبارز بالسيف
forest	غابة	tough	قاس/حازم
further	أبعد	wealthy	ثرى
guards	حراس	well-defended	محمى جيدًا
half-brother	اخ غير شقيق	within	فى خلال
hunting lodge	مسكن صيد	wonder	يتساءل



Summary

A serious talk at breakfast حوار جاد على الإفطار

One day Rudolf Rassendyll, a rich Englishman, was having breakfast at Robert's house (his brother) when his sister-in-law Rose came into the room.

Rose expressed her dissatisfaction about Rassendyll's indifference as he didn't do anything important.

Rassendyll said that he didn't have to do so as he was in a good social position. He added that his brother was Lord Burlesdon and his sister-in-law was a countess.

Rose was annoyed by Rassendyll's remark. Her family were rich, but less important than the Rassendylls.

When Robert came into the room, Rassendyll told him what Rose thought. He also said that he had gained good knowledge and pleasure as he had been to a German school and a German University. He could also speak German, French, Italian and Spanish well. He was also a swordsman and could ride any kind of a horse.

Rose remarked that Rassendyll was different from his brother Robert not only because Rassendyll had red hair, but also because Robert recognised the duties of his position, Rudolf only saw the opportunities of his life.

A new job وظيفة جديدة

Rose told Rassendyll that he was offered a new job with Sir Jacob Borrodaile who was to be an ambassador in six months.

When Rassendyll thought that the job might be interesting, he said that he could accept the job and Rose was glad.

Preparing for a new journey الإعداد لرحلة جديدة

Rassendyll then decided to visit Ruritania, a country in the middle of Europe. He said that his family had always had an interest in that country because in 1733, Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Elphbergs. She had many descendants and many of them have the same red hair and straight noses. He was the latest one to have the appearance of the Ruritanian royal family.

He also saw in *The Times* newspaper that Rudolf the Fifth was to be crowned as King of Ruritania at Strelsau in the course of the next three weeks.

Rassendyll told Rose and Robert that he was going on a walking tour in the Alps. He also suggested that he might write a book about the social problems of the country.

Rose was pleased and Robert, who had written several books himself, said that it was the best way of introducing himself to politics.

Rassendyll set off on his train journey to Ruritania. When he reached Paris, he took Uncle William's advice that no man should ever pass through Paris without spending twenty-four hours in the city. So, he booked a night at The Continental Hotel.

Then he visited two old friends George Featherly who worked at the embassy, and Bertram Bertrand, who was now a famous journalist in the city.

They all ate in a restaurant and they told him all about the latest exciting events in Paris. They also told him about Antoinette de Mauban, the beautiful lady who was known for her wealth and ambition. They also told him about her relation with the Duke of Strelsau who visited Paris and went back to Ruritania to prepare for his brother King Rudolf's coronation.

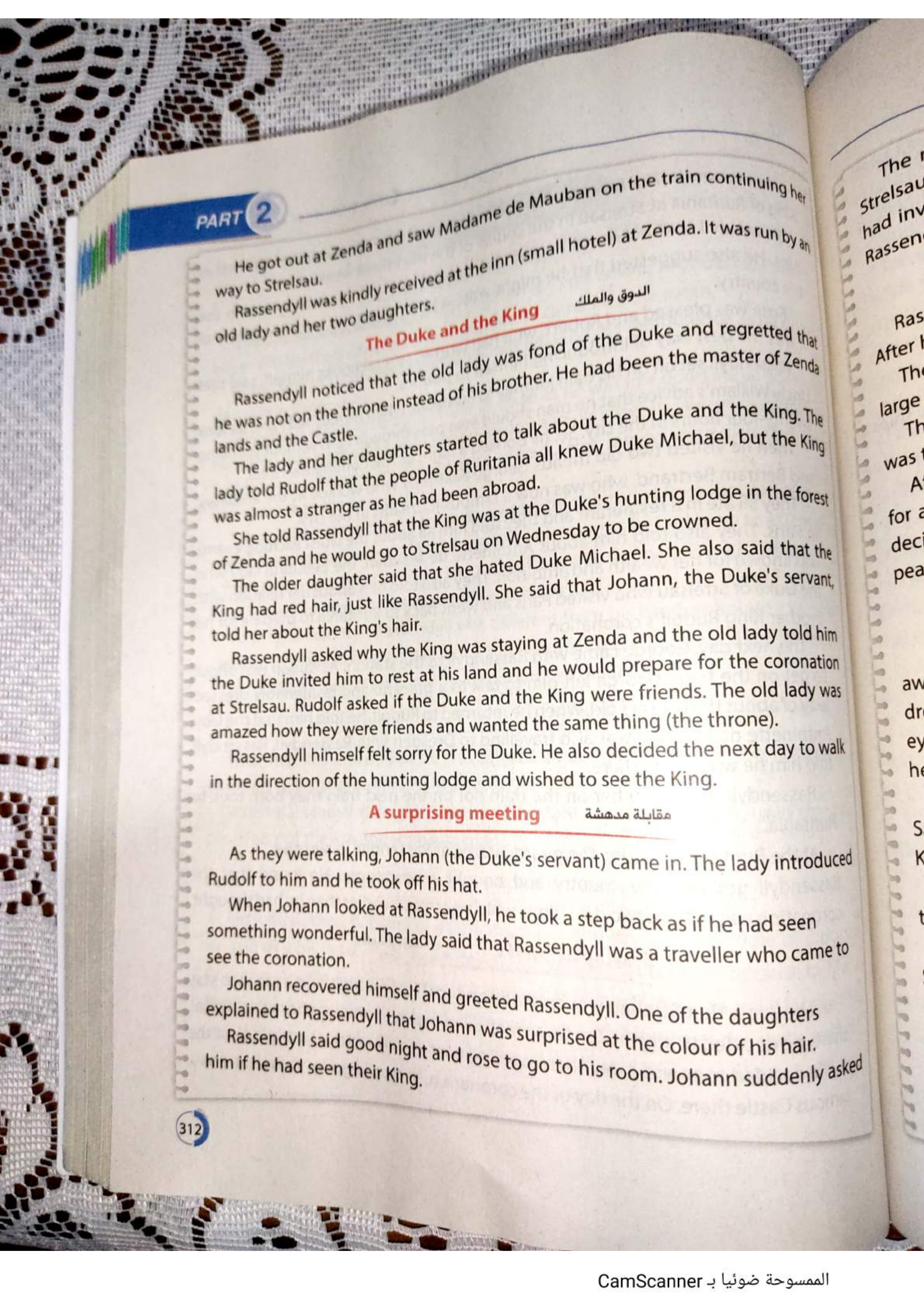
The next day, George came with Rassendyll to the station. As Rudolf was about to get on the train, George left him to talk to a graceful and fashionably dressed lady of about thirty years old. When he returned to Rudolf, he told him that the lady Antoinette de Mauban was also travelling to Dresden with Rassendyll. Rassendyll told him he was going there.

Rassendyll didn't see her on the train nor on the next train they both took to Ruritania.

At the Ruritanian border, the guards stared at Rassendyll in surprise. Rassendyll got into the country and bought a newspaper. He found that the coronation was to be in two days' time, which was much earlier than he had thought.

Staying at Zenda الإقامة فى زندا

As he knew that Strelsau was crowded and that he wouldn't find a place to stay there, he decided to stop at Zenda, a small town eighty kilometres from the capital. He decided to spend a day there walking over the hills and taking a look at the famous Castle there. On the day of the coronation, he would go by train to Strelsau.



He got out at Zenda and saw Madame de Mauban on the train continuing her way to Strelsau.

Rassendyll was kindly received at the inn (small hotel) at Zenda. It was run by an old lady and her two daughters.

The Duke and the King الدوق والملك

Rassendyll noticed that the old lady was fond of the Duke and regretted that he was not on the throne instead of his brother. He had been the master of Zenda lands and the Castle.

The lady and her daughters started to talk about the Duke and the King. The lady told Rudolf that the people of Ruritania all knew Duke Michael, but the King was almost a stranger as he had been abroad.

She told Rassendyll that the King was at the Duke's hunting lodge in the forest of Zenda and he would go to Strelsau on Wednesday to be crowned.

The older daughter said that she hated Duke Michael. She also said that the King had red hair, just like Rassendyll. She said that Johann, the Duke's servant, told her about the King's hair.

Rassendyll asked why the King was staying at Zenda and the old lady told him the Duke invited him to rest at his land and he would prepare for the coronation at Strelsau. Rudolf asked if the Duke and the King were friends. The old lady was amazed how they were friends and wanted the same thing (the throne).

Rassendyll himself felt sorry for the Duke. He also decided the next day to walk in the direction of the hunting lodge and wished to see the King.

A surprising meeting مقابلة مدهشة

As they were talking, Johann (the Duke's servant) came in. The lady introduced Rudolf to him and he took off his hat.

When Johann looked at Rassendyll, he took a step back as if he had seen something wonderful. The lady said that Rassendyll was a traveller who came to see the coronation.

Johann recovered himself and greeted Rassendyll. One of the daughters explained to Rassendyll that Johann was surprised at the colour of his hair.

Rassendyll said good night and rose to go to his room. Johann suddenly asked him if he had seen their King.

The next morning Rudolf told the people at the hotel that he was going to Strelsau. Johann offered him to stay with his sister and her husband there. She had invited him to stay with them for the coronation, but he was unable to go. Rassendyll accepted his offer.

The castle and the forest القلعة والغابة

Rassendyll sent his luggage onto the station and set out to the forest of Zenda. After he crossed the hills, he reached the Castle half an hour later.

The Castle was very old but well built, with a moat all around it. Behind it was a large modern mansion, which was used by the Duke of Strelsau as his country home. There was a drawbridge joining them. Rassendyll noticed that the drawbridge was the only way to the Castle. There was a wide road to the mansion.

After passing the hill and the Castle, Rassendyll entered the forest and walked for an hour or more in its cool shade. He was fascinated by the lovely place. He decided to rest by lying against one of the enormous trees. It was so quiet and peaceful in the forest that he soon fell into a deep sleep.

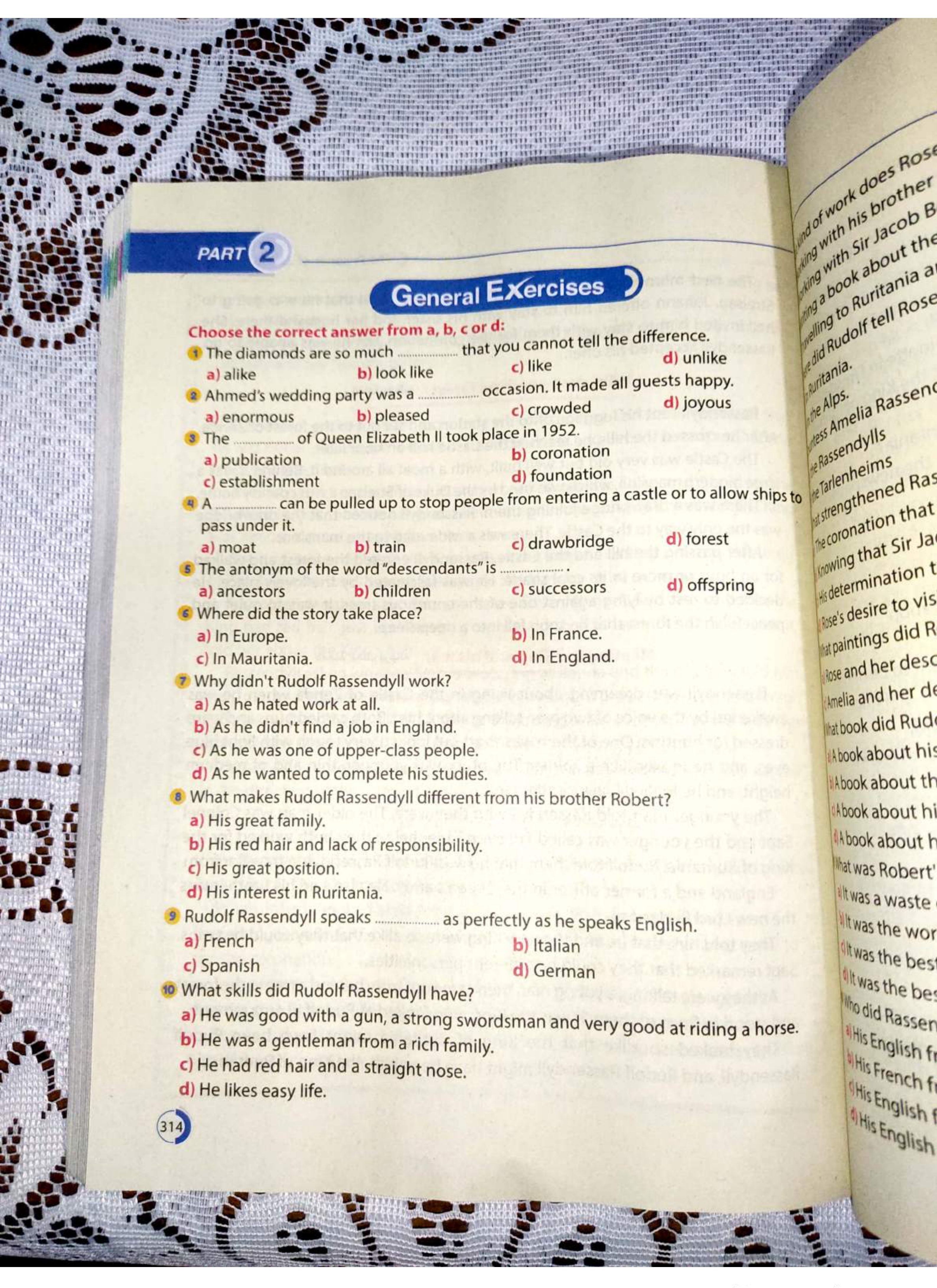
Meeting the King and his men مقابلة الملك ورجاله

Rassendyll was dreaming about living in the Castle of Zenda when he was awakened by the voice of two men talking about him. Both carried guns and were dressed for hunting. One of them was short but looked very tough with light blue eyes, and he looked like a soldier. The other was younger, thin and of medium height, and he looked like a gentleman.

The younger man told Rassendyll who they were. The older man was Colonel Sapt and the younger was called Fritz von Tarlenheim; they both worked for the King of Ruritania. Rudolf told them that he was Rudolf Rassendyll, a traveller from England and a former officer in the Queen's army. He also said his brother was the new Lord Burlesdon.

They told him that he and the new King were so alike that they could be twins. Sapt remarked that they could be different personalities.

As they were talking, a young man then came out from behind a tree in the forest and stood in front of them. It was the King who looked at Rudolf in amazement. They looked so alike that the King of Ruritania might have been Rudolf Rassendyll, and Rudolf Rassendyll might have been him, the King of Ruritania.

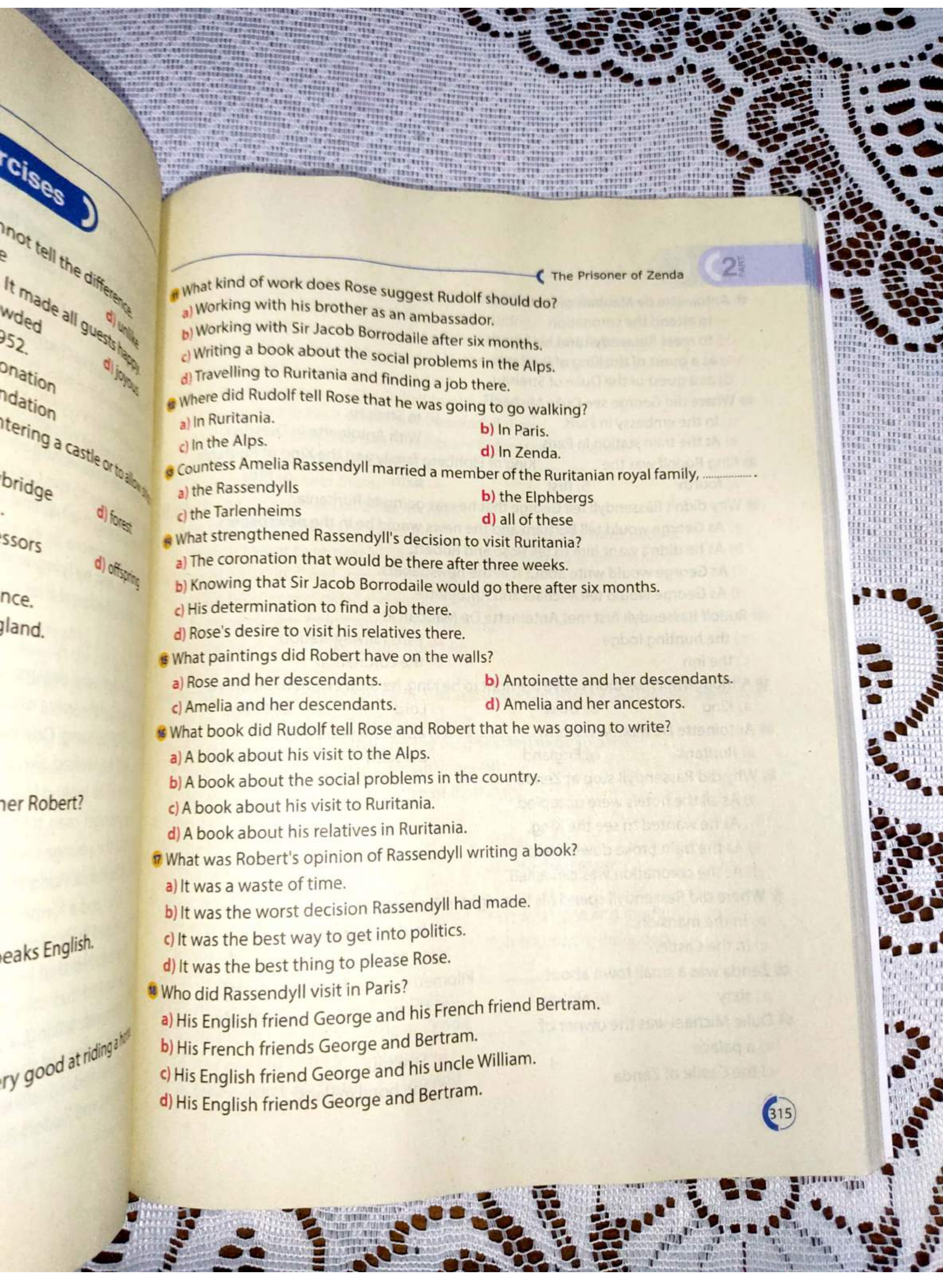


PART 2

General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The diamonds are so much .... that you cannot tell the difference.
   a) alike b) look like c) like d) unlike
2. Ahmed's wedding party was a .... occasion. It made all guests happy.
   a) enormous b) pleased c) crowded d) joyous
3. The .... of Queen Elizabeth II took place in 1952.
   a) publication b) coronation c) establishment d) foundation
4. A .... can be pulled up to stop people from entering a castle or to allow ships to pass under it.
   a) moat b) train c) drawbridge d) forest
5. The antonym of the word "descendants" is ....
   a) ancestors b) children c) successors d) offspring
6. Where did the story take place?
   a) In Europe. b) In France. c) In Mauritania. d) In England.
7. Why didn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?
   a) As he hated work at all.
   b) As he didn't find a job in England.
   c) As he was one of upper-class people.
   d) As he wanted to complete his studies.
8. What makes Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother Robert?
   a) His great family.
   b) His red hair and lack of responsibility.
   c) His great position.
   d) His interest in Ruritania.
9. Rudolf Rassendyll speaks .... as perfectly as he speaks English.
   a) French b) Italian c) Spanish d) German
10. What skills did Rudolf Rassendyll have?
    a) He was good with a gun, a strong swordsman and very good at riding a horse.
    b) He was a gentleman from a rich family.
    c) He had red hair and a straight nose.
    d) He likes easy life.



11 What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?

a) Working with his brother as an ambassador.
b) Working with Sir Jacob Borrodaile after six months.
c) Writing a book about the social problems in the Alps.
d) Travelling to Ruritania and finding a job there.

12 Where did Rudolf tell Rose that he was going to go walking?

a) In Ruritania. b) In Paris.
c) In the Alps. d) In Zenda.

13 Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, ...

a) the Rassendylls b) the Elphbergs
c) the Tarlenheims d) all of these

14 What strengthened Rassendyll's decision to visit Ruritania?

a) The coronation that would be there after three weeks.
b) Knowing that Sir Jacob Borrodaile would go there after six months.
c) His determination to find a job there.
d) Rose's desire to visit his relatives there.

15 What paintings did Robert have on the walls?

a) Rose and her descendants. b) Antoinette and her descendants.
c) Amelia and her descendants. d) Amelia and her ancestors.

16 What book did Rudolf tell Rose and Robert that he was going to write?

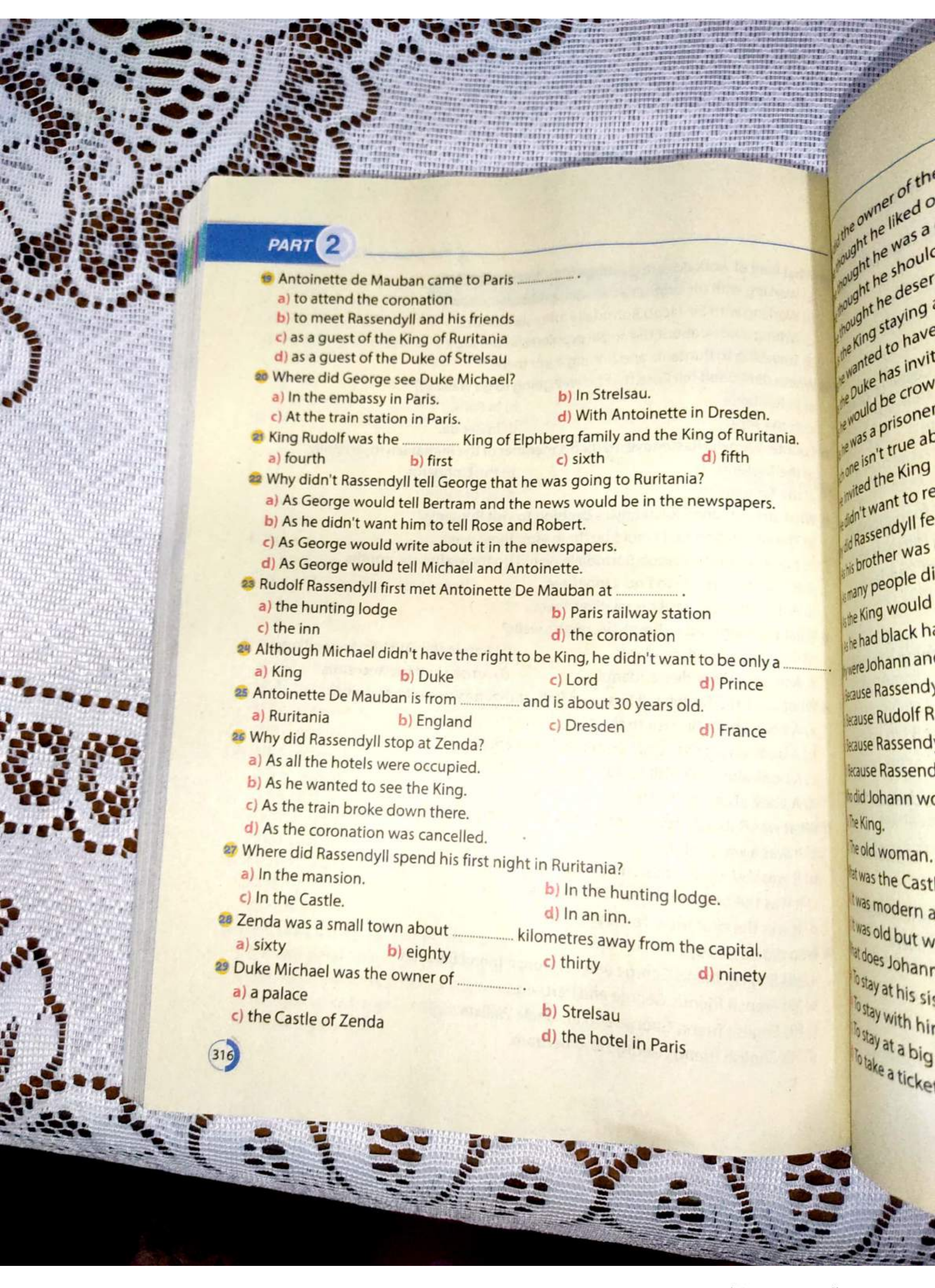
a) A book about his visit to the Alps.
b) A book about the social problems in the country.
c) A book about his visit to Ruritania.
d) A book about his relatives in Ruritania.

17 What was Robert's opinion of Rassendyll writing a book?

a) It was a waste of time.
b) It was the worst decision Rassendyll had made.
c) It was the best way to get into politics.
d) It was the best thing to please Rose.

18 Who did Rassendyll visit in Paris?

a) His English friend George and his French friend Bertram.
b) His French friends George and Bertram.
c) His English friend George and his uncle William.
d) His English friends George and Bertram.



PART 2

19 Antoinette de Mauban came to Paris ....

a) to attend the coronation
b) to meet Rassendyll and his friends
c) as a guest of the King of Ruritania
d) as a guest of the Duke of Strelsau

20 Where did George see Duke Michael?

a) In the embassy in Paris.
b) In Strelsau.
c) At the train station in Paris.
d) With Antoinette in Dresden.

21 King Rudolf was the .... King of Elphberg family and the King of Ruritania.

a) fourth
b) first
c) sixth
d) fifth

22 Why didn't Rassendyll tell George that he was going to Ruritania?

a) As George would tell Bertram and the news would be in the newspapers.
b) As he didn't want him to tell Rose and Robert.
c) As George would write about it in the newspapers.
d) As George would tell Michael and Antoinette.

23 Rudolf Rassendyll first met Antoinette De Mauban at ....

a) the hunting lodge
b) Paris railway station
c) the inn
d) the coronation

24 Although Michael didn't have the right to be King, he didn't want to be only a ....

a) King
b) Duke
c) Lord
d) Prince

25 Antoinette De Mauban is from .... and is about 30 years old.

a) Ruritania
b) England
c) Dresden
d) France

26 Why did Rassendyll stop at Zenda?

a) As all the hotels were occupied.
b) As he wanted to see the King.
c) As the train broke down there.
d) As the coronation was cancelled.

27 Where did Rassendyll spend his first night in Ruritania?

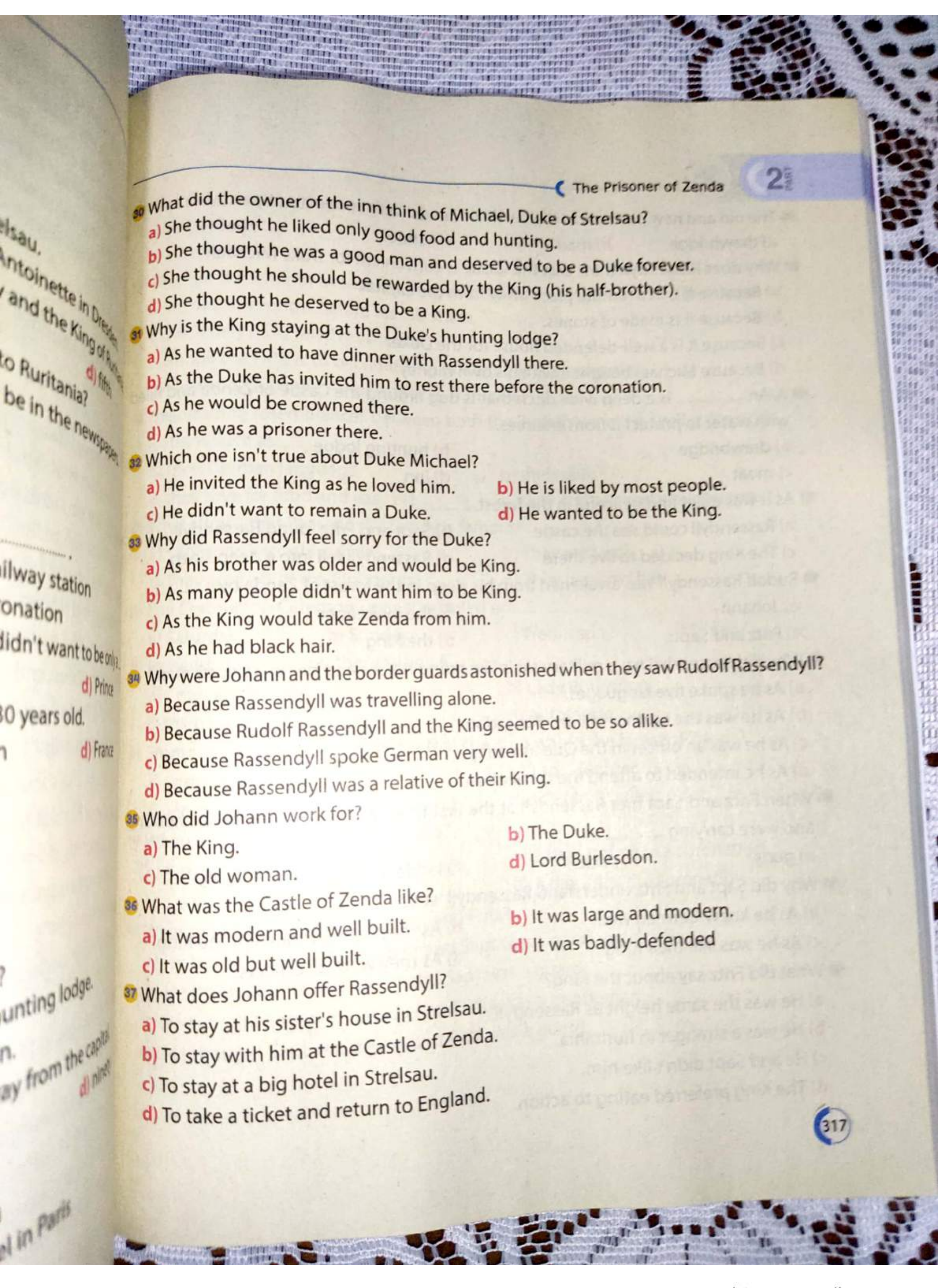
a) In the mansion.
b) In the hunting lodge.
c) In the Castle.
d) In an inn.

28 Zenda was a small town about .... kilometres away from the capital.

a) sixty
b) eighty
c) thirty
d) ninety

29 Duke Michael was the owner of ....

a) a palace
b) Strelsau
c) the Castle of Zenda
d) the hotel in Paris



30 What did the owner of the inn think of Michael, Duke of Strelsau?
a) She thought he liked only good food and hunting.
b) She thought he was a good man and deserved to be a Duke forever.
c) She thought he should be rewarded by the King (his half-brother).
d) She thought he deserved to be a King.

31 Why is the King staying at the Duke's hunting lodge?
a) As he wanted to have dinner with Rassendyll there.
b) As the Duke has invited him to rest there before the coronation.
c) As he would be crowned there.
d) As he was a prisoner there.

32 Which one isn't true about Duke Michael?
a) He invited the King as he loved him.
b) He is liked by most people.
c) He didn't want to remain a Duke.
d) He wanted to be the King.

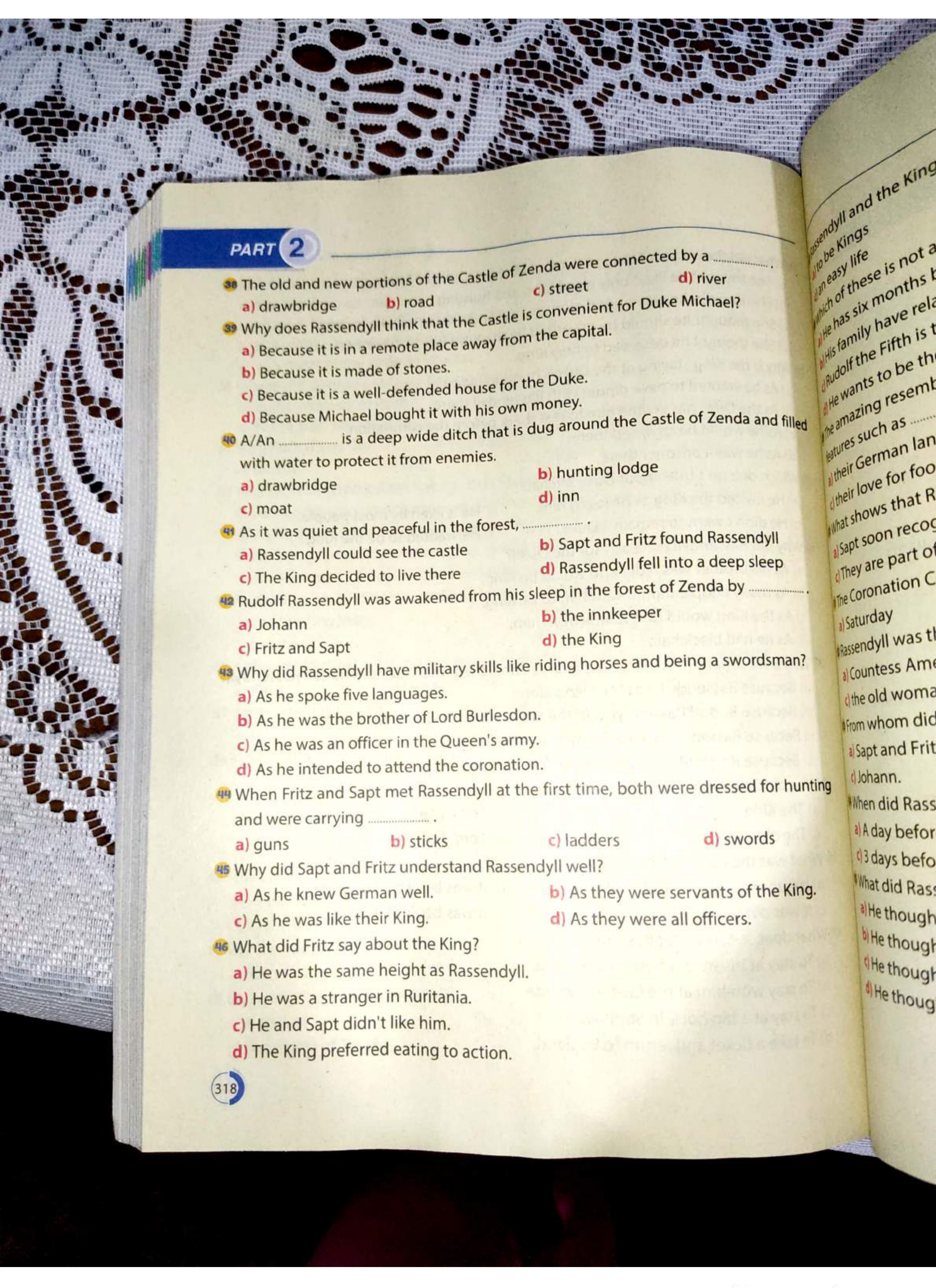
33 Why did Rassendyll feel sorry for the Duke?
a) As his brother was older and would be King.
b) As many people didn't want him to be King.
c) As the King would take Zenda from him.
d) As he had black hair.

34 Why were Johann and the border guards astonished when they saw Rudolf Rassendyll?
a) Because Rassendyll was travelling alone.
b) Because Rudolf Rassendyll and the King seemed to be so alike.
c) Because Rassendyll spoke German very well.
d) Because Rassendyll was a relative of their King.

35 Who did Johann work for?
a) The King.
b) The Duke.
c) The old woman.
d) Lord Burlesdon.

36 What was the Castle of Zenda like?
a) It was modern and well built.
b) It was large and modern.
c) It was old but well built.
d) It was badly-defended

37 What does Johann offer Rassendyll?
a) To stay at his sister's house in Strelsau.
b) To stay with him at the Castle of Zenda.
c) To stay at a big hotel in Strelsau.
d) To take a ticket and return to England.



PART 2

38 The old and new portions of the Castle of Zenda were connected by a ....

a) drawbridge b) road c) street d) river

39 Why does Rassendyll think that the Castle is convenient for Duke Michael?

a) Because it is in a remote place away from the capital.

b) Because it is made of stones.

c) Because it is a well-defended house for the Duke.

d) Because Michael bought it with his own money.

40 A/An .... is a deep wide ditch that is dug around the Castle of Zenda and filled with water to protect it from enemies.

a) drawbridge b) hunting lodge

c) moat d) inn

41 As it was quiet and peaceful in the forest, ...

a) Rassendyll could see the castle b) Sapt and Fritz found Rassendyll

c) The King decided to live there d) Rassendyll fell into a deep sleep

42 Rudolf Rassendyll was awakened from his sleep in the forest of Zenda by ....

a) Johann b) the innkeeper

c) Fritz and Sapt d) the King

43 Why did Rassendyll have military skills like riding horses and being a swordsman?

a) As he spoke five languages.

b) As he was the brother of Lord Burlesdon.

c) As he was an officer in the Queen's army.

d) As he intended to attend the coronation.

44 When Fritz and Sapt met Rassendyll at the first time, both were dressed for hunting and were carrying ....

a) guns b) sticks c) ladders d) swords

45 Why did Sapt and Fritz understand Rassendyll well?

a) As he knew German well. b) As they were servants of the King.

c) As he was like their King. d) As they were all officers.

46 What did Fritz say about the King?

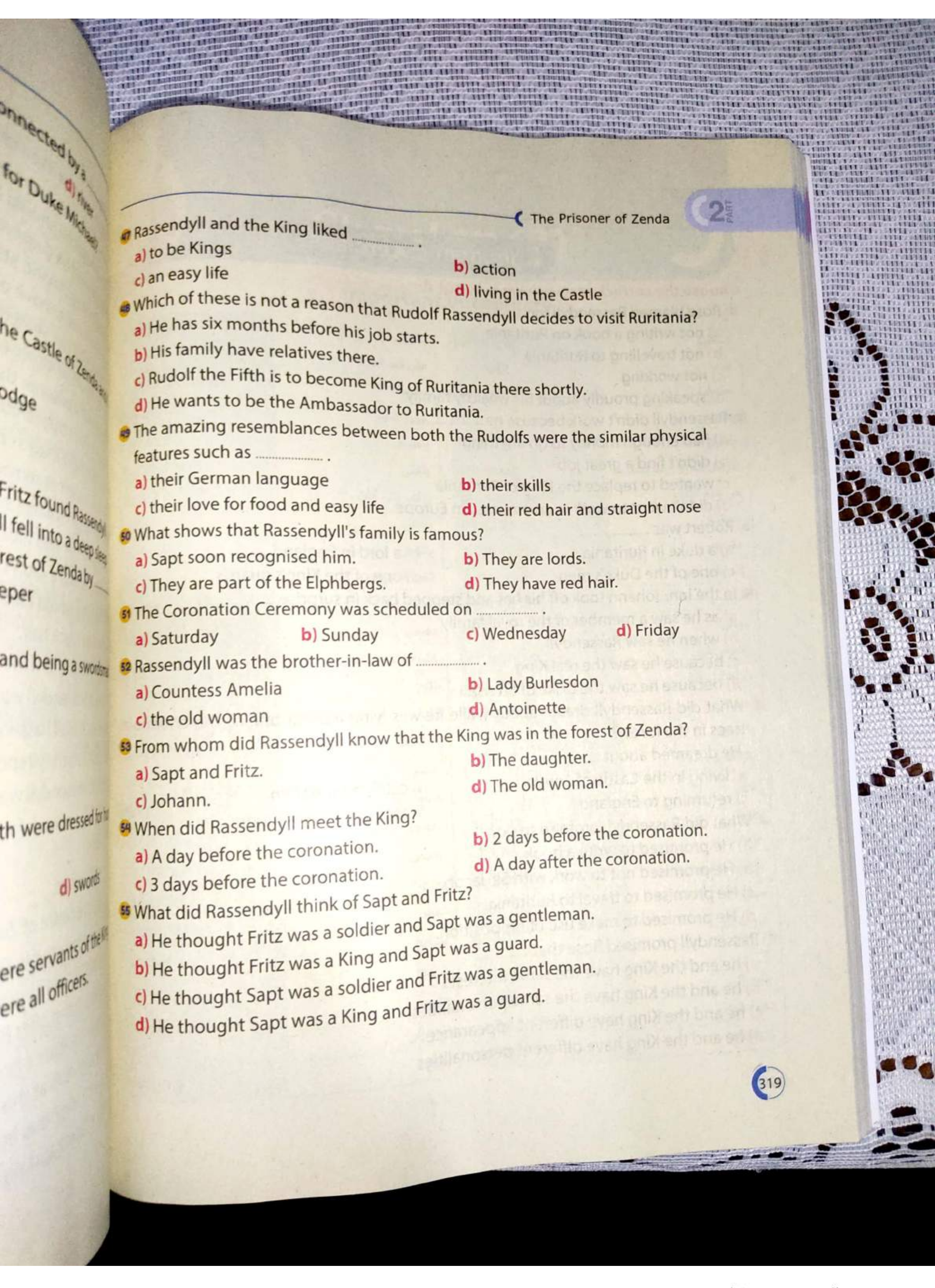
a) He was the same height as Rassendyll.

b) He was a stranger in Ruritania.

c) He and Sapt didn't like him.

d) The King preferred eating to action.

318



47 Rassendyll and the King liked ....

a) to be Kings
b) action
c) an easy life
d) living in the Castle

48 Which of these is not a reason that Rudolf Rassendyll decides to visit Ruritania?

a) He has six months before his job starts.
b) His family have relatives there.
c) Rudolf the Fifth is to become King of Ruritania there shortly.
d) He wants to be the Ambassador to Ruritania.

49 The amazing resemblances between both the Rudolfs were the similar physical features such as ....

a) their German language
b) their skills
c) their love for food and easy life
d) their red hair and straight nose

50 What shows that Rassendyll's family is famous?

a) Sapt soon recognised him.
b) They are lords.
c) They are part of the Elphbergs.
d) They have red hair.

51 The Coronation Ceremony was scheduled on ....

a) Saturday
b) Sunday
c) Wednesday
d) Friday

52 Rassendyll was the brother-in-law of ....

a) Countess Amelia
b) Lady Burlesdon
c) the old woman
d) Antoinette

53 From whom did Rassendyll know that the King was in the forest of Zenda?

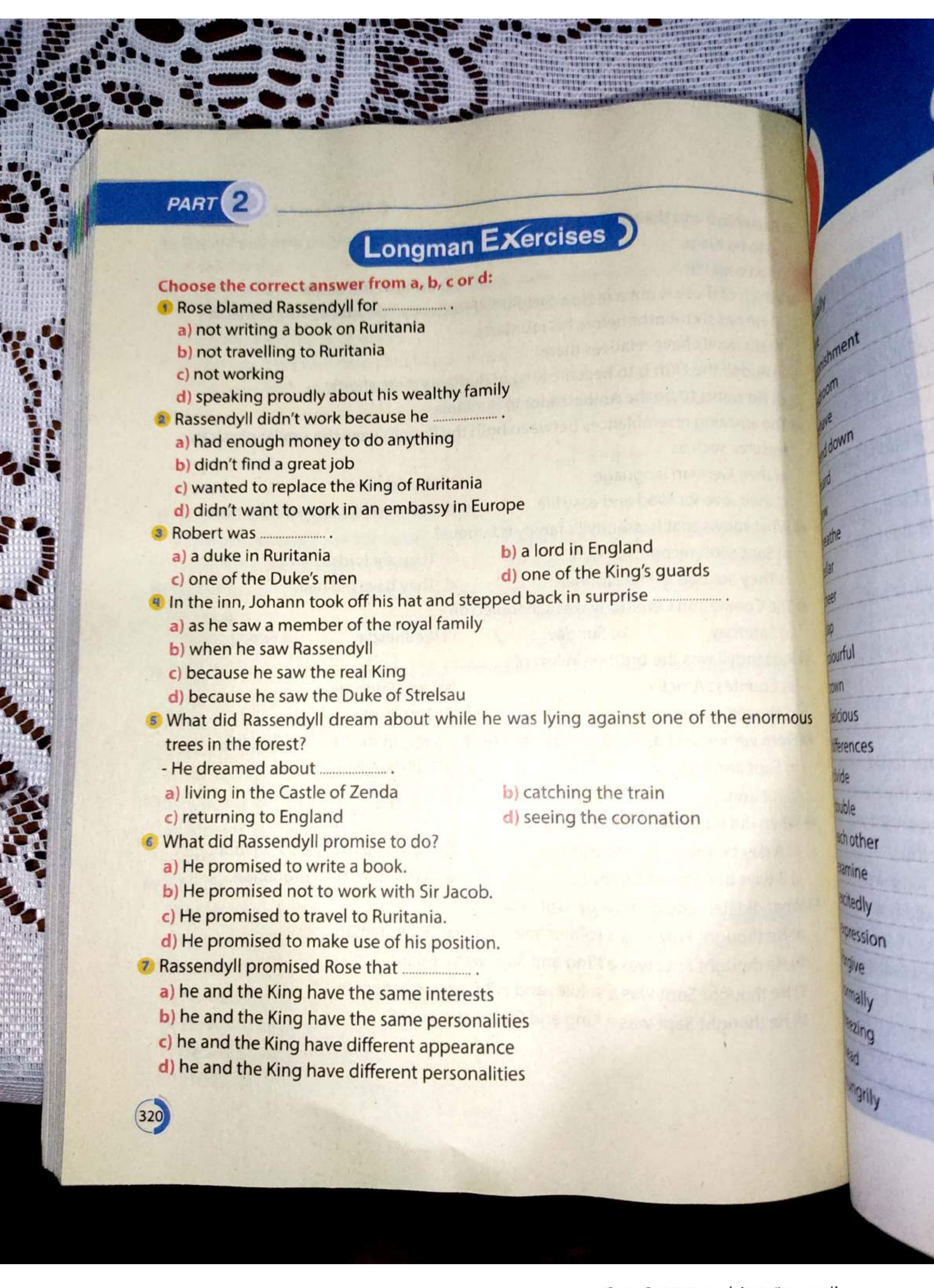
a) Sapt and Fritz.
b) The daughter.
c) Johann.
d) The old woman.

54 When did Rassendyll meet the King?

a) A day before the coronation.
b) 2 days before the coronation.
c) 3 days before the coronation.
d) A day after the coronation.

55 What did Rassendyll think of Sapt and Fritz?

a) He thought Fritz was a soldier and Sapt was a gentleman.
b) He thought Fritz was a King and Sapt was a guard.
c) He thought Sapt was a soldier and Fritz was a gentleman.
d) He thought Sapt was a King and Fritz was a guard.



PART 2

Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rose blamed Rassendyll for ....
   a) not writing a book on Ruritania
   b) not travelling to Ruritania
   c) not working
   d) speaking proudly about his wealthy family
2. Rassendyll didn't work because he ....
   a) had enough money to do anything
   b) didn't find a great job
   c) wanted to replace the King of Ruritania
   d) didn't want to work in an embassy in Europe
3. Robert was ....
   a) a duke in Ruritania
   b) a lord in England
   c) one of the Duke's men
   d) one of the King's guards
4. In the inn, Johann took off his hat and stepped back in surprise ....
   a) as he saw a member of the royal family
   b) when he saw Rassendyll
   c) because he saw the real King
   d) because he saw the Duke of Strelsau
5. What did Rassendyll dream about while he was lying against one of the enormous trees in the forest?
   - He dreamed about ....
   a) living in the Castle of Zenda
   b) catching the train
   c) returning to England
   d) seeing the coronation
6. What did Rassendyll promise to do?
   a) He promised to write a book.
   b) He promised not to work with Sir Jacob.
   c) He promised to travel to Ruritania.
   d) He promised to make use of his position.
7. Rassendyll promised Rose that ....
   a) he and the King have the same interests
   b) he and the King have the same personalities
   c) he and the King have different appearance
   d) he and the King have different personalities

Chapter (2)

Important Vocabulary

actually	بالفعل
alive	على قيد الحياة
astonishment	دهشة
bedroom	حجرة النوم
behave	يتصرف
bend down	ينحني
board	يركب على متن
bow	ينحني
breathe	يتنفس
cellar	القبو/البدروم
cheer	يهتف
clap	يصفق
colourful	غني بالألوان/نابض بالحياة
crown	يتوج
delicious	لذيذ
differences	اختلافات
divide	يقسم
double	شبيه/بديل
each other	بعضهم البعض
examine	يفحص
excitedly	بفرح
expression	تعبير
forgive	يسامح
formally	رسميًا
freezing	متجمد
head	يتجه إلى
hungrily	بجوع

identical	متطابق
instruct	يوجه
interests	اهتمامات
line	يصطف
lock	يحبس
Marshal	مارشال/الفريق (رتبة عسكرية)
meanwhile	في هذه الأثناء
officials	موظفون
poisoned	مسموم
preparation	إعداد/تجهيز
procession	موكب
pulse	نبض
recognise	يتعرف على
ribbon	رِباط/شَريط
safe	آمن
senseless	بلا وعي
shortly	بعد فترة قصيرة
spirit	روح
splash	يرش
square	ميدان
support	يؤيد/يساند
tiny	صغير
unfit	غير ملائم
urge	يحث
wave	يشير إلى
weaknesses	نقاط ضعف
whole	كل/جميع





Summary

The King finds his double الملك يقابل شبيهًا له

Rassendyll and the King stood looking at each other in astonishment for a few minutes. Then Rassendyll bowed to the King.

The King asked Sapt about Rassendyll. Sapt began to tell him all about Rudolf while the King was staring at Rudolf now and then.

While they were talking, Rassendyll examined the King carefully. Although there were some differences: the King's mouth was perhaps less wide and Rassendyll's face was a little thinner, in most ways they were identical.

When Sapt finished talking, the King laughed and welcomed Rudolf saying that it was not every day that you see your double.

When Rassendyll told the King that he was going to Strelsau for the coronation, the King laughed loudly and asked what his brother Michael would think if he saw them together.

Both Fritz and Colonel Sapt thought that Rudolf Rassendyll shouldn't go to Strelsau as it would be very dangerous.

Rassendyll agreed and wanted to leave immediately. However, the King invited him to have dinner at Michael's hunting lodge.

A happy evening with a cousin أمسية سعيدة مع ابن العم

Rassendyll walked with the King for half an hour through the forest, talking happily until they reached a small wooden hunting lodge between the trees.

The King's personal servant came out to meet them. The other servant was the mother of Johann, the man who Rassendyll had met earlier at the inn.

The servants laid out the table for dinner. Rassendyll and the King were very hungry and they ate much. Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim did not want to eat too much because of the events the next day.

When they finished, Josef (the servant) put some cakes on the table saying that the Duke ordered him to serve them at the end of the meal.

The King ate the cakes hungrily, as if they were the first thing he had eaten all day.

Rassendyll ate one of the cakes, but he had really eaten enough, and when the King seemed to have finally finished eating, Rassendyll asked to go to bed.

The King in great trouble الملك يواجه متاعب كبيرة

The next morning Rassendyll woke up suddenly covered in water. He looked up and saw Colonel Sapt standing in front of him, with Fritz von Tarlenheim next to him. They said that nothing else would wake him up and it was five o'clock.

Fritz took his arm and led him to the next room. The King was lying on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily. They couldn't wake him up.

Sapt said that they were in great trouble. They thought that the cakes were poisoned and no doctor, if they found one many kilometres away, would make him better that day.

Sapt thought that Duke Michael did that so that his brother couldn't be crowned. If Rudolf the Fifth didn't become King that day, Duke Michael would take the crown.

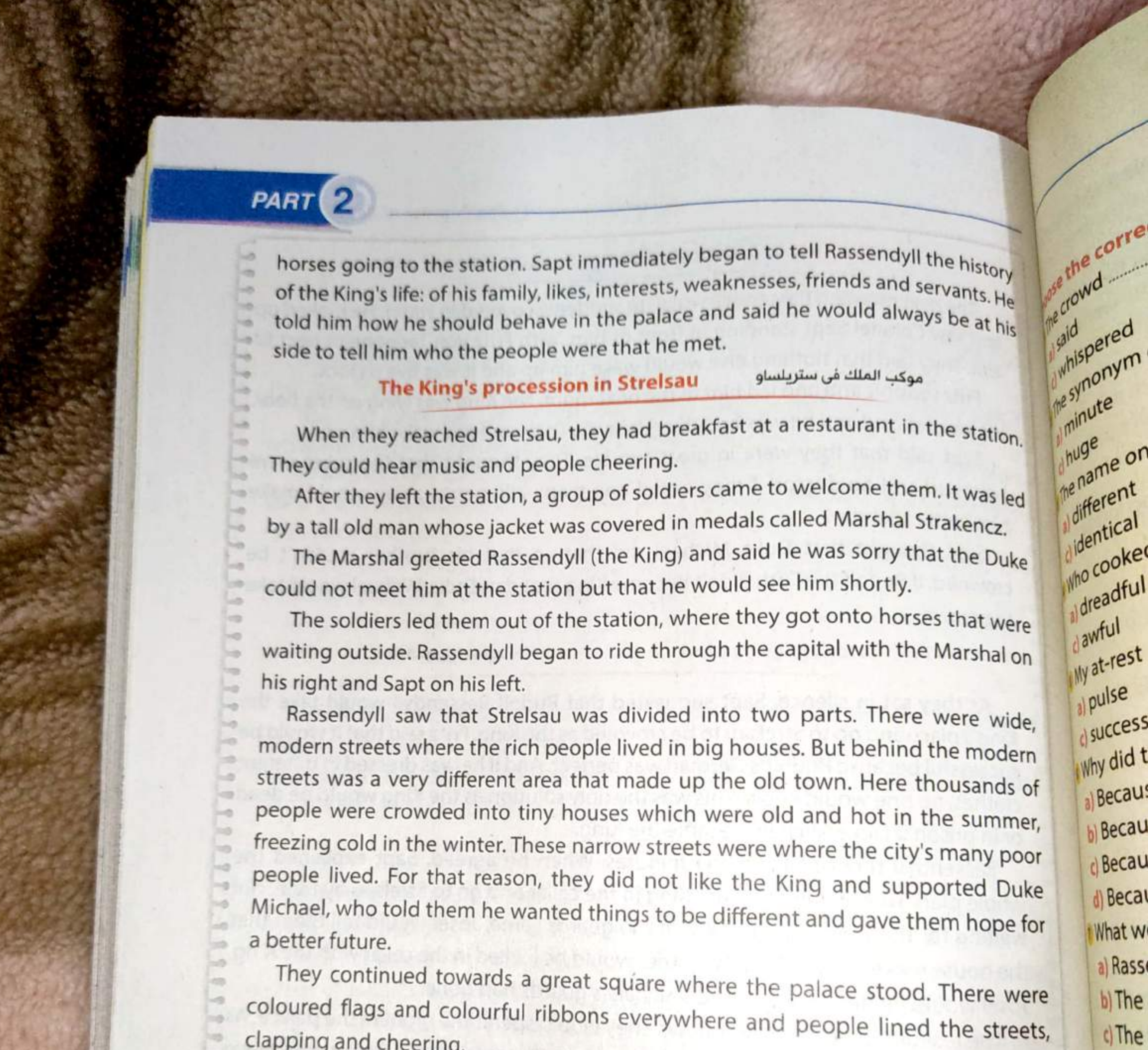
Colonel Sapt's plan خطة الكولونيل سابت

As they sat in silence, Sapt suggested that Rudolf Rassendyll would take the King's place and go to Strelsau to be crowned as the King. Fritz said that it would be successful because Rudolf's German was perfect. And if he was dressed in different clothes, no one would know. This was the only solution as the King would be dead or in prison if Duke Michael became the King.

Rassendyll thought for a few minutes. When he agreed, Sapt explained the whole plan. They would hide the King in the cellar and go to Strelsau by train, not waiting for the Duke's guards. When the guards came, Josef would tell them that the house was empty. Johann's mother would be locked in the cellar with the King. Josef would let her out later, after Michael's guards had gone.

The rest of the plan was as follows: they would spend the night in the palace. As soon as they were alone in the King's bedroom, Rassendyll and Sapt would leave and come back to the hunting lodge on their horses. Fritz could stay and guard the King's bedroom in the palace. The King would then return to the palace with Sapt in the dark. Meanwhile, Rassendyll would ride as fast as he could to the border and try to leave the country before it was light.

Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll left the hunting lodge an hour earlier to avoid being seen by Duke Michael's guards. Soon they were now all in uniforms and set off on



horses going to the station. Sapt immediately began to tell Rassendyll the history of the King's life: of his family, likes, interests, weaknesses, friends and servants. He told him how he should behave in the palace and said he would always be at his side to tell him who the people were that he met.

The King's procession in Strelsau موكب الملك فى ستريلساو

When they reached Strelsau, they had breakfast at a restaurant in the station. They could hear music and people cheering.

After they left the station, a group of soldiers came to welcome them. It was led by a tall old man whose jacket was covered in medals called Marshal Strakencz.

The Marshal greeted Rassendyll (the King) and said he was sorry that the Duke could not meet him at the station but that he would see him shortly.

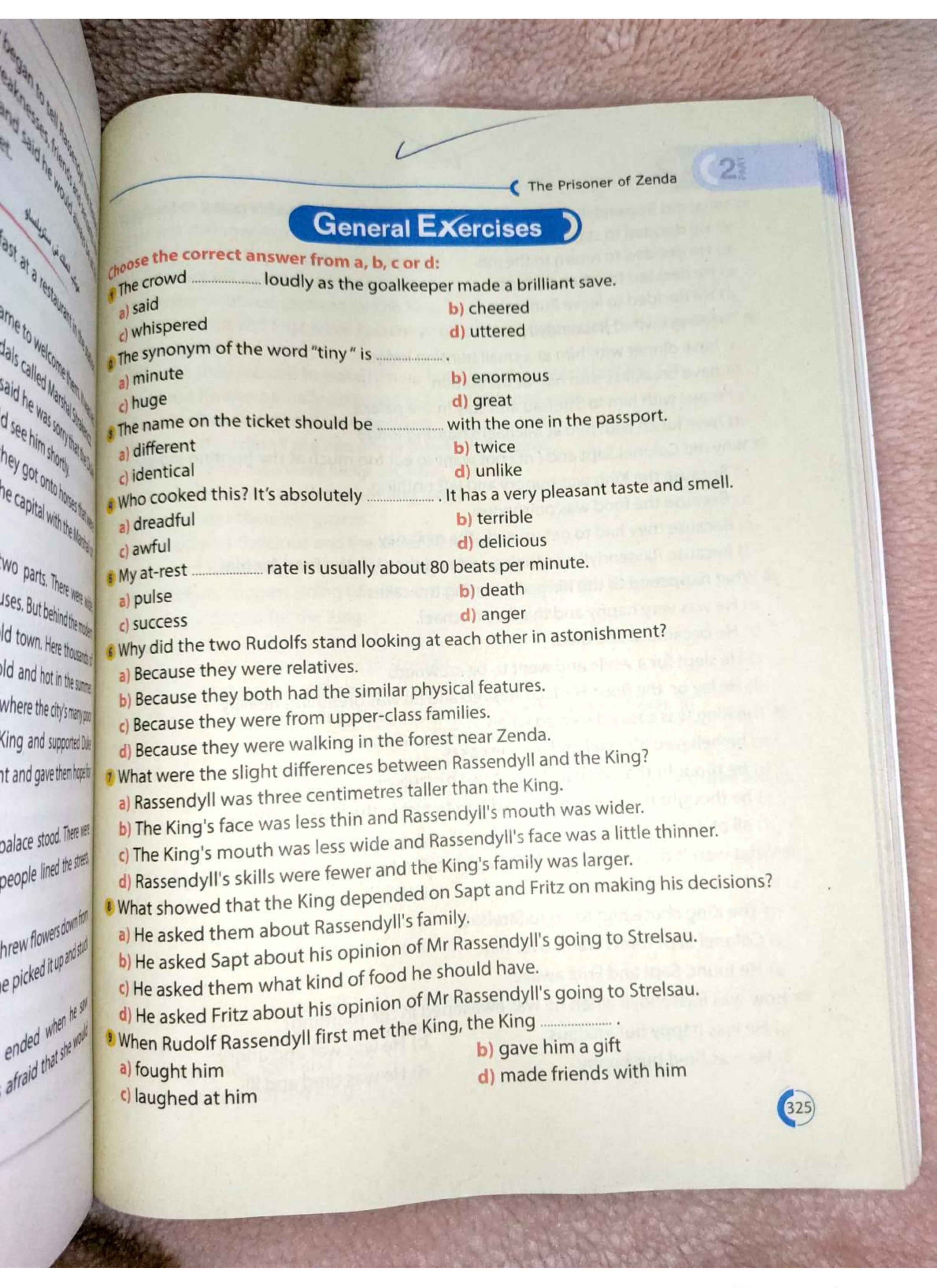
The soldiers led them out of the station, where they got onto horses that were waiting outside. Rassendyll began to ride through the capital with the Marshal on his right and Sapt on his left.

Rassendyll saw that Strelsau was divided into two parts. There were wide, modern streets where the rich people lived in big houses. But behind the modern streets was a very different area that made up the old town. Here thousands of people were crowded into tiny houses which were old and hot in the summer, freezing cold in the winter. These narrow streets were where the city's many poor people lived. For that reason, they did not like the King and supported Duke Michael, who told them he wanted things to be different and gave them hope for a better future.

They continued towards a great square where the palace stood. There were coloured flags and colourful ribbons everywhere and people lined the streets, clapping and cheering.

Rassendyll waved to them as they passed and people threw flowers down from the balconies above him. One flower fell on his horse, so he picked it up and stuck it onto his coat.

Suddenly, Rassendyll's happiness at the procession ended when he saw Madame de Mauban out of a balcony above him. He was afraid that she would recognise him and shout "That is not the real King!"



General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The crowd .... loudly as the goalkeeper made a brilliant save.
a) said b) cheered
c) whispered d) uttered

2 The synonym of the word "tiny" is ....
a) minute b) enormous
c) huge d) great

3 The name on the ticket should be .... with the one in the passport.
a) different b) twice
c) identical d) unlike

4 Who cooked this? It's absolutely .... It has a very pleasant taste and smell.
a) dreadful b) terrible
c) awful d) delicious

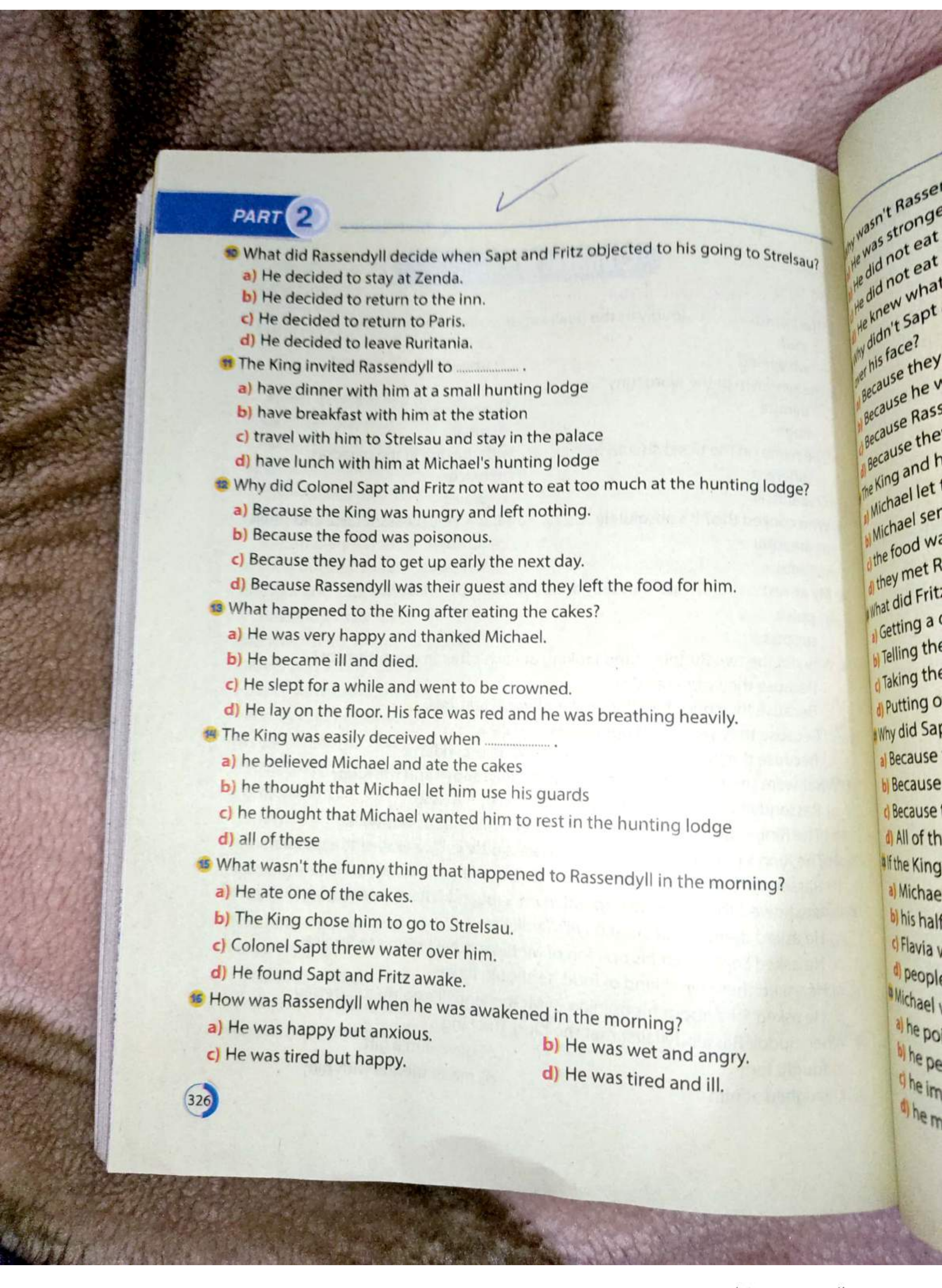
5 My at-rest .... rate is usually about 80 beats per minute.
a) pulse b) death
c) success d) anger

6 Why did the two Rudolfs stand looking at each other in astonishment?
a) Because they were relatives.
b) Because they both had the similar physical features.
c) Because they were from upper-class families.
d) Because they were walking in the forest near Zenda.

7 What were the slight differences between Rassendyll and the King?
a) Rassendyll was three centimetres taller than the King.
b) The King's face was less thin and Rassendyll's mouth was wider.
c) The King's mouth was less wide and Rassendyll's face was a little thinner.
d) Rassendyll's skills were fewer and the King's family was larger.

8 What showed that the King depended on Sapt and Fritz on making his decisions?
a) He asked them about Rassendyll's family.
b) He asked Sapt about his opinion of Mr Rassendyll's going to Strelsau.
c) He asked them what kind of food he should have.
d) He asked Fritz about his opinion of Mr Rassendyll's going to Strelsau.

9 When Rudolf Rassendyll first met the King, the King ....
a) fought him b) gave him a gift
c) laughed at him d) made friends with him



PART 2

10. What did Rassendyll decide when Sapt and Fritz objected to his going to Strelsau?
   a) He decided to stay at Zenda.
   b) He decided to return to the inn.
   c) He decided to return to Paris.
   d) He decided to leave Ruritania.

11. The King invited Rassendyll to ....
   a) have dinner with him at a small hunting lodge
   b) have breakfast with him at the station
   c) travel with him to Strelsau and stay in the palace
   d) have lunch with him at Michael's hunting lodge

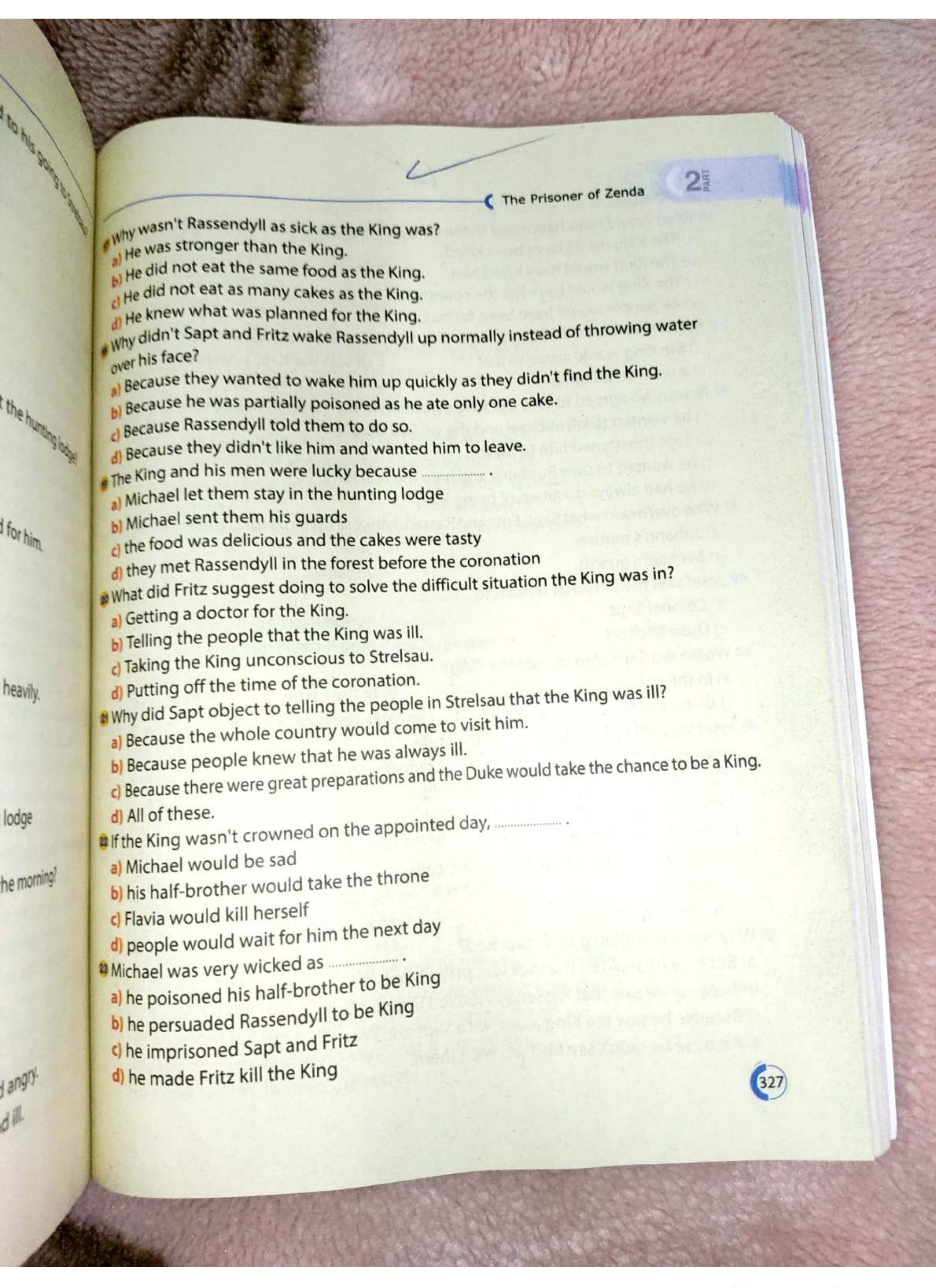
12. Why did Colonel Sapt and Fritz not want to eat too much at the hunting lodge?
   a) Because the King was hungry and left nothing.
   b) Because the food was poisonous.
   c) Because they had to get up early the next day.
   d) Because Rassendyll was their guest and they left the food for him.

13. What happened to the King after eating the cakes?
   a) He was very happy and thanked Michael.
   b) He became ill and died.
   c) He slept for a while and went to be crowned.
   d) He lay on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily.

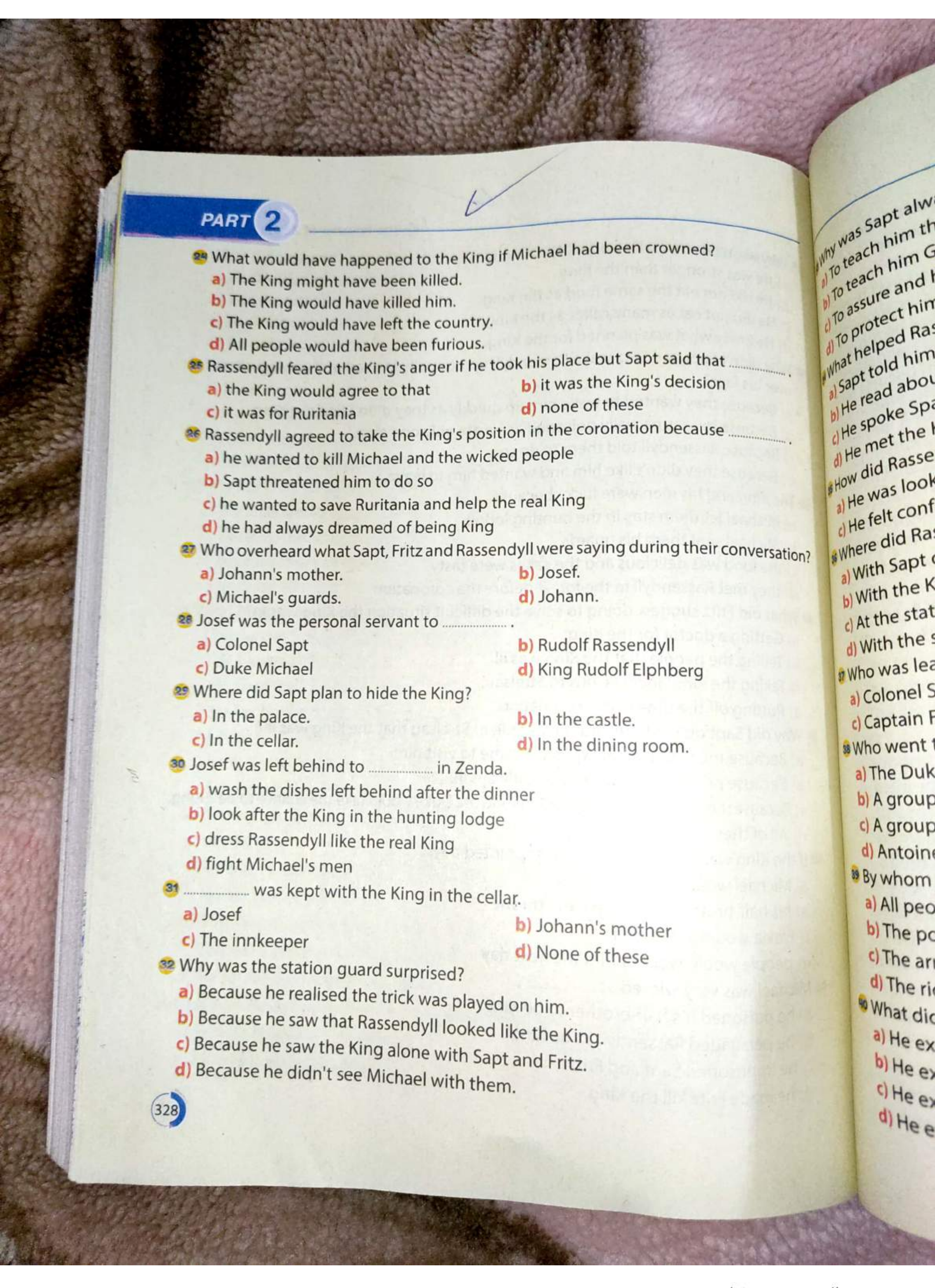
14. The King was easily deceived when ....
   a) he believed Michael and ate the cakes
   b) he thought that Michael let him use his guards
   c) he thought that Michael wanted him to rest in the hunting lodge
   d) all of these

15. What wasn't the funny thing that happened to Rassendyll in the morning?
   a) He ate one of the cakes.
   b) The King chose him to go to Strelsau.
   c) Colonel Sapt threw water over him.
   d) He found Sapt and Fritz awake.

16. How was Rassendyll when he was awakened in the morning?
   a) He was happy but anxious.
   b) He was wet and angry.
   c) He was tired but happy.
   d) He was tired and ill.



17. Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King was?
   a) He was stronger than the King.
   b) He did not eat the same food as the King.
   c) He did not eat as many cakes as the King.
   d) He knew what was planned for the King.
18. Why didn't Sapt and Fritz wake Rassendyll up normally instead of throwing water over his face?
   a) Because they wanted to wake him up quickly as they didn't find the King.
   b) Because he was partially poisoned as he ate only one cake.
   c) Because Rassendyll told them to do so.
   d) Because they didn't like him and wanted him to leave.
19. The King and his men were lucky because ....
   a) Michael let them stay in the hunting lodge
   b) Michael sent them his guards
   c) the food was delicious and the cakes were tasty
   d) they met Rassendyll in the forest before the coronation
20. What did Fritz suggest doing to solve the difficult situation the King was in?
   a) Getting a doctor for the King.
   b) Telling the people that the King was ill.
   c) Taking the King unconscious to Strelsau.
   d) Putting off the time of the coronation.
21. Why did Sapt object to telling the people in Strelsau that the King was ill?
   a) Because the whole country would come to visit him.
   b) Because people knew that he was always ill.
   c) Because there were great preparations and the Duke would take the chance to be a King.
   d) All of these.
22. If the King wasn't crowned on the appointed day, ...
   a) Michael would be sad
   b) his half-brother would take the throne
   c) Flavia would kill herself
   d) people would wait for him the next day
23. Michael was very wicked as ....
   a) he poisoned his half-brother to be King
   b) he persuaded Rassendyll to be King
   c) he imprisoned Sapt and Fritz
   d) he made Fritz kill the King



PART 2

24 What would have happened to the King if Michael had been crowned?

a) The King might have been killed.
b) The King would have killed him.
c) The King would have left the country.
d) All people would have been furious.

25 Rassendyll feared the King's anger if he took his place but Sapt said that ....

a) the King would agree to that
b) it was the King's decision
c) it was for Ruritania
d) none of these

26 Rassendyll agreed to take the King's position in the coronation because ....

a) he wanted to kill Michael and the wicked people
b) Sapt threatened him to do so
c) he wanted to save Ruritania and help the real King
d) he had always dreamed of being King

27 Who overheard what Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll were saying during their conversation?

a) Johann's mother.
b) Josef.
c) Michael's guards.
d) Johann.

28 Josef was the personal servant to ....

a) Colonel Sapt
b) Rudolf Rassendyll
c) Duke Michael
d) King Rudolf Elphberg

29 Where did Sapt plan to hide the King?

a) In the palace.
b) In the castle.
c) In the cellar.
d) In the dining room.

30 Josef was left behind to .... in Zenda.

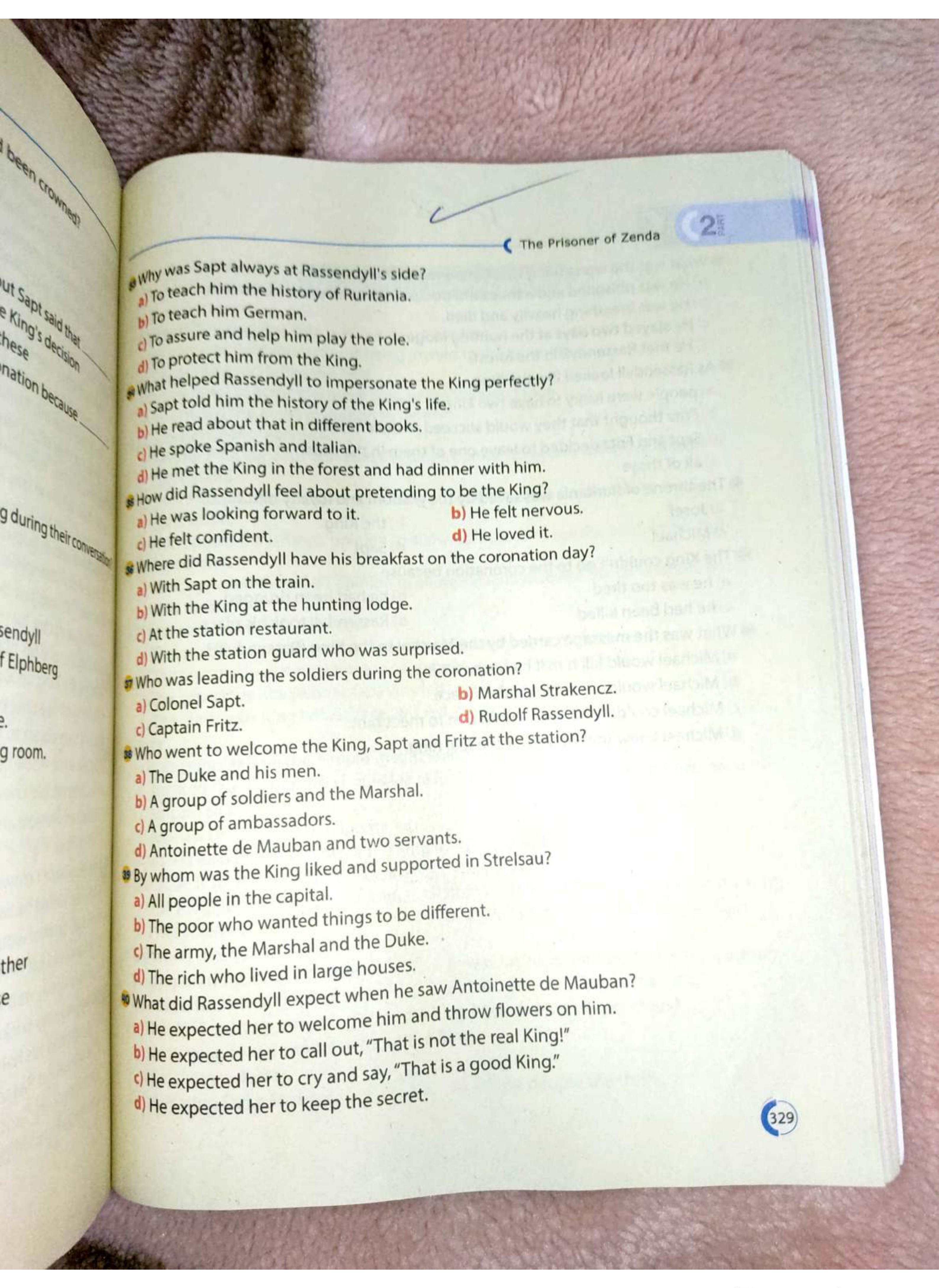
a) wash the dishes left behind after the dinner
b) look after the King in the hunting lodge
c) dress Rassendyll like the real King
d) fight Michael's men

31 .... was kept with the King in the cellar.

a) Josef
b) Johann's mother
c) The innkeeper
d) None of these

32 Why was the station guard surprised?

a) Because he realised the trick was played on him.
b) Because he saw that Rassendyll looked like the King.
c) Because he saw the King alone with Sapt and Fritz.
d) Because he didn't see Michael with them.



33 Why was Sapt always at Rassendyll's side?
a) To teach him the history of Ruritania.
b) To teach him German.
c) To assure and help him play the role.
d) To protect him from the King.

34 What helped Rassendyll to impersonate the King perfectly?
a) Sapt told him the history of the King's life.
b) He read about that in different books.
c) He spoke Spanish and Italian.
d) He met the King in the forest and had dinner with him.

35 How did Rassendyll feel about pretending to be the King?
a) He was looking forward to it.
b) He felt nervous.
c) He felt confident.
d) He loved it.

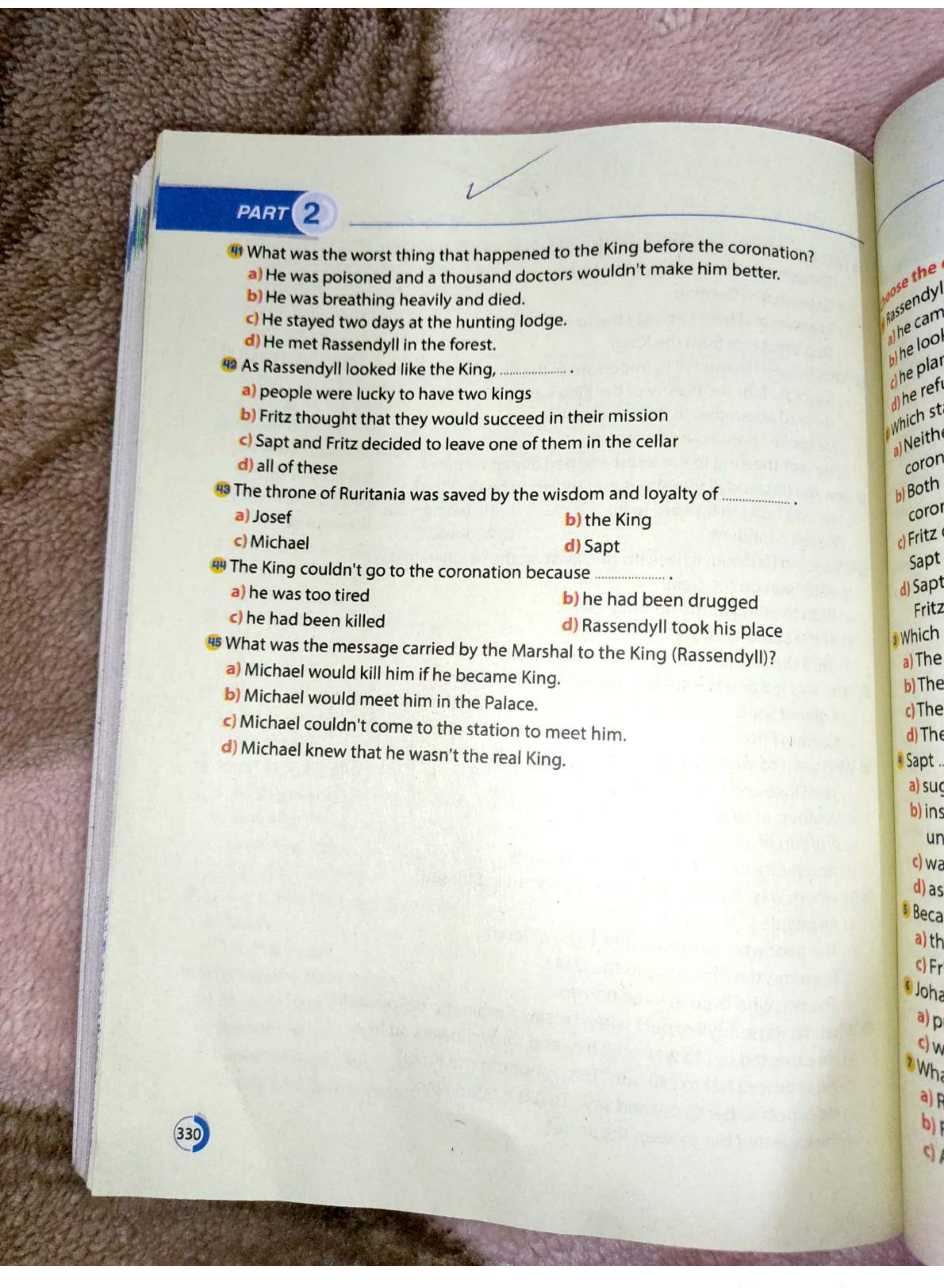
36 Where did Rassendyll have his breakfast on the coronation day?
a) With Sapt on the train.
b) With the King at the hunting lodge.
c) At the station restaurant.
d) With the station guard who was surprised.

37 Who was leading the soldiers during the coronation?
a) Colonel Sapt.
b) Marshal Strakencz.
c) Captain Fritz.
d) Rudolf Rassendyll.

38 Who went to welcome the King, Sapt and Fritz at the station?
a) The Duke and his men.
b) A group of soldiers and the Marshal.
c) A group of ambassadors.
d) Antoinette de Mauban and two servants.

39 By whom was the King liked and supported in Strelsau?
a) All people in the capital.
b) The poor who wanted things to be different.
c) The army, the Marshal and the Duke.
d) The rich who lived in large houses.

40 What did Rassendyll expect when he saw Antoinette de Mauban?
a) He expected her to welcome him and throw flowers on him.
b) He expected her to call out, "That is not the real King!"
c) He expected her to cry and say, "That is a good King."
d) He expected her to keep the secret.



PART 2

41 What was the worst thing that happened to the King before the coronation?
a) He was poisoned and a thousand doctors wouldn't make him better.
b) He was breathing heavily and died.
c) He stayed two days at the hunting lodge.
d) He met Rassendyll in the forest.

42 As Rassendyll looked like the King, ...
a) people were lucky to have two kings
b) Fritz thought that they would succeed in their mission
c) Sapt and Fritz decided to leave one of them in the cellar
d) all of these

43 The throne of Ruritania was saved by the wisdom and loyalty of ....
a) Josef
b) the King
c) Michael
d) Sapt

44 The King couldn't go to the coronation because ....
a) he was too tired
b) he had been drugged
c) he had been killed
d) Rassendyll took his place

45 What was the message carried by the Marshal to the King (Rassendyll)?
a) Michael would kill him if he became King.
b) Michael would meet him in the Palace.
c) Michael couldn't come to the station to meet him.
d) Michael knew that he wasn't the real King.

Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rassendyll hoped the King was not angry because ....
   a) he came to Ruritania without being invited to the coronation
   b) he looked exactly like the King
   c) he planned to accompany the King to the hunting lodge
   d) he refused the King's invitation to dinner
2. Which statement is correct?
   a) Neither Fritz nor Sapt opposed the King's opinion to allow Rassendyll to see the coronation.
   b) Both Fritz and Sapt opposed the King's opinion to allow Rassendyll to see the coronation.
   c) Fritz opposed the King's opinion to allow Rassendyll to see the coronation, but Sapt didn't.
   d) Sapt opposed the King's opinion to allow Rassendyll to see the coronation, but Fritz didn't.
3. Which statement is not correct?
   a) The unconscious King whose face was red was lying in his bed.
   b) The unconscious King whose face was red was lying on the floor.
   c) The conscious King whose face was red was lying in his bed.
   d) The conscious King whose face was red was lying on the floor.
4. Sapt ....
   a) suggested telling the people that Rassendyll was ill
   b) insisted that Rassendyll should leave for England even after the King had become unconscious
   c) wanted Duke Michael to be the King
   d) asked Rassendyll to replace the King in the coronation
5. Because Johann's mother overheard Sapt's plan, ...
   a) the King had to change the route
   b) she was locked in the cellar with the King
   c) Fritz killed her
   d) she was kidnapped by Fritz and Sapt
6. Johann's mother ....
   a) prepared the King's clothes
   b) was an important person in the country
   c) was a servant of the Duke
   d) brought the cakes to the King
7. What did Sapt suggest doing after the King had become unconscious?
   a) Returning to the capital without the King.
   b) Fetching a doctor.
   c) Arresting Duke Michael.
   d) Telling people the truth.

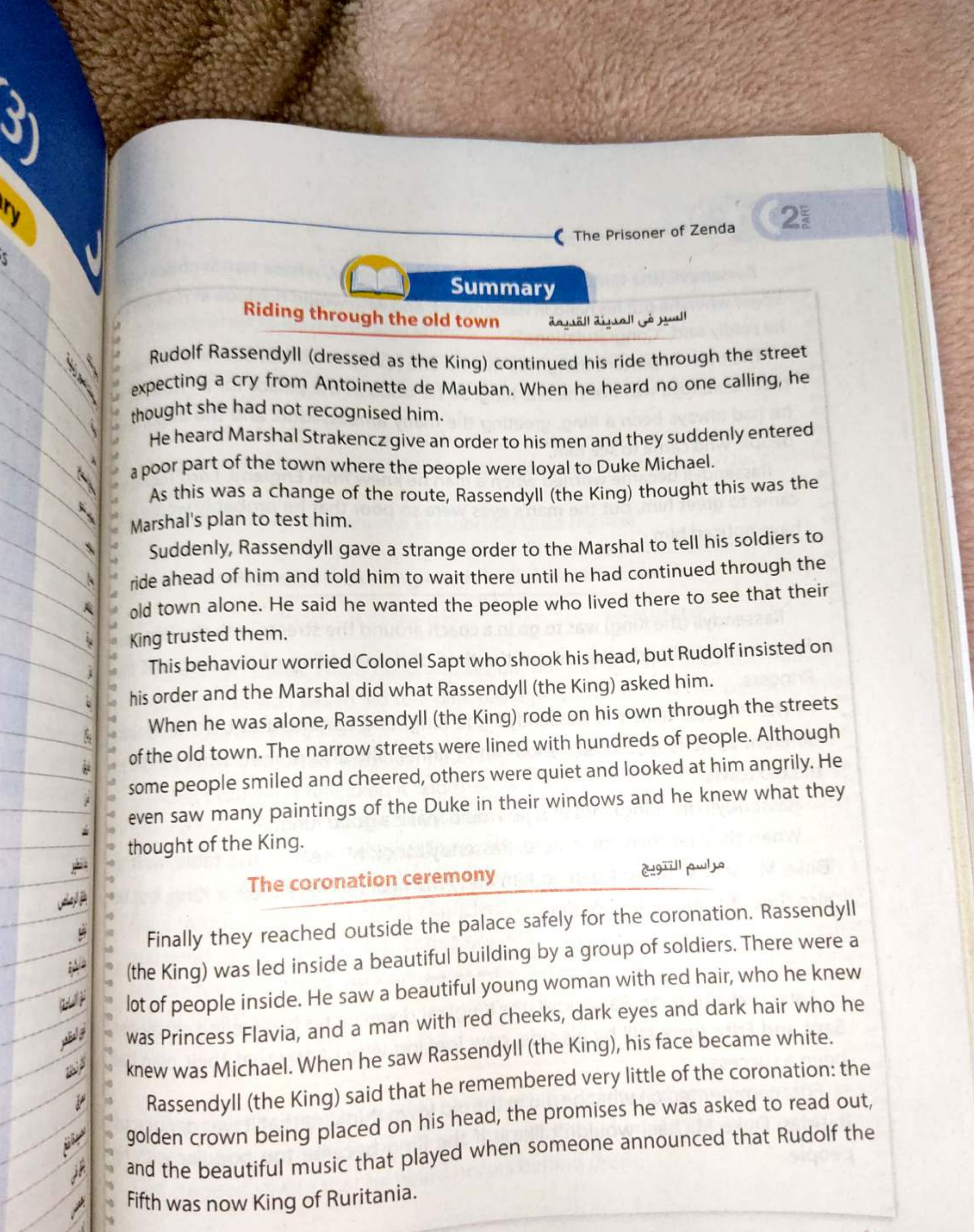



Chapter (3)

Important Vocabulary

ahead	للأمام	nevertheless	ومع ذلك
announce	يعلن/يذيع	paintings	رسومات/صور زيتية
anxious	قلق/مُشتاق	panel	لوحة
anyway	على أية حال	passageway	ممر
appreciate	يقدر	permit	يسمح/سماح
briefly	باختصار	point at	يصوب نحو
candle	شمعة	popular	محبوب
celebrate	يحتفل	praise	يمدح
cheek	خد/وجنة	pretend	يتظاهر
close to	قريب من	princess	أميرة
coach	عربة	puzzle	لغز
coin	عملة معدنية	relief	راحة
comment	يعلق	relieve	يرتاح
compare	يقارن	route	طريق
despite	بالرغم من	safe	آمن
details	تفاصيل	seat	مقعد
evil	شرير	serious	جاد/خطير
except	فيما عدا	shoot	يطلق الرصاص
fasten	يربط	signature	توقيع
fight	يحارب/يشتبك	skin	جلد/بشرة
fork	مفترق طرق	strike	تدق (الساعة)
further	أكثر/مزيد	strong-looking	قوى المظهر
gate	بوابة	thinner	أكثر نحافة
greet	يحيى	torn	ممزق
handkerchief	منديل	trap	مصيدة/فخ
kidnap	يخطف	trust	يثق في
lift	يرفع	whisper	يهمس
loyal	مخلص/وفي	whoever	أيًا كان





Summary

Riding through the old town السير فى المدينة القديمة

Rudolf Rassendyll (dressed as the King) continued his ride through the street expecting a cry from Antoinette de Mauban. When he heard no one calling, he thought she had not recognised him.

He heard Marshal Strakencz give an order to his men and they suddenly entered a poor part of the town where the people were loyal to Duke Michael.

As this was a change of the route, Rassendyll (the King) thought this was the Marshal's plan to test him.

Suddenly, Rassendyll gave a strange order to the Marshal to tell his soldiers to ride ahead of him and told him to wait there until he had continued through the old town alone. He said he wanted the people who lived there to see that their King trusted them.

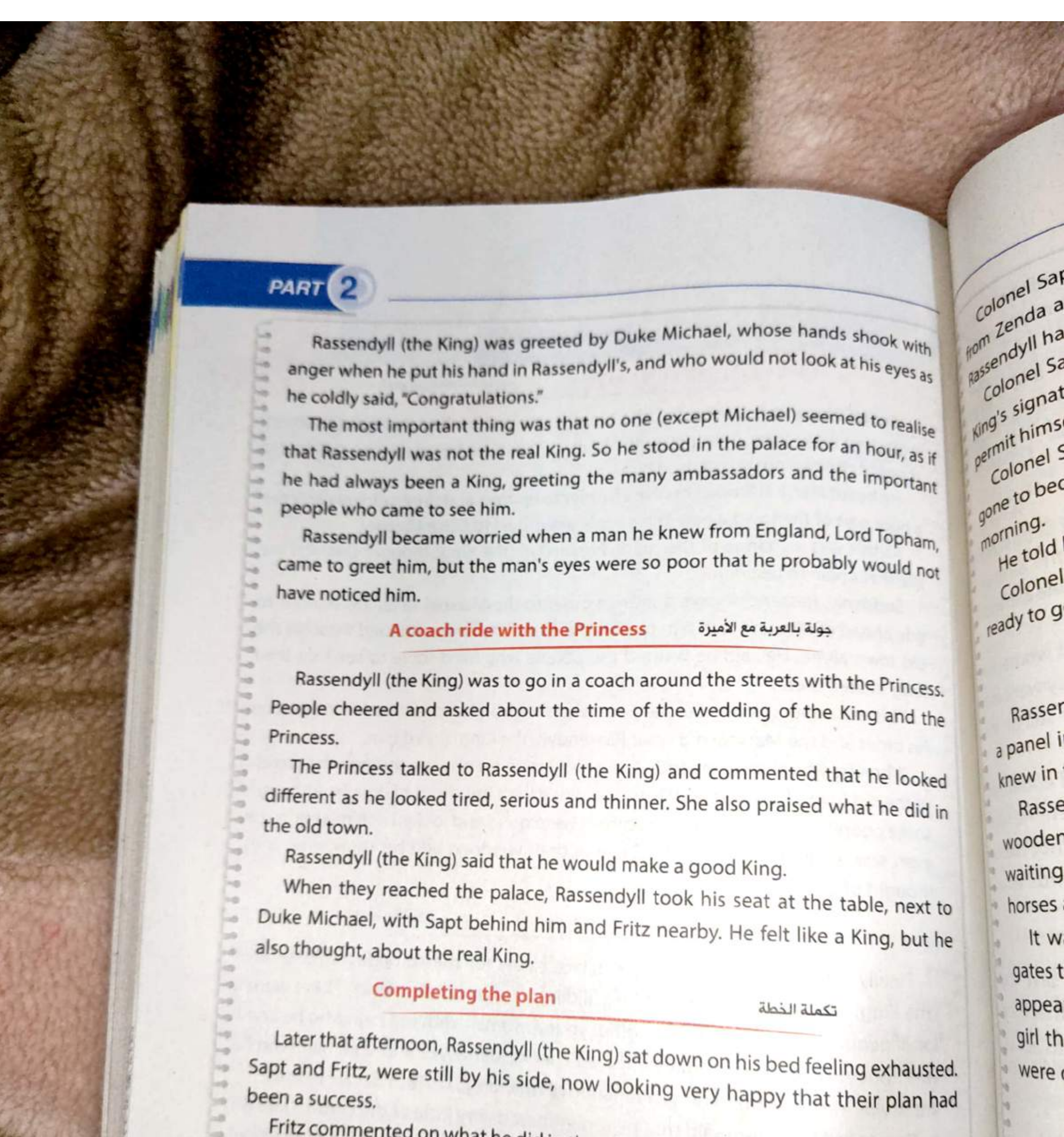
This behaviour worried Colonel Sapt who shook his head, but Rudolf insisted on his order and the Marshal did what Rassendyll (the King) asked him.

When he was alone, Rassendyll (the King) rode on his own through the streets of the old town. The narrow streets were lined with hundreds of people. Although some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at him angrily. He even saw many paintings of the Duke in their windows and he knew what they thought of the King.

The coronation ceremony مراسم التتويج

Finally they reached outside the palace safely for the coronation. Rassendyll (the King) was led inside a beautiful building by a group of soldiers. There were a lot of people inside. He saw a beautiful young woman with red hair, who he knew was Princess Flavia, and a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair who he knew was Michael. When he saw Rassendyll (the King), his face became white.

Rassendyll (the King) said that he remembered very little of the coronation: the golden crown being placed on his head, the promises he was asked to read out, and the beautiful music that played when someone announced that Rudolf the Fifth was now King of Ruritania.



Rassendyll (the King) was greeted by Duke Michael, whose hands shook with anger when he put his hand in Rassendyll's, and who would not look at his eyes as he coldly said, "Congratulations."

The most important thing was that no one (except Michael) seemed to realise that Rassendyll was not the real King. So he stood in the palace for an hour, as if he had always been a King, greeting the many ambassadors and the important people who came to see him.

Rassendyll became worried when a man he knew from England, Lord Topham, came to greet him, but the man's eyes were so poor that he probably would not have noticed him.

A coach ride with the Princess جولة بالعربة مع الأميرة

Rassendyll (the King) was to go in a coach around the streets with the Princess. People cheered and asked about the time of the wedding of the King and the Princess.

The Princess talked to Rassendyll (the King) and commented that he looked different as he looked tired, serious and thinner. She also praised what he did in the old town.

Rassendyll (the King) said that he would make a good King.

When they reached the palace, Rassendyll took his seat at the table, next to Duke Michael, with Sapt behind him and Fritz nearby. He felt like a King, but he also thought, about the real King.

Completing the plan تكملة الخطة

Later that afternoon, Rassendyll (the King) sat down on his bed feeling exhausted. Sapt and Fritz, were still by his side, now looking very happy that their plan had been a success.

Fritz commented on what he did in the old town thinking that it was dangerous. Besides, Duke Michael wouldn't like it if the King became too popular with his people.

Colonel Sapt looked worried when he told Rassendyll that Michael had news from Zenda and he was almost certainly planning something. He also said that Rassendyll had to leave Ruritania at once.

Colonel Sapt put on a table a form for Rassendyll to sign and a paper with the King's signature for him to copy. Rassendyll disagreed so Sapt easily signed the permit himself.

Colonel Sapt told Fritz to guard the King's bedroom saying that the King had gone to bed and that he was not to be woken by anybody until nine o'clock in the morning.

He told him not to let anyone in especially Duke Michael.

Colonel Sapt gave Rudolf a big coat and a hat to wear and asked him to be ready to go to Zenda for the King.

Getting out of the city الخروج من المدينة

Rassendyll shook Fritz's hand and set off, not through the door but through a panel in the wall which led to a dark passage which was a secret passage Sapt knew in the old King's time.

Rassendyll followed Sapt down the long, dark passage which ended in a heavy wooden door. Sapt unlocked it and they went out into a quiet street. A man was waiting for them with two horses. Without saying anything, they climbed onto the horses and rode away. Sapt gave Rassendyll a gun.

It was half past six and still light when they reached one of the tall wooden gates through the city walls. Sapt knocked on the gate, and a girl of about fourteen appeared saying that her father had gone to see the King. Colonel Sapt gave the girl the form signed by the King and a coin. She gave them the key. Soon, they were out of the city.

On the way to Zenda فى الطريق إلى زندا

They rode their horses quickly on the way to Zenda. They stopped at an inn so that their horses could have a drink, then continued on. At nearly half past nine, Sapt stopped saying that he heard horses behind them.

They continued their way until they reached the tall, dark trees of the forest of Zenda and stopped at a fork in the road. Colonel Sapt asked Rassendyll to get off and wait quietly.

On the road through the forest, Rassendyll could see the Duke and a strong looking man who Sapt later told Rudolf was Max Holf, brother to Johann. They talked about which way to take, then went off to the Castle of Zenda.

The King is missing الملك مفقود

Rassendyll and Colonel Sapt took the road to the hunting lodge at Zenda. It did not take them long to reach the hunting lodge where they had left the King and quickly jumped off their horses. The lodge was dark and quiet and no one came out to meet them.

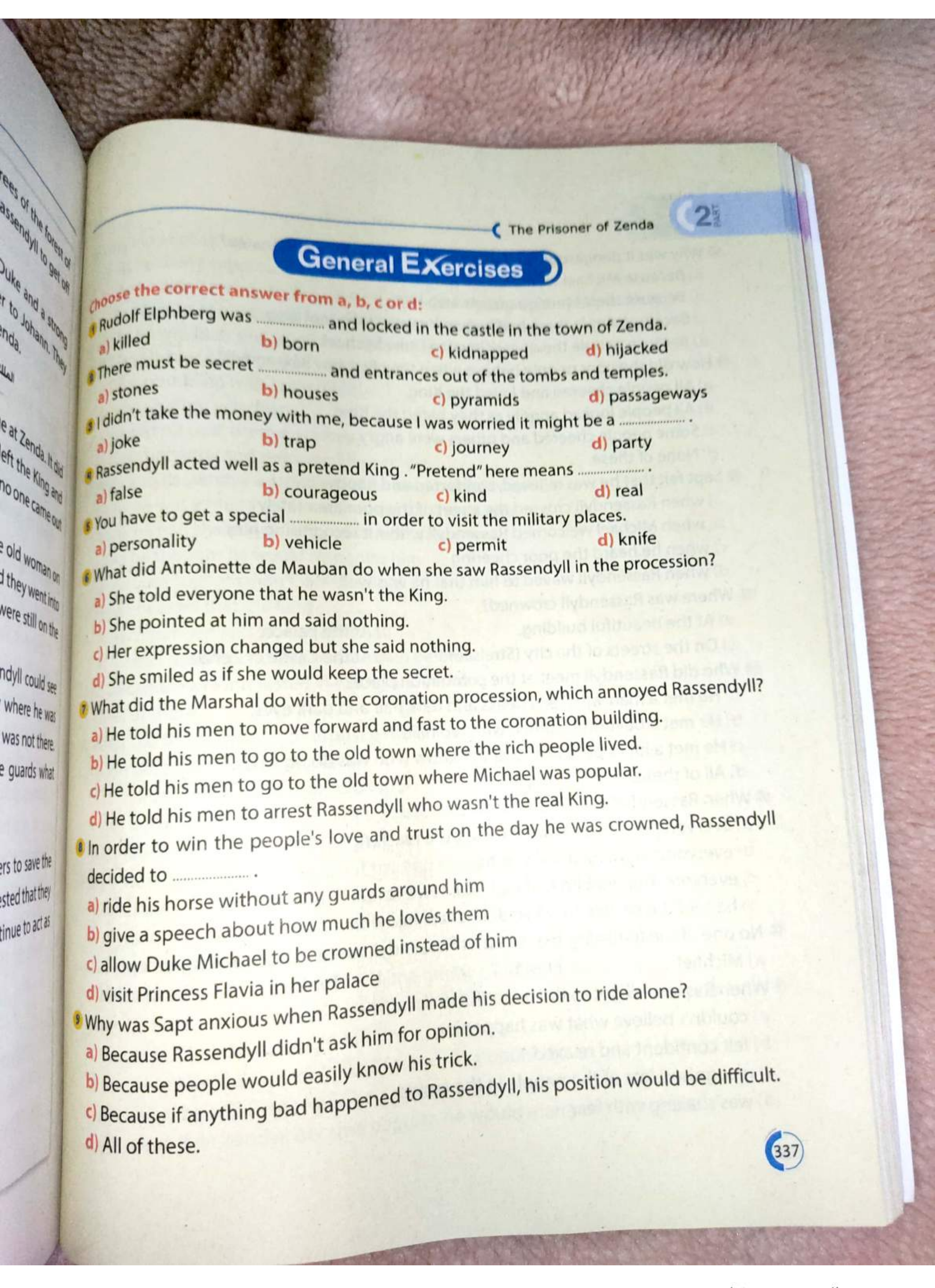
They saw the dirty handkerchiefs, which Sapt used to tie up the old woman on the ground. The front door to the hunting lodge was not locked and they went into the room where they had eaten the night before. Plates and cups were still on the table.

They went to the cellar. The door to the cellar was open. Rassendyll could see that Sapt was looking very worried. Therefore, he told him to stay where he was and went inside the room. He found the body of Josef and the King was not there.

Colonel Sapt realised what happened. The old woman told the guards what happened.

The guards killed Josef and kidnapped the King.

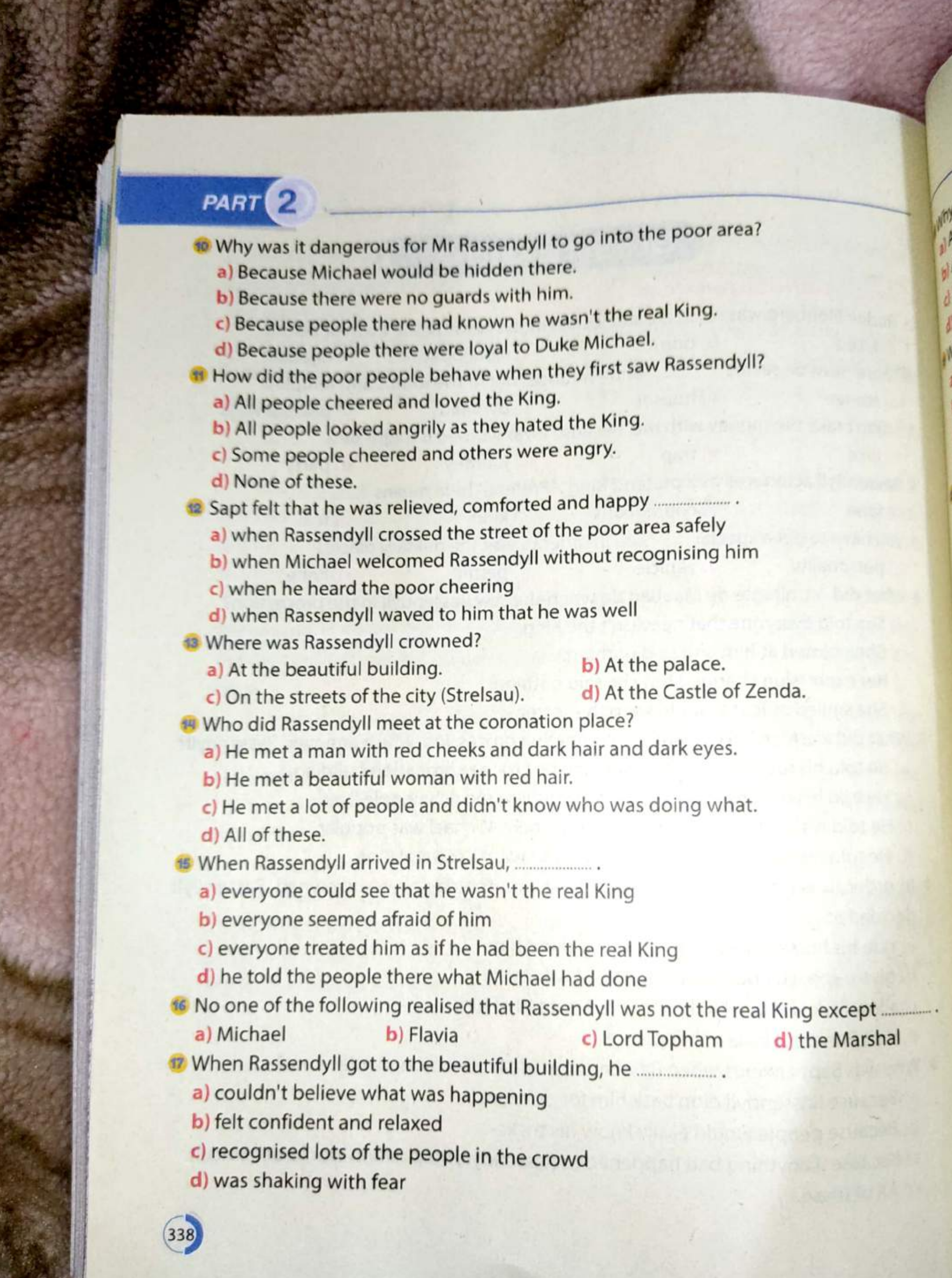
Rassendyll suggested they go back to Strelsau and collect soldiers to save the King. Colonel Sapt thought that was dangerous and instead he suggested that they go back to Strelsau and continue their game. Rassendyll would continue to act as the King until they find a way to save the King.



General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rudolf Elphberg was .... and locked in the castle in the town of Zenda.
   a) killed b) born c) kidnapped d) hijacked
2. There must be secret .... and entrances out of the tombs and temples.
   a) stones b) houses c) pyramids d) passageways
3. I didn't take the money with me, because I was worried it might be a ....
   a) joke b) trap c) journey d) party
4. Rassendyll acted well as a pretend King . "Pretend" here means ....
   a) false b) courageous c) kind d) real
5. You have to get a special .... in order to visit the military places.
   a) personality b) vehicle c) permit d) knife
6. What did Antoinette de Mauban do when she saw Rassendyll in the procession?
   a) She told everyone that he wasn't the King.
   b) She pointed at him and said nothing.
   c) Her expression changed but she said nothing.
   d) She smiled as if she would keep the secret.
7. What did the Marshal do with the coronation procession, which annoyed Rassendyll?
   a) He told his men to move forward and fast to the coronation building.
   b) He told his men to go to the old town where the rich people lived.
   c) He told his men to go to the old town where Michael was popular.
   d) He told his men to arrest Rassendyll who wasn't the real King.
8. In order to win the people's love and trust on the day he was crowned, Rassendyll decided to ....
   a) ride his horse without any guards around him
   b) give a speech about how much he loves them
   c) allow Duke Michael to be crowned instead of him
   d) visit Princess Flavia in her palace
9. Why was Sapt anxious when Rassendyll made his decision to ride alone?
   a) Because Rassendyll didn't ask him for opinion.
   b) Because people would easily know his trick.
   c) Because if anything bad happened to Rassendyll, his position would be difficult.
   d) All of these.



PART 2

10. Why was it dangerous for Mr Rassendyll to go into the poor area?
   a) Because Michael would be hidden there.
   b) Because there were no guards with him.
   c) Because people there had known he wasn't the real King.
   d) Because people there were loyal to Duke Michael.

11. How did the poor people behave when they first saw Rassendyll?
   a) All people cheered and loved the King.
   b) All people looked angrily as they hated the King.
   c) Some people cheered and others were angry.
   d) None of these.

12. Sapt felt that he was relieved, comforted and happy ....
   a) when Rassendyll crossed the street of the poor area safely
   b) when Michael welcomed Rassendyll without recognising him
   c) when he heard the poor cheering
   d) when Rassendyll waved to him that he was well

13. Where was Rassendyll crowned?
   a) At the beautiful building.
   b) At the palace.
   c) On the streets of the city (Strelsau).
   d) At the Castle of Zenda.

14. Who did Rassendyll meet at the coronation place?
   a) He met a man with red cheeks and dark hair and dark eyes.
   b) He met a beautiful woman with red hair.
   c) He met a lot of people and didn't know who was doing what.
   d) All of these.

15. When Rassendyll arrived in Strelsau, ...
   a) everyone could see that he wasn't the real King
   b) everyone seemed afraid of him
   c) everyone treated him as if he had been the real King
   d) he told the people there what Michael had done

16. No one of the following realised that Rassendyll was not the real King except ....
   a) Michael
   b) Flavia
   c) Lord Topham
   d) the Marshal

17. When Rassendyll got to the beautiful building, he ....
   a) couldn't believe what was happening
   b) felt confident and relaxed
   c) recognised lots of the people in the crowd
   d) was shaking with fear

18 Why did Michael's face turn white when he saw the King?
a) As he didn't expect a King to come until that moment.
b) As he didn't recognise Rassendyll's character and thought of him as King.
c) As his plan of poisoning his brother wasn't a success.
d) As he was busy preparing for the coronation all day.

19 When Michael came to greet the King, he ....
a) was trembling with excitement
b) was shaking with fear
c) kissed his dear brother warmly
d) was unhappy and welcomed him coldly

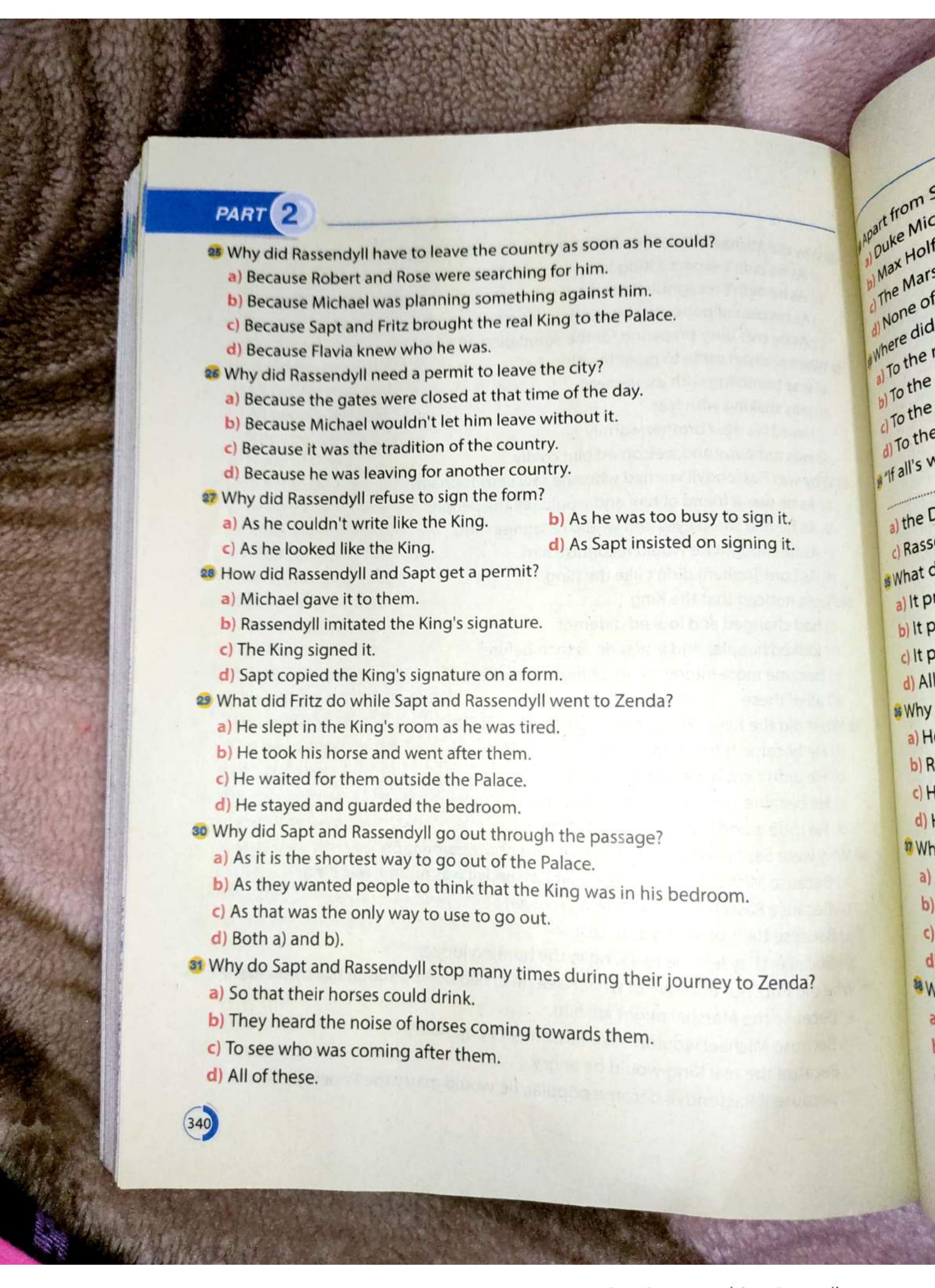
20 Why was Rassendyll worried when he saw Lord Topham?
a) As he was a friend of him and would tell the people.
b) As he had sharp eyes and would recognise him.
c) As he thought he would recognise him.
d) As Lord Topham didn't like the King.

21 Flavia noticed that the King ....
a) had changed and looked different
b) looked happier and less serious than before
c) became more interested in eating and hunting
d) all of these

22 What did the King do and surprised the Princess?
a) He became thinner and tired.
b) He didn't know her at the coronation.
c) He became serious and shouted at her.
d) He rode alone through the old town.

23 Why were Sapt and Fritz happy at the end of the coronation?
a) Because Michael didn't realise that Rassendyll was not the real King.
b) Because Rassendyll was the King forever.
c) Because their plan was a success.
d) Because they left the real King in the hunting lodge.

24 Why did Fritz not approve of what Rassendyll had done through the coronation?
a) Because the Marshal might kill him.
b) Because Michael wouldn't like Rassendyll's popularity.
c) Because the real King would be angry.
d) Because if Rassendyll became popular, he would marry the Princess.



25 Why did Rassendyll have to leave the country as soon as he could?

a) Because Robert and Rose were searching for him.

b) Because Michael was planning something against him.

c) Because Sapt and Fritz brought the real King to the Palace.

d) Because Flavia knew who he was.

26 Why did Rassendyll need a permit to leave the city?

a) Because the gates were closed at that time of the day.

b) Because Michael wouldn't let him leave without it.

c) Because it was the tradition of the country.

d) Because he was leaving for another country.

27 Why did Rassendyll refuse to sign the form?

a) As he couldn't write like the King.

b) As he was too busy to sign it.

c) As he looked like the King.

d) As Sapt insisted on signing it.

28 How did Rassendyll and Sapt get a permit?

a) Michael gave it to them.

b) Rassendyll imitated the King's signature.

c) The King signed it.

d) Sapt copied the King's signature on a form.

29 What did Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll went to Zenda?

a) He slept in the King's room as he was tired.

b) He took his horse and went after them.

c) He waited for them outside the Palace.

d) He stayed and guarded the bedroom.

30 Why did Sapt and Rassendyll go out through the passage?

a) As it is the shortest way to go out of the Palace.

b) As they wanted people to think that the King was in his bedroom.

c) As that was the only way to use to go out.

d) Both a) and b).

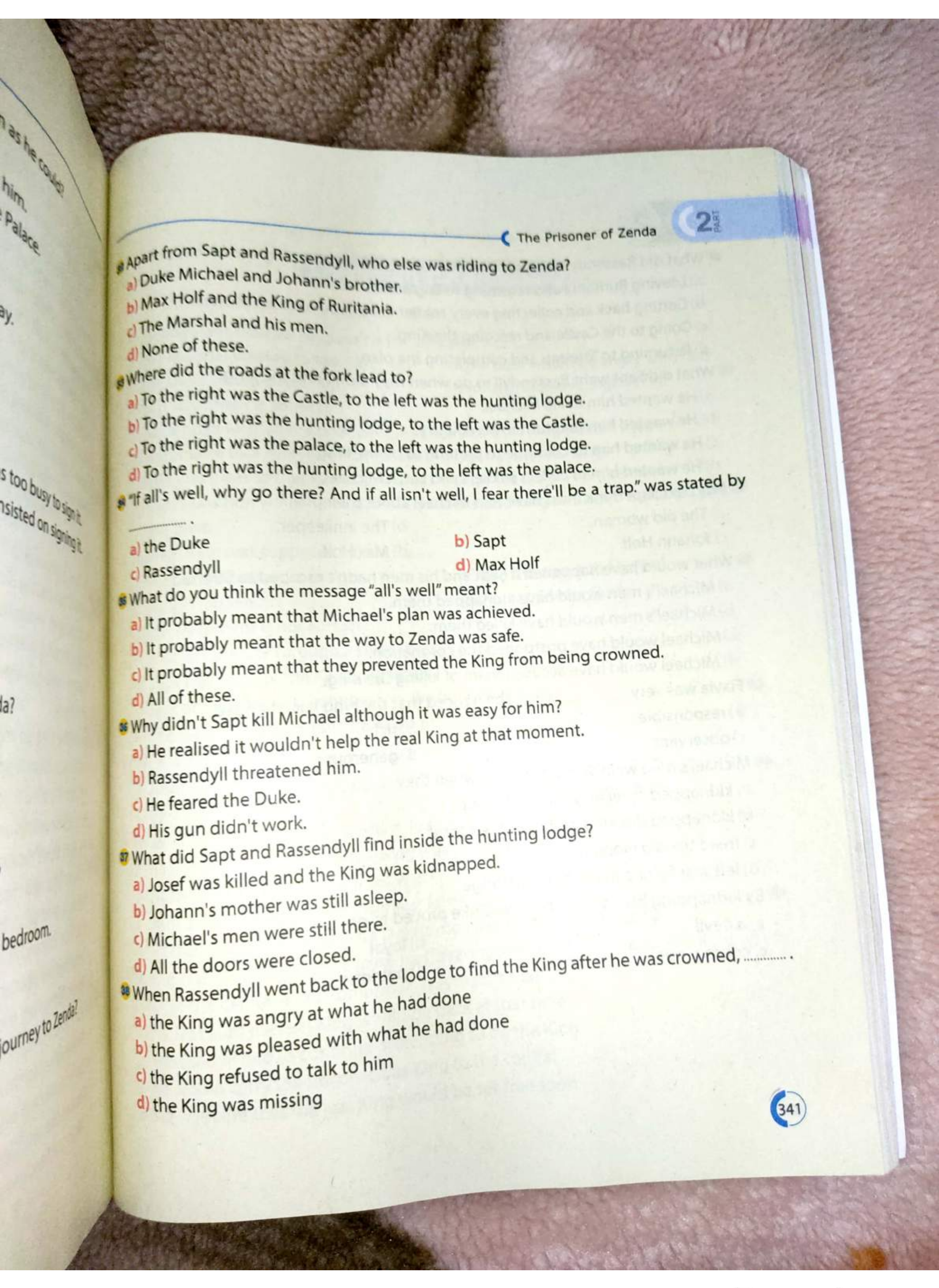
31 Why do Sapt and Rassendyll stop many times during their journey to Zenda?

a) So that their horses could drink.

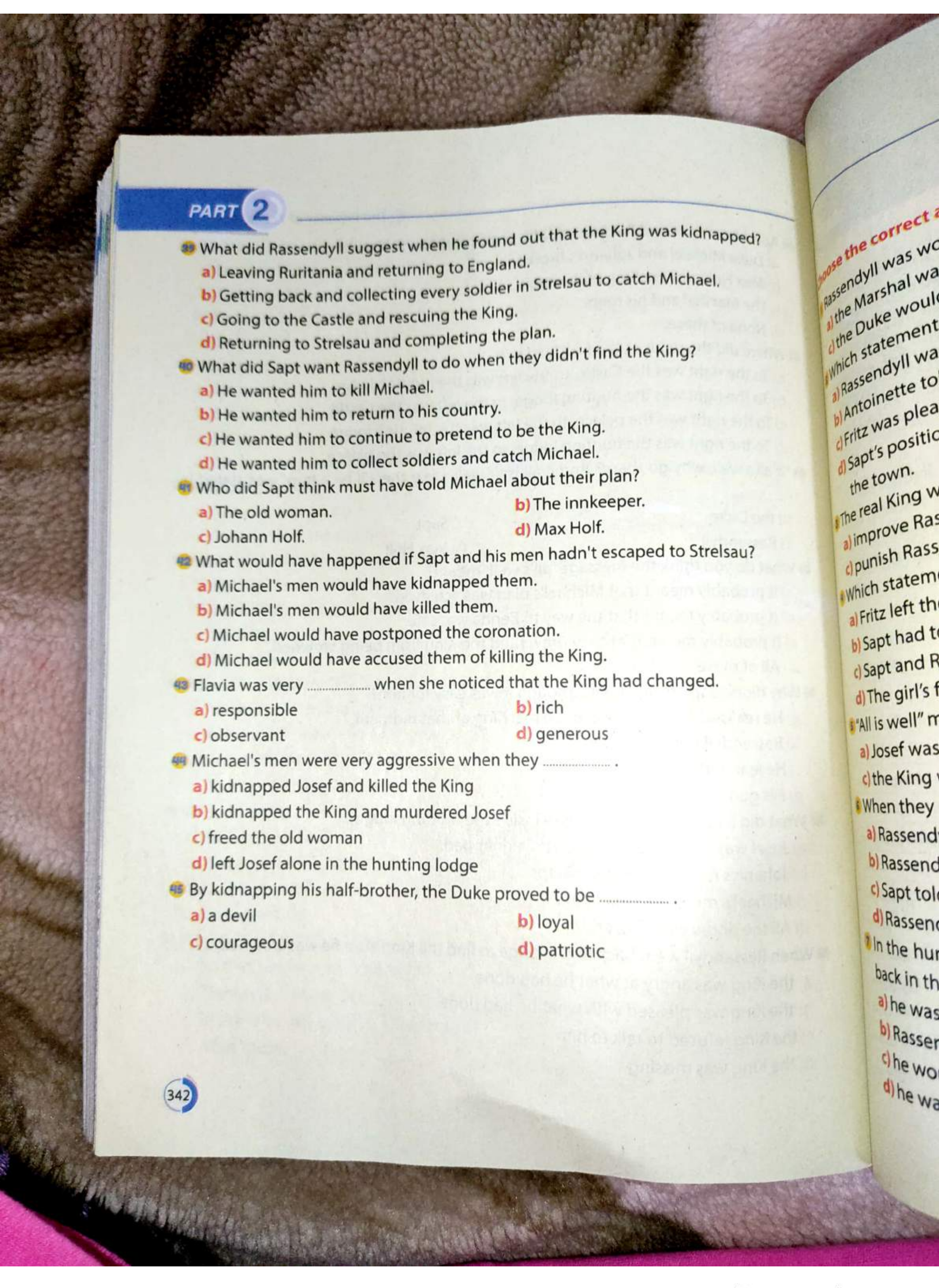
b) They heard the noise of horses coming towards them.

c) To see who was coming after them.

d) All of these.



32. Apart from Sapt and Rassendyll, who else was riding to Zenda?
   a) Duke Michael and Johann's brother.
   b) Max Holf and the King of Ruritania.
   c) The Marshal and his men.
   d) None of these.
33. Where did the roads at the fork lead to?
   a) To the right was the Castle, to the left was the hunting lodge.
   b) To the right was the hunting lodge, to the left was the Castle.
   c) To the right was the palace, to the left was the hunting lodge.
   d) To the right was the hunting lodge, to the left was the palace.
34. "If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap." was stated by ....
   a) the Duke
   b) Sapt
   c) Rassendyll
   d) Max Holf
35. What do you think the message "all's well" meant?
   a) It probably meant that Michael's plan was achieved.
   b) It probably meant that the way to Zenda was safe.
   c) It probably meant that they prevented the King from being crowned.
   d) All of these.
36. Why didn't Sapt kill Michael although it was easy for him?
   a) He realised it wouldn't help the real King at that moment.
   b) Rassendyll threatened him.
   c) He feared the Duke.
   d) His gun didn't work.
37. What did Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the hunting lodge?
   a) Josef was killed and the King was kidnapped.
   b) Johann's mother was still asleep.
   c) Michael's men were still there.
   d) All the doors were closed.
38. When Rassendyll went back to the lodge to find the King after he was crowned, ...
   a) the King was angry at what he had done
   b) the King was pleased with what he had done
   c) the King refused to talk to him
   d) the King was missing



PART 2

39 What did Rassendyll suggest when he found out that the King was kidnapped?

a) Leaving Ruritania and returning to England.
b) Getting back and collecting every soldier in Strelsau to catch Michael.
c) Going to the Castle and rescuing the King.
d) Returning to Strelsau and completing the plan.

40 What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do when they didn't find the King?

a) He wanted him to kill Michael.
b) He wanted him to return to his country.
c) He wanted him to continue to pretend to be the King.
d) He wanted him to collect soldiers and catch Michael.

41 Who did Sapt think must have told Michael about their plan?

a) The old woman.
b) The innkeeper.
c) Johann Holf.
d) Max Holf.

42 What would have happened if Sapt and his men hadn't escaped to Strelsau?

a) Michael's men would have kidnapped them.
b) Michael's men would have killed them.
c) Michael would have postponed the coronation.
d) Michael would have accused them of killing the King.

43 Flavia was very .... when she noticed that the King had changed.

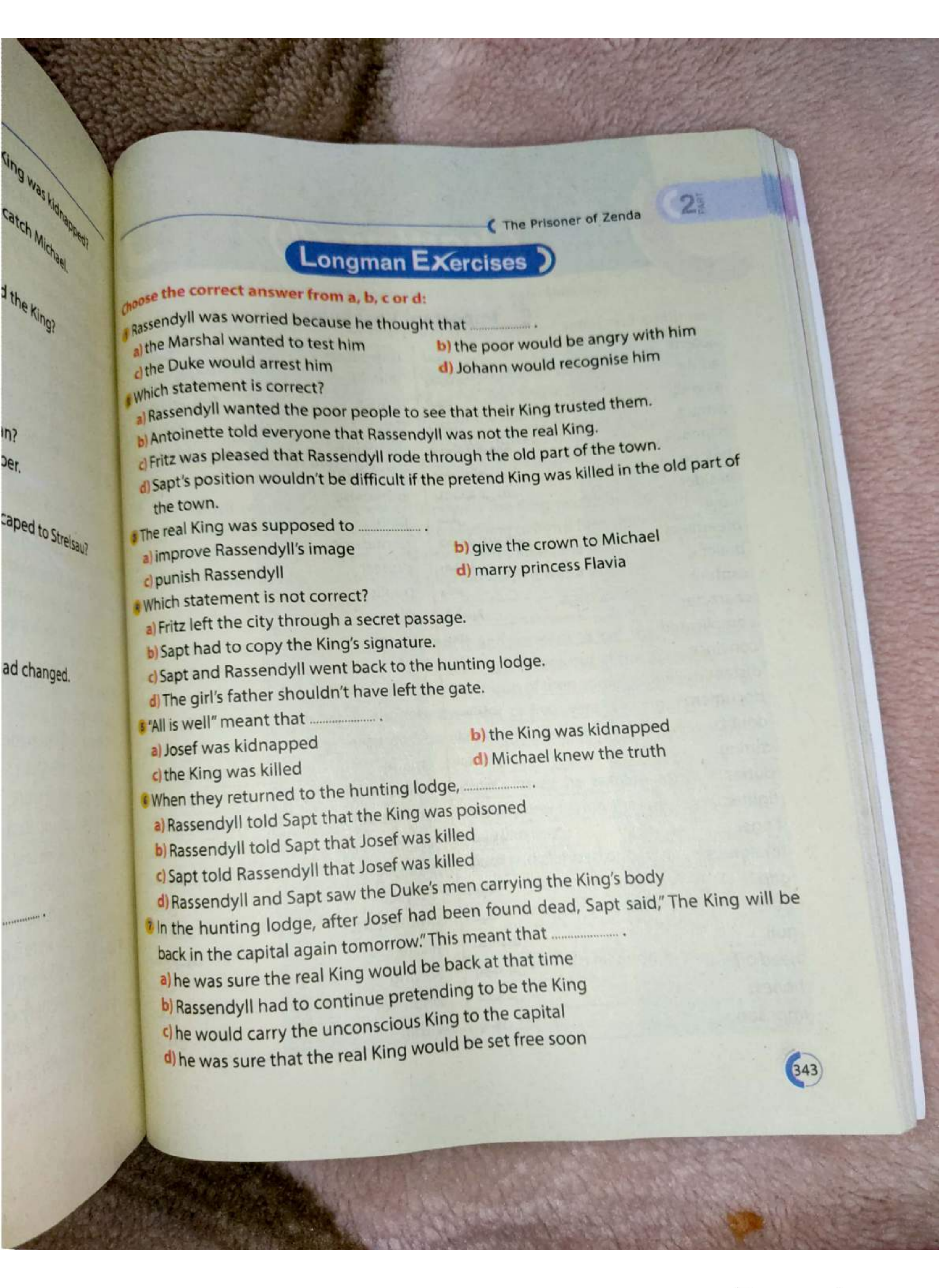
a) responsible
b) rich
c) observant
d) generous

44 Michael's men were very aggressive when they ....

a) kidnapped Josef and killed the King
b) kidnapped the King and murdered Josef
c) freed the old woman
d) left Josef alone in the hunting lodge

45 By kidnapping his half-brother, the Duke proved to be ....

a) a devil
b) loyal
c) courageous
d) patriotic



Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

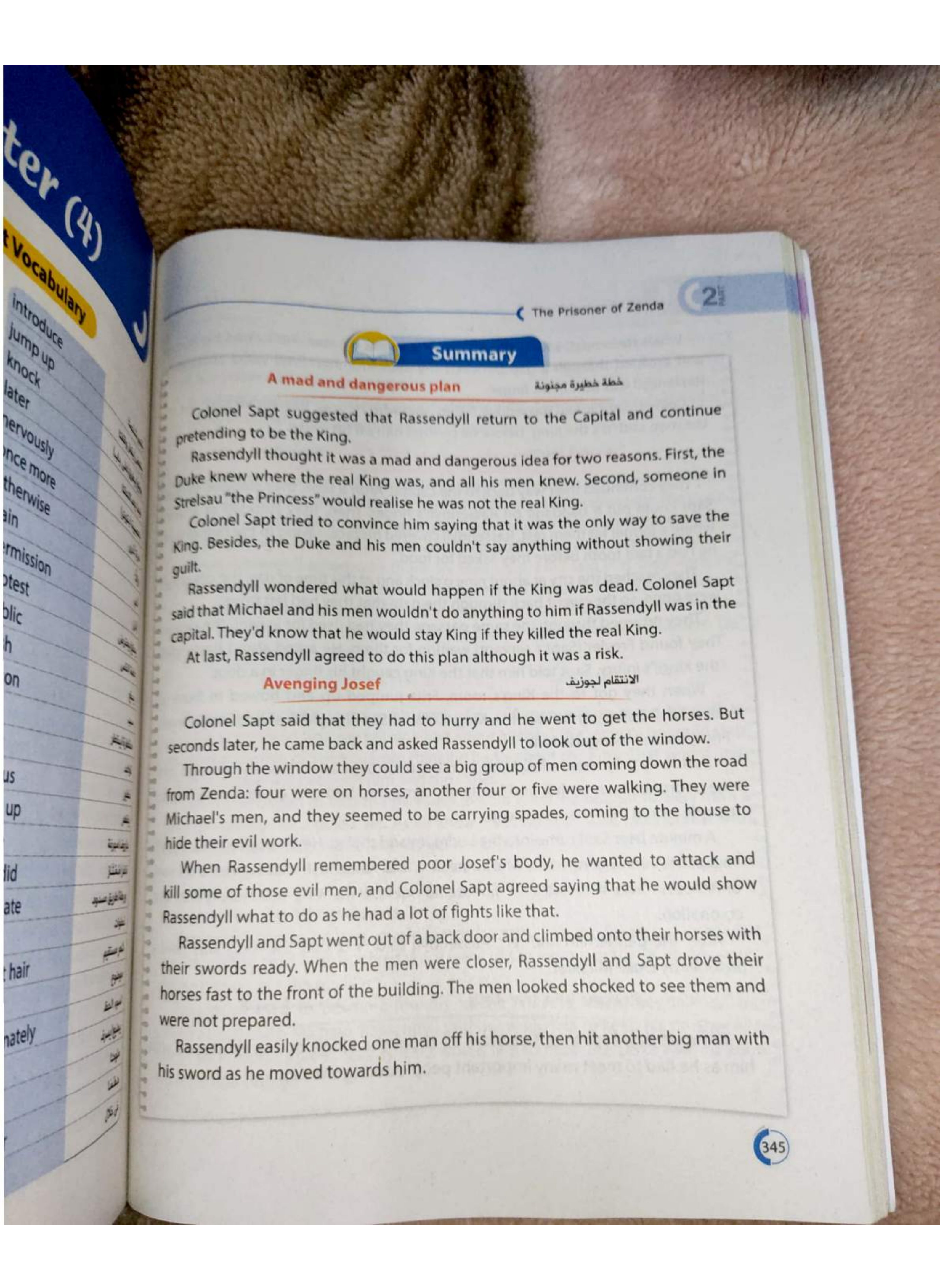
1. Rassendyll was worried because he thought that ....
   a) the Marshal wanted to test him
   b) the poor would be angry with him
   c) the Duke would arrest him
   d) Johann would recognise him
2. Which statement is correct?
   a) Rassendyll wanted the poor people to see that their King trusted them.
   b) Antoinette told everyone that Rassendyll was not the real King.
   c) Fritz was pleased that Rassendyll rode through the old part of the town.
   d) Sapt's position wouldn't be difficult if the pretend King was killed in the old part of the town.
3. The real King was supposed to ....
   a) improve Rassendyll's image
   b) give the crown to Michael
   c) punish Rassendyll
   d) marry princess Flavia
4. Which statement is not correct?
   a) Fritz left the city through a secret passage.
   b) Sapt had to copy the King's signature.
   c) Sapt and Rassendyll went back to the hunting lodge.
   d) The girl's father shouldn't have left the gate.
5. "All is well" meant that ....
   a) Josef was kidnapped
   b) the King was kidnapped
   c) the King was killed
   d) Michael knew the truth
6. When they returned to the hunting lodge, ...
   a) Rassendyll told Sapt that the King was poisoned
   b) Rassendyll told Sapt that Josef was killed
   c) Sapt told Rassendyll that Josef was killed
   d) Rassendyll and Sapt saw the Duke's men carrying the King's body
7. In the hunting lodge, after Josef had been found dead, Sapt said," The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow." This meant that ....
   a) he was sure the real King would be back at that time
   b) Rassendyll had to continue pretending to be the King
   c) he would carry the unconscious King to the capital
   d) he was sure that the real King would be set free soon

Chapter (4)

Important Vocabulary

accent	لهجة
admit	يعترف بـ
as well	أيضًا
attract	يجذب
bandage	عِصَابَة/ضِمادة
belong to	يخص/ينتمي إلى
besides	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
bow	ينحني
breathless	لاهِث/منقطع النفس
bullet	رصاصة
capture	يأسر
character	شخصية
complicated	معقد
convince	يقنع
distant	بعيد
documents	مستندات
doubts	شكوك
during	أثناء/خلال
duties	واجبات
fighter	مقاتل/محارب
finger	إصبع اليد
foreigners	أجانب
gap	فجوة
guest	ضيف
guilt	ذنب/خطأ
head off	يتوجه إلى
honest	مُخْلِص
imprison	يسجن

introduce	يقدم شخصًا
jump up	ينهض/يقفز واقفًا
knock	يوقع/يطرق(على باب)
later	فيما بعد/لاحقًا
nervously	بعصبية (بتوتر)
once more	مرة أخرى
otherwise	وإلا
pain	ألم
permission	إذن
protest	يحتج/يعترض
public	عامة الناس
push	يدفع
reason	سبب
risk	مخاطرة/يخاطر
rules	قواعد
serious	خطير
show up	يظهر
spade	جاروف/مجرفة
splendid	فاخر/مُمْتَاز
stalemate	ورطة/طريق مسدود
steps	خطوات
straight hair	شعر مستقيم
subject	موضوع
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
waste	يضيع/يسرف
waving	ملوحًا
whatever	مَهْمَا
within	في خلال



Summary

A mad and dangerous plan خطة خطيرة مجنونة

Colonel Sapt suggested that Rassendyll return to the Capital and continue pretending to be the King.

Rassendyll thought it was a mad and dangerous idea for two reasons. First, the Duke knew where the real King was, and all his men knew. Second, someone in Strelsau "the Princess" would realise he was not the real King.

Colonel Sapt tried to convince him saying that it was the only way to save the King. Besides, the Duke and his men couldn't say anything without showing their guilt.

Rassendyll wondered what would happen if the King was dead. Colonel Sapt said that Michael and his men wouldn't do anything to him if Rassendyll was in the capital. They'd know that he would stay King if they killed the real King.

At last, Rassendyll agreed to do this plan although it was a risk.

Avenging Josef الانتقام لجوزيف

Colonel Sapt said that they had to hurry and he went to get the horses. But seconds later, he came back and asked Rassendyll to look out of the window.

Through the window they could see a big group of men coming down the road from Zenda: four were on horses, another four or five were walking. They were Michael's men, and they seemed to be carrying spades, coming to the house to hide their evil work.

When Rassendyll remembered poor Josef's body, he wanted to attack and kill some of those evil men, and Colonel Sapt agreed saying that he would show Rassendyll what to do as he had a lot of fights like that.

Rassendyll and Sapt went out of a back door and climbed onto their horses with their swords ready. When the men were closer, Rassendyll and Sapt drove their horses fast to the front of the building. The men looked shocked to see them and were not prepared.

Rassendyll easily knocked one man off his horse, then hit another big man with his sword as he moved towards him.

When Rassendyll saw that he was surrounded by men, he turned his horse and escaped through a gap between the men. The men fired some shots and Rassendyll was hurt in his finger.

Colonel Sapt asked Rassendyll if they saw who he was. Rassendyll said one of the men said "It's the King" before he pushed him off his horse.

Getting back to the capital العودة للعاصمة

They continued their way back to the capital. After a time, they stopped so that Sapt could put a bandage on Rassendyll's finger. Then, they stopped at a farm where a farmer let them rest. Rassendyll covered his face, saying to the farmer that he had a bad tooth before they asked for food.

They reached the city at about nine o'clock and at this time of day, the city gates were open, so they went back through the gate that they had left from.

They returned through the same passage they had used for leaving the palace. They found Freyler (Sapt's servant) waiting for them. He asked about Rassendyll (the King)'s injury, Sapt told him that the King caught his finger in a door.

When they got to the King's room, Fritz jumped up and bowed in front of Rassendyll believing he was the King. Colonel Sapt laughed and said that even Fritz couldn't recognise him.

Suddenly they heard a loud knock on the door. Sapt asked Rassendyll to go into the bedroom, take his hat and boots off, climb into bed and cover himself up so people would think he was asleep.

A minute later Sapt came into the bedroom and smiled. He introduced Rassendyll to a polite young gentleman who came and told Rassendyll that he was a servant of Princess Flavia, who had sent him to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.

After the gentleman had left, Rassendyll told Fritz that the King was held a prisoner by Duke Michael.

Acting like a real King التصرف كملك حقيقي

The next day, Sapt told Rassendyll all about the King's duties. He stayed with him as he had to meet many important people during the day.

Rassendyll was worried when he met the French ambassador who asked him a question which he could not answer, but later Sapt told him the real King would not have been able to answer, either.

Rassendyll also had to tell everyone that he could not write because of his finger, so many important documents were not completed.

The famous Six Men الرجال الستة المشهورون

After many hours of meetings, Rassendyll was finally alone with his friends once more. Fritz told them that half of Michael's Six Men were in Strelsau with the Duke.

Colonel Sapt believed that it was a good sign because that meant the King was alive. If the King had been dead, all the Six Men would have been with the Duke.

When Rassendyll asked who those Six Men were, Fritz said that they were six special soldiers who Michael kept in his house at all times. They were completely loyal to him. Three were Ruritanians; one was Belgian, one French and one English.

Fritz told Sapt that the three men in the capital were the three foreigners: De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard.

Visiting Princess Flavia زيارة الأميرة فلافيا

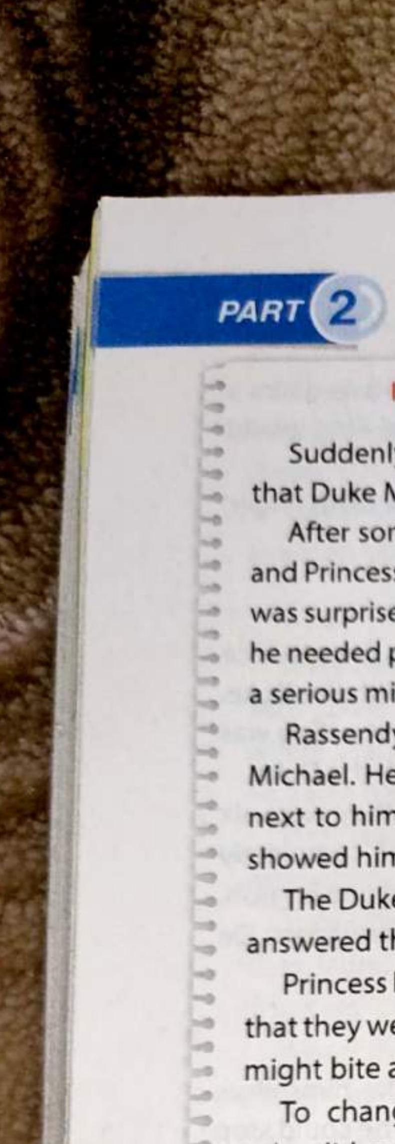
Rassendyll decided to have his own plan. His plan was to make himself as popular as he could, and say nothing bad about Michael. In that way, he could stop the poorer people of Strelsau from thinking badly about the King. That would help if a fight happened between him and the Duke.

Rassendyll began to visit the park and the old town, he bought flowers from a poor girl giving her a gold coin. As he knew that Princess Flavia was popular with the people, he decided to visit her to get her support.

On arriving at the Princess's palace, Rassendyll (the King) was shown into a guest room full of enormous mirrors, paintings and beautiful furniture, and soon the Princess arrived with her servants.

Rassendyll had to be very careful when he talked to the Princess. He needed the Princess to trust him, but he did not want to say too much to her, or she would realise he was not the real King.

Rassendyll tried to be more friendly to the Princess when they talked. They talked about Duke Michael. Rassendyll said he would like to keep his brother near him. The Princess asked cleverly if he would like to keep the Duke near to know what he was doing.



Rassendyll and Michael, face to face راسيندل ومايكل وجهًا لوجه

Suddenly, they heard noises outside and the Princess told Rassendyll (the King) that Duke Michael was on his way to the palace.

After some minutes of silence, they heard the Duke's steps outside. Rassendyll and Princess Flavia began to talk and the steps stopped outside the room. Rassendyll was surprised that Michael didn't come in. However, the Princess told Rassendyll that he needed permission from him (the King) to do so. Rassendyll realised that he made a serious mistake and pretended that he had forgotten the rules.

Rassendyll (the King) opened the door and went out of the guest room to greet Michael. He was sitting at a table looking very angry. All his men were standing next to him. Rassendyll (the King) apologised to him, then Rassendyll (the King) showed him into the Princess's guest room.

The Duke asked Rassendyll (the King) about his hand and Rassendyll (the King) answered that he was bitten by an animal.

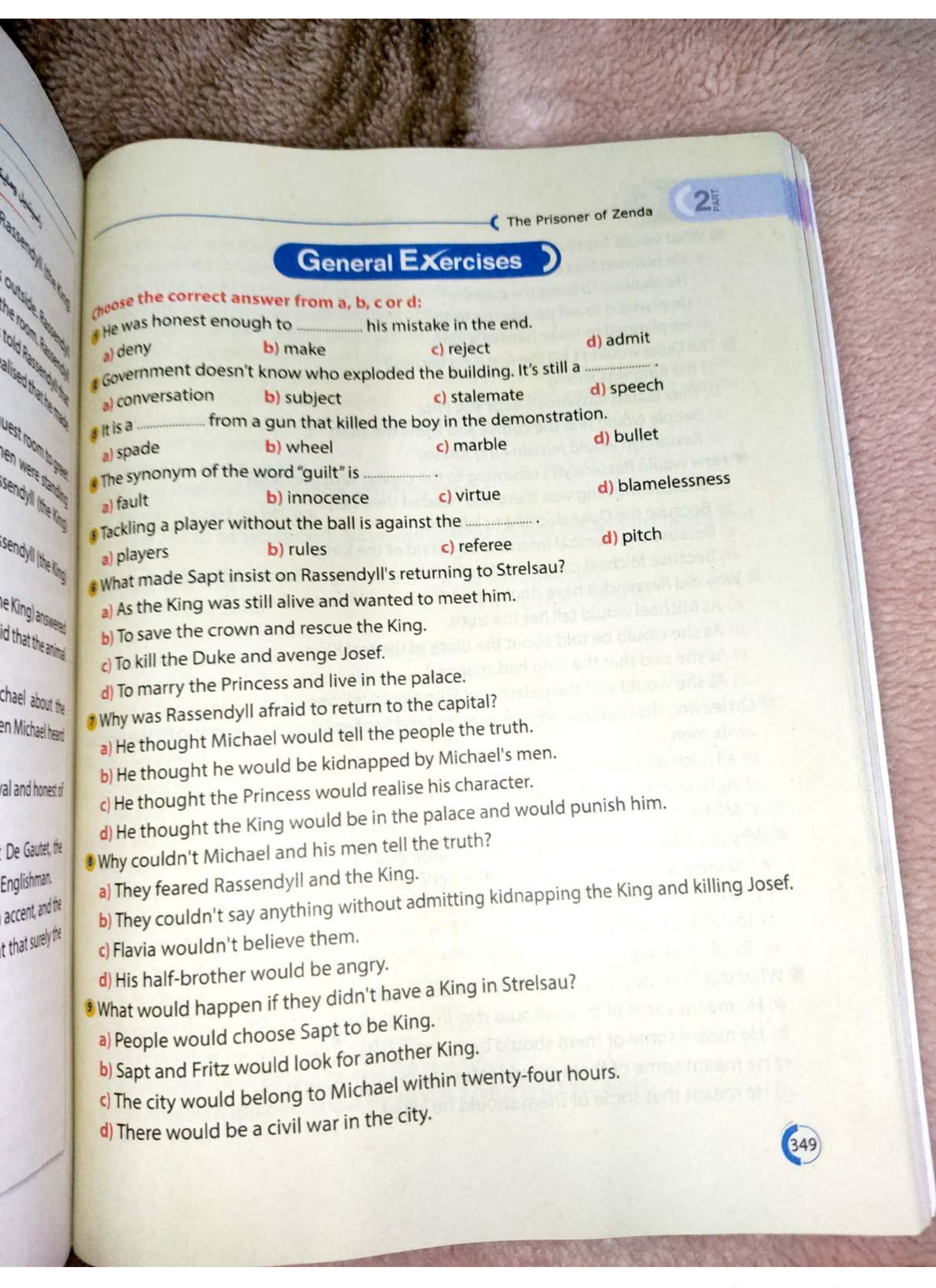
Princess Flavia asked if they killed the animal and Rassendyll (the King) answered that they were waiting to see if his bite was poisonous. Michael said that the animal might bite again and Rassendyll said the he was sure he would.

To change the subject, Rassendyll (the King) thanked Michael about the splendid coronation and about his stay at the hunting lodge. When Michael heard this, he jumped to his feet and angrily walked towards the door.

Michael stopped and introduced his three men as the most loyal and honest of the King's servants, and his great friends.

They bowed before Rassendyll (the King) one at a time: first De Gautet, the French man; then Bersonin, the Belgian; and finally Detchard, the Englishman.

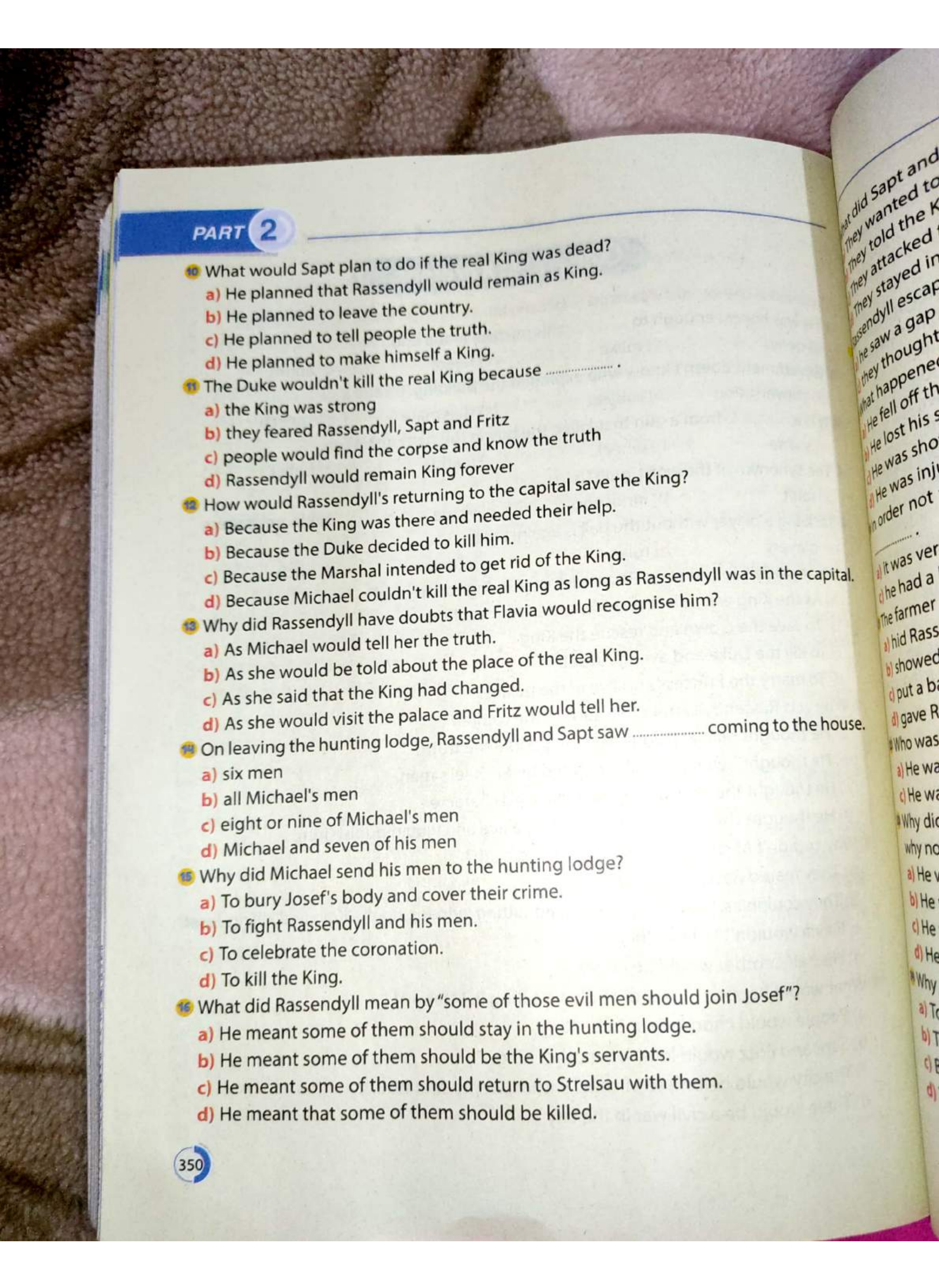
Rassendyll spoke to Detchard in English with a pretend foreign accent, and the man smiled when Rassendyll (the King) spoke. Rassendyll thought that surely the Six Men all knew the secret.



General Exercises

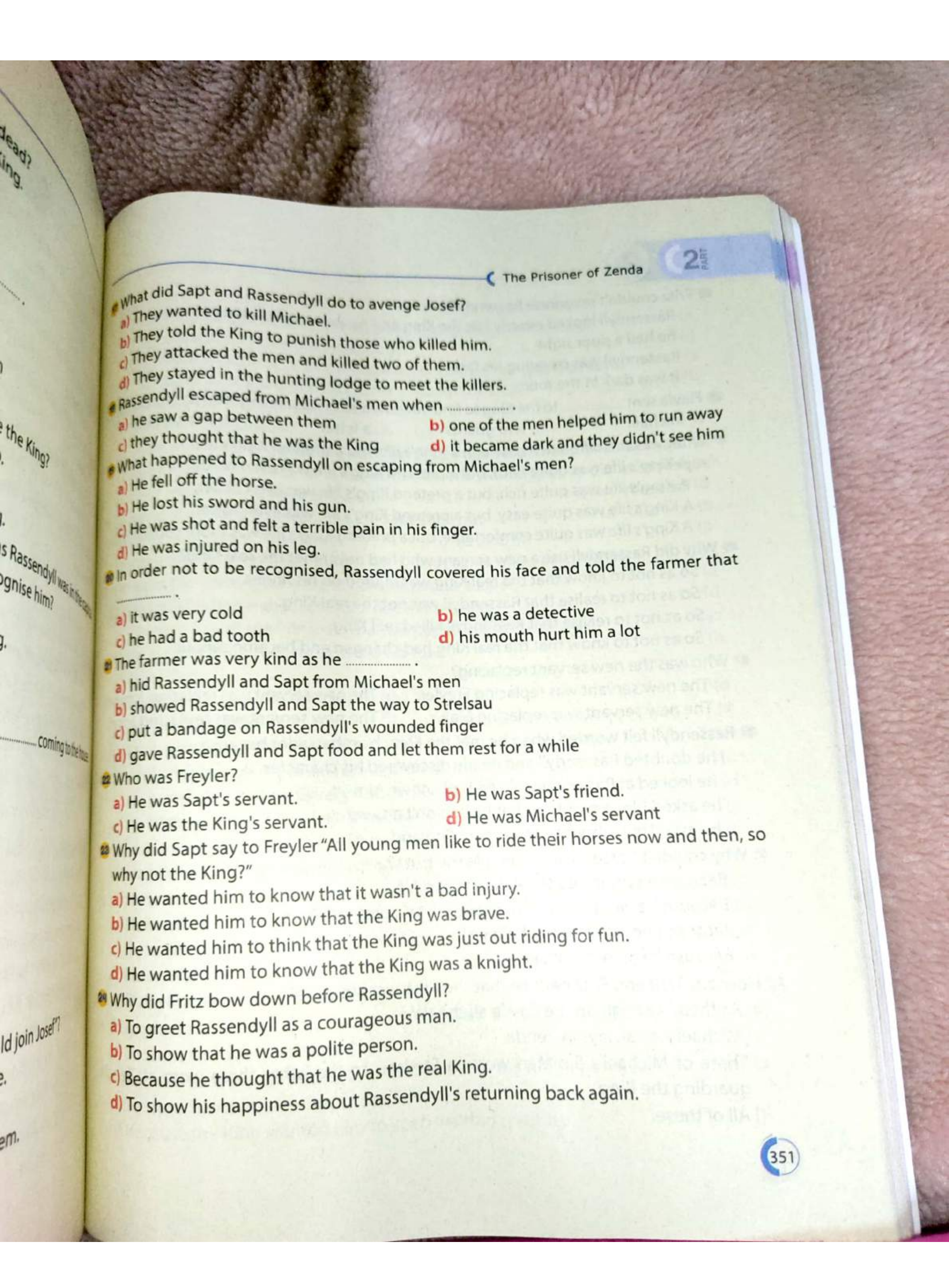
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was honest enough to .... his mistake in the end.
a) deny b) make c) reject d) admit
2. Government doesn't know who exploded the building. It's still a ....
a) conversation b) subject c) stalemate d) speech
3. It is a .... from a gun that killed the boy in the demonstration.
a) spade b) wheel c) marble d) bullet
4. The synonym of the word "guilt" is ....
a) fault b) innocence c) virtue d) blamelessness
5. Tackling a player without the ball is against the ....
a) players b) rules c) referee d) pitch
6. What made Sapt insist on Rassendyll's returning to Strelsau?
a) As the King was still alive and wanted to meet him.
b) To save the crown and rescue the King.
c) To kill the Duke and avenge Josef.
d) To marry the Princess and live in the palace.
7. Why was Rassendyll afraid to return to the capital?
a) He thought Michael would tell the people the truth.
b) He thought he would be kidnapped by Michael's men.
c) He thought the Princess would realise his character.
d) He thought the King would be in the palace and would punish him.
8. Why couldn't Michael and his men tell the truth?
a) They feared Rassendyll and the King.
b) They couldn't say anything without admitting kidnapping the King and killing Josef.
c) Flavia wouldn't believe them.
d) His half-brother would be angry.
9. What would happen if they didn't have a King in Strelsau?
a) People would choose Sapt to be King.
b) Sapt and Fritz would look for another King.
c) The city would belong to Michael within twenty-four hours.
d) There would be a civil war in the city.



PART 2

10. What would Sapt plan to do if the real King was dead?
    - a) He planned that Rassendyll would remain as King.
    - b) He planned to leave the country.
    - c) He planned to tell people the truth.
    - d) He planned to make himself a King.
11. The Duke wouldn't kill the real King because ....
    - a) the King was strong
    - b) they feared Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz
    - c) people would find the corpse and know the truth
    - d) Rassendyll would remain King forever
12. How would Rassendyll's returning to the capital save the King?
    - a) Because the King was there and needed their help.
    - b) Because the Duke decided to kill him.
    - c) Because the Marshal intended to get rid of the King.
    - d) Because Michael couldn't kill the real King as long as Rassendyll was in the capital.
13. Why did Rassendyll have doubts that Flavia would recognise him?
    - a) As Michael would tell her the truth.
    - b) As she would be told about the place of the real King.
    - c) As she said that the King had changed.
    - d) As she would visit the palace and Fritz would tell her.
14. On leaving the hunting lodge, Rassendyll and Sapt saw .... coming to the house.
    - a) six men
    - b) all Michael's men
    - c) eight or nine of Michael's men
    - d) Michael and seven of his men
15. Why did Michael send his men to the hunting lodge?
    - a) To bury Josef's body and cover their crime.
    - b) To fight Rassendyll and his men.
    - c) To celebrate the coronation.
    - d) To kill the King.
16. What did Rassendyll mean by "some of those evil men should join Josef"?
    - a) He meant some of them should stay in the hunting lodge.
    - b) He meant some of them should be the King's servants.
    - c) He meant some of them should return to Strelsau with them.
    - d) He meant that some of them should be killed.



17 What did Sapt and Rassendyll do to avenge Josef?
a) They wanted to kill Michael.
b) They told the King to punish those who killed him.
c) They attacked the men and killed two of them.
d) They stayed in the hunting lodge to meet the killers.

18 Rassendyll escaped from Michael's men when ....
a) he saw a gap between them
b) one of the men helped him to run away
c) they thought that he was the King
d) it became dark and they didn't see him

19 What happened to Rassendyll on escaping from Michael's men?
a) He fell off the horse.
b) He lost his sword and his gun.
c) He was shot and felt a terrible pain in his finger.
d) He was injured on his leg.

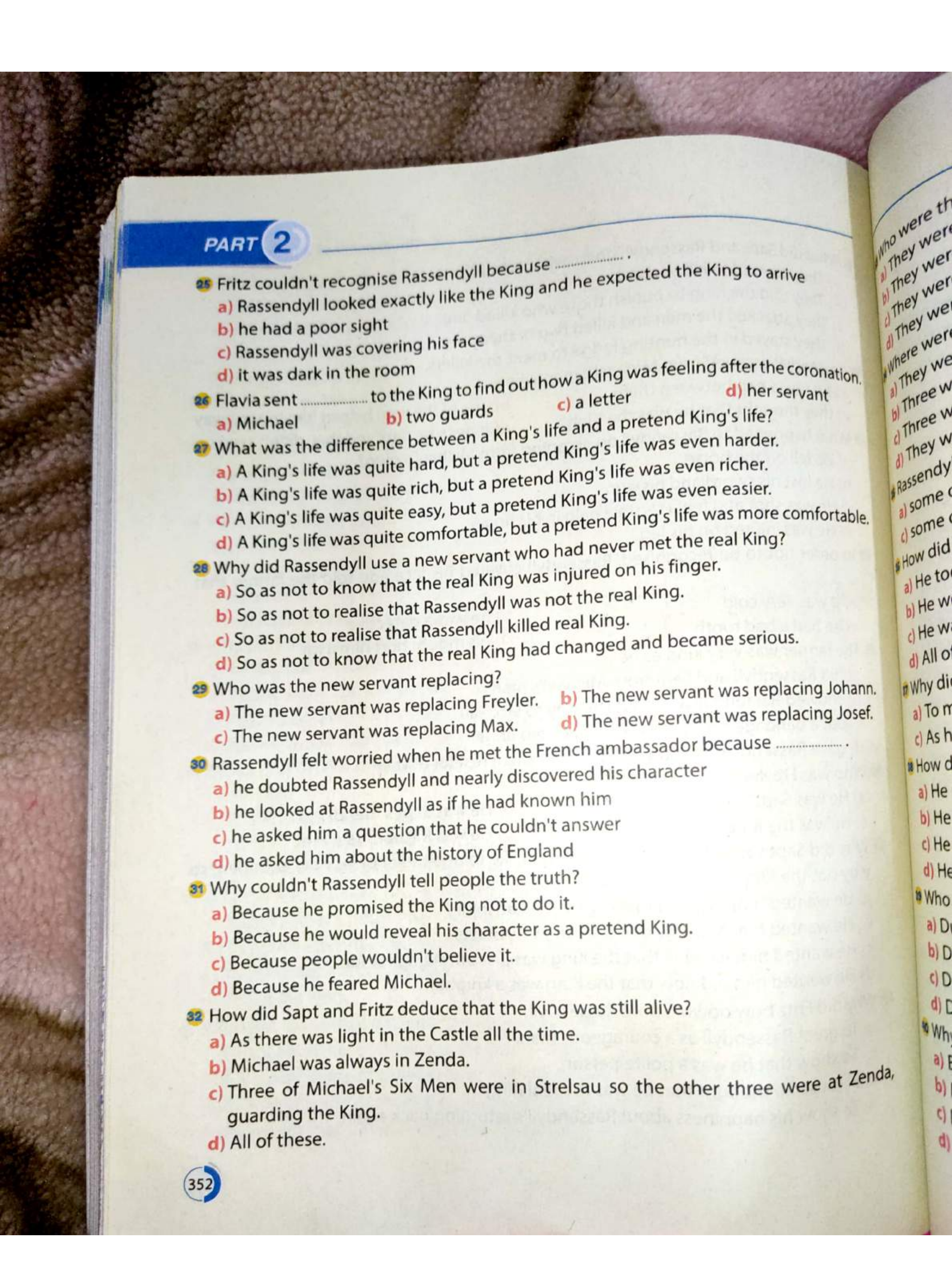
20 In order not to be recognised, Rassendyll covered his face and told the farmer that ....
a) it was very cold
b) he was a detective
c) he had a bad tooth
d) his mouth hurt him a lot

21 The farmer was very kind as he ....
a) hid Rassendyll and Sapt from Michael's men
b) showed Rassendyll and Sapt the way to Strelsau
c) put a bandage on Rassendyll's wounded finger
d) gave Rassendyll and Sapt food and let them rest for a while

22 Who was Freyler?
a) He was Sapt's servant.
b) He was Sapt's friend.
c) He was the King's servant.
d) He was Michael's servant

23 Why did Sapt say to Freyler "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"
a) He wanted him to know that it wasn't a bad injury.
b) He wanted him to know that the King was brave.
c) He wanted him to think that the King was just out riding for fun.
d) He wanted him to know that the King was a knight.

24 Why did Fritz bow down before Rassendyll?
a) To greet Rassendyll as a courageous man.
b) To show that he was a polite person.
c) Because he thought that he was the real King.
d) To show his happiness about Rassendyll's returning back again.



PART 2

25 Fritz couldn't recognise Rassendyll because ....
- a) Rassendyll looked exactly like the King and he expected the King to arrive
- b) he had a poor sight
- c) Rassendyll was covering his face
- d) it was dark in the room

26 Flavia sent .... to the King to find out how a King was feeling after the coronation.
- a) Michael
- b) two guards
- c) a letter
- d) her servant

27 What was the difference between a King's life and a pretend King's life?
- a) A King's life was quite hard, but a pretend King's life was even harder.
- b) A King's life was quite rich, but a pretend King's life was even richer.
- c) A King's life was quite easy, but a pretend King's life was even easier.
- d) A King's life was quite comfortable, but a pretend King's life was more comfortable.

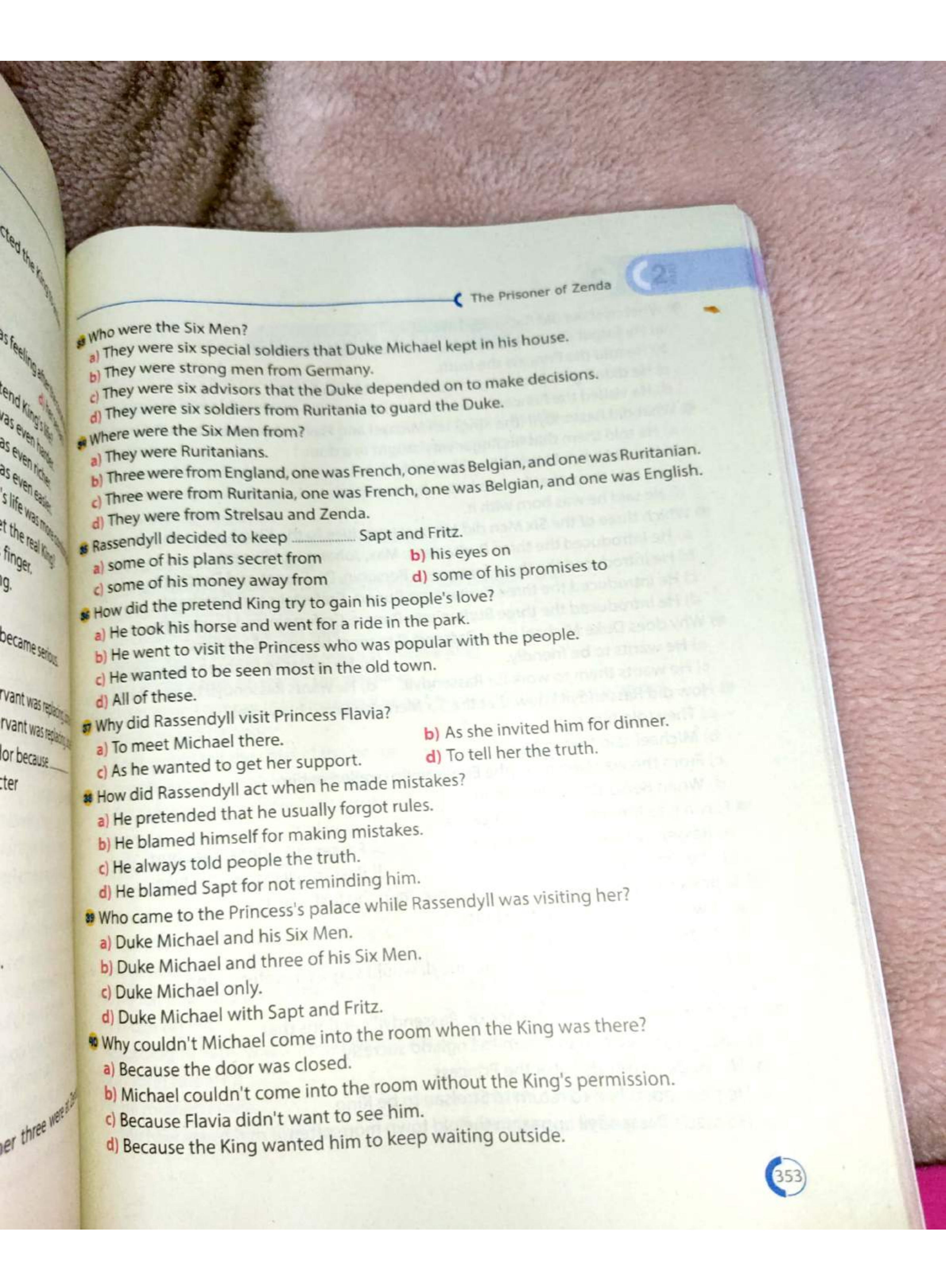
28 Why did Rassendyll use a new servant who had never met the real King?
- a) So as not to know that the real King was injured on his finger.
- b) So as not to realise that Rassendyll was not the real King.
- c) So as not to realise that Rassendyll killed real King.
- d) So as not to know that the real King had changed and became serious.

29 Who was the new servant replacing?
- a) The new servant was replacing Freyler.
- b) The new servant was replacing Johann.
- c) The new servant was replacing Max.
- d) The new servant was replacing Josef.

30 Rassendyll felt worried when he met the French ambassador because ....
- a) he doubted Rassendyll and nearly discovered his character
- b) he looked at Rassendyll as if he had known him
- c) he asked him a question that he couldn't answer
- d) he asked him about the history of England

31 Why couldn't Rassendyll tell people the truth?
- a) Because he promised the King not to do it.
- b) Because he would reveal his character as a pretend King.
- c) Because people wouldn't believe it.
- d) Because he feared Michael.

32 How did Sapt and Fritz deduce that the King was still alive?
- a) As there was light in the Castle all the time.
- b) Michael was always in Zenda.
- c) Three of Michael's Six Men were in Strelsau so the other three were at Zenda, guarding the King.
- d) All of these.



53 Who were the Six Men?

a) They were six special soldiers that Duke Michael kept in his house.
b) They were strong men from Germany.
c) They were six advisors that the Duke depended on to make decisions.
d) They were six soldiers from Ruritania to guard the Duke.

54 Where were the Six Men from?

a) They were Ruritanians.
b) Three were from England, one was French, one was Belgian, and one was Ruritanian.
c) Three were from Ruritania, one was French, one was Belgian, and one was English.
d) They were from Strelsau and Zenda.

55 Rassendyll decided to keep ...... Sapt and Fritz.

a) some of his plans secret from
b) his eyes on
c) some of his money away from
d) some of his promises to

56 How did the pretend King try to gain his people's love?

a) He took his horse and went for a ride in the park.
b) He went to visit the Princess who was popular with the people.
c) He wanted to be seen most in the old town.
d) All of these.

57 Why did Rassendyll visit Princess Flavia?

a) To meet Michael there.
b) As she invited him for dinner.
c) As he wanted to get her support.
d) To tell her the truth.

58 How did Rassendyll act when he made mistakes?

a) He pretended that he usually forgot rules.
b) He blamed himself for making mistakes.
c) He always told people the truth.
d) He blamed Sapt for not reminding him.

59 Who came to the Princess's palace while Rassendyll was visiting her?

a) Duke Michael and his Six Men.
b) Duke Michael and three of his Six Men.
c) Duke Michael only.
d) Duke Michael with Sapt and Fritz.

60 Why couldn't Michael come into the room when the King was there?

a) Because the door was closed.
b) Michael couldn't come into the room without the King's permission.
c) Because Flavia didn't want to see him.
d) Because the King wanted him to keep waiting outside.

PART 2

41 What mistake did Rassendyll make?

a) He forgot the Duke's name.
b) He told the Princess the truth.
c) He didn't give Michael permission to enter the room.
d) He visited the Princess without permission.

42 What did Rassendyll (the King) tell Michael and Flavia about his wound?

a) He told them that his finger was caught in a door.
b) He said one of Michael's men shot him.
c) He told them that he was bitten by an animal.
d) He said he was born with it.

43 Which three of the Six Men did Michael introduce to the King?

a) He introduced the three Ruritanians: Max, Johann and Rupert.
b) He introduced the three foreigners: Bersonin, De Gautet and Detchard.
c) He introduced the three Ruritanians: Rupert, Crafestein and Detchard.
d) He introduced the three Ruritanians: Rupert, Crafestein and Leungram.

44 Why does Duke Michael want Rassendyll to meet his special soldiers?

a) He wants to be friendly.
b) He wants to frighten Rassendyll.
c) He wants them to work for Rassendyll.
d) He wants Rassendyll to give them a job.

45 How did Rassendyll know that the Six Men also knew his secret?

a) They told him that.
b) Michael said that to him.
c) From the way Detchard (the Englishman) smiled at him.
d) When Bersonin smiled at him.

46 Flavia was the only one to notice that ....

a) Rassendyll wasn't the real King
b) Rassendyll's finger was hurt
c) The King had changed
d) Rassendyll made a mistake.

47 Sapt's second plan was more dangerous than the first one as ....

a) it was made in the hunting lodge
b) Rassendyll would carry it out
c) they didn't know how long Rassendyll would stay as a pretend King
d) it would be in Strelsau

48 Sapt had such a strong influence on Rassendyll's actions that ....

a) Rassendyll decided to return to England secretly
b) He made Rassendyll visit the Princess
c) He persuaded him to return to Strelsau to be King
d) He made Rassendyll appear in the old town more often

Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The King had been kidnapped from ....
   a) Strelsau b) the castle of Zenda
   c) the forest d) the hunting lodge
2. After the real King had been kidnapped, Sapt asked Rudolf Rassendyll ....
   a) to continue pretending to be the King
   b) to go back to England
   c) not to tell anyone that he wasn't the real King
   d) not to try to rescue the King
3. Rudolf Rassendyll thought that Sapt's plan was too dangerous as ....
   a) the King wouldn't accept it
   b) he couldn't speak German well
   c) people might realise that he was not the real King
   d) Flavia knew that he wasn't the real King
4. Michael would not say that Rassendyll wasn't the real King because if he did, ...
   a) Flavia would be angry
   b) Sapt would tell the chief of the police
   c) people would ask him where the real King was
   d) Fritz would tell the people the truth
5. If there was not a King in Strelsau, ...
   a) Fritz would be in charge of the capital
   b) Sapt would support Michael
   c) Rassendyll would go back to England
   d) the city would belong to Michael within 24 hours
6. One of Michael's men shot Rudolf Rassendyll and ....
   a) he felt a terrible pain in his finger b) hurt his shoulder
   c) broke his leg d) grabbed his gun
7. According to Sapt, when would Rudolf Rassendyll stay King for life? Rassendyll would stay King forever if ....
   a) he married Flavia b) the real King was killed
   c) Michael asked him to do so d) he returned to England



Chapter (5)



Important Vocabulary

accept	يقبل	leafy	مُورق/ذو أوراق
ambitions	طموحات	messenger	رسول/مبعوث
argument	جدال	murder	يقتل/جريمة قتل
authority	سلطة	notice	يلاحظ
avenue	طريق (غالبًا ذو شجر)	occasional	عرضى
ball	حفل راقص	popularity	شهرة/شعبية
Chief of Police	رئيس الشرطة	protect	يحمى
cover up	يغطى على	punish	يعاقب
criminals	مجرمون	reluctantly	على كرهٍ/بمعارضة
fair	عادل	rescue	ينقذ
footsteps	خطوات أقدام	ruler	حاكم
forever	للأبد	society	مجتمع
French window	نافذة فرنسية (باب زجاجى)	steps	درجات سلم
generous	كريم	suppose	يفترض
growing	متزايد	trap	يُوقع فى شَرَك
imprison	يسجن	truth	الحقيقة
iron	حديد/حديدى		





Summary

Princess Flavia warns the King الأميرة فلافيا تحذر الملك

Rassendyll (the King) said goodbye to Michael and his men. He wasn't sorry to do that.

He was sad to say goodbye to Princess Flavia. He even thought about telling her the truth.

Before Rassendyll (the King) left, Princess Flavia asked him to be careful of something she didn't want to say. She also said that he was important for the people of Ruritania.

Rassendyll remembered what Rose had said about his brother Robert back in England and about Robert's responsibilities. He suddenly realised how many responsibilities he had in Ruritania.

Colonel Sapt's important news أخبار العقيد سابت الهامة

Over the next few weeks, no one seemed to notice Rassendyll was not the real King of Ruritania.

Rassendyll learnt a lot about how a country was run, but he made mistakes, sometimes big ones. He became very good at pretending he had forgotten rules or people that he had met.

Rassendyll hoped his growing popularity with the people of Ruritania would help them to forgive his occasional bad decisions.

One day Colonel Sapt came to Rassendyll with a letter from a woman and also he had important news.

Colonel Sapt gave the letter to Rassendyll and told him the news. He said that he knew that the real King was in the Castle of Zenda. He asked where the rest of the Six Men, Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert Hentzau, were and found out that they were all there at the castle.

Colonel Sapt also said that people said the drawbridge was always nearly kept up. No one came into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael.



Protecting Rassendyll (the King) حماية راسيندل (الملك)

As soon as Rassendyll heard the news, he wanted to go to the castle to save the King. However, Sapt said that he could stay there forever.

When Rassendyll told Sapt wherever he went in the capital, six people followed him, Sapt told him that he had ordered them to do so to protect him from Michael's three men in the city.

A confusing letter خطاب مربك (محير)

Rassendyll opened the letter which was strange. The letter asked him to go to a summer house at the end of New Avenue at midnight. The writer said that he had to come alone and that was important for his life. The writer also asked him not to show the letter to anyone or Michael would punish the writer.

Sapt thought this was a trap from Michael and that Michael himself was the writer of the letter. However, the writer asked Rassendyll to ask Sapt what woman had been a guest of the Duke and to ask if her name began with A.

At once, Rassendyll said it was Antoinette de Mauban and Sapt was surprised that Rassendyll knew her.

A dangerous decision قرار خطير

Rassendyll decided to go as he believed that would be useful. Colonel Sapt warned him saying that he didn't believe the woman. However, Rassendyll insisted saying that they had to move fast and not to leave the King.

Colonel Sapt insisted on going with him, but Rassendyll said he had to wait outside the gate when he went in alone.

A dangerous mission مهمة خطيرة

At half past eleven that night, they got on their horses and soon arrived outside the gate to the house, carrying guns. It was a very dark night.

Colonel Sapt waited outside the garden of the summer house and Rassendyll went in alone. Following Antoinette's directions, he reached the house easily and went in. He found Antoinette waiting for him.

She asked him to shut the door. He did as she asked and then looked around the room, which was lit by a small candle. It was almost empty except for a small iron table and two chairs. In the soft light, he could just see Antoinette in front of him and her servant behind.

Antoinette told him very important information:

- First, she knew he was not the King and she wrote that letter at the Duke's orders.
- Second, in twenty minutes, three men would be there to kill him, so he had to leave before they arrived.
- Third, she told him the Duke's plan, which was to kill him and to take his body into the old town. It would be found and Michael would arrest Colonel Sapt and Fritz for murdering the King. Then a messenger would be sent to Zenda and the real King would be murdered too. The Duke would then become King.

When he asked her why she helped him, she said she didn't like to see people being killed. That's why he shouldn't be alone anywhere as the three men were following him and his guards.

Antoinette also told him that there was a ladder for him against a wall about a hundred metres from the house to use it to escape.

Rassendyll escapes death راسينديل ينجو من الموت

Antoinette was about to tell him the exact place of the King in the castle when they heard the three men outside.

A voice, which Rassendyll thought was Detchard's, spoke in English from outside saying that they offered him a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.

Rassendyll pretended to accept the offer and started to prepare the plan to escape. He picked up the iron table and held it by the legs so it was in front of him. He asked them to open the door, as he couldn't. As soon as Detchard opened the

door, Rassendyll ran at him as fast as he could holding the table in front of him. He used the table to protect himself then he fired some shots. Luckily, he managed to escape through the ladder which Antoinette had told him about.

He found Sapt trying to get into the garden. They jumped on their horses and rode quickly back to the palace.

The ball الحفل الراقص

The next day, Sapt read Rassendyll (the King) the latest report from the Chief of Police. The Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda, followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm. Rassendyll's shot, which he fired behind him while running, had been a good one.

The second report talked about the King's marriage. People said that if the King did not marry Princess Flavia soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau.

Rassendyll (the King) was surprised when Fritz said he had prepared a ball in which Sapt thought Rassendyll had to ask the Princess to marry him.

At the ball Rassendyll (the King) sat after eating with the Princess and some other guests in a small room by the palace gardens. The servants brought them coffee and they had time to talk.

The Princess said good words about the few weeks he had been King. Rassendyll again remembered Rose talking about responsibilities.

Rassendyll (the King) made a mistake when he said that when he was younger, he didn't think he needed to worry about society. He thought that was someone else's job. The Princess was surprised.

Strangely, instead of saying something to cover up his mistake, Rassendyll wanted to tell the Princess the truth. Before he could complete his words, he looked up and jumped with fright, because Sapt's face suddenly appeared at the French window. Sapt came and told him that someone wanted to see him.

They returned to the ball, but the Princess went quickly away with her servants.

Preparing for a new dangerous mission الإعداد لمهمة جديدة خطيرة

The next morning, Sapt and Rassendyll sat in his room thinking about what to do next. Although Rassendyll was the King, and could even arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed, Sapt trusted he wouldn't do that because he was a good man.

Before going to rescue the King, Rassendyll decided to visit Princess Flavia. He wanted at least to warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed it to be.

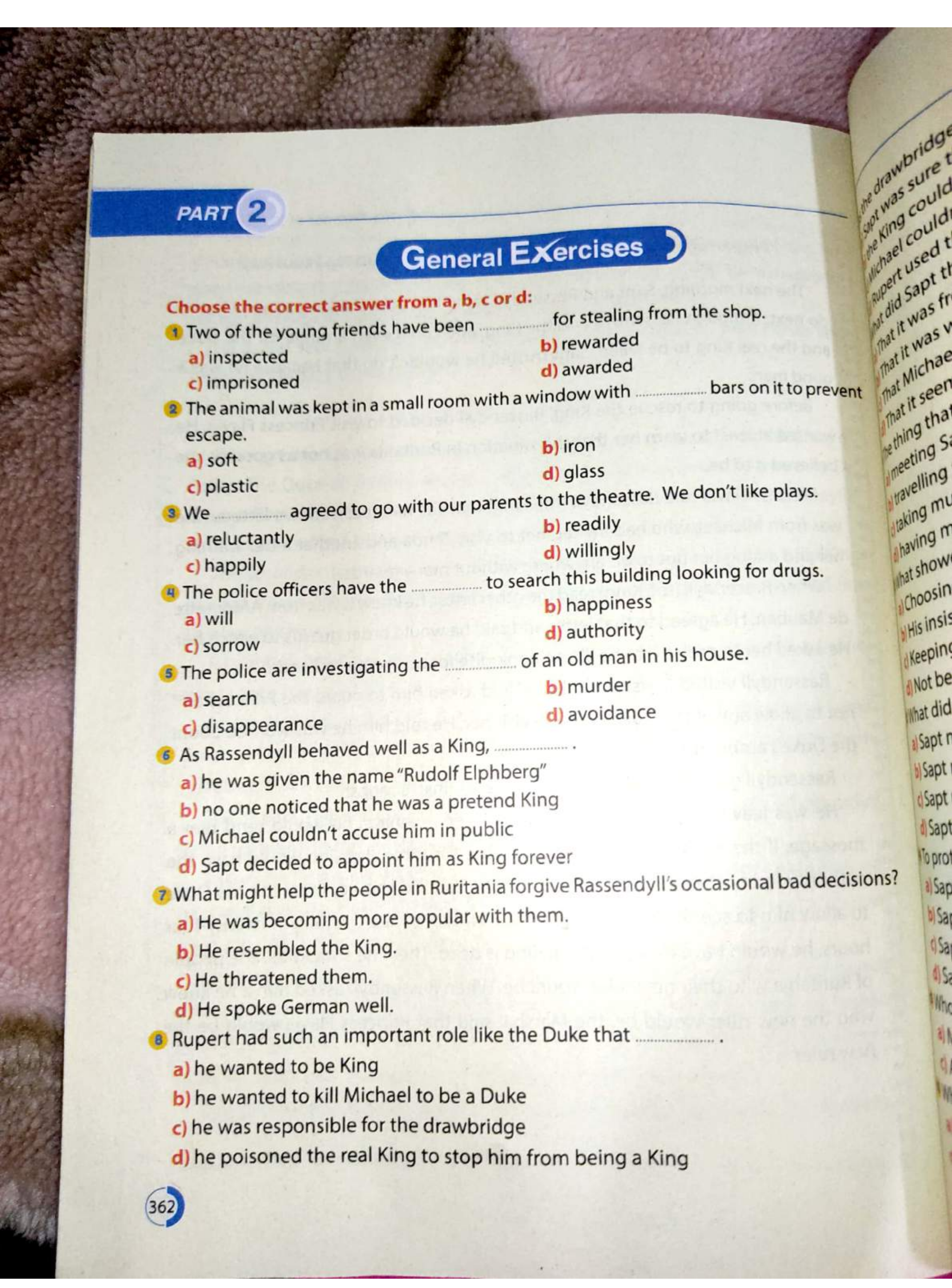
Princess Flavia told Rassendyll (the King) that she had received two letters. One was from Michael, who had invited her to visit Zenda and another letter warning her and asking her not to go anywhere without many guards.

When Rassendyll (the King) read the other letter, he knew it was from Antoinette de Mauban. He agreed to that letter and said he would order guards to watch her. He asked her to pretend to be ill and apologise for not going to Zenda.

Rassendyll visited Marshal Strakencz and asked him to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her. He told him he was worried about the Duke's ambitions.

Rassendyll gave Marshal Strakencz these last instructions:

He was leaving Strelsau for a few days. Every evening, he would send him a message. If the Marshal didn't get a message for three days, he would have the authority to say that he was the head of Strelsau. He should, then, ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he didn't allow him to see the King in twenty-four hours, he would have to say that the King is dead. Then, he should tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler would be. When Rassendyll asked him if he knew who the new ruler would be, the Marshal said that Princess Flavia would be the new ruler.



PART 2

General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Two of the young friends have been .... for stealing from the shop.
   a) inspected
   b) rewarded
   c) imprisoned
   d) awarded
2. The animal was kept in a small room with a window with .... bars on it to prevent escape.
   a) soft
   b) iron
   c) plastic
   d) glass
3. We .... agreed to go with our parents to the theatre. We don't like plays.
   a) reluctantly
   b) readily
   c) happily
   d) willingly
4. The police officers have the .... to search this building looking for drugs.
   a) will
   b) happiness
   c) sorrow
   d) authority
5. The police are investigating the .... of an old man in his house.
   a) search
   b) murder
   c) disappearance
   d) avoidance
6. As Rassendyll behaved well as a King, ...
   a) he was given the name "Rudolf Elphberg"
   b) no one noticed that he was a pretend King
   c) Michael couldn't accuse him in public
   d) Sapt decided to appoint him as King forever
7. What might help the people in Ruritania forgive Rassendyll's occasional bad decisions?
   a) He was becoming more popular with them.
   b) He resembled the King.
   c) He threatened them.
   d) He spoke German well.
8. Rupert had such an important role like the Duke that ....
   a) he wanted to be King
   b) he wanted to kill Michael to be a Duke
   c) he was responsible for the drawbridge
   d) he poisoned the real King to stop him from being a King

9 As the drawbridge was always kept up, ...
a) Sapt was sure that the King was still alive
b) the King couldn't escape
c) Michael couldn't visit the King in the old castle
d) Rupert used the moat to go to the mansion

10 What did Sapt think about the letter?
a) That it was from the real King in Zenda.
b) That it was written in English.
c) That Michael wrote it.
d) That it seemed to be from a man.

11 The thing that Rassendyll hadn't expected to do before was ....
a) meeting Sapt and Fritz in the forest of Zenda
b) travelling to Ruritania and meeting Michael's Six Men
c) taking much responsibility and having no time to waste
d) having much money and becoming rich

12 What showed that Rassendyll was an honourable man?
a) Choosing a new servant replacing Josef.
b) His insistence on going to Zenda and saving the King.
c) Keeping some secrets from Sapt and Fritz.
d) Not being afraid of Michael's Six Men.

13 What did Sapt mean when he said "You'll probably stay there forever if you do"?
a) Sapt meant that Rassendyll would either be imprisoned or killed in Zenda.
b) Sapt meant that Rassendyll would be King in Zenda.
c) Sapt meant that the King would choose him to stay in Zenda.
d) Sapt meant that Rassendyll would prefer to stay in Zenda.

14 To protect Rassendyll from Michael's men, ...
a) Sapt had Fritz follow Rassendyll everywhere
b) Sapt gave a letter to Rassendyll to read
c) Sapt had Six Men follow Rassendyll everywhere
d) Sapt decided to guard Rassendyll himself

15 Who did Rassendyll and Sapt suspect really wrote that letter?
a) Michael's brother b) The Duke.
c) Antoinette d) Flavia.

16 Where would Rassendyll and the writer of the letter meet?
a) At the summer house. b) At the castle.
c) At Zenda. d) At the hunting lodge.

17 When did Rassendyll threaten Sapt to go back to England?
a) When Sapt objected to his going to Zenda to rescue the King.
b) When Sapt asked him to return to Strelsau to be a King.
c) When Sapt asked him to sign the form to get out of the city.
d) When Sapt objected to his going to the summer house.

18 Where was Antoinette de Mauban staying at the time of writing the letter?
a) At the castle with the King.
b) At the mansion with the Duke.
c) At a place Sapt and Rassendyll didn't know in Strelsau.
d) At the summer house.

19 Why did Rassendyll insist on meeting Antoinette?
a) He hoped to get information to save the King quickly.
b) He hoped to meet Michael and kill him.
c) He wanted to give her another letter to Michael.
d) He wanted to see the summer house.

20 Where did Sapt wait for Rassendyll when the latter went to meet Antoinette?
a) At the palace.
b) Inside the summer house.
c) Outside the gate to the house.
d) Beside the statue of the horse.

21 Antoinette told Rassendyll that in twenty minutes three men will be there to ....
a) kidnap him
b) reward him
c) kill him
d) bury him

22 In Michael's clever plan, what would happen to Colonel Sapt and Captain Fritz?
a) They would be left alone in the palace.
b) They would be arrested for murdering the King.
c) They would be sent to kill the King in the castle.
d) They would be killed by Rassendyll.

23 Why did Antoinette offer to help Rassendyll?
a) As she wanted to punish Duke Michael.
b) As she wanted Rassendyll to be the King of Ruritania.
c) As she didn't like to see people being killed.
d) As she wanted to be a Queen.

24 How did Antoinette de Mauban help Rassendyll to escape?
a) She gave him the key of the gate.
b) She told him about the place of the statue of a horse.
c) She offered him 50 000 pounds and a safe journey to the border.
d) She told him about the ladder which he could climb and escape.

25. By whom was Rassendyll trapped in the summer house?
a) De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard.
b) Max, Bersonin and Detchard.
c) Rupert, De Gautet and Detchard.
d) De Gautet, Bersonin and Rupert.

26. In the summer house, Duke Michael's men offer Rassendyll .... and a safe return.
a) one million pieces of gold
b) one million pounds
c) 50 000 pieces of gold
d) 50 000 pounds

27. How would Antoinette de Mauban lie to Michael's men?
a) She would tell them that Rassendyll left Ruritania.
b) She would tell them that Rassendyll was ill.
c) She would tell them that Rassendyll never came.
d) She would tell them that Rassendyll left before their arrival.

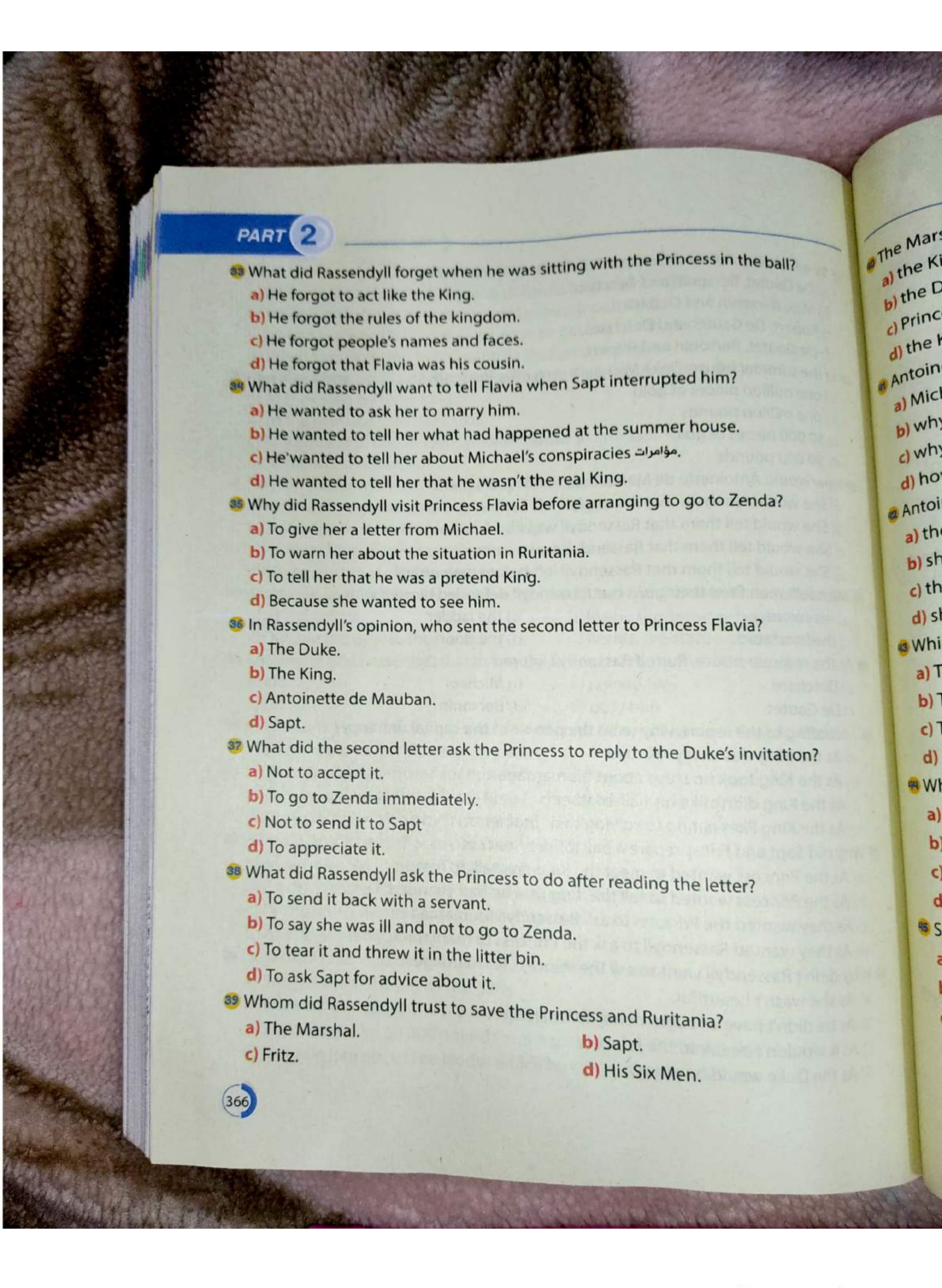
28. Michael's men fired their guns but Rassendyll defended himself with ....
a) his sword
b) the ladder
c) the iron table
d) the door

29. At the summer house, Rudolf Rassendyll injured ....
a) Detchard
b) Michael
c) De Gautet
d) Bersonin

30. According to the report, why were the people of the capital unhappy?
a) As the King was always abroad.
b) As the King took no steps about his marriage.
c) As the King didn't like his half-brother.
d) As the King likes eating to solving their problems.

31. Why did Sapt and Fritz prepare a ball for the Princess?
a) As the Princess wanted to meet the King and talk to him.
b) As the Princess wanted to tell the King that he had changed.
c) As they wanted the Princess to ask Rassendyll for marriage.
d) As they wanted Rassendyll to ask the Princess to marry him.

32. Why didn't Rassendyll want to ask the Princess for marriage?
a) As she wasn't beautiful.
b) As he didn't have enough money for marriage.
c) As it wouldn't be fair to the Princess.
d) As the Duke would be angry.



33 What did Rassendyll forget when he was sitting with the Princess in the ball?

a) He forgot to act like the King.
b) He forgot the rules of the kingdom.
c) He forgot people's names and faces.
d) He forgot that Flavia was his cousin.

34 What did Rassendyll want to tell Flavia when Sapt interrupted him?

a) He wanted to ask her to marry him.
b) He wanted to tell her what had happened at the summer house.
c) He wanted to tell her about Michael's conspiracies مؤامرات.
d) He wanted to tell her that he wasn't the real King.

35 Why did Rassendyll visit Princess Flavia before arranging to go to Zenda?

a) To give her a letter from Michael.
b) To warn her about the situation in Ruritania.
c) To tell her that he was a pretend King.
d) Because she wanted to see him.

36 In Rassendyll's opinion, who sent the second letter to Princess Flavia?

a) The Duke.
b) The King.
c) Antoinette de Mauban.
d) Sapt.

37 What did the second letter ask the Princess to reply to the Duke's invitation?

a) Not to accept it.
b) To go to Zenda immediately.
c) Not to send it to Sapt
d) To appreciate it.

38 What did Rassendyll ask the Princess to do after reading the letter?

a) To send it back with a servant.
b) To say she was ill and not to go to Zenda.
c) To tear it and threw it in the litter bin.
d) To ask Sapt for advice about it.

39 Whom did Rassendyll trust to save the Princess and Ruritania?

a) The Marshal.
b) Sapt.
c) Fritz.
d) His Six Men.

The Marshal would be the head of Strelsau if ....
a) the King left for Zenda and stayed more than two days
b) the Duke didn't allow the Marshal to see the King in 24 hours
c) Princess Flavia asked him to do it
d) the King sent him a message every day

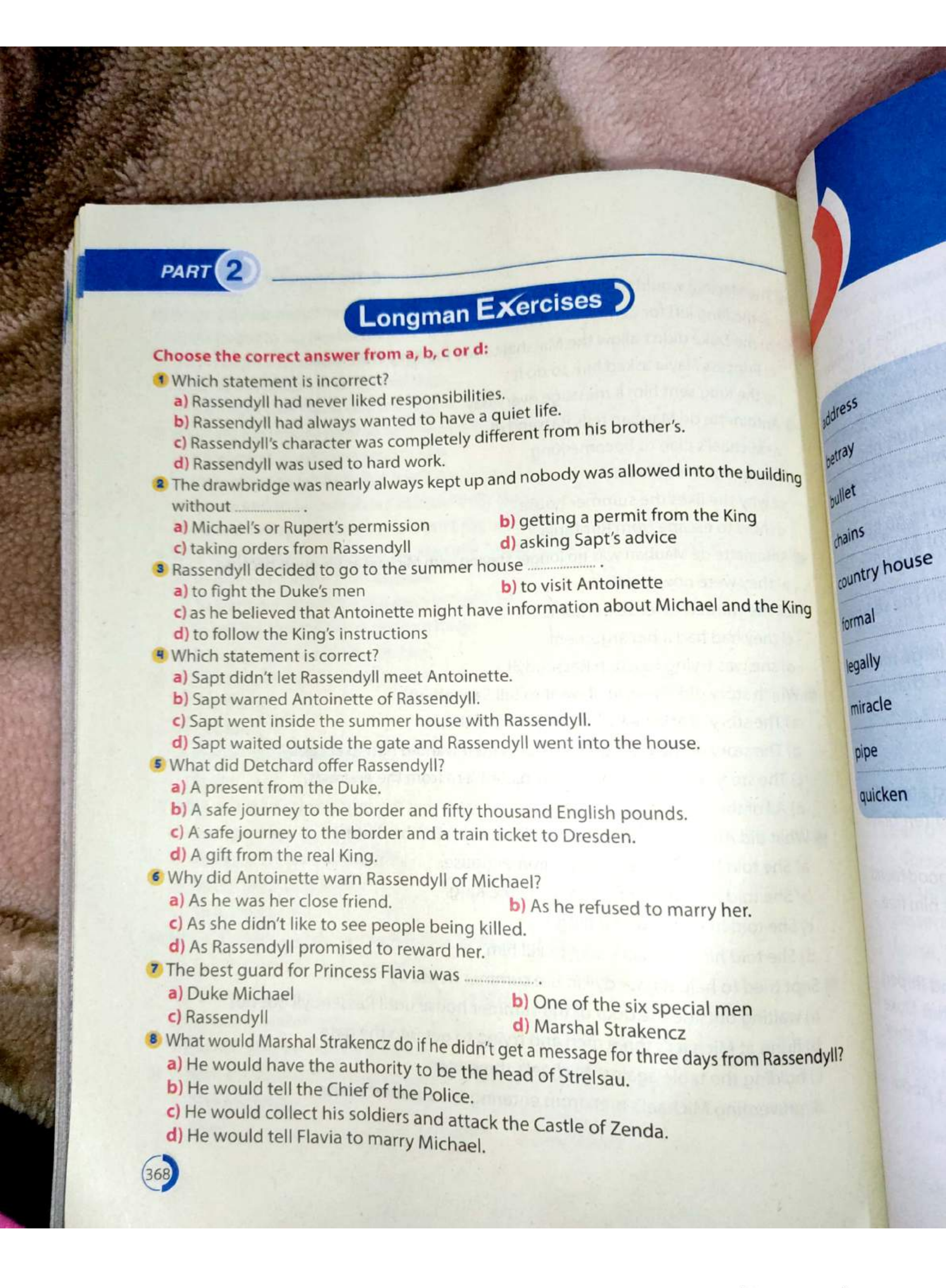
Antoinette de Mauban tells Rassendyll ....
a) Michael's plan to become King
b) why she likes Michael
c) why she likes the summer house
d) how to escape from Ruritania

Antoinette de Mauban was no longer staying with Michael as his guest because ....
a) they were now married
b) she wanted to leave Ruritania
c) they had had a big argument
d) she was trying to catch Rassendyll

Which story did Rassendyll want to tell Sapt about?
a) The story of Michael's plan to get rid of them.
b) The story of the offer that Michael's men wanted him to accept.
c) The story of the table which protected him from the enemies.
d) All of these.

What did Antoinette de Mauban tell Rassendyll in her letter?
a) She told him the way to the summer house.
b) She told him Michael's plan to kill the King.
c) She told him to save the King.
d) She told him Michael's plan to kill him.

Sapt tried to help Rassendyll in the summer house by ....
a) waiting outside the door of the summer house until Rassendyll got out
b) firing at Michael's three men and trying to get into the gate
c) holding the table against Michael's three men
d) preventing Michael's men from entering the summer house

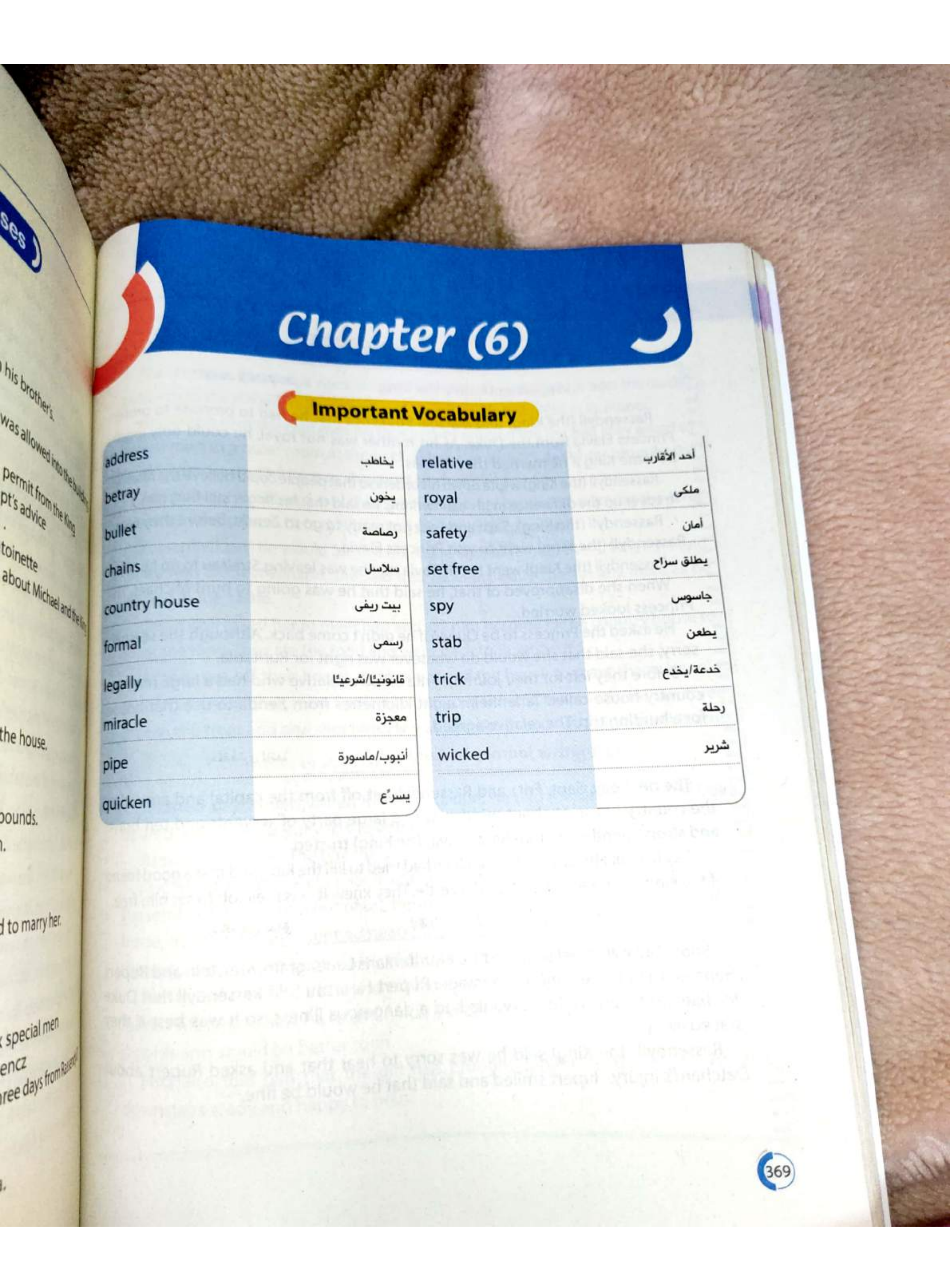


Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which statement is incorrect?
   a) Rassendyll had never liked responsibilities.
   b) Rassendyll had always wanted to have a quiet life.
   c) Rassendyll's character was completely different from his brother's.
   d) Rassendyll was used to hard work.
2. The drawbridge was nearly always kept up and nobody was allowed into the building without ....
   a) Michael's or Rupert's permission
   b) getting a permit from the King
   c) taking orders from Rassendyll
   d) asking Sapt's advice
3. Rassendyll decided to go to the summer house ....
   a) to fight the Duke's men
   b) to visit Antoinette
   c) as he believed that Antoinette might have information about Michael and the King
   d) to follow the King's instructions
4. Which statement is correct?
   a) Sapt didn't let Rassendyll meet Antoinette.
   b) Sapt warned Antoinette of Rassendyll.
   c) Sapt went inside the summer house with Rassendyll.
   d) Sapt waited outside the gate and Rassendyll went into the house.
5. What did Detchard offer Rassendyll?
   a) A present from the Duke.
   b) A safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.
   c) A safe journey to the border and a train ticket to Dresden.
   d) A gift from the real King.
6. Why did Antoinette warn Rassendyll of Michael?
   a) As he was her close friend.
   b) As he refused to marry her.
   c) As she didn't like to see people being killed.
   d) As Rassendyll promised to reward her.
7. The best guard for Princess Flavia was ....
   a) Duke Michael
   b) One of the six special men
   c) Rassendyll
   d) Marshal Strakencz
8. What would Marshal Strakencz do if he didn't get a message for three days from Rassendyll?
   a) He would have the authority to be the head of Strelsau.
   b) He would tell the Chief of the Police.
   c) He would collect his soldiers and attack the Castle of Zenda.
   d) He would tell Flavia to marry Michael.

address
betray
bullet
chains
country house
formal
legally
miracle
pipe
quicken



Chapter (6)

Important Vocabulary

address	يخاطب	relative	أحد الأقارب
betray	يخون	royal	ملكى
bullet	رصاصة	safety	أمان
chains	سلاسل	set free	يطلق سراح
country house	بيت ريفى	spy	جاسوس
formal	رسمى	stab	يطعن
legally	قانونيًا/شرعيًا	trick	خدعة/يخدع
miracle	معجزة	trip	رحلة
pipe	أنبوب/ماسورة	wicked	شرير
quicken	يسرّع		





Preparing to save the King
الإعداد لإنقاذ الملك

Rassendyll (the King) told Marshal Strakencz that he had to promise to protect Princess Flavia from the Duke. As his mother was not royal, he could only legally become King if he married the Princess.

Rassendyll (the King) wrote down his orders so that people could believe the Marshal. To cover up the difference in his handwriting, he said that his finger still hurt him.

Rassendyll (the King), Sapt and Fritz got ready to go to Zenda. Before they went, Rassendyll (the King) went to visit Princess Flavia.

Rassendyll (the King) went to tell Flavia that he was leaving Strelsau to go hunting. When she disapproved of that, he said that he was going to hunt Michael. The Princess looked worried.

He asked the Princess to be Queen if he didn't come back. Although she seemed sorry, she said that she would do whatever was right for Ruritania.

Before they left for their journey, Fritz asked a relative who had a large modern country house called Tarlenheim eight kilometres from Zenda to use that house for a hunting trip. The relative agreed.

Another journey to Zenda
رحلة أخرى لزندا

The next day, Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll set off from the capital and arrived at the country house at about midday, with a large party of servants and ten brave and strong gentlemen that Rassendyll (the King) trusted.

They had told those men that Michael had tried to kill the King and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the castle. They knew it was their job to set him free.

A message from the Duke
رسالة من الدوق

Soon, Duke Michael sent the three Ruritanians Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau to visit them with a message. Rupert Hentzau told Rassendyll that Duke Michael and many of his servants had a dangerous illness, so it was best if they stayed away.

Rassendyll (the King) said he was sorry to hear that and asked Rupert about Detchard's injury. Rupert smiled and said that he would be fine.

At the inn once more

في الفندق مرة أخرى

That evening, Rassendyll went to Zenda with Fritz. They did not go near the castle, but went to the inn where Rassendyll had stayed on his first night in Ruritania.

Rassendyll kept the coat over his face as they entered the inn and they asked to have a meal in a quiet room at the back. When the owner's daughter brought the food, he uncovered his face so she could see him.

The girl was afraid and said that she had told her mother that it was the King who had visited them before. She asked the King's forgiveness.

Rassendyll said he would forgive her if she agreed to help them. When he said he wanted to meet Johann, she said that he didn't go to the inn any more as he worked in the castle.

Rassendyll asked her to meet him and ask him to come to the country house to meet the King. They ate the food and went back to Tarlenheim.

As they got off their horses, Sapt ran out of the house to meet them. He told them that one of their men, Bernstein, went out alone in the woods. He saw three men in the trees and one shot him. He was upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm.

Another unsuccessful plan

خطة أخرى فاشلة

The next day, Rupert visited the house alone. He told Rassendyll that the Duke offered him a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.

Rassendyll refused the offer and told him to go away.

Rupert gave him a cold look and asked his servant to prepare his horse. Rassendyll followed him out of the house, and just as he was about to climb on his horse, he stopped and stepped nearer to Rassendyll and suddenly stabbed him in the shoulder with his knife. Rassendyll cried out, but Rupert rode off fast.

Rassendyll was put to bed and told to sleep. When he woke up, it was dark and found Fritz beside him. He told him that a doctor came and examined him and said that his arm would be better soon.

Fritz also told him that the girl had brought Johann to the house. He was downstairs ready and happy to help.



A very useful spy

جاسوس مفيد جدًا

Rassendyll went downstairs to talk to Johann. As they talked to him, he understood that Johann was a weak man but not a wicked one. He said he worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him, and he seemed happy to tell them Michael's secrets.

Johann told them all about the castle and Michael's plans in detail.

He told them that there were two small rooms inside the castle, which they could only reach by crossing the drawbridge. The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground. One room had no windows, so it was always lit by candles. Behind it was a second room with a small window, where the King was kept in chains. From the window, a large stone pipe led down to the castle moat. The first room was always guarded by three of the Six Men.

Michael's wicked plans

خطط مايكل الشريرة

He said the guards were told that, if some people attacked the first room, Detchard should go into the other room and kill the King. The body would then be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water. Detchard would then escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat. The other two men would then follow him and the Duke's horses would take them to safety. So anyone searching the castle would find nothing: just an empty room.

Rassendyll asked what would happen if he attacked the castle with many men.

Johann said if the castle was attacked by a large group of soldiers, they would do the same thing, but one of the Six Men would take the King's place. So when Michael arrived at the castle, he could say that he was only keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he had been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there.

Johann said that the King knew all about those plans.

When Sapt heard this, he told Rassendyll that this time next year he would still be King. It was impossible to save the King alive. Rassendyll felt worried and afraid when he remembered that Michael would always be there ready to take his place.

Rassendyll thanked Johann and asked him not to tell anyone about the name of the prisoner in the castle.

When Johann left, Rassendyll thought hard and said that there were two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive, one was if they had a miracle, and the other was if one of the Duke's men betrayed him.

General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Spies .... their country by selling its secrets to other governments.
a) honour b) betray c) keep d) serve

2 The young soldier was shot through the head by a sniper's ....
a) sword b) knife c) arm d) bullet

3 It's a .... that nobody was killed in the crash.
a) miracle b) pity c) shock d) fright

4 The criminal .... the officer in the arm with a sharp knife.
a) touched b) shot c) stabbed d) fixed

5 The famous actress played the part of the .... witch in the play who hurt people a lot.
a) good b) honourable c) wicked d) excited

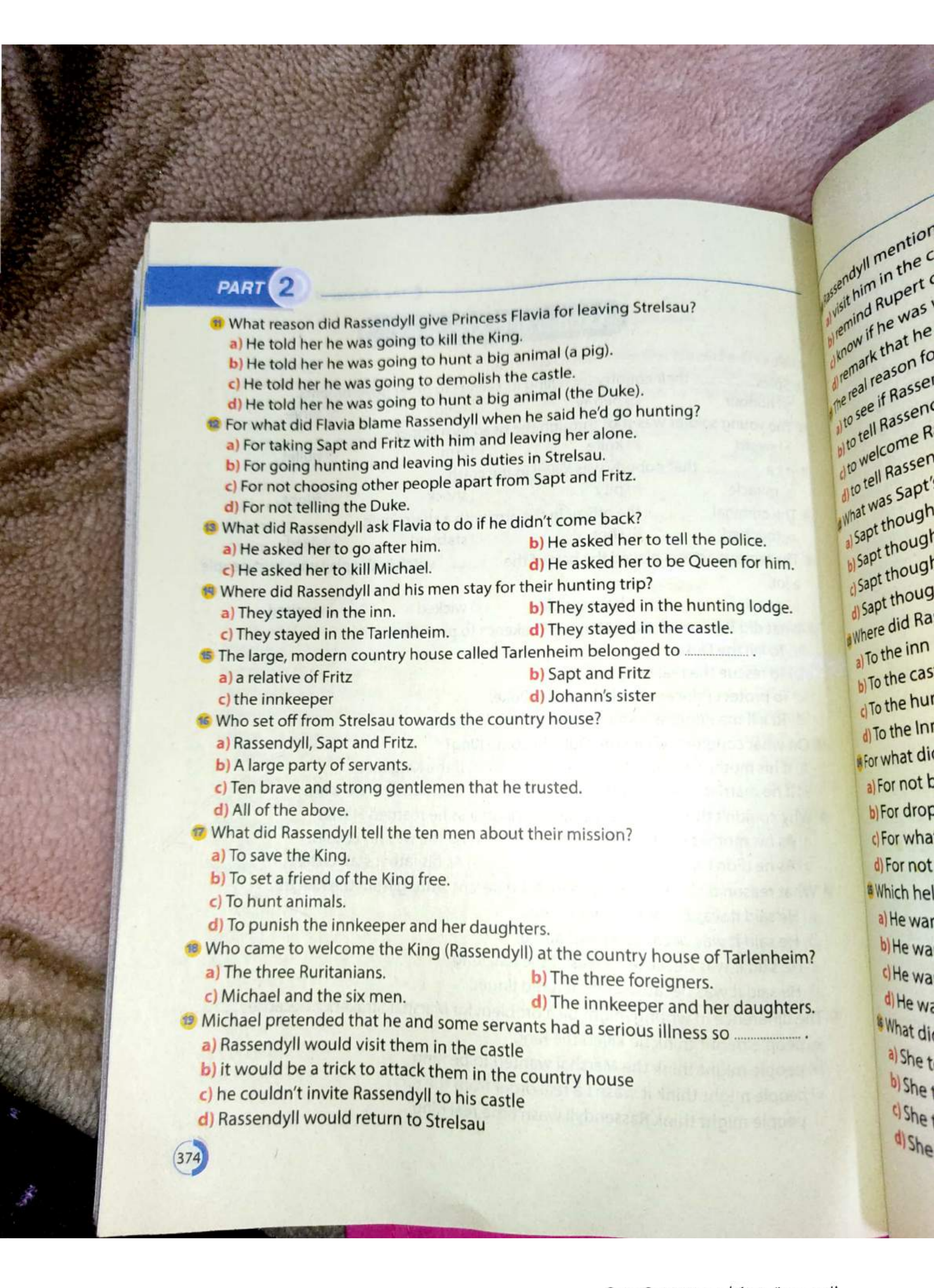
6 What did Rassendyll want Marshal Strakencz to promise him?
a) To kill the Duke.
b) To rescue the real King.
c) To protect Princess Flavia from the Duke.
d) To kill the Princess if she wanted to be a Queen.

7 On what condition could the Duke become King?
a) If his mother was loyal.
b) If the King died.
c) If he married the Princess.
d) If his father were alive.

8 Why couldn't the Duke ever become King unless he married Flavia?
a) As his mother wasn't royal.
b) As he didn't have red hair.
c) As she was his cousin.
d) As his father stated that.

9 What reason did Rassendyll give for his different writing from the King's?
a) He said it was because he was tired.
b) He said it was because he was afraid.
c) He said it was because he wasn't the real King.
d) He said it was because of his injured finger.

10 The difference in writing might be a problem for Marshal Strakencz because ....
a) people might think he killed the King
b) people might think the Marshal wanted to be King
c) people might think it wasn't a real order from the King
d) people might think Rassendyll wasn't the real King



PART 2

11 What reason did Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau?
a) He told her he was going to kill the King.
b) He told her he was going to hunt a big animal (a pig).
c) He told her he was going to demolish the castle.
d) He told her he was going to hunt a big animal (the Duke).

12 For what did Flavia blame Rassendyll when he said he'd go hunting?
a) For taking Sapt and Fritz with him and leaving her alone.
b) For going hunting and leaving his duties in Strelsau.
c) For not choosing other people apart from Sapt and Fritz.
d) For not telling the Duke.

13 What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he didn't come back?
a) He asked her to go after him.
b) He asked her to tell the police.
c) He asked her to kill Michael.
d) He asked her to be Queen for him.

14 Where did Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip?
a) They stayed in the inn.
b) They stayed in the hunting lodge.
c) They stayed in the Tarlenheim.
d) They stayed in the castle.

15 The large, modern country house called Tarlenheim belonged to ....
a) a relative of Fritz
b) Sapt and Fritz
c) the innkeeper
d) Johann's sister

16 Who set off from Strelsau towards the country house?
a) Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz.
b) A large party of servants.
c) Ten brave and strong gentlemen that he trusted.
d) All of the above.

17 What did Rassendyll tell the ten men about their mission?
a) To save the King.
b) To set a friend of the King free.
c) To hunt animals.
d) To punish the innkeeper and her daughters.

18 Who came to welcome the King (Rassendyll) at the country house of Tarlenheim?
a) The three Ruritanians.
b) The three foreigners.
c) Michael and the six men.
d) The innkeeper and her daughters.

19 Michael pretended that he and some servants had a serious illness so ....
a) Rassendyll would visit them in the castle
b) it would be a trick to attack them in the country house
c) he couldn't invite Rassendyll to his castle
d) Rassendyll would return to Strelsau

20 Rassendyll mentioned that Detchard was injured to ....

a) visit him in the castle
b) remind Rupert of his skill as a fighter
c) know if he was well again
d) remark that he wasn't a strong man

21 The real reason for the visit of the three Ruritanians to the country house was ....

a) to see if Rassendyll wanted anything
b) to tell Rassendyll that Michael and most of his men were ill
c) to welcome Rassendyll warmly
d) to tell Rassendyll that he couldn't hide anything from them

22 What was Sapt's opinion of Rupert Hentzau?

a) Sapt thought that Rupert was a coward.
b) Sapt thought that Rupert was the biggest liar in Ruritania.
c) Sapt thought that Rupert was the worst criminal in Ruritania.
d) Sapt thought that Rupert was a good and brave man.

23 Where did Rassendyll and Fritz go during their visit to Zenda? Why?

a) To the inn as he wanted the innkeeper's daughter's help.
b) To the castle as he wanted to rescue the King.
c) To the hunting lodge for hunting.
d) To the Inn as he wanted to reward the innkeeper and her daughter.

24 For what did the innkeeper's daughter apologise?

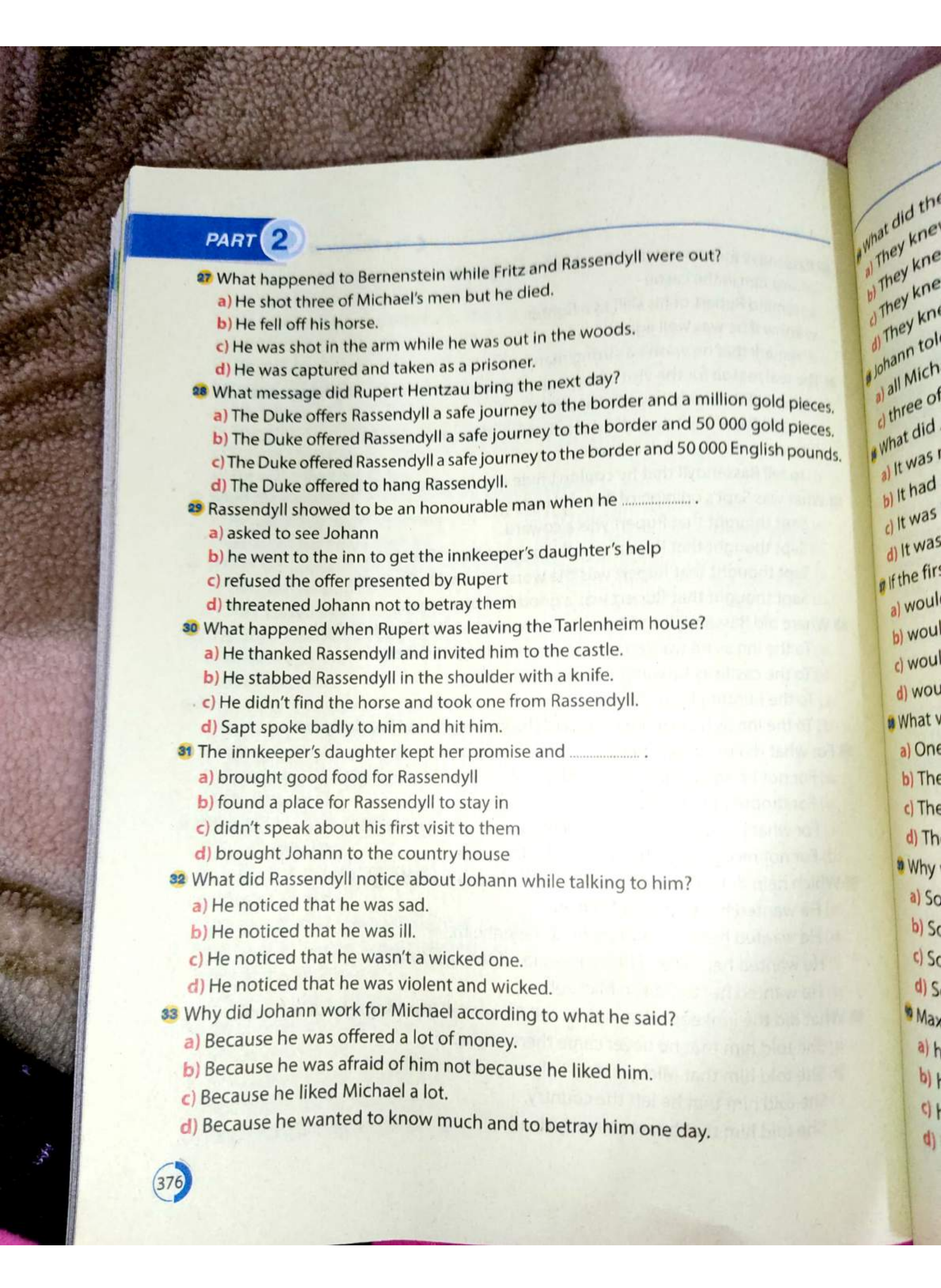
a) For not bringing the food quickly.
b) For dropping the plates.
c) For what her mother had said before.
d) For not recognising the King for the first time.

25 Which help did Rassendyll need from the innkeeper's daughter?

a) He wanted her to spy on Michael.
b) He wanted her to bring Johann to Tarlenheim.
c) He wanted her to send him a message if she saw Johann.
d) He wanted her to poison Michael.

26 What did the innkeeper's daughter tell Rassendyll (the King) about Johann?

a) She told him that he never came there anymore.
b) She told him that Michael didn't allow him to visit the inn.
c) She told him that he left the country.
d) She told him that he was already dead.



PART 2

27 What happened to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll were out?
   a) He shot three of Michael's men but he died.
   b) He fell off his horse.
   c) He was shot in the arm while he was out in the woods.
   d) He was captured and taken as a prisoner.

28 What message did Rupert Hentzau bring the next day?
   a) The Duke offers Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.
   b) The Duke offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and 50 000 gold pieces.
   c) The Duke offered Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and 50 000 English pounds.
   d) The Duke offered to hang Rassendyll.

29 Rassendyll showed to be an honourable man when he ....
   a) asked to see Johann
   b) he went to the inn to get the innkeeper's daughter's help
   c) refused the offer presented by Rupert
   d) threatened Johann not to betray them

30 What happened when Rupert was leaving the Tarlenheim house?
   a) He thanked Rassendyll and invited him to the castle.
   b) He stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder with a knife.
   c) He didn't find the horse and took one from Rassendyll.
   d) Sapt spoke badly to him and hit him.

31 The innkeeper's daughter kept her promise and ....
   a) brought good food for Rassendyll
   b) found a place for Rassendyll to stay in
   c) didn't speak about his first visit to them
   d) brought Johann to the country house

32 What did Rassendyll notice about Johann while talking to him?
   a) He noticed that he was sad.
   b) He noticed that he was ill.
   c) He noticed that he wasn't a wicked one.
   d) He noticed that he was violent and wicked.

33 Why did Johann work for Michael according to what he said?
   a) Because he was offered a lot of money.
   b) Because he was afraid of him not because he liked him.
   c) Because he liked Michael a lot.
   d) Because he wanted to know much and to betray him one day.

34 What did they know from Johann?

a) They knew the Duke's plans.

b) They knew the number of Michael's men.

c) They knew how the drawbridge worked.

d) They knew how deep the moat was.

35 Johann told Rassendyll that the outer room was always guarded by ....

a) all Michael's men

b) Rupert

c) three of the Six Men

d) Antoinette

36 What did Johann say about the second room inside the castle?

a) It was near the Duke's room.

b) It had a small window, from which a large stone pipe led down to the castle moat.

c) It was lit by strong lights.

d) It was on the second floor.

37 If the first room was attacked by anyone, the King ....

a) would be killed and buried in his room

b) would be killed and the body would then be put down the pipe

c) would be helped by Michael's men to escape from the window

d) would call for help and Rassendyll would come soon

38 What was the 2nd plan to get rid of the King if many people attacked the castle?

a) One of Michael's men would take the King's place.

b) They would kill the King and leave his body in the room.

c) They would unchain the King and let him escape.

d) The guards would escape and leave the King alive.

39 Why would one of the Six Men take the King's place?

a) So as to keep the room.

b) So as to defend himself against the attackers.

c) So that no one could believe that the King was ever there.

d) So as to tell the attackers that the King escaped.

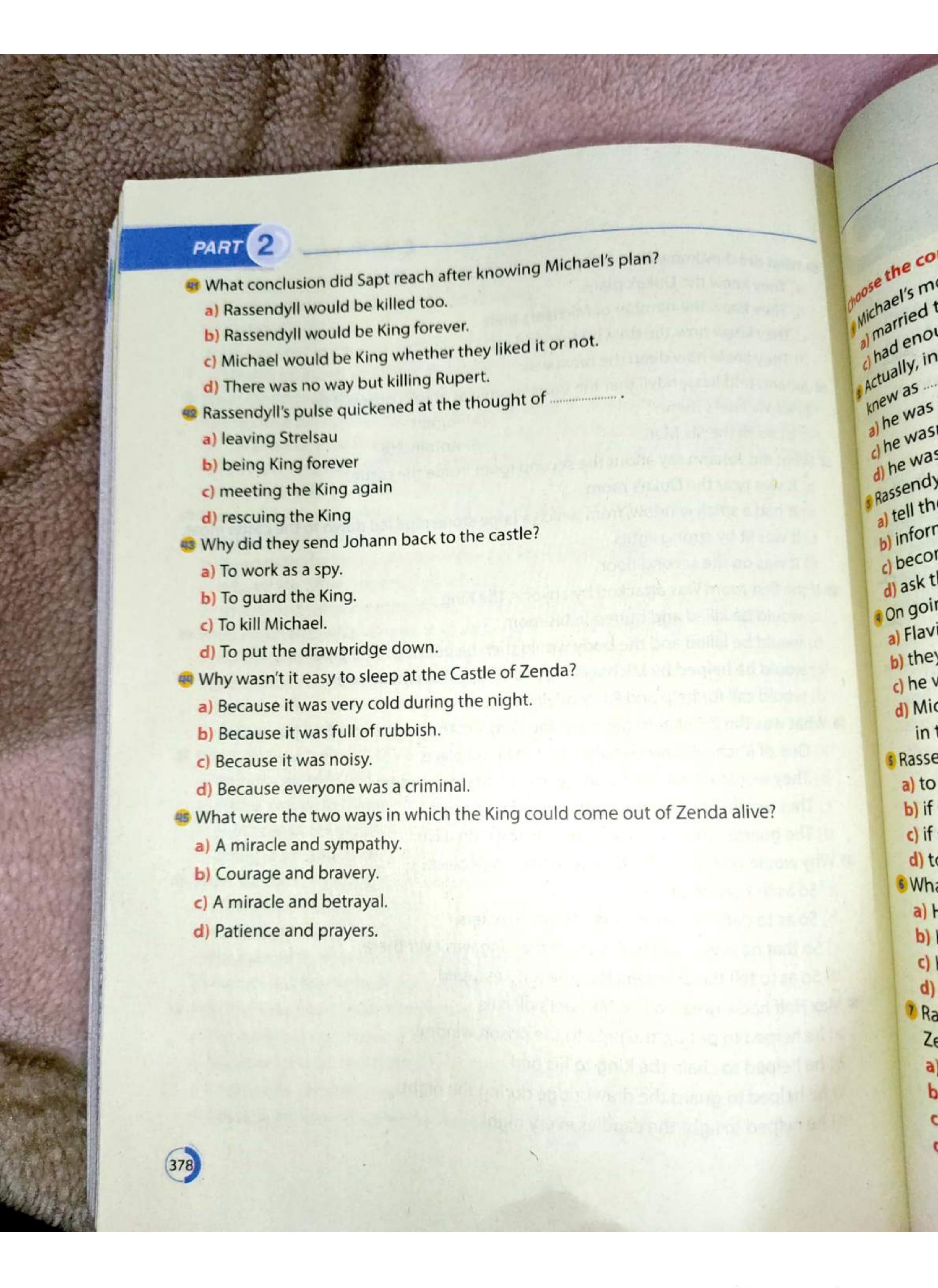
40 Max Holf had a great role in Michael's plan as ....

a) he helped to put up the pipe to the prison window

b) he helped to chain the King to his bed

c) he helped to guard the drawbridge during the night

d) he helped to light the candles every night



PART 2

41 What conclusion did Sapt reach after knowing Michael's plan?

a) Rassendyll would be killed too.

b) Rassendyll would be King forever.

c) Michael would be King whether they liked it or not.

d) There was no way but killing Rupert.

42 Rassendyll's pulse quickened at the thought of ....

a) leaving Strelsau

b) being King forever

c) meeting the King again

d) rescuing the King

43 Why did they send Johann back to the castle?

a) To work as a spy.

b) To guard the King.

c) To kill Michael.

d) To put the drawbridge down.

44 Why wasn't it easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda?

a) Because it was very cold during the night.

b) Because it was full of rubbish.

c) Because it was noisy.

d) Because everyone was a criminal.

45 What were the two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive?

a) A miracle and sympathy.

b) Courage and bravery.

c) A miracle and betrayal.

d) Patience and prayers.

Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Michael's mother was not royal and he could only legally become King if he ....
a) married the Princess
b) killed the real King
c) had enough money
d) tried to rescue the King

2 Actually, in Ruritania, Rassendyll's writing was different from the usual writing people knew as ....
a) he was bad at writing German
b) his finger was wounded
c) he wasn't the real King
d) he was in a hurry and wanted to leave for England

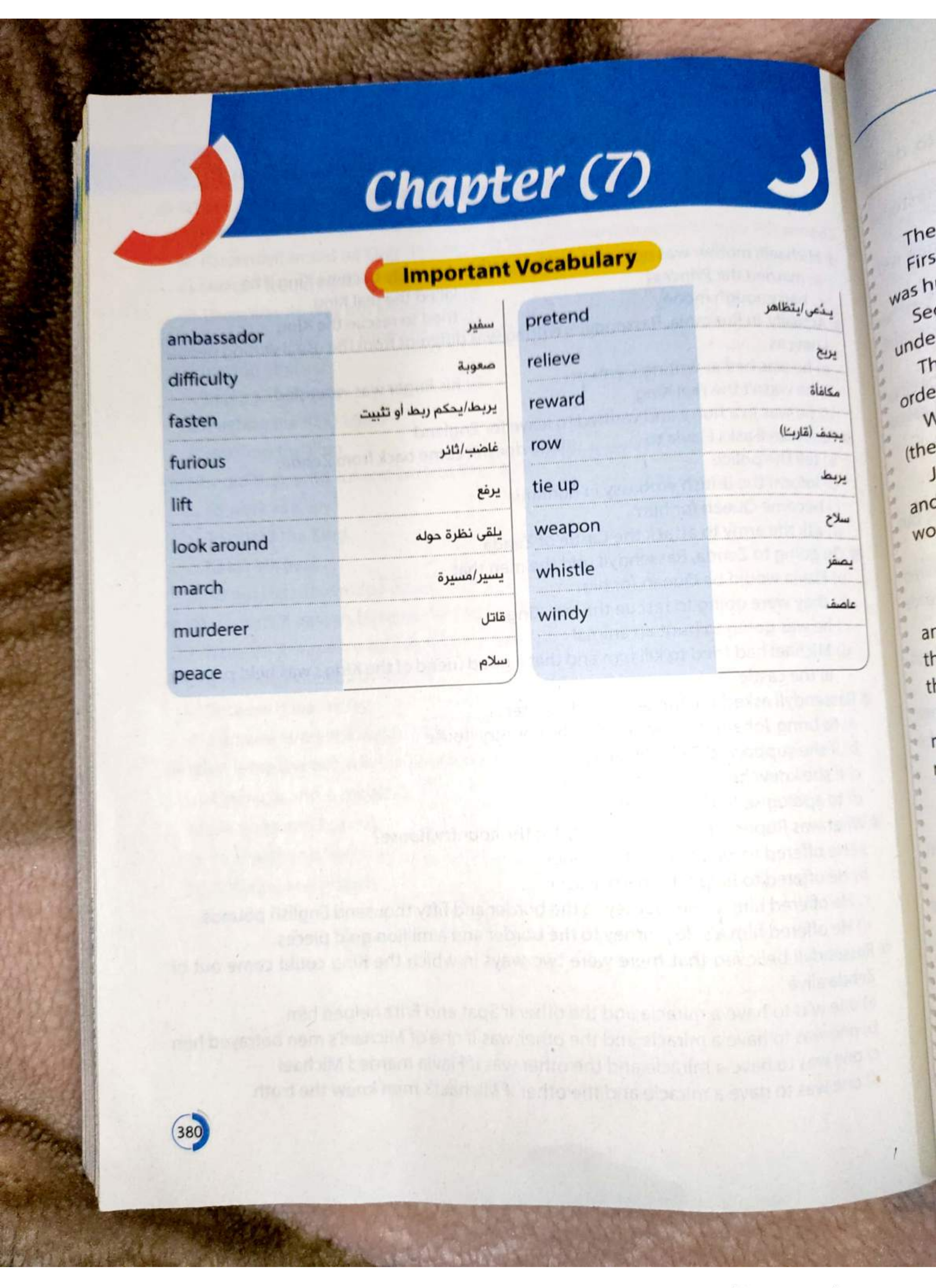
3 Rassendyll asks Flavia to .... if he doesn't come back from Zenda.
a) tell the police
b) inform the British embassy in Ruritania
c) become Queen for him
d) ask the army to attack the Castle of Zenda

4 On going to Zenda, Rassendyll told the men that ....
a) Flavia would be Queen for him
b) they were going to rescue the real King
c) he was going to hunt an animal
d) Michael had tried to kill him and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the castle

5 Rassendyll asked the innkeeper's daughter ....
a) to bring Johann to meet him at the country house
b) if she supported Duke Michael
c) if she knew he wasn't the real King
d) to apologise to the real King

6 What was Rupert's offer to Rassendyll in the country house?
a) He offered to kill the King for money.
b) He offered to help him marry Flavia.
c) He offered him a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.
d) He offered him a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.

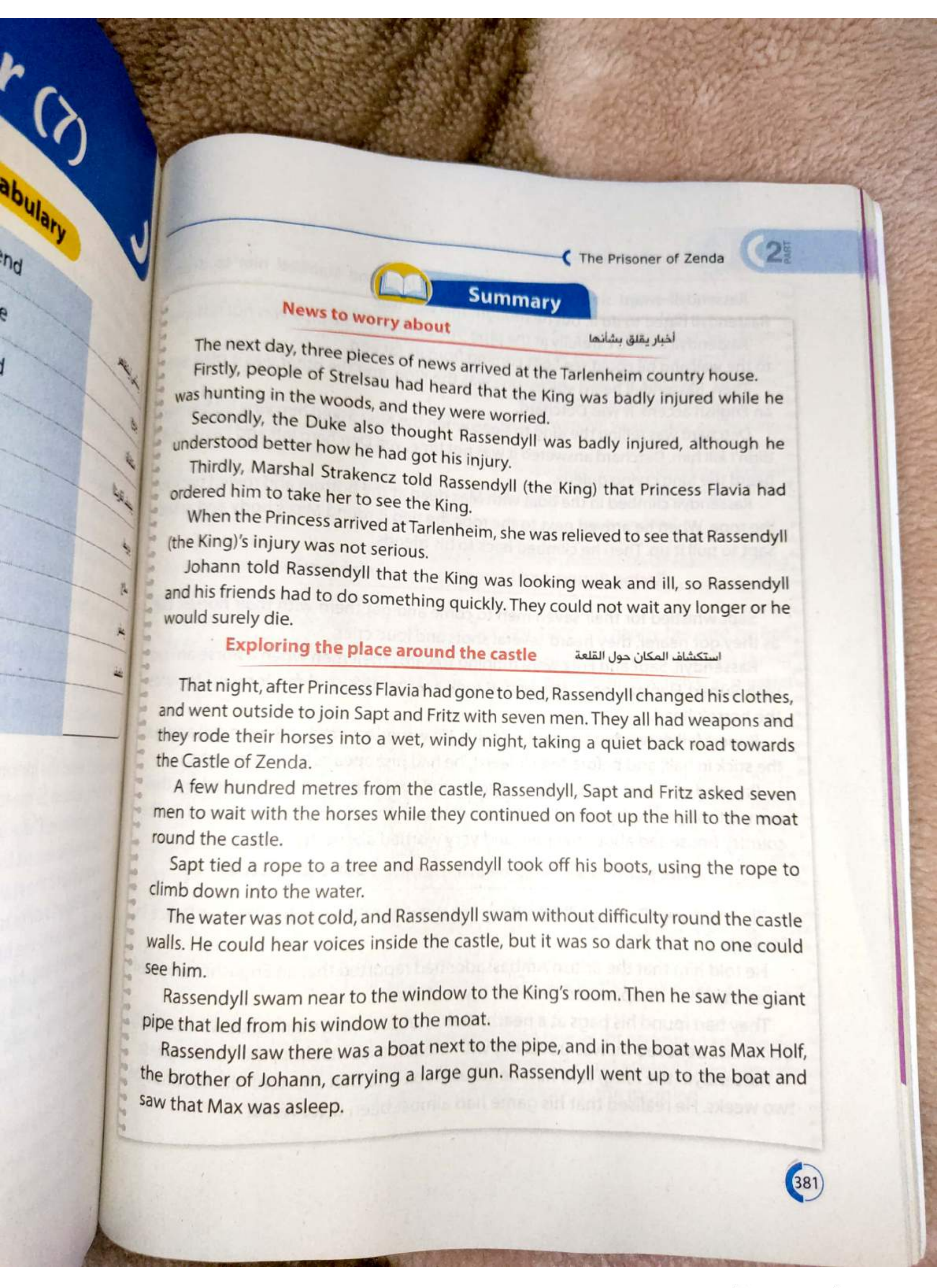
7 Rassendyll believed that there were two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive ....
a) one was to have a miracle and the other if Spat and Fritz helped him
b) one was to have a miracle and the other was if one of Michael's men betrayed him
c) one was to have a miracle and the other was if Flavia married Michael
d) one was to have a miracle and the other if Michael's men knew the truth



Chapter (7)

Important Vocabulary

ambassador	سفير	pretend	يدّعي/يتظاهر
difficulty	صعوبة	relieve	يريح
fasten	يربط/يحكم ربط أو تثبيت	reward	مكافأة
furious	غاضب/ثائر	row	يجدف (قاربًا)
lift	يرفع	tie up	يربط
look around	يلقى نظرة حوله	weapon	سلاح
march	يسير/مسيرة	whistle	يصفر
murderer	قاتل	windy	عاصف
peace	سلام		



Summary

News to worry about
أخبار يقلق بشأنها

The next day, three pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house.

Firstly, people of Strelsau had heard that the King was badly injured while he was hunting in the woods, and they were worried.

Secondly, the Duke also thought Rassendyll was badly injured, although he understood better how he had got his injury.

Thirdly, Marshal Strakencz told Rassendyll (the King) that Princess Flavia had ordered him to take her to see the King.

When the Princess arrived at Tarlenheim, she was relieved to see that Rassendyll (the King)'s injury was not serious.

Johann told Rassendyll that the King was looking weak and ill, so Rassendyll and his friends had to do something quickly. They could not wait any longer or he would surely die.

Exploring the place around the castle
استكشاف المكان حول القلعة

That night, after Princess Flavia had gone to bed, Rassendyll changed his clothes, and went outside to join Sapt and Fritz with seven men. They all had weapons and they rode their horses into a wet, windy night, taking a quiet back road towards the Castle of Zenda.

A few hundred metres from the castle, Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz asked seven men to wait with the horses while they continued on foot up the hill to the moat round the castle.

Sapt tied a rope to a tree and Rassendyll took off his boots, using the rope to climb down into the water.

The water was not cold, and Rassendyll swam without difficulty round the castle walls. He could hear voices inside the castle, but it was so dark that no one could see him.

Rassendyll swam near to the window to the King's room. Then he saw the giant pipe that led from his window to the moat.

Rassendyll saw there was a boat next to the pipe, and in the boat was Max Holf, the brother of Johann, carrying a large gun. Rassendyll went up to the boat and saw that Max was asleep.

Rassendyll swam slowly and silently up to Max and stabbed him to death. Rassendyll hated to do it, but he thought this was war.

Rassendyll looked carefully at the pipe. The bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall and he could see light coming from its far end.

Then, Rassendyll heard voices: one was the King, and the other was a man with an English accent. It was Detchard.

Detchard was telling the King to sleep when the King asked him why his brother didn't kill him. Detchard answered it was not time, yet. Detchard left and Rassendyll heard the King crying quietly.

Rassendyll climbed in the boat with Max dead at the bottom and rowed back to the rope. When he arrived next to the rope, he tied it round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up. Then he climbed back to his friends.

Facing Rupert and his men مواجهة روبرت ورجاله

Sapt whistled for their seven men to come and get them with their horses, but as they got nearer, they heard several shots and loud cries.

Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz were running towards their men when a horse arrived with Rupert Hentzau on it. Rassendyll took a large stick, and ran forward towards the horse's head.

Rupert fell down, but he was too quick. He waved a sword at Rassendyll and cut the stick in half, and before they knew it, he had disappeared into the night.

Rassendyll found out that Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed by their men, although the fight had cost them three of their men. They returned to the country house sad about the men and very worried about the King.

The game is about to be discovered اللعبة على وشك الاكتشاف

The next day, Rassendyll (the King) received a visit from the Chief of Police in Strelsau.

He told him that the British Ambassador had reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll had disappeared near the town of Zenda.

They had found his bags at a nearby train station, and a man called Mr Featherly from Paris believed he was travelling with Madame de Mauban, the Duke's guest.

Rassendyll (the King) told him he would look into that and told him to return in two weeks. He realised that his game had almost been discovered.

An evil plan

خطة شريرة

That day Rassendyll saw Rupert riding out on his horse. Rassendyll quickly caught up with him. Rassendyll offered him to set the King free and stop working for Michael.

Rupert was very wicked and offered Rassendyll a different evil plan. He asked Rassendyll to attack the castle bravely at a time he would arrange. Fritz, Sapt, Michael and the King would be killed. Then, Rassendyll would stay as the King, and Rupert would have a reward.

Rassendyll was shocked at this plan. Yet, he knew that Rupert didn't love Michael and that he would work against him. Rassendyll didn't tell Sapt about that.

Dealing with two ladies

التعامل مع سيدتين

Later that day, Johann got Rassendyll a letter from Antoinette de Mauban telling him that Michael knew that she helped him and was keeping her a prisoner. She asked him to save her.

Rassendyll heard that the people in Strelsau were not happy because he had been away from them for so long. To make them happy, he sent messengers saying that Flavia and the King had arranged a date for their wedding, which was greeted with great joy.

News from the castle

أخبار من القلعة

The next day Johann, Rassendyll's spy at the castle, brought very important news.

Firstly, he told Rassendyll that the Duke was furious to hear about the wedding.

Secondly, the King had become so ill that the Duke had asked for a doctor to examine him. The doctor advised him to set the King free at once, but the Duke refused, adding that the doctor would have to stay with him until he was better or died. Antoinette de Mauban was helping to look after the King.

Thirdly, he told Rassendyll where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion, and who had the keys to the doors.

Finally, he said there were new servants at the castle and they didn't know the King's a prisoner.

Rassendyll offered Johann fifty thousand gold pieces for an important mission in the castle. He gave him a letter to give to Antoinette and asked him to open the front door to the mansion the next day at two o'clock in the morning.

A risky plan to rescue the King خطة خطيرة لإنقاذ الملك

After Johann left, Rassendyll told Sapt and Fritz about his plan to rescue the King which he thought to be the only chance to do so. The plan was as follows:

Sapt would take some men to the front door of the mansion. When Johann opened the door, they would quickly enter and tie up the servants if they did not want to help the King.

Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room. The Duke would surely come to see what was happening, and they could take him. Then there would only be two men left guarding the King, so they would need to move quickly before they hurt him.

At the same time, the house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed they were having a ball.

Marshal Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess and if, the next day, they did not return, he would then march to the castle and ask to see the King at once. If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen.

Carrying out the plan تنفيذ الخطة

At midnight, Sapt took his men to the mansion. Rassendyll rode alone a different way to the castle, with clothes to keep him warm, weapons and a rope.

Half an hour later, Rassendyll was back by the moat. He left the horse and gun in some trees, tied some rope to another tree and climbed down into the water.

Rassendyll swam back to the pipe below the window. He looked up at the mansion and saw that the lights were on in the windows to the Duke's and Madame de Mauban's rooms.

Interrupting the plan تعطيل / مقاطعة الخطة

Rassendyll saw Rupert walk towards the castle onto the drawbridge with De Gautet. They walked across and shortly after the bridge went up.

A few minutes later, Rupert returned alone. He looked around and then quietly climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across. Then he climbed some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion.

General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mother was .... with my elder brother for leaving our little sister alone in the house.
a) furious b) pleased c) excited d) inventive

2 The man tried to .... the tension by making a joke.
a) increase b) relieve c) double d) help

3 The criminal was charged with carrying a .... in a public place and was taken to prison.
a) stick b) space c) weapon d) subject

4 I heard this song on the radio and I've been .... it all day.
a) reading b) inspecting c) replying d) whistling

5 The farmer .... the rope to a tree and attached the goat there.
a) ruled b) rolled c) fastened d) lessened

6 What did the Princess do when she knew that the King was injured?
a) She told the Marshal to make her a Queen.
b) She insisted on seeing him.
c) She sent him a clever doctor.
d) She sent a coach to fetch him to Strelsau.

7 The people of Strelsau were worried about the King and that showed that ....
a) they wanted to get rid of him
b) they wanted to know the cause of his injury
c) they loved their King and they were worried about their country
d) they wanted to kill the Duke

8 What did Rassendyll consider the strangest thing in the history of any country?
a) There was a war in a country and a few people knew about it.
b) A woman was assigned to be a Queen.
c) The King was in prison and some people wanted to rescue him.
d) The King was imprisoned before his marriage.

9 What did Johann tell Rassendyll about the real King's condition?
a) He told him the King was ill and weak.
b) He told him the King was well and healthy.
c) He told him the King refused to eat.
d) He told him the King was suffering from amnesia.

PART 2

10 Who set out for Zenda secretly?

a) Rassendyll and Sapt with seven gentlemen.
b) Rassendyll and Fritz with seven gentlemen.
c) Sapt and Rassendyll, with Fritz and ten gentlemen.
d) Sapt and Rassendyll, with Fritz and seven men.

11 Rassendyll and the others went to the castle so that ....

a) they could demolish it
b) they could kill Max Holf
c) they could make plans to rescue the King
d) they could swim in the moat

12 How did Rassendyll go down into the water?

a) He climbed down a ladder.
b) He jumped into the water.
c) He took the stairs.
d) He climbed down using a rope.

13 What did Rassendyll find next to the pipe?

a) He found the King lying in bed.
b) He found the three foreigners guarding the King.
c) He found Detchard punishing the King.
d) He found a boat and Max Holf carrying a large gun in it.

14 How did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?

a) He stabbed him with a knife.
b) He shot him.
c) He hanged him with a rope.
d) He hit him with a hard stick.

15 Why did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?

a) Because he was Johann's brother.
b) Because Max was working for the enemy.
c) Because his mother was Michael's spy.
d) Because he was riding to Zenda with Michael.

16 What did Rassendyll hear at the other end of the pipe?

a) He heard the King talking to Detchard.
b) He heard Michael threatening the King.
c) He heard Rupert shouting at the King.
d) He heard Michael shouting at his men.

17 What showed that the King was in great despair in his imprisonment?

a) He told Detchard he didn't want to eat.
b) He didn't want to meet anyone.
c) He asked why Michael didn't kill him.
d) He asked Detchard to put him in prison.

What did Rassendyll do with Max's body?

a) He asked Sapt, Fritz and the seven men to bury it in sand.
b) He tied it with chains and threw it in the moat.
c) He tied the rope round the body, and asked Sapt to pull it up.
d) He left it in the boat.

The seven gentlemen went with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle to ....

a) carry Max's body out of the water after killing him
b) help Rassendyll destroy the pipe and rescue the King
c) carry the guns and the clothes out of water
d) protect the horses in case the Duke's men attacked

Who got killed in the fight in the woods?

a) Two of the Duke's Six Men and three of Rassendyll's men.
b) Three of the Duke's Six Men and three of Rassendyll's men.
c) Two of Rassendyll's men and three of the Duke's Six Men.
d) Three of the Duke's Six Men and one of Rassendyll's men.

Rupert could escape Rassendyll's attack by ....

a) jumping into the moat
b) stabbing Rassendyll with his sword
c) getting off his horse and running
d) cutting the stick in half with his sword

Why did the Chief of Police in Strelsau come to Zenda?

a) To help Rassendyll with his fight against the Duke.
b) To ask about the Princess and the Marshal.
c) To see the King as he heard that he was injured.
d) To search for a young Englishman called Rassendyll.

Why was the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?

a) As his family reported that he had disappeared.
b) As Mr Featherly wanted to meet him.
c) As Sir Jacob wanted him to work for him.
d) As Rose wanted to write the book he promised to write.

Why did Rassendyll send the Chief of Police back to Strelsau?

a) To look for Rassendyll there.
b) To tell the ambassador that Rassendyll never came to Zenda.
c) He didn't want any more difficult questions.
d) None of these.



25 How did Rassendyll try to make Rupert work with him?
a) He said he would help him if he set the King free.
b) He offered him 50 000 pounds to set the King free.
c) He threatened to punish him.
d) He said he would make him a Duke.

26 What showed you that Rupert hated the Duke and was ready to betray him?
a) Rupert said that he was ready to arrest him.
b) Rupert said that he always worked with him.
c) Rupert said he injured him before.
d) Rupert said he nearly killed him the night before.

27 What was Rupert's plan as a condition to work with Rassendyll?
a) He wanted to get rid of the King, Sapt, Fritz and Michael.
b) He wanted to kill Michael and the King and would arrest Sapt and Fritz.
c) He wanted to be King.
d) He wanted Rassendyll to go back to England.

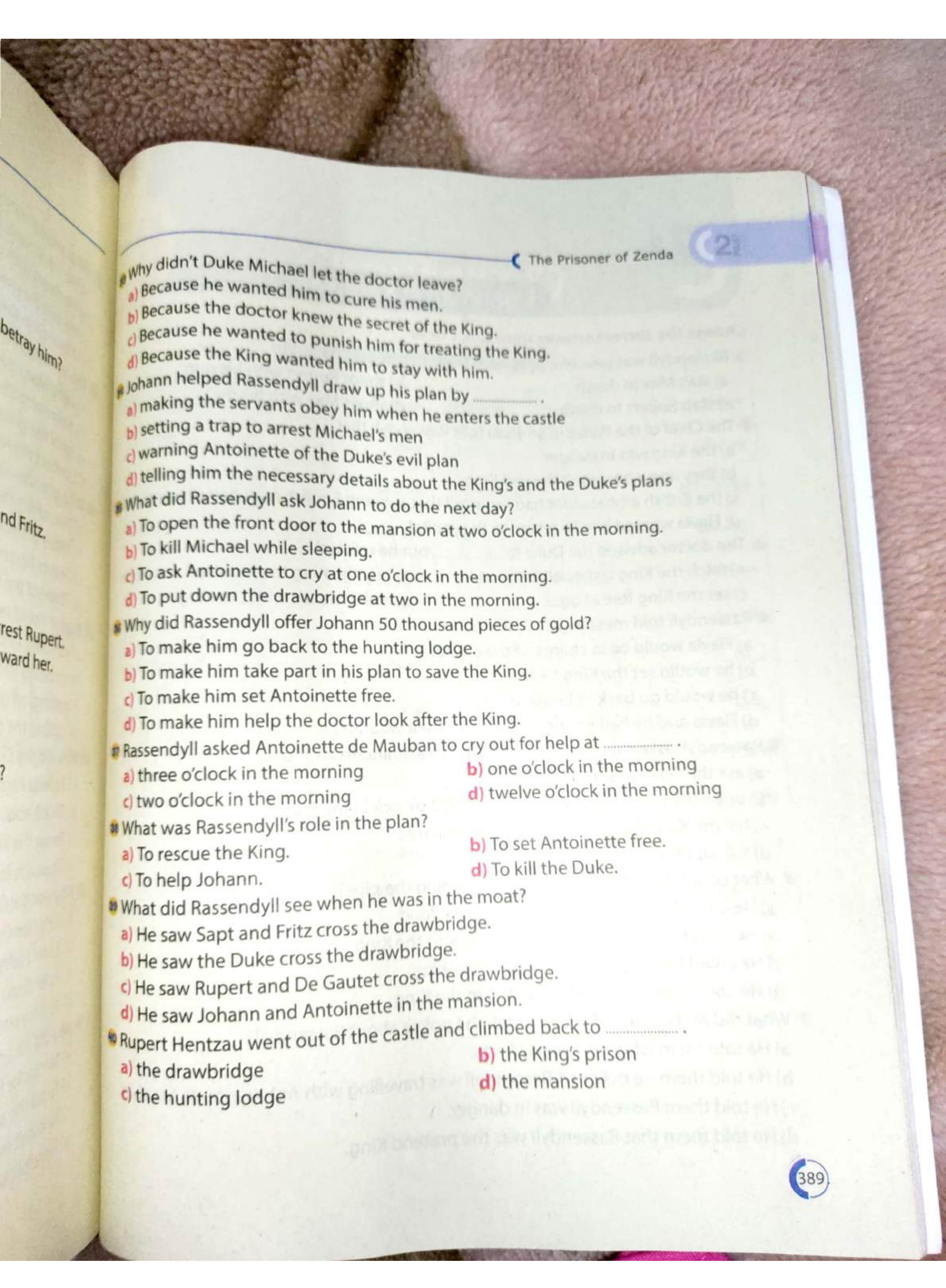
28 What did Antoinette ask Rassendyll to do in her second message?
a) She asked him to kill Michael.
b) She asked him to arrest Rupert.
c) She asked him to save her.
d) She asked him to reward her.

29 Antoinette de Mauban was kept a prisoner ....
a) in the castle
b) in the cellar
c) in the lodge
d) in the mansion

30 Why is Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?
a) As she helped Rassendyll in the summer house.
b) As she helped Rupert when they fought the day before.
c) As she looked after the King in the castle.
d) As she wanted to return to France.

31 Rassendyll tried to make the people in Strelsau happy by ....
a) arranging a date for the wedding
b) making Flavia return to Strelsau with the Marshal
c) declaring that the Duke would be the next King
d) sending the Chief of Police again to Strelsau

32 What did the doctor advise the Duke to do?
a) To keep the King in prison.
b) To stay with the King.
c) To move him to the mansion for recreation.
d) To set the King free at once.



33 Why didn't Duke Michael let the doctor leave?
a) Because he wanted him to cure his men.
b) Because the doctor knew the secret of the King.
c) Because he wanted to punish him for treating the King.
d) Because the King wanted him to stay with him.

34 Johann helped Rassendyll draw up his plan by ....
a) making the servants obey him when he enters the castle
b) setting a trap to arrest Michael's men
c) warning Antoinette of the Duke's evil plan
d) telling him the necessary details about the King's and the Duke's plans

35 What did Rassendyll ask Johann to do the next day?
a) To open the front door to the mansion at two o'clock in the morning.
b) To kill Michael while sleeping.
c) To ask Antoinette to cry at one o'clock in the morning.
d) To put down the drawbridge at two in the morning.

36 Why did Rassendyll offer Johann 50 thousand pieces of gold?
a) To make him go back to the hunting lodge.
b) To make him take part in his plan to save the King.
c) To make him set Antoinette free.
d) To make him help the doctor look after the King.

37 Rassendyll asked Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at ....
a) three o'clock in the morning
b) one o'clock in the morning
c) two o'clock in the morning
d) twelve o'clock in the morning

38 What was Rassendyll's role in the plan?
a) To rescue the King.
b) To set Antoinette free.
c) To help Johann.
d) To kill the Duke.

39 What did Rassendyll see when he was in the moat?
a) He saw Sapt and Fritz cross the drawbridge.
b) He saw the Duke cross the drawbridge.
c) He saw Rupert and De Gautet cross the drawbridge.
d) He saw Johann and Antoinette in the mansion.

40 Rupert Hentzau went out of the castle and climbed back to ....
a) the drawbridge
b) the King's prison
c) the hunting lodge
d) the mansion



Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rassendyll was peaceful by nature. However, he was forced to ....
   - **a)** stab Max to death
   - **b)** shoot Rupert with his gun
   - **c)** stab Rupert to death
   - **d)** shoot Max with his gun
2. The Chief of the Police in Strelsau told Rassendyll that ....
   - **a)** the King was in danger
   - **b)** they knew he wasn't the real King
   - **c)** the British ambassador had reported that a young English man had disappeared
   - **d)** Flavia wanted him to return to the capital
3. The doctor advised the Duke to ...., but he refused.
   - **a)** fetch the King a specialised doctor
   - **b)** buy the King the required medicine
   - **c)** set the King free at once
   - **d)** make friends with the King
4. Rassendyll told messengers that ....
   - **a)** Flavia would be in charge of the capital
   - **b)** he would set the King free
   - **c)** he would go back to England
   - **d)** Flavia and he had arranged a date for their wedding
5. Rassendyll asked Johann to give a letter to Antoinette and to ....
   - **a)** ask the Duke to set the King free
   - **b)** open the front door to the mansion at 2 o'clock in the morning
   - **c)** tell the King that his men would set him free
   - **d)** kill Sapt's men
6. What could Rassendyll hear while examining the pipe?
   - **a)** He could hear the King asking for more food.
   - **b)** He could hear Michael speaking badly to the King.
   - **c)** He could hear Johann speaking to the King.
   - **d)** He could hear Detchard speaking to the King.
7. What did Mr Featherly from Paris tell the police about Rassendyll?
   - **a)** He told them where Rassendyll was.
   - **b)** He told them he believed Rassendyll was travelling with Antoinette de Mauban.
   - **c)** He told them Rassendyll was in danger.
   - **d)** He told them that Rassendyll was the pretend King.

Chapter (8)

Important Vocabulary

alive	على قيد الحياة	leaning	مستندًا
amazement	ذهول	moan	يئن/يتألم
approach	يقترب من	nonsense	لغو/كلام فارغ
chained	مقيد بسلاسل	party	فوج/جماعة
confident	واثق	responsibilities	مسئوليات
corner	ركن	shadow	ظل/خيال
disappointed	مُحبَط	stage	مرحلة
duties	واجبات	strike	يضرب
evil	شرير	swordsman	مبارز بالسيف
expect	يتوقع	tear	يمزق
ignore	يتجاهل	whisper	يهمس
leader	قائد	wounded	مجروح/مصاب



PART 2



Summary

Rupert's evil plan
خطة روبرت الشريرة

When Rupert disappeared into the mansion, Rassendyll slowly climbed out and waited by the drawbridge gate next to the castle.

It was about one o'clock in the morning when Rassendyll heard a loud noise from the mansion.

It was Antoinette de Mauban crying for help. This was exactly what Rassendyll had asked her to say in his message to her, but it was around an hour too early, before Sapt and the others reached the front door to the mansion, and before Johann had time to open it.

Then Antoinette called again. This time she said it was Rupert Hentzau who was in her room. Michael ran to her room with his servants.

Rupert said that he wanted to punish her as she was writing letters to Rassendyll. Michael said that he couldn't punish her as she was his guest.

Rassendyll could hear a noisy sword fight in the room. He saw Rupert striking his sword at Johann calling him Rassendyll's spy.

The next moment Rassendyll heard a cry and Rupert jumped out of the window and down into the moat below, where he swam away.

Saving the King
إنقاذ الملك

A minute later, De Gautet appeared in front of Rassendyll who struck him with his sword and he fell to the ground. Quickly Rassendyll looked through his clothes for the keys: there were three.

Rassendyll could enter the room where the King was being kept prisoner. When he opened the first door, he found himself at the top of some steps which led into a cold, dark room.

Rassendyll heard voices behind the second door where the King was kept. It was Detchard wondering whether they should kill the King or not. Suddenly Bersonin appeared in front of Rassendyll. Rassendyll struck him with his sword.

Detchard closed the door fast. As he was alone in the room with the King, Rassendyll knew the King was in real danger. So he quickly unlocked the door of the second room with one of the keys he took from De Gautet.

Detchard was being held by the King's doctor. The King, weak from illness and chained in one corner, looked on in fear. The doctor was too weak to hold Detchard for long, and Detchard broke free and killed the poor doctor with his sword.

Detchard and Rassendyll began a sword fight. Detchard was a much better swordsman than him, so he cut Rassendyll on the arm.

The King moved to help Rassendyll. He reached forward and pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body.

This made him lose his balance and fall over the doctor's body. Then, he struck the King hard with his sword, but it was easy for Rassendyll to kill him as he lay on the floor.

The Duke is dead الدوق ميتًا

When the King moaned, Rassendyll knew he was alive. Before he could help him, he heard Rupert outside the King's prison calling out for Michael to come out for a fight.

The drawbridge was now down once more. Rupert stood in the middle of the bridge with his sword, while the door to the mansion at the other end of the drawbridge was guarded by some very frightened-looking servants, as well as Johann, unhurt.

Antoinette de Mauban angrily called out from behind the servant telling him that he had already killed the Duke. She appeared pointing a gun at him. Rupert once again jumped quickly into the water below the bridge.

Sapt and his men finally arrived at the front door, on the other side of the mansion. Feeling confident that the King would be safe, Rassendyll ran after Rupert and also jumped into the water.

Chasing the last of the Six Men مطاردة آخر الرجال الستة

Rupert swam faster than Rassendyll could with his wounded arm, and he quickly swam to where the rope was tied to the tree and quickly climbed up.

Rassendyll followed Rupert into the forest of Zenda, until he heard another cry. Rupert found a boy riding to market, and quickly pulled him from the horse and took his place. This gave Rassendyll time to catch up with him.

Rassendyll told him that he was the last of the Six Men. He also told him that he saved the King. Rassendyll tried to hit Rupert with his sword. He tried once and twice until he could cut is cheek.

At that moment Fritz arrived on another horse carrying a gun. Rupert turned the horse and rode away as fast as he could. Fritz didn't follow him.

Fritz got off his horse and ran up to Rassendyll as he fell to the ground. He told him that the King was safe. The boy stood watching in amazement. After a long rest, Rassendyll felt strong enough to walk back, leaning heavily on Fritz's arm.

Antoinette's story قصة أنطوانيت

Later Rassendyll was told the story of Antoinette and the events of the castle. A few months earlier, the Duke had met Antoinette de Mauban in Paris and he asked her to Ruritania to see the coronation. She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his guest.

However, some of the Duke's servants told her servants about the Duke's ambitions to be King. She did not like his evil plans and decided to warn Rassendyll of everything he wanted to do.

When the Duke found out that she had warned Rassendyll in Strelsau, he tricked Antoinette de Mauban by inviting her and her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he made sure they could not leave in order to stop her telling anyone about his plan.

Somehow, Rupert discovered that she was helping Rassendyll, so he wanted to punish her; by chance he chose the night that they were attacking the castle.

Mission done المهمة تم إنجازها

It took a long time before Sapt and his men could finally enter the mansion. Soon Sapt found the King lying in his prison, hurt but still alive. He was carried with his face covered to the mansion, where Antoinette helped to look after the poor King until another doctor arrived.

Sapt asked Johann and Antoinette to keep the secret. The other people were told that the King was hurt while rescuing the prisoner, who had gone after Rupert Hentzau.

The game is over انتهت اللعبة

When this news reached the country house at Tarlenheim, Princess Flavia rushed with the Marshal to see the King at the castle.

When they saw her coach, Fritz and Rassendyll quickly hid behind a tree. The boy whose horse Rupert had taken followed them. He was very excited and told the Princess that the King was behind the tree.

The Princess and the Marshal stopped the coach. Sapt arrived at the place, too. The Princess was helped down from the coach. She then walked alone with Sapt to Rassendyll. She saw him and Sapt told her he wasn't the King. He took her to the castle.

That night, when it was dark, Fritz led Rassendyll to the castle where he stayed, unseen, in the rooms that had been the King's prison.

Johann brought Rassendyll food and told him what he knew. The King was getting better and had seen the Princess with Sapt, and Marshal Strakencz had returned to Strelsau. Everyone was talking about the strange prisoner of Zenda and who he could be.

Later that evening, Fritz came to Rassendyll and said the King wanted to see him. So he went to his room, where he was lying weak and tired, but smiled when he saw him.

The King said he hoped that Rassendyll could go to Strelsau to reward him, but that wasn't possible. He thanked him and said that he had shown him what a true King should be.

The Princess came into the room and talked to Rassendyll. He apologised because he tricked her. She said she should thank him for all he had done for Ruritania and said they would never forget him.

Going back home

العودة للوطن

At last, Sapt and Fritz took Rassendyll to a small station near the Ruritanian border. He took the train to England leaving the people he would never see again.

When Rassendyll finally returned to England, his brother Robert and his wife Rose told him that everyone had been looking for him. Rose was very disappointed when Rassendyll told her he had not written a book.

Rose told him that he still had the offer of Sir Jacob Borrodaille who would be the British Ambassador in Strelsau. He said that he couldn't accept it.

When Rose said that he had promised to take the job, he showed them a photograph in a newspaper which showed the King's coronation. Robert and Rose looked at it in amazement. Rudolf looked exactly like the King.

A new real man

رجل حقيقي جديد

Rose said that he could have become an ambassador one day.

Rassendyll thought he had been something far more important than an ambassador: he had been a King.

Rassendyll realised that a person with a position in society has responsibilities. But even without a position in society, we all have a duty to help other people when we can, and we all become better people for doing so.



General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wake up the children. We are .... our destination.
   a) calling b) driving c) choosing d) approaching
2. In the film, the hero saved the country from a/an .... scientist.
   a) honourable b) brave c) evil d) giant
3. If we continue to .... all problems they will only get worse.
   a) protect b) ignore c) pray d) prevent
4. The boy could .... a page out of his notebook and handed it to his teacher.
   a) tear b) cry c) shout d) smile
5. You don't have to ...., no one can hear us.
   a) yell b) whisper c) fight d) quarrel
6. Why did Antoinette give a cry at one o'clock in the morning?
   a) Because Rupert attacked her.
   b) Because Johann wanted to kill her.
   c) Because Rassendyll attacked the castle.
   d) Because Michael wanted to punish her.
7. What did Michael tell Rupert when he wanted to punish Antoinette?
   a) He told him that he was the person who needed to be punished.
   b) He told him that he was right to punish her as she was a spy.
   c) He told him to leave her and Michael would punish her.
   d) None of these.
8. What happened at the end of the argument between Michael and Rupert?
   a) Michael killed Rupert.
   b) Michael's men punished Rupert.
   c) Rupert killed Michael.
   d) Michael threw Rupert out of the window.
9. Rupert wanted to punish Johann by ....
   a) striking his sword at him
   b) making him guard the King
   c) dismissing him out of the castle
   d) putting him in prison



10 Why was Rassendyll worried about Johann's life?
a) Because Johann would open the door at one o'clock.
b) Because Johann would help kill Michael.
c) Because Johann had a great part in Rassendyll's plan.
d) All of these.

11 Rassendyll thought that Rupert would be caught but he escaped ....
a) through the main door
b) through the window and the moat
c) climbing down the ladder
d) through the pipe

12 Who were left to protect the King in his prison?
a) Rupert, De Gautet and Bersonin.
b) Johann, Antoinette and Rassendyll.
c) Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet.
d) Detchard, Rupert and Johann.

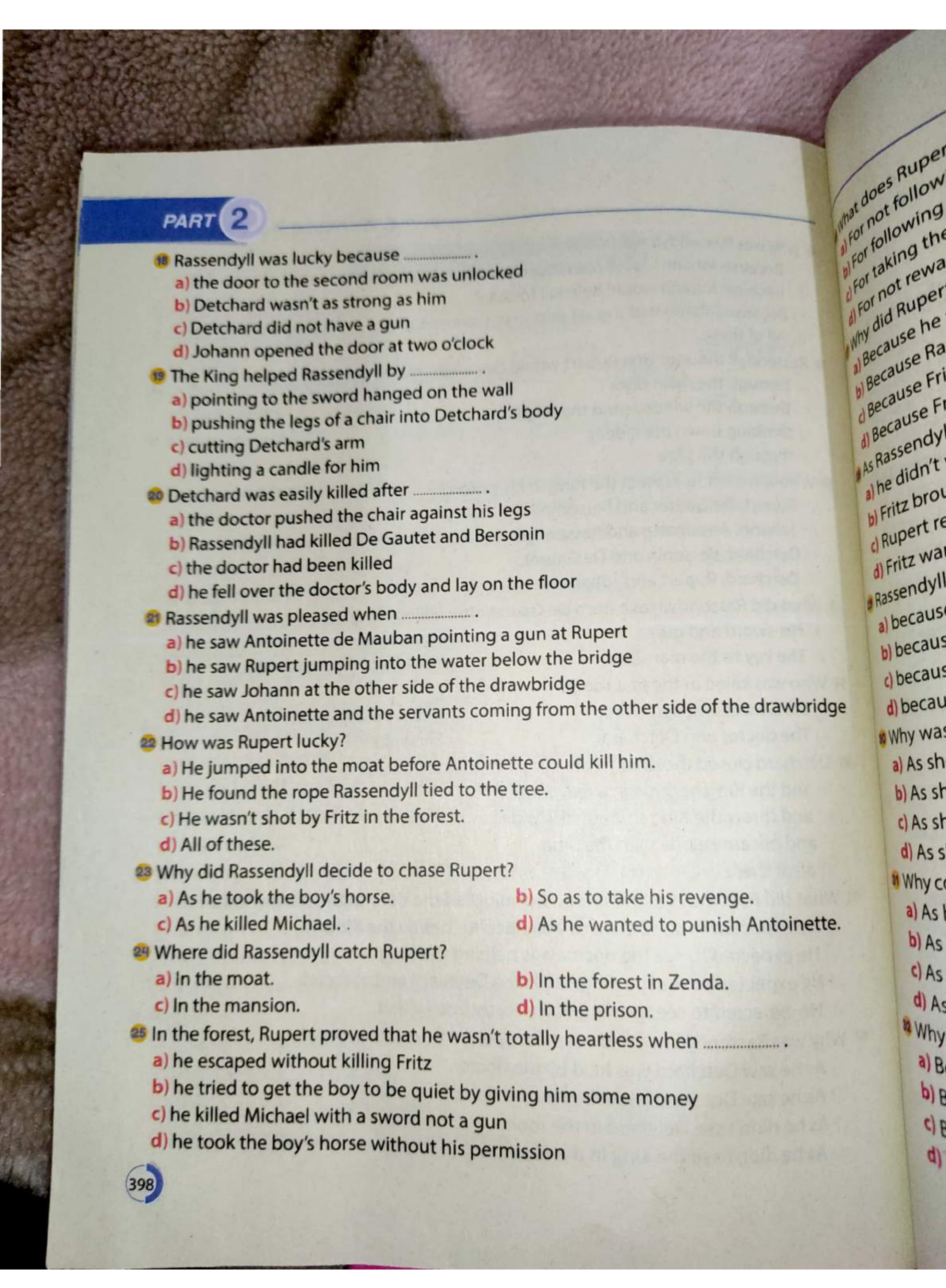
13 What did Rassendyll take from De Gautet after killing him?
a) His sword and gun.
b) Three keys.
c) The key to the mansion.
d) The key of the drawbridge.

14 Who was killed in the first room?
a) De Gautet and Bersonin.
b) Detchard and Bersonin.
c) The doctor and Detchard.
d) Bersonin.

15 Detchard closed the door to the King's room fast ....
a) and the King became in a real danger
b) and threw the King through the pipe
c) and became alone with the King
d) all of these

16 What did Rassendyll expect when he unlocked the door to the second room?
a) He expected to see Detchard was sleeping beside the King.
b) He expected to see the doctor was helping the King.
c) He expected to see the King had killed Detchard and escaped.
d) He expected to see the King had already been killed.

17 Why was Rassendyll relieved when he opened the second door?
a) As he saw Detchard was held by the doctor.
b) As he saw Detchard was killed by the doctor.
c) As he didn't see Detchard in the room.
d) As he didn't see the King in the room.



18 Rassendyll was lucky because ....
a) the door to the second room was unlocked
b) Detchard wasn't as strong as him
c) Detchard did not have a gun
d) Johann opened the door at two o'clock

19 The King helped Rassendyll by ....
a) pointing to the sword hanged on the wall
b) pushing the legs of a chair into Detchard's body
c) cutting Detchard's arm
d) lighting a candle for him

20 Detchard was easily killed after ....
a) the doctor pushed the chair against his legs
b) Rassendyll had killed De Gautet and Bersonin
c) the doctor had been killed
d) he fell over the doctor's body and lay on the floor

21 Rassendyll was pleased when ....
a) he saw Antoinette de Mauban pointing a gun at Rupert
b) he saw Rupert jumping into the water below the bridge
c) he saw Johann at the other side of the drawbridge
d) he saw Antoinette and the servants coming from the other side of the drawbridge

22 How was Rupert lucky?
a) He jumped into the moat before Antoinette could kill him.
b) He found the rope Rassendyll tied to the tree.
c) He wasn't shot by Fritz in the forest.
d) All of these.

23 Why did Rassendyll decide to chase Rupert?
a) As he took the boy's horse.
b) So as to take his revenge.
c) As he killed Michael. .
d) As he wanted to punish Antoinette.

24 Where did Rassendyll catch Rupert?
a) In the moat.
b) In the forest in Zenda.
c) In the mansion.
d) In the prison.

25 In the forest, Rupert proved that he wasn't totally heartless when ....
a) he escaped without killing Fritz
b) he tried to get the boy to be quiet by giving him some money
c) he killed Michael with a sword not a gun
d) he took the boy's horse without his permission

26 What does Rupert blame Rassendyll for?

a) For not following his plan.

b) For following him in the forest.

c) For taking the King's place.

d) For not rewarding him.

27 Why did Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?

a) Because he was in a hurry to leave the country.

b) Because Rassendyll was stronger than him.

c) Because Fritz came with a gun.

d) Because Fritz threatened to shoot him.

28 As Rassendyll was badly injured, ...

a) he didn't want to kill Rupert and let him go

b) Fritz brought him a doctor to see him in the forest

c) Rupert refused to kill him and rode away on the horse

d) Fritz wanted to help him and not to go after Rupert

29 Rassendyll asked Fritz about the King, but the boy was surprised ....

a) because he thought that Rassendyll was the King

b) because he didn't expect Rassendyll to be kind

c) because he thought the King was already dead

d) because he thought the King was in Strelsau

30 Why was Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?

a) As she told Rupert about Michael's secrets.

b) As she had helped Rassendyll.

c) As she was helping the King in his prison.

d) As she tried to escape from the mansion.

31 Why couldn't Johann open the front door for Sapt and his men at the appointed time?

a) As he was helping Michael when he was fighting Rupert.

b) As he was killed in the fight with Rupert.

c) As he was asleep at that time.

d) As he didn't have the key to that door.

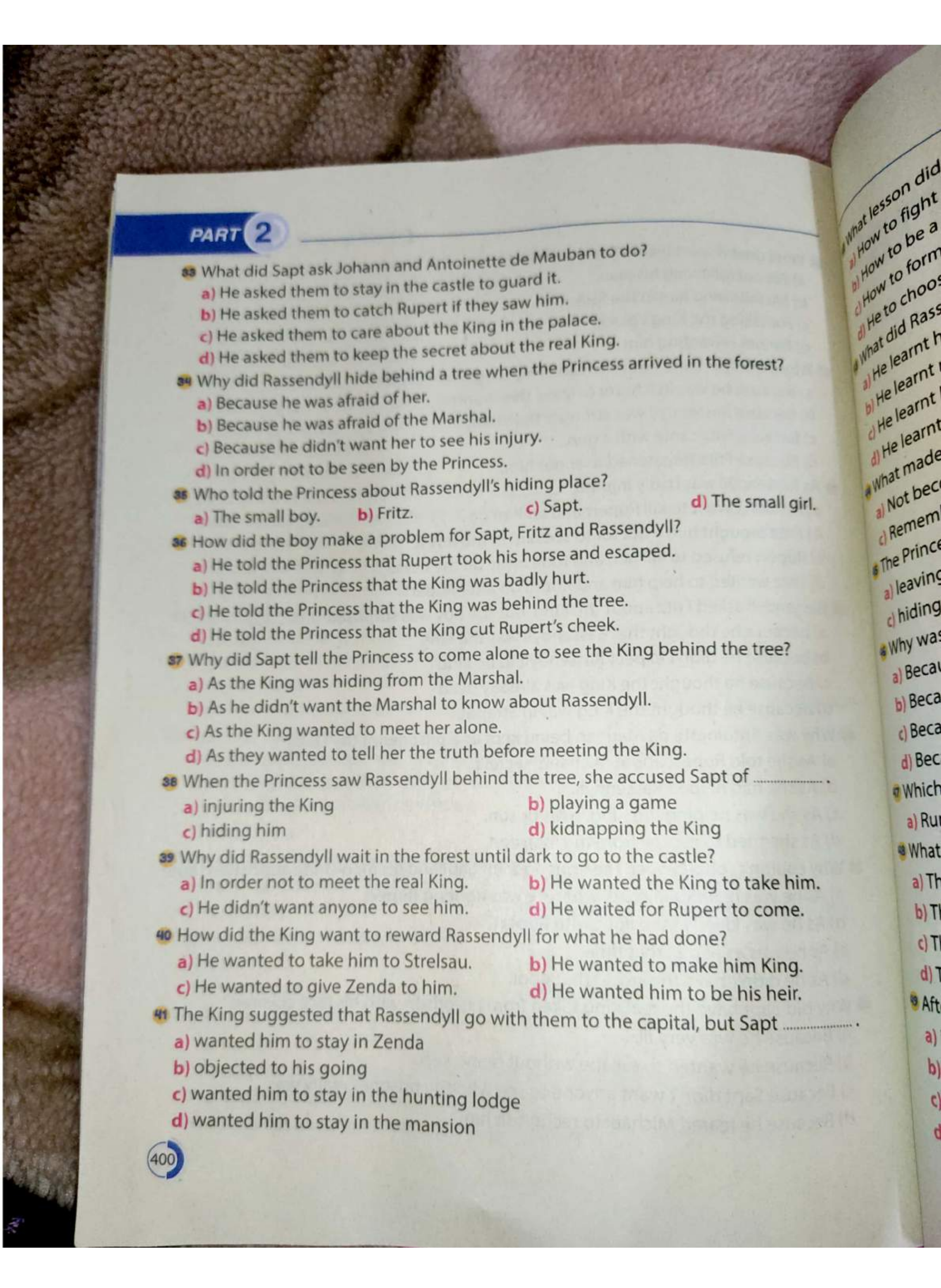
32 Why did Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered?

a) Because he was very ill.

b) Because he wanted to escape without being seen.

c) Because Sapt didn't want anyone to see who the prisoner really was.

d) Because he feared Michael to recognise him.



PART 2

33 What did Sapt ask Johann and Antoinette de Mauban to do?
a) He asked them to stay in the castle to guard it.
b) He asked them to catch Rupert if they saw him.
c) He asked them to care about the King in the palace.
d) He asked them to keep the secret about the real King.

34 Why did Rassendyll hide behind a tree when the Princess arrived in the forest?
a) Because he was afraid of her.
b) Because he was afraid of the Marshal.
c) Because he didn't want her to see his injury.
d) In order not to be seen by the Princess.

35 Who told the Princess about Rassendyll's hiding place?
a) The small boy. b) Fritz. c) Sapt. d) The small girl.

36 How did the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll?
a) He told the Princess that Rupert took his horse and escaped.
b) He told the Princess that the King was badly hurt.
c) He told the Princess that the King was behind the tree.
d) He told the Princess that the King cut Rupert's cheek.

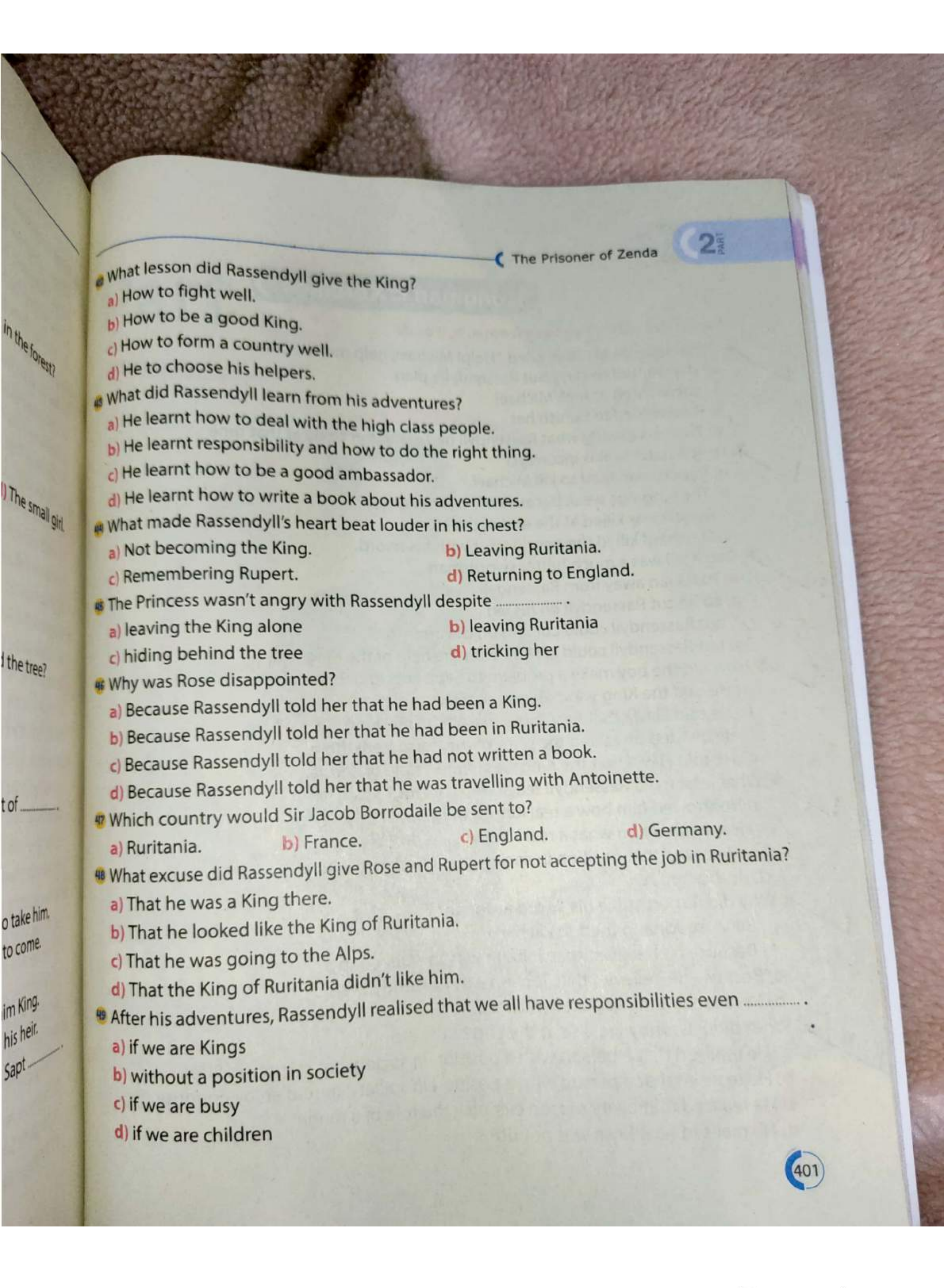
37 Why did Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree?
a) As the King was hiding from the Marshal.
b) As he didn't want the Marshal to know about Rassendyll.
c) As the King wanted to meet her alone.
d) As they wanted to tell her the truth before meeting the King.

38 When the Princess saw Rassendyll behind the tree, she accused Sapt of ....
a) injuring the King
b) playing a game
c) hiding him
d) kidnapping the King

39 Why did Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle?
a) In order not to meet the real King.
b) He wanted the King to take him.
c) He didn't want anyone to see him.
d) He waited for Rupert to come.

40 How did the King want to reward Rassendyll for what he had done?
a) He wanted to take him to Strelsau.
b) He wanted to make him King.
c) He wanted to give Zenda to him.
d) He wanted him to be his heir.

41 The King suggested that Rassendyll go with them to the capital, but Sapt ....
a) wanted him to stay in Zenda
b) objected to his going
c) wanted him to stay in the hunting lodge
d) wanted him to stay in the mansion



42 What lesson did Rassendyll give the King?

a) How to fight well.
b) How to be a good King.
c) How to form a country well.
d) He to choose his helpers.

43 What did Rassendyll learn from his adventures?

a) He learnt how to deal with the high class people.
b) He learnt responsibility and how to do the right thing.
c) He learnt how to be a good ambassador.
d) He learnt how to write a book about his adventures.

44 What made Rassendyll's heart beat louder in his chest?

a) Not becoming the King.
b) Leaving Ruritania.
c) Remembering Rupert.
d) Returning to England.

45 The Princess wasn't angry with Rassendyll despite ....

a) leaving the King alone
b) leaving Ruritania
c) hiding behind the tree
d) tricking her

46 Why was Rose disappointed?

a) Because Rassendyll told her that he had been a King.
b) Because Rassendyll told her that he had been in Ruritania.
c) Because Rassendyll told her that he had not written a book.
d) Because Rassendyll told her that he was travelling with Antoinette.

47 Which country would Sir Jacob Borrodaile be sent to?

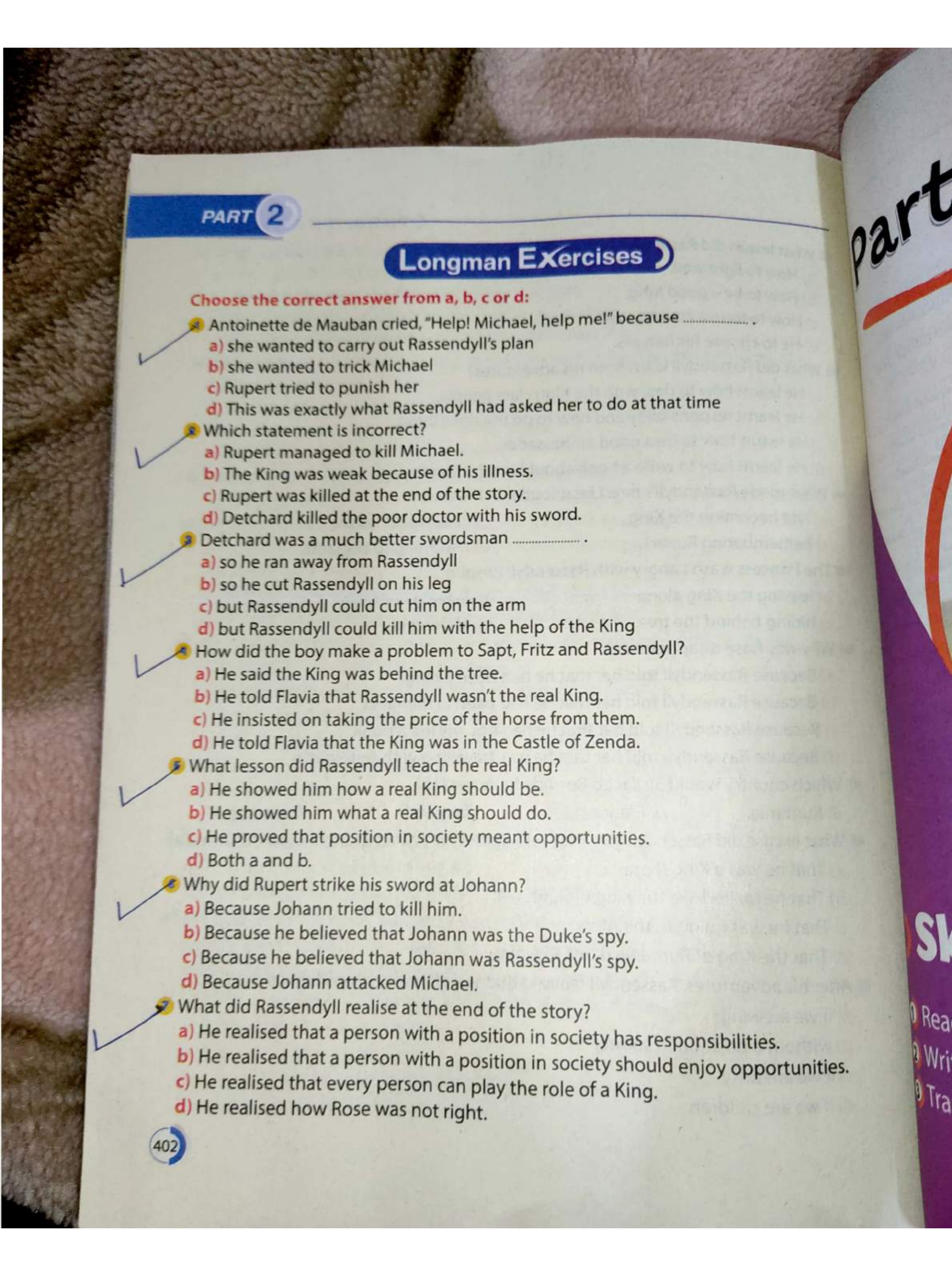
a) Ruritania.
b) France.
c) England.
d) Germany.

48 What excuse did Rassendyll give Rose and Rupert for not accepting the job in Ruritania?

a) That he was a King there.
b) That he looked like the King of Ruritania.
c) That he was going to the Alps.
d) That the King of Ruritania didn't like him.

49 After his adventures, Rassendyll realised that we all have responsibilities even ....

a) if we are Kings
b) without a position in society
c) if we are busy
d) if we are children



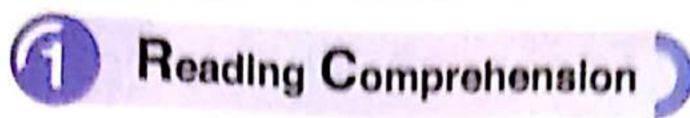
Longman Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Antoinette de Mauban cried, "Help! Michael, help me!" because ....
   a) she wanted to carry out Rassendyll's plan
   b) she wanted to trick Michael
   c) Rupert tried to punish her
   d) This was exactly what Rassendyll had asked her to do at that time
2. Which statement is incorrect?
   a) Rupert managed to kill Michael.
   b) The King was weak because of his illness.
   c) Rupert was killed at the end of the story.
   d) Detchard killed the poor doctor with his sword.
3. Detchard was a much better swordsman ....
   a) so he ran away from Rassendyll
   b) so he cut Rassendyll on his leg
   c) but Rassendyll could cut him on the arm
   d) but Rassendyll could kill him with the help of the King
4. How did the boy make a problem to Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll?
   a) He said the King was behind the tree.
   b) He told Flavia that Rassendyll wasn't the real King.
   c) He insisted on taking the price of the horse from them.
   d) He told Flavia that the King was in the Castle of Zenda.
5. What lesson did Rassendyll teach the real King?
   a) He showed him how a real King should be.
   b) He showed him what a real King should do.
   c) He proved that position in society meant opportunities.
   d) Both a and b.
6. Why did Rupert strike his sword at Johann?
   a) Because Johann tried to kill him.
   b) Because he believed that Johann was the Duke's spy.
   c) Because he believed that Johann was Rassendyll's spy.
   d) Because Johann attacked Michael.
7. What did Rassendyll realise at the end of the story?
   a) He realised that a person with a position in society has responsibilities.
   b) He realised that a person with a position in society should enjoy opportunities.
   c) He realised that every person can play the role of a King.
   d) He realised how Rose was not right.


part 3
Skills
eading Comprehension
riting
ranslation





• ليس هناك مادة علمية معينة يمكن الاعتماد عليها فى التعامل مع قطعة الفهم، ولكن الممارسة والتدريب المكثف والثروة اللغوية هى أفضل الوسائل للتمكن من هذا السؤال وإجادته.

ويجب اتباع الآتى عند حل القطعة:

١- نقرأ القطعة قراءة سريعة استكشافية ولا نتوقف عند المفردات الصعبة، ويفضل بعض الناس أن يقرأ الأسئلة أولًا.

٢- نقرأ الأسئلة لتحديد المعلومات التى نبحث عنها.

٣- نقرأ القطعة للمرة الثانية لنبحث عن إجابات الأسئلة.

٤- التمهل فى فهم السؤال ومعرفة معنى كلمات الاستفهام.

٥- التمهل فى استخلاص الإجابة؛ فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول فى الفقرة الثانية وليس شرطًا أن تكون فى الفقرة الأولى.

٦- نأخذ جزءًا من السؤال ونكمل الإجابة من القطعة.

٧- عدم الانزعاج من عدم معرفة المفردات والجمل الصعبة الواردة فى القطعة، فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا محالة.

٨- ما يلزمنا هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.

٩- قد نجد إيضاح الكلمة الصعبة فى العبارة التالية لها.

١٠- حاول أن تكون الإجابة على قدر السؤال.

١١- مراعاة تحسين الخط.

١٢- السؤال الاختيارى يتطلب مهارة عالية فى الفهم والتركيز وتكتب الإجابة فقط.

١٣- قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد من أن الإجابات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرة.

هناك سؤال له أكثر من شكل ويحتاج إلى مهارة عالية وأشكاله كالآتى:

1. In one sentence summarise the first paragraph.	- فى جملة لخص الفقرة الأولى.
2. Suggest a suitable title.	- اقترح عنوانًا للقطعة.
3. What does the underlined word { } refer to?	- إلى ماذا تشير الكلمة التى تحتها خط؟
4. Find from the passage words that mean: 1- 2-	- هات من القطعة كلمات تعنى:
5. What does the word "This"/"These" refer to?	- يجب مراعاة أن This يمكن أن تعود على كلمة واحدة أو جملة كاملة.



Exercises

Read the following passages, then answer the questions:

1 No part of our environment has escaped the effects of pollution. All over the world, our land, air and water have been contaminated by an increasing number of waste materials and substances that issue daily from factories, homes and vehicles. In some cases, this waste is only an eyesore, which spoils the beauty of our surroundings, while in other cases, it is a serious threat to our health and can result in death.

Some of the most dangerous waste substances are, without a doubt, those produced by factories. Industrial waste often contains toxic substances that can kill plant and animal life. When there is no proper government control, factories allow these substances to pour into rivers, while their chimneys fill the atmosphere with poisonous fumes, sometimes in areas no more than a few kilometres from heavily populated cities.

In towns and cities, the use of fossil fuels (oil, coal, and gas) for heating results in large amounts of carbon dioxide filling the atmosphere.

But, each of us is guilty of polluting our environment to some extent. How much longer can we allow this pollution to continue? Scientists tell us that the increased amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere may soon have disastrous effects. They fear that it will raise average temperatures around the world and cause the polar ice caps to melt. If this happens, they say the level of the world's oceans will rise by four to six metres, and vast populated areas of our planet will be covered by water. Can we afford to make such risks by continuing to pollute our environment?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which part of the environment is affected by pollution?
   - a) No part.
   - b) Each part.
   - c) Water.
   - d) Air.
2. What causes pollution to the environment?
   - a) Animals and planes.
   - b) Birds and bicycles.
   - c) factories, homes and vehicles.
   - d) Computers and printers.

3. What happens when there is no proper government control on factories?
   a) They dump their toxics in rivers.
   b) They send their waste to homes.
   c) They cause governments to die.
   d) They cause the water level in rivers to rise.
4. What do chimneys do to the atmosphere?
   a) They poison plants and animals.
   b) They emit fossil fuels into the atmosphere.
   c) They pour their waste into rivers and seas.
   d) They fill the atmosphere with poisonous fumes.
5. What is the cause of global warming?
   a) The waste from animals.
   b) The melting of ice caps.
   c) The increased amount of carbon dioxide.
   d) The waste in our homes.
6. Who is blamed for polluting the environment?
   a) The government.
   b) The factories.
   c) Chimneys.
   d) Each of us.
7. It's ugly to see ....
   a) a street free of pollution and smoking
   b) a factory full of population
   c) our surroundings full of contamination
   d) many trees on both sides of streets
8. In addition to eyesore, waste may result in ....
   a) man's health
   b) man's death
   c) man's wealth
   d) man's breath
9. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to ....
   a) factories
   b) vehicles
   c) scientists
   d) people
10. What is the best title to the passage?
   a) Contamination and our heath.
   b) Population and water.
   c) The rise in water.
   d) Carbon dioxide and global warming.

2 Who do you think is the most successful? Who do you think is the least successful? In order to answer these questions, we first need to define success. Everyone has a different definition. Many of us place great value on performance, on achievements, or on reaching various goals. Others associate success with material goods, measuring it by how much one can acquire. Others measure success by how much they can contribute to the well-being of their families, or to the community and society in general. There are many other definitions, but mostly success is associated with becoming rich, famous, and respected at work. Yet, it doesn't have to be that way.

Being successful could mean simply being satisfied with oneself and one's career. For many people, a successful person is someone who feels that his or her work and life in general offer an exceptionally high degree of satisfactions. But how does one get from here to there? How does one reach this feeling of satisfaction with life and career? It seems that successful people consistently do two things; they use their natural abilities in their work and they set career and life goals. In other words, successful people choose careers where they can use their natural abilities, or do what comes naturally to them. For example, successful teachers are people who instinctively know how to help people learn, and the best doctors are those who know how to listen to people. Successful people know where they are starting from, and what direction they want to give their lives and careers, even if it is something as simple and wonderful as raising a happy family.

What are your natural abilities? What are your career and life goals? If you can answer these questions, you are on your way to having a successful career and life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the definition of success?
   a) Getting high marks at school.
   b) Everyone has a different definition.
   c) Acquiring much money at work.
   d) Travelling abroad and working there.
2. According to most people, with which is success associated?
   a) Contributing to the community.
   b) Contributing to the well-being of the families.
   c) Becoming rich, famous, and respected at work.
   d) Getting high marks and joining university.

3. Which one of the following can't define successful people?
   a) Successful people choose careers that match their skills.
   b) Successful people know where they are starting from.
   c) Successful people use their natural abilities.
   d) Successful people don't plan their lives.
4. Who are the successful teachers?
   a) Successful teachers are those who know how to help people learn.
   b) Successful teachers are those who earn much money.
   c) Successful teachers are those who come to school early.
   d) Successful teachers are those who can control their classes.
5. What does the underlined word "their" refer to?
   a) Successful doctors.
   b) Successful people.
   c) Successful teachers.
   d) Successful businessmen.
6. How can human beings as a whole feel the pleasure of being successful?
   a) By having material goods.
   b) By reaching their life goals.
   c) By giving their best to their families or community.
   d) All of these.
7. The antonym of the word "satisfaction" is ....
   a) anger
   b) content
   c) freedom
   d) selfishness
8. The word .... is the same meaning as bringing up.
   a) becoming
   b) measuring
   c) raising
   d) feeling
9. Success usually makes people ....
   a) satisfied and happy
   b) happy and greedy
   c) rich and wealthy
   d) able to earn money
10. Success is measured by many things except ....
   a) acquiring good things
   b) reaching one's goals
   c) being wealthy
   d) having many friends

8 I'm sure you all know how important recycling is. Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, cardboard, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. Cereal boxes are made of cardboard. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. Let's get back to the process of recycling. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant. There, the materials get separated. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. They are really heavy. You would need a forklift to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products.

You also can recycle yourself at home. You can save all the cans and aluminum containers and sell them in a local recycling centre, yes cans for cash. Use glass jars as containers for the kitchen or the office, you can paint the bottles and use other materials to decorate them. Use empty water bottles as flower pots, just cut off the bottoms, there are many amazing craft projects you can do with recycled material. You can do your part to save the planet. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is recycling?
   a) Giving old things to other people.
   b) Destroying unimportant things buy burning them.
   c) Taking old things and turning them into new things.
   d) Painting old bottles and using them again.
2. Which one of the following can't be recycled?
   a) Things made out of paper.
   b) Things made of metal.
   c) Things made of cardboard, glass and plastic.
   d) Things made of cotton and lying food.



3. What happens when we put all our items in a recycling bin?
   a) We use them again.
   b) A truck comes to pick them up.
   c) They are burnt outside the town.
   d) They are taken by our neighbours.
4. What happens to the materials in the recycling plant?
   a) They get separated and crushed.
   b) They are delivered to our homes again.
   c) Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products.
   d) A forklift carries them away.
5. How can we do amazing craft projects by recycling?
   a) By sending our materials to recycling plants.
   b) By selling rubbish from other countries.
   c) By using empty water bottles as flower and cutting off the bottoms.
   d) By selling them in a local recycling centre.
6. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
   a) The square cubes. b) The special machines.
   c) The glass jars. d) The piles of rubbish.
7. The following materials can be recycled except ....
   a) yogurt b) books made of paper
   c) soda cans and bags containers d) magazines and newspapers
8. The word .... means "a vehicle used for lifting and moving heavy objects".
   a) machine b) cubes
   c) the recycling plant d) forklift truck
9. The best title to the passage is "...................".
   a) Recycling cans b) Recycling saves our planet
   c) Recycling from past to present d) How to recycle bottles
10. Everything goes to a recycling plant. Plant here means ....
   a) a room b) a machine
   c) a factory d) a kind of tree

4 Electronic books, or e-books, provide a new, cool, environmentally-friendly, and inexpensive way to read. E-books are stored and used as computer files rather than as ink on paper.

One arena that might soon see the leap to e-book use is the classroom. Students would take their e-book readers to the electronic bookstore, load their texts, and not notice the extra weight of a dozen full-length texts.

E-books can be purchased directly on the internet from hundreds of publishers or retail e-bookstores. In either case, pay with your credit or debit card, then download it directly as with a free book, or wait for it to arrive as an e-mail attachment, a disk or a CD.

E-books can be viewed on a computer screen or using a book reader which has enough memory to store many book files at once.

E-publishers and many of their authors have web pages. These have further information, plot summaries, reviews, pictures, and other good stuff. They usually provide several chapters to read free so you can try-before-you-buy.

Some promise to make the experience better than paper with multimedia readers. Others produce audio versions where the author reads it to you.

Ah, indulgence.

If you love paper books to death and just can't imagine reading any other way, don't panic. So far, e-books are an alternative to the traditional ones. They haven't replaced them ... yet.

Keep in mind, you take the same chances buying an electronic book as a paper one. Maybe you won't like it after all. But the majority of electronic publishers screen their books carefully, insist on professional editing, and publish only the best. If you read an excerpt first and buy only from reputable publishers, you won't often be disappointed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How are e-books stored and used?
   a) Printed books. b) Newspapers.
   c) Computer files. d) All of these.
2. Where can we use e-books in a wide-scale?
   a) The classroom. b) The bank.
   c) The playground. d) The club.
3. Where can e-books be purchased directly on the internet?
   a) Bookshops. b) Libraries.
   c) From publishers or e-bookstores. d) Markets.

4. How can a person buy e-books on the internet?
   a) In cash.
   b) By installments.
   c) By checks.
   d) By paying with credit or debit cards.
5. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
   a) E-books.
   b) Traditional books.
   c) Publishers.
   d) Readers.
6. What advantage do e-books have over printed books?
   a) They can be an e-mail attachment, a disk or a CD.
   b) They are environmentally-friendly.
   c) They are inexpensive way to read and can be easily bought.
   d) All of these.
7. E-books are a/an .... way of reading.
   a) expensive
   b) cheap
   c) terrible
   d) boring
8. E-books can be used ....
   a) only at homes
   b) everywhere
   c) only in classrooms
   d) by illiterates
9. The phrase "try-before-you-buy" means ....
   a) reading for free
   b) taking books to homes
   c) buying books with little money
   d) taking books without money
10. The best title to the passage is "..................".
   a) E-books are better than traditional ones
   c) E-books as a way of entertainment
   b) The pros and cons of e-books
   d) E-books as a way of reading.

5 The digital landscape has put increased pressure on teenagers today, and we feel it. There are so many social media channels: Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, Snapchat, etc.

A new study has found that teenagers who engage with social media during the night could be damaging their sleep and increasing their risk of anxiety and depression. Teenagers spoke about the pressure they felt to make themselves available 24/7 and the resulting anxiety if they did not respond immediately to texts or posts. Teens are so emotionally invested in social media that a fifth of secondary school pupils will wake up at night and log on just to make sure they don't miss out. Perhaps the worst thing about this is that teenagers need more sleep than adults do, so night-time social media use could be detrimental to their health. A lack of sleep can make teenagers tired, irritable, and depressed.

During the summer holidays, I lost my phone. And for the week that I was phoneless, it felt like a disaster. I love my phone. It gives me quick access to information and allows me to be constantly looped in with my friends, to know exactly what is going on in their lives. So, when I didn't have my phone for a week, I felt a slight sense of FOMO, or if you're not up to speed with the lingo, fear of missing out. By the end of the week, I'd got used to not having a phone and I'd quite enjoyed the break from social media. But there was still a lingering sense of sadness at the back of my mind that there would be conversations I had missed, messages that had been sent, funny videos shared and night-time chats that I would probably never get to see.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What are the social media channels mentioned in this article?
   a) TVs, and radios.
   b) Instagram, Snapchat.
   c) Facebook, Twitter.
   d) b and c.
2. Why do teens wake up at night and log on?
   a) To search for useful information.
   b) To send books to their friends.
   c) Just to make sure they don't miss out.
   d) To ask about their friends' health.

3. What do teenagers need more than adults?
   a) They need more sleep.
   b) They need more water.
   c) They need more money.
   d) They need more time.
4. What does the underlined pronoun "their" refer to?
   a) The writer's family.
   b) The writer's friends.
   c) The writer's neighbours.
   d) The writer's children.
5. How did the writer feel when he lost his mobile phone?
   a) The writer was happy.
   b) The writer was delighted.
   c) The writer was sad.
   d) The writer was tired.
6. What did the writer miss when he lost his mobile phone?
   a) Conversations.
   b) Messages and night-time chats.
   c) Funny videos shared.
   d) All of these.
7. The study warns teenagers against ....
   a) using the digital landscape
   b) using social media all night
   c) using facebook and twitter
   d) not using social media
8. What does "24/7" mean? It means ....
   a) 7 days a month
   b) 24 days a month
   c) all the time
   d) 7 hours a day
9. Using social media too much can ....
   a) help teenagers find jobs
   b) spoil relations among families
   c) strengthen ties among people
   d) cause mental illness
10. The synonym of the word "anxiety" is ....
   a) easily annoyed
   b) being sad
   c) being dead
   d) lack of hope

6 There are many alternative energy sources: wind power, solar power, geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples.

Wind Power. Wind power is the ability to capture the wind in a way to propel the blades of wind turbines. When the blades rotate, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced. Large wind farms can also have a negative visual effect for people who live nearby.

Solar Power. Solar energy is used for heating, cooking, making electricity, and even taking salt out of saltwater so the water can be drinkable and used for additional purposes that do not need the salt. Solar power uses sunlight that hits the solar thermal panels to convert the sunlight to heat either air or water. Other methods of using solar power include simply opening up blinds or shades and letting the sunlight pass into the room or using some type of mirror to heat water and produce steam. One advantage of solar power is that it is renewable. As long as there is sunlight, you will be able to harness the power from it. There is also no pollution and it can be used efficiently to heat and light things. You can see the benefits of solar energy in heating swimming pools, spas, and water tanks in many cities across the country.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the movement of the blades result in?
   a) It results in more wind.
   b) It results in electrical current.
   c) It results in electrical generator.
   d) It results in nonrenewable energy.
2. Why is wind power considered a renewable source of energy?
   a) Because it reduces electricity.
   b) Because the towers are built on wind farms.
   c) Because it never runs out.
   d) Because wind farms can be built anywhere.

3. When is less electricity produced?
   a) When the wind speed decreases.
   b) When the wind speed increases.
   c) When solar power is produced.
   d) When solar power increases.
4. What is solar energy used for?
   a) Cooking and taking salt out of saltwater.
   b) Heating.
   c) Making electricity.
   d) All of these.
5. What converts the sunlight into heat?
   a) The sun.
   b) The solar thermal panels.
   c) Air.
   d) Steam.
6. On what condition is the solar power renewable?
   a) As long as there is sunlight.
   b) As long as there is air.
   c) As long as there are solar panels.
   d) As long as there is petrol.
7. One of the following isn't an advantages of wind power.
   a) It lasts forever.
   b) It doesn't pollute the environment.
   c) It needs a constant wind to get enough power.
   d) Wind farms can be built anywhere.
8. The underlined word "propel" means ....
   a) drive
   b) prepare
   c) pull
   d) switch
9. What is the best title to the passage?
   a) The wind and solar power as renewable energy.
   b) How can we use the wind power.
   c) The wind power as a cheap source of energy.
   d) Why many people use the solar power.
10. The antonym of the word "nearby" is ....
   a) close
   b) neighbouring
   c) immediate
   d) distant

7 Over 20 million people are employed in the coffee industry. They grow and sell enough coffee beans for 400,000,000 cups of a coffee a year. Coffee is worth more than any other industry in the world except oil. In Brazil alone, about 3,000,000 coffee plants are looked after every year.

The story was -though no one really knows the truth - that coffee was discovered in the country known today as Ethiopia. A man called Kaldi who was looking after his goats noticed that his goats were very energetic after eating a certain kind of berry. He decided to try the berries himself and found that they gave him a lot of energy. When some priests heard about this, they dried the berries, then made them into a drink with water. Coffee was born!

It was in Turkey, however, that the coffee drink we know today was first made. Two Syrian businessmen brought the beans to Istanbul in 1550. The Turks heated the beans over a fire, crushed them and then boiled them in water. Coffee drinking became an important part of Turkish life rather like the way tea did in Japan. Also, whereas in Western nations a man often chose a woman to be his wife because she was a good cook, in Turkey men often tested the coffee made by a woman before they thought seriously about marrying her.

By the 18th century coffee had become an important part of European life as well. In England, in particular, the coffee houses of London became important meeting places for writers and men working in the government.

In some ways Turkish coffee is similar to the Espresso coffee drunk in Italy - it is dark and strong and drunk from small cups. However, it is made in a completely different way, and sometimes a spice called cardamom is added. Turkish coffee is served from a pot called a 'cezve'. In the same way that in tea-drinking nations some people tell fortunes from looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup. So, in Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at what is left of the coffee in the cup.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Coffee was discovered for the first time in ....

a) America
b) Africa
c) Brazil
d) Europe

PART 3

2. The writer mentioned that the coffee plant can be eaten by ....
   a) man
   b) machines
   c) animals
   d) both animals and people
3. Coffee beans were brought to Turkey by ....
   a) two Europeans
   b) two Ethiopian businessmen
   c) Syrian businessmen
   d) two Brazilians
4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee .... it.
   a) liked
   b) hated
   c) heated
   d) sold
5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at ....
   a) what's left in their tea cups
   b) the tea leaves
   c) the tea roots
   d) what's left in their coffee cups
6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the ....
   a) 19^{th} century
   b) 20^{th} century
   c) 18^{th} century
   d) 17^{th} century
7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is ....
   a) dark
   b) drunk from small cups
   c) strong
   d) all of the above
8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they ....
   a) can drink it well
   b) know the future
   c) earn their living
   d) deceive people
9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is ....
   a) active
   b) difficult
   c) lazy
   d) drowsy
10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she ....
    a) was a good cooker
    b) made tasty tea
    c) made tasty coffee
    d) was a good cook

8 Travel sickness is confined more to children. The all-too-familiar symptoms of vomiting, sweating and headache affect adults too, more often women than men. Even so, children between three and twelve are those most at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling.

Travel sickness occurs when the information supplied to the brain by the eyes, the inner ear and the sense of physical movement are giving contradictory information. This confusion is experienced when a person is subjected to repeated movements while the body is still at rest.

The centre that brings about the attack of motion sickness is the inner ear, providing as it does a complex mechanism responsible for balance. If the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed, a person no longer suffers motion sickness.

So, it is important for a person who feels a little bit uneasy while travelling, to lie as flat as possible and close his eyes. It's advisable to fix his vision on distant objects or on the horizon. Reading, map-reading and some forms of game-playing are inadvisable. Windows should be open as fresh air helps, and adults who are easily attacked by travel sickness should avoid too much drinking or smoking before travelling. As a remedy there are some pills known as K-Wells. They are taken half an hour before travelling. They melt in the mouth and this makes them quick acting. These pills may cause sleepiness or dry mouth. Doctors who prefer natural remedies recommend ginger in one of its many forms.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The contradictory information given to the brain causes ....
   a) repeated movements
   b) travel sickness
   c) balance in the body
   d) death at once
2. The person doesn't suffer motion sickness if ....
   a) the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed
   b) they have more than one nerve in the inner ear
   c) they are adults
   d) they are travelling early in the morning

3. The organ that is responsible for balance in the body is the ....
   a) sense of physical movement
   b) inner ear
   c) complex mechanism
   d) the pills known as K-Wells
4. Those people who are likely to be attacked by travel sickness are not advised to .... before travelling.
   a) smoke or drink too much
   b) listen to or play music too much
   c) sleep early or get up early
   d) open the windows of the car
5. A natural remedy of travelling sickness is .... in any form.
   a) coffee
   b) tea
   c) yeast
   d) ginger
6. The phrase "at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling" means ....
   a) vomiting
   b) sweating
   c) sleeping
   d) eating
7. To avoid travel sickness, you may ....
   a) read a book
   b) play a game
   c) look on the horizon
   d) have big meals
8. The channels which supply the brain with information are ....
   a) the eyes
   b) the sense of physical movement
   c) the inner ear
   d) all of the above
9. In order to melt quickly and take action, the pills should ....
   a) be wet
   b) be soaked in water
   c) kept dry
   d) be taken have an hour before travelling
10. The antonym of the word "confusion" is ....
   a) misunderstanding
   b) clarity
   c) mistake
   d) chaos

9 If the sun were turned off suddenly, like an electric lamp, our Earth would begin to cool. Ice would form but never melt. The temperature would drop towards the absolute zero point. Life would stop. The Earth would begin to resemble the planets Jupiter and Saturn, which get almost no heat from the sun.

Distance from the sun is important in the amount of heat a planet receives. If you've ever sat around a camp-fire during a chilly night, you know how pleasant it is to be near the fire. The outer planets, like campers kept at a distance, get very little heat. On the other hand, Mercury and Venus, which are closer to the sun than we are, get more heat than we could stand without protection.

While almost all our heat comes from the sun, a small amount of it comes from the Earth itself. Most scientists think the Earth was formed several billion years ago, it was a fiery, glowing liquid mass. Gradually this mass cooled like hot chocolate sauce cooling and turning into solid on the sides of a pan, the hot liquid material of the Earth cooled and turned slowly into the solid rock crust we live on today. But deep inside the Earth the heat was held in by the solid outside crust. There the cooling was so slow, in fact, that enormous amounts of heat are left in the Earth's core. Miners going to work feel the increasing heat as they go down inside the mine. Even those of us who stay on the surface of the Earth sometimes see violent evidence of the imprisoned heat. A volcano erupts, spewing up fiery liquid lava from deep inside the Earth. The lava flows down the volcano's sides and cools, turning into solid rock.

Thus we see that there are two important sources of heat to keep us from cooling down to absolute zero. The sun is the most important one, giving off a steady amount of heat at just the right distance from us. The Earth also helps a bit to keep us warm with the heat that comes very slowly from its centre. But neither of these could keep us alive without the life – saving blanket that circles our Earth-the air.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The amount of heat a planet receives depends on ....
   a) how far it is from the farthest planet
   b) its atmosphere
   c) its distance from the outer planets
   d) its distance from the sun

2. As miners go down inside the mine for work, they feel the ....
   a) increasing air
   b) decreasing heat
   c) increasing heat
   d) rising light
3. The underlined "chilly" in the second paragraph means ....
   a) very hot
   b) rather cold
   c) pleasant
   d) dark
4. The two sources of heat on our Earth are ....
   a) the sun and the earth
   b) the sun and the moon
   c) the earth and the moon
   d) Mercury, Venus and the sun
5. If the sun were turned off suddenly, the Earth would resemble ....
   a) Jupiter and Saturn
   b) all the other planets
   c) Mercury and Venus
   d) Mars and Mercury
6. There would be no life on the earth without ....
   a) the heat from the sun
   b) the air
   c) the heat from the earth
   d) all of the previous
7. The heat from inside the earth comes up in the form of ....
   a) tornadoes
   b) volcanoes
   c) winds
   d) earthquakes
8. The antonym of the word "erupt" is ....
   a) flare up
   b) blow up
   c) go off
   d) subside
9. The underlined word "There" refers to ....
   a) in the sun
   b) outside crust
   c) deep inside the Earth
   d) in the rock
10. One of the following is untrue ....
   a) the heat from the sun and earth doesn't keep life without the air
   b) almost all our heat comes from the sun
   c) when the volcano erupts, it sends fiery solid lava
   d) most of our heat comes from the earth

One of England's greatest writers, Charles Dickens, was born in 1812. His father was careless with money. When he was 12, he had to leave school to work in a shoe-dye factory in London because his father had been imprisoned for debt. This experience deeply shamed and frightened the young boy, and those feelings were later expressed in his writing, particularly in his descriptions of the working conditions of the poor Victorian factories.

When his father came into inheritance, young Dickens could return to his school, but the family's fortunes were never very secure. At the age of 15, he left school to join a law firm as a clerk. Then, after four years, he went into journalism, reporting law cases and parliamentary debates. These work experiences helped to develop still further his social awareness, which again would later be reflected in his novels.

Dickens' success as a writer began when he started writing the Pickwick Papers in 1836. These were originally intended as a humorous narrative to accompany a series of drawings. Within four months, he had become famous. The Pickwick Papers were not only humorous, but also made a serious attempt to look at the legal system and to show how justice was applied. Also, interestingly, it is a clear illustration of how Dickens' private life was reflected in his work, as Mr. Pickwick spent some time in a debtor's prison, just like Dickens' own father.

Dickens' early life had clearly enabled him to write about the poor and dispossessed with understanding and compassion. This compassion also made itself to be felt in practical ways. He helped to establish a home for destitute women and encouraged slum clearance and developments in sanitary provisions.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Charles Dickens, was born in the .... century.

a) 19^{th} b) 20^{th}
c) 17^{th} d) 18^{th}

2. Why did Charles have to work at an early age?

a) Because his father had gone to prison.
b) Because his father was careless.
c) Because he wanted to leave school.
d) Because his father died.

3. Dickens' family didn't have enough money although his father ....

a) came to an inheritance
b) went to prison
c) let him leave school
d) allowed him to join a law firm

4. Dickens was deeply affected by ....

a) his father's imprisonment
b) his early working in a factory
c) working conditions of the poor
d) all of these

5. Writing the Pickwick Papers established Dickens as ....

a) a poor writer
b) a successful writer
c) a rich English boy
d) a reporter of law cases

6. As a journalist, Dickens' job was to report law cases and parliamentary ....

a) discussions
b) sessions
c) meetings
d) lessons

7. This passage speaks about Dickens as a .... more than a writer.

a) humanitarian
b) decision maker
c) social reformer
d) social worker

8. The synonym of the word "humorous" is ....

a) funny
b) dull
c) dangerous
d) serious

9. The best title to the passage is "...................".

a) Dickens' suffering in the factory
b) Dickens as a writer
c) Dickens' suffering and interest in society.
d) Dickens' early life

10. The underlined word "These" refers to ....

a) Dickens' novels
b) Pickwick Papers
c) Dickens' bad conditions
d) Dickens' work experiences

2 Essay Writing

- يعتبر المقال من الأسئلة التى يواجه الطالب صعوبة فيها، ولذا لا يكون الحصول على درجة المقال كاملة بالأمر اليسير. وهذا الأمر لا يتحقق إلا بالتدريب المستمر على كتابة المقال.
- المقال هو الكتابة عن موضوع محدد بوجهة نظر محددة، وينقسم إلى عدد من الفقرات المرتبة والمخططة، بحيث يتم توضيح وشرح جوانب الموضوع المختلفة.
- لكتابة مقال جيد هناك بعض القواعد العامة الهامة التى يجب اتباعها، ومنها:

1. Decide what kind of essay to write.
١- حدد نوع المقال الذى ستكتبه.

- يتم تحديد نوع المقال حسب الموضوع المطلوب الكتابة فيه، وهناك تقسيمات عديدة لأنواع المقالات ولكن يمكن تحديد خمسة أنواع هى الأكثر استخدامًا وهى:

A. Narrative Essay — المقال القصصى (حكاية قصة)
B. Descriptive Essay — المقال الوصفى (وصف شىء أو مكان)
C. Expository Essay — المقال التفسيرى (عرض حقائق ومعلومات عن موضوع محدد)
D. Argumentative Essay — المقال الجدلى (تناول أكثر من وجهة نظر للموضوع الواحد)
E. Persuasive Essay — المقال الإقناعى (تناول أكثر من وجهة نظر للموضوع الواحد مع تفضيل وجهة محددة)

2. Brainstorm your topic.
٢- قم بعصف ذهنى لأفكار خاصة بالموضوع الذى تقوم بالكتابة عنه.

- وهنا يتم تحديد عدد من الأفكار والنقاط التى سيتم تناولها فى المقال، ويمكن تقسيم هذه المرحلة إلى:
(أ) سرد الأفكار والنقاط بلا ترتيب بل بحسب ورودها فى تفكيرك (كما يمكن الاستعانة بمصادر خارجية إن لم يكن لديك إلمام بالموضوع).
(ب) ترتيب وتخطيط الأفكار بحيث يتم وضع نسق محدد للموضوع.

3. Outline your essay.
٣- حدد الخطوط العريضة للمقال.

- و المقصود هنا تحديد الفقرات وعددها حسب نوع المقال والأفكار التى سيتم تناولها، ويمكن تقسيم فقرات المقال كالتالى:

A. Introduction (paragraph 1) — مقدمة
B. Main body (paragraphs 2-3) — صلب الموضوع
C. Conclusion (paragraph 4) — الخاتمة

مع ملاحظة أن المقال يمكن أن يتكون من عدد أقل أو أكثر من الفقرات.

4. Write a draft of your essay.
٤- قم بكتابة مسودة للمقال.

قم بكتابة مسودة أولية مستخدمًا الأفكار والخطوط العريضة التى قمت بتقسيم المقال على أساسها.

5. Review your essay to correct mistakes.
٥- قم بتقييم المقال لتصحيح الأخطاء.

- قم بقراءة الموضوع وحاول تصحيح الأخطاء التى يمكن أن تكتشفها مركزًا على التالى :

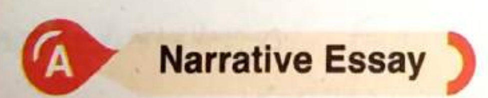
A. Spelling mistakes — الأخطاء الهجائية
B. Grammar mistakes — أخطاء قواعد اللغة

6. Finish your essay
٦- أنهِ كتابة مقالك.

- بعد أن قمت بالخطوات السابقة قم بكتابة النسخة النهائية للمقال حتى تكون قد انتهيت من كتابة المقال فى أفضل صورة.

General Outlines of Essay Writing

Introduction	**The introduction:** المقدمة ترشد المقدمة القارئ إلى المقال من خلال تقديم الموضوع. يجب أن تبدأ بلفت انتباه القارئ، يمكن أن يكون هذا اقتباسًا، أو تشابهًا، أو سؤالًا، وما إلى ذلك. بعد جذب انتباه القارئ، يجب أن تقدم المقدمة بعض المعلومات الأساسية حول الموضوع، ويجب أن تكون الأفكار الموجودة فى المقدمة عامة بما يكفى ليتمكن القارئ من فهم الاتجاه الرئيسى، ويصبح تدريجيًا أكثر تحديدًا ليقود إلى بيان هذا الاتجاه.
Main Body Main idea (1) Main Body Main idea (2)	**The main body:** صلب الموضوع يدعم نص المقالة النقاط الرئيسية الواردة فى المقدمة. يتم تطوير كل نقطة بواسطة فقرة واحدة أو أكثر، ويتم دعمها بتفاصيل محددة. وبالإضافة إلى هذا الدعم، فإن مناقشته للموضوع يربط الأفكار معًا، ويستخلص النتائج التى تدعم الاتجاه الرئيسى للمقال.
Conclusion	**The conclusion:** الخاتمة يجمع الاستنتاج بين جميع النقاط الرئيسية للمقال. يشير إلى بيان الأفكار الرئيسية للمقال، ويترك للقراء فكرًا نهائيًا عن طريق حل لأى أفكار تم طرحها فى المقالة، ولا ينبغى تقديم مواضيع أو أفكار جديدة لم يتم تطويرها فى المقال.



A Narrative Essay

• المقال القصصى هو الذى تحكى فيه قصة أو تجربة، ولا يقف عند وصف ما حدث فقط، بل يفصل أيضًا ما شعرت به فى ذلك الوقت، وكيف أثرت عليك، وما تعلمته منه. والخطوط الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هى كالتالى:

Outline of a Narrative Essay

Introduction	فيها قـدِّم الموضوع أو الحدث الذى ترويه، واشرح سبب أهميته بالنسبة لك، كما يمكنك أن تلخص بسرعة ما تعلمته أو شعرت به نتيجة للحدث الذى تصفه .
Main body	سوف نتحدث الآن عن الحدث الذى ترويه، وأثناء القيام بذلك، تأكد من تضمين جميع النقاط المهمة. من شارك؟ أين حدث هذا؟ لماذا حصل هذا؟ صف بالضبط ما حدث وقد يتم ذلك فى فقرة واحدة أو أكثر.
Conclusion	ارجع إلى ما تعلمته من الحدث، وكيف أثر على فهمك أو نظرتك للموضوع المطروح. وقد لا يتضمن هذا الموضوع خاتمة (خاصة إذا كنت تصف حدثًا لم يؤثر بشكل كبير عليك).

Sample Narrative Essays

A wedding party that I attended

1. Introduction

Last week, I was invited to my cousin's wedding party which I attended with my wife. The party was in a big hall at a famous hotel in Cairo. It was so amazing and everything was exciting. I can say that it is one of the most exciting events that I have attended lately.

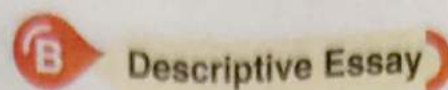
2. Main body

When we arrived at the wedding hall, my wife and I were taken by the big size of the place. There were about 30 tables of 10 people. Most of the guests were relatives and friends. When all the guests arrived, the waiters began to serve all kinds of juice and soft drinks, while the band was playing music. The camera man was filming everything that was happening. Then, the bride and the groom made their wonderful entrance. Everyone was gazing at them happily. The bride was wearing a fabulous white dress, and the groom was wearing a nice suit. Next, the band started its show with a famous singer who sang beautiful songs while other guests were taking pictures with the bride and groom.

A few minutes later, we sat down at the dinner table and we had a very nice and delicious dinner. They brought us delicious dishes of vegetables and meat and a plate of roasted chicken for every table. The party lasted till five in the morning, the time when the two married couple went out followed by some guests.

3. Conclusion

To tell the truth, the wedding was really beautiful and unforgettable, and I was so happy that day. My wife was much impressed by it and she reminded me of our wedding party which was simpler than this one, but we always remember it with great excitement and joy. We were very happy to see these couple begin their new life just as we did years ago.



B Descriptive Essay

• المقال الوصفى هو المقال الذى تصف فيه شيئًا أو شخصًا أو مكانًا أو عملية أو حدثًا، ويكون هدفك هو إنشاء تجربة قراءة حية، أو العرض بدلاً من الرواية. والخطوط الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هى كالتالى:

Outline of a Descriptive Essay

introduction	Main body	Conclusion
تقدم المقدمة لمحة عامة موجزة عن موضوع المقال، تحدد فيها الشيء أو الموقف الذى ستقوم بوصفه كما يمكن إعطاء بعض الانطباعات أو الاتجاهات أو الآراء الخاصة بالموضوع. وعادة ما يحصل القراء على تلميح عما ستكون عليه المقالة من الفقرة الأولى.	يتم استعراض موضوع المقال الوصفى وشرحه بالتفصيل فى نص المقال. يمكنك أن تصف كل جانب من جوانب الموضوع/ الشيء اعتمادًا على ما تعتبره مهمًا. عادة يستخدم الكاتب مجموعة كبيرة ومتنوعة من الصفات والظروف لجعل المقال أكثر حيوية وإثارة للاهتمام للقراءة. أيضًا، فى هذا القسم، يمكن للكاتب تقديم أمثلة محددة لتحسين وصف الموضوع (الشيء الموصوف) وتسهيل فهمه للجمهور. يوفر هذا الجزء من المقال للقراء نظرة شاملة لكل جوانب الوصف.	فى هذا الجزء نقدم ملخصًا لما تعتقده أهم نقاط الوصف، كما يتضمن أفكارك الخاصة وشعورك فيما يخص موضوع المقال، وهذا يعتمد بشكل كبير على أسلوب الكتابة والخيال والمهارات التحليلية للكاتب.

Sample Descriptive Essays

My favourite holiday place

1. Introduction

As a child, I always enjoyed spending time at our chalet in Marsa Matrouh. It was a place where you could go and get away from the busy life in the city and enjoy doing things that you might not be able to do back home. We always tried to go at least a couple of times during the summer when my father would get his vacation from work. There was so much to do and see. Even though things have changed now, I won't forget all of the memories that I have from when I was a child.

2. Main body

The first time we went there, I noticed a difference in the way the air smelled. I took in a deep breath of air and noticed how clean it smelled. I couldn't help myself. I wanted to breathe in more and more to keep taking it all in. I felt my lungs clearing from all the pollution and stale air back home. I never wanted to let go of this feeling of freshness.

3. Conclusion	
	At night, it was so quiet you could have heard a pin drop. The sky was clear and the sea was so nice. It was a sight that was far unlike anything I could have ever imagined. You could sit outside for hours just listening and watching nature in its truest form.
	Now, I have my own family and I always spend all summer vacations with them here. I am thinking of moving to Marsa Matrouh live here permanently. Now, my family get to enjoy the fresh air and relaxed atmosphere. Those experiences as a child opened my eyes to something far better beyond the city that I get to remember every day with my family.



Expository Essay

• المقال التفسيرى هو الذى تقوم فيه بشرح حقائق متصلة بموضوع ما أو توضيح شيء بطريقة يصبح واضحًا للقراء؛ لذلك يمكن أن يكون تحقيقًا أو تقييمًا لأهمية الموضوع المتناول للتوضيح.

Outline of an Expository Essay

Introduction	تحتوى المقدمة على تحديد الموضوع المراد الكتابة عنه مع عرض موجز للجوانب التى ستقوم بتفصيلها وسردها فى المقال، ويجب ألا تتضمن أى تفاصيل عن هذه الجوانب.
Main body	فى فقرتين أو ثلاث قم بسرد كل الجوانب والحقائق عن الموضوع ويمكن تضمين بعض الأدلة والتفاصيل الخاصة بكل جانب من جوانب الموضوع؛ مع ملاحظة أن الموضوع لا يتضمن أى وجهة نظر محددة، بل هو سرد للمعلومات الخاصة بالموضوع المراد توضيحه للقارئ.
Conclusion	تتضمن الخاتمة تلخيصًا موجزًا للحقائق التى تم عرضها فى المقال، ويمكن إدراج أى تقييم للموضوع الذى تم توضيح جوانبه المختلفة، ويمكن أن تتضمن الخاتمة حثًا للقارئ للبحث عن جوانب وحقائق أخرى لهذا الموضوع.

Sample Expository Essays

The history of chess

1. Introduction

Chess is perhaps the most popular and treasured board game in the world. Millions of people play it daily, and millions of dollars of sponsorship go into the world championships of chess. It seems to be getting even more popular as the years goes on.

2. Main body

There are many legends surrounding the origin of chess, and also the rules of the game have transformed so much during its about 1500 years of history, that it is difficult to trace exactly when "chess" came into being as we know it. In each region, chess took on different rules, pieces and boards. However, we know that chess originated from the Gupta Empire (600CE), of India. The pieces come from the primary military elements of that time: the infantry, the elephants, the cavalry and the chariots. Some experts have claimed that the game could have originated in China, but these assessments are in the minority.

From India, chess travelled to Persia. Several variations of chess evolved in Persia. The queen and bishop had limited movement at this time, unlike the wide movement it has now. The form of chess which finally arrived in Europe was already being played in Persia some 1,350 years ago. The game became very popular in the Muslim world, and it was carried back, throughout Islam, across North Africa and eventually into Europe. Also, in Persia, the first recognisable chess pieces began to emerge that are similar to our modern ones.

3. Conclusion

Chess is a game of about 1,500 years that originated in India, travelled to Persia, and through Muslim influence, spread throughout Europe. In that progression, its rules have changed, and its pieces have also transformed. There are still several variations of chess in multiple countries, like China, Japan, Korea, and more. However, the international chess we play today was developed in Europe by giving the queen and bishop greater power—making the game more thrilling, and at the same time, subtle.



Argumentative Essay

- إن المقال الجدلى هو المقال الذى يقوم الكاتب فيه بعرض أفكار أو آراء مختلفة حول موضوع واحد، وقد يتخذ موقفًا من قضية ما وفى مقال جدلى جيد. ثم يحاول الكاتب إقناع القراء بفهم وجهة نظره حول موضوع ما ودعمها عن طريق ذكر أسبابه وتقديم أدلة لدعمه

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

Introduction	*Main body*	*Conclusion*
يجب أن تحدد المقدمة الفكرة الأساسية للمقال، وتوفر معلومات أساسية ضرورية لفهم الفكرة، وتحدد الجوانب أو الآراء المختلفة للموضوع التى سوف تقوم بعرضها (مثل المزايا والعيوب لموضوع المقال)، ويمكن أن تحدد اتجاهك الأساسى فى الموضوع الذى ستناقش جوانبه.	يتألف المقال الجدلى النموذجى من فقرتين أو أكثر تشرح أسباب دعمك لرأيك. يجب أن تغطى كل فقرة فكرة مختلفة أو دليلًا مختلفًا حيث تقوم بعرض وجهات النظر المتعارضة. حيث إن تقديم الحقائق والنظر فى موضوع من كل زاوية يضيف مصداقية، وسيساعدك على كسب ثقة القارئ.	هنا، يجب عليك تلخيص رأيك وكل وجهة نظر من قسم المقال. يجب أن تجنب الخاتمة القارئ وتفرض حجة رأيك. كما يجب أن تضع فى اعتبارك أيضًا أن الفقرة تربط فقط الجوانب المركزية للمقال، ولا يمكنها تقديم حجج أو حقائق جديدة.

Sample Argumentative Essays

Should public libraries be shut down?

Introduction		As online learning becomes common more and more resources are converted to digital form, some people have suggested that public libraries should be shut down and, in their place, everyone should be given an iPad with an e-reader subscription.
Main body	Point of View (1)	Proponents of this idea state that it will save local cities and towns money because libraries are expensive to maintain. They also believe it will encourage more people to read because they won't have to travel to a library to get a book; they can simply click on what they want to read and read it from wherever they are. They could also access more materials because libraries won't have to buy physical copies of books; they can simply rent out as many digital copies as they need.
	Point of View (2)	However, it would be a serious mistake to replace libraries with tablets or iPads. First, digital books and resources are associated with less learning and more problems than print resources. more Additionally, staring too long at a screen has been shown to cause numerous health problems, including blurred vision, dizziness, dry eyes, headaches, and eye strain, at much higher instances than reading print does. People who use tablets and mobile devices excessively also have a higher incidence of more serious health problems such as shoulder and back pain, and muscle strain. We should add to these problems by giving people, especially young people, more reasons to look at screens.
Conclusion		While replacing libraries with tablets may seem like a simple solution, it would encourage people to spend even more time looking at digital screens, despite the problems of this overuse. It would also end access to many of the benefits of libraries that people have come to rely on. In many areas, libraries are such an important part of the community network that they could never be replaced by a simple object.



Persuasive Essay

- المقال الإقناعى هو المقال الذى يشرح الكاتب فيه موضوعًا، ويحاول إقناع القارئ بوجهة نظر محددة تجاه هذا الموضوع، والفارق بين المقال الإقناعى والجدلى هو مناقشة فكرة واحدة (ميزة أو عيب) للموضوع الذى تتم الكتابة عنه، مع شرح أسباب رأى الكاتب حتى يستطيع فى النهاية إقناع القارئ أن ينحاز لوجهة نظره.

Outline of a Persuasive Essay

Introduction	الغرض الرئيسى من المقدمة هو تحديد الجوانب الرئيسية لموضوعك واتجاهك الأساسى بشكل موجز، ويمكن ذكر أسباب هذا الاتجاه (التى سوف تناقشها بالتفصيل بعد ذلك)، ويجب أن تكون فى شكل موجز.
Main body	يتكون من فقرتين أو ثلاث، تركز كل منها على فكرة منفصلة أو سبب من الأسباب المؤيدة لوجهة نظرك، مع أدلة داعمة تجعل القارئ يقتنع بوجهة نظرك تجاه الموضوع.
Conclusion	تتكون من ملخص قصير للنقاط الرئيسية التى أيدت وجهة نظرك فى المقال، وذلك لتعزيز التأثير المقنع للقارئ، ولذلك يجب أن تكون واضحة ومنطقية.

Sample Persuasive Essays

The advantages of online learning (education)

Introduction

It seems everything is moving online these days. Even our education is transferring onto the internet. Online learning is now considered the best way of education in our modern world. There are reasons for this: you can learn whatever you want, it is more comfortable in a variety of ways and the cost of virtual education is often lower than traditional education.

Main body

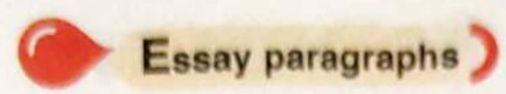
The freedom to choose your educational path is an enduring quality of online education. For more creative people, or people who want to focus on a single activity, this can be a dream come true. With online education, you can take any program or course present in traditional four-year universities. So, the ease of access to the courses and majors you are striving to study are widely available online. This increases opportunities to gain the education we desire instead of making needless compromises.

Similarly, comfort takes centre stage for many students. Countless students choose online education in order to avoid wasting time travelling and on many other activities in order to attend physical education institutions. Students listen to lectures and complete assignments sent to them electronically, with no need to fight traffic, leave work early for class, or miss important family time. Rather than miss important class sessions (due to weather conditions), students in online courses can always "attend" by participating in discussion boards or chat sessions, turning in their work on time, and watching lectures or reading materials.

Finally, the cost of getting an online education is cheaper on average than receiving a traditional education. For example, there are no commuting costs, and sometimes required course materials, such as textbooks, are available online at no cost. In addition, many colleges and universities accept credits earned via free massive open online courses. Thus, there are a variety of reasons why an online education costs less.

Conclusion

Receiving an online education is becoming more and more popular due to a multitude of advantages it has over traditional instruction. These advantages include, to name a few: students can learn whatever they want, it is more comfortable, online courses often look great on resumes, the pacing of learning is managed by the pupil, and the cost is often lower than traditional education. With these reasons, it is hard to not see why this form of education is on the rise.



Essay paragraphs

To give your essay a clear structure, it is important to make use of paragraphs.

A paragraph is a related group of sentences that develops one main idea. Each paragraph should be centered around just one idea.

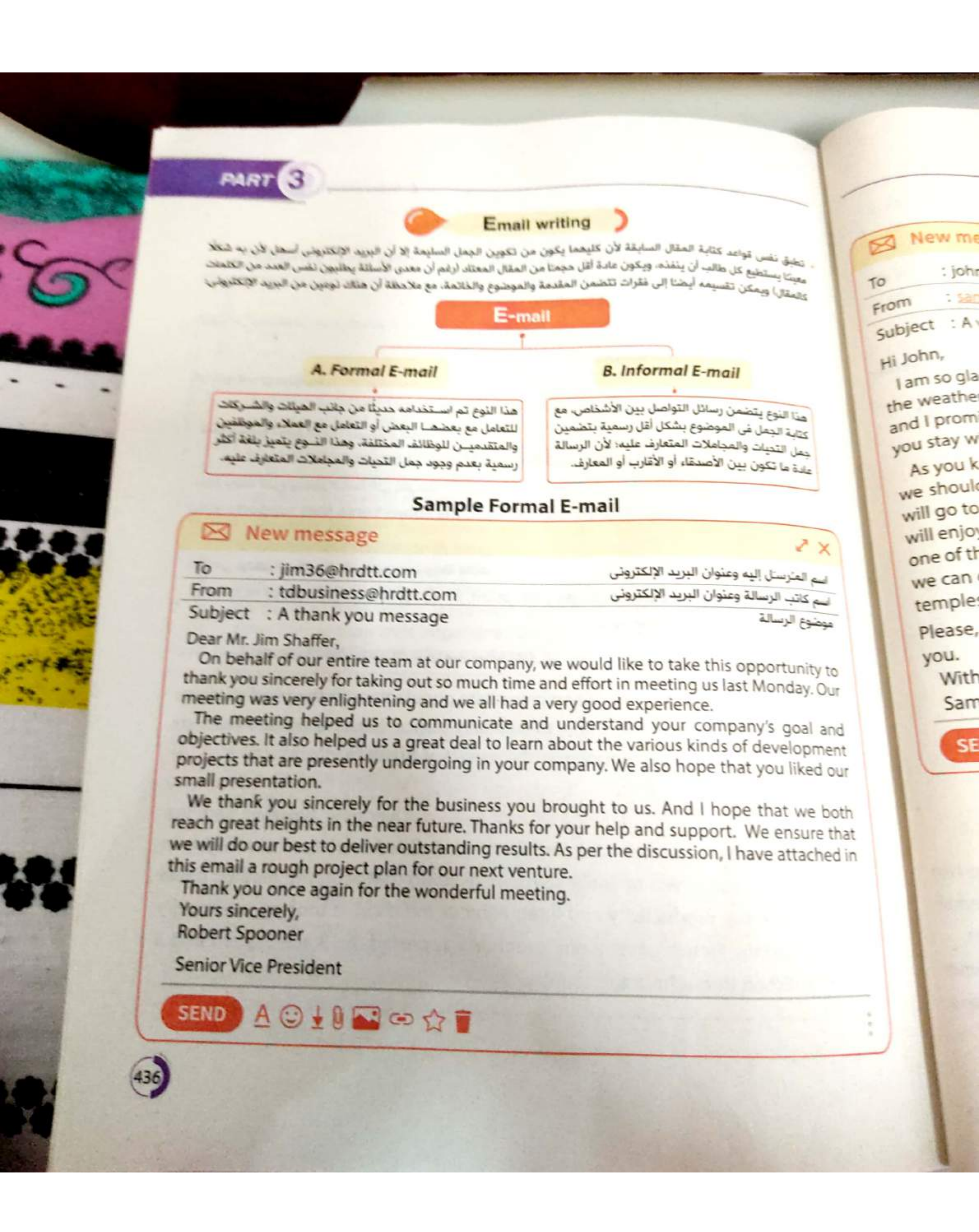
الفقرة هى مجموعة من الجمل ذات الصلة التى تطور فكرة رئيسية واحدة. يجب أن تدور كل فقرة حول فكرة واحدة.

Each paragraph should contain:

كل فقرة لابد أن تحتوى على:

- a **topic sentence** that states the main or controlling idea.
  - جملة افتتاحية توضح الفكرة الرئيسية أو المسيطرة.
- **supporting sentences** to explain and develop the point you're making
  - جملة داعمة لشرح وتطوير النقطة التى تطرحها.
- **evidence** from your reading or an example from the subject area that supports your point
  - دليل من قراءتك أو مثال حول الموضوع يدعم وجهة نظرك.
- a **concluding sentence** that restates your point, analyses the evidence, or acts as a transition to the next paragraph.
  - جملة ختامية تؤكد وجهة نظرك، وتحلل الأدلة أو تعمل بمثابة انتقال إلى الفقرة التالية.

Although the Braille system gained immediate popularity with the blind students at the Institute in Paris, it was slow to gain acceptance, because sighted teachers and leaders had ultimate control over the spread of Braille resources. Many of the teachers at the Royal Institute for Blind Youth resisted learning Braille because they found the touch method of reading difficult to learn. Over time, however, with the increasing motive to make social contribution possible for all, teachers began to appreciate the usefulness of Braille's system, realizing that access to reading could help improve the productivity and integration of the blind. It took approximately 30 years, and the French government eventually approved the Braille system, and it was established throughout the country.



Email writing

تطبق نفس قواعد كتابة المقال السابقة لأن كليهما يكون من تكوين الجمل السليمة إلا أن البريد الإلكترونى أسهل لأن به شكلًا معينًا يستطيع كل طالب أن ينفذه، ويكون عادة أقل حجمًا من المقال المعتاد (رغم أن معدى الأسئلة يطلبون نفس العدد من الكلمات كالمقال) ويمكن تقسيمه أيضًا إلى فقرات تتضمن المقدمة والموضوع والخاتمة، مع ملاحظة أن هناك نوعين من البريد الإلكترونى:

E-mail

A. Formal E-mail

هذا النوع تم استخدامه حديثًا من جانب الهيئات والشركات للتعامل مع بعضها البعض أو التعامل مع العملاء والموظفين والمتقدمين للوظائف المختلفة، وهذا النوع يتميز بلغة أكثر رسمية بعدم وجود جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه.

B. Informal E-mail

هذا النوع يتضمن رسائل التواصل بين الأشخاص، مع كتابة الجمل فى الموضوع بشكل أقل رسمية بتضمين جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه؛ لأن الرسالة عادة ما تكون بين الأصدقاء أو الأقارب أو المعارف.

Sample Formal E-mail

New message

To	: jim36@hrdtt.com	اسم المرسل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى
From	: tdbusiness@hrdtt.com	اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى
Subject	: A thank you message	موضوع الرسالة

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer,

On behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goal and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company. We also hope that you liked our small presentation.

We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture.

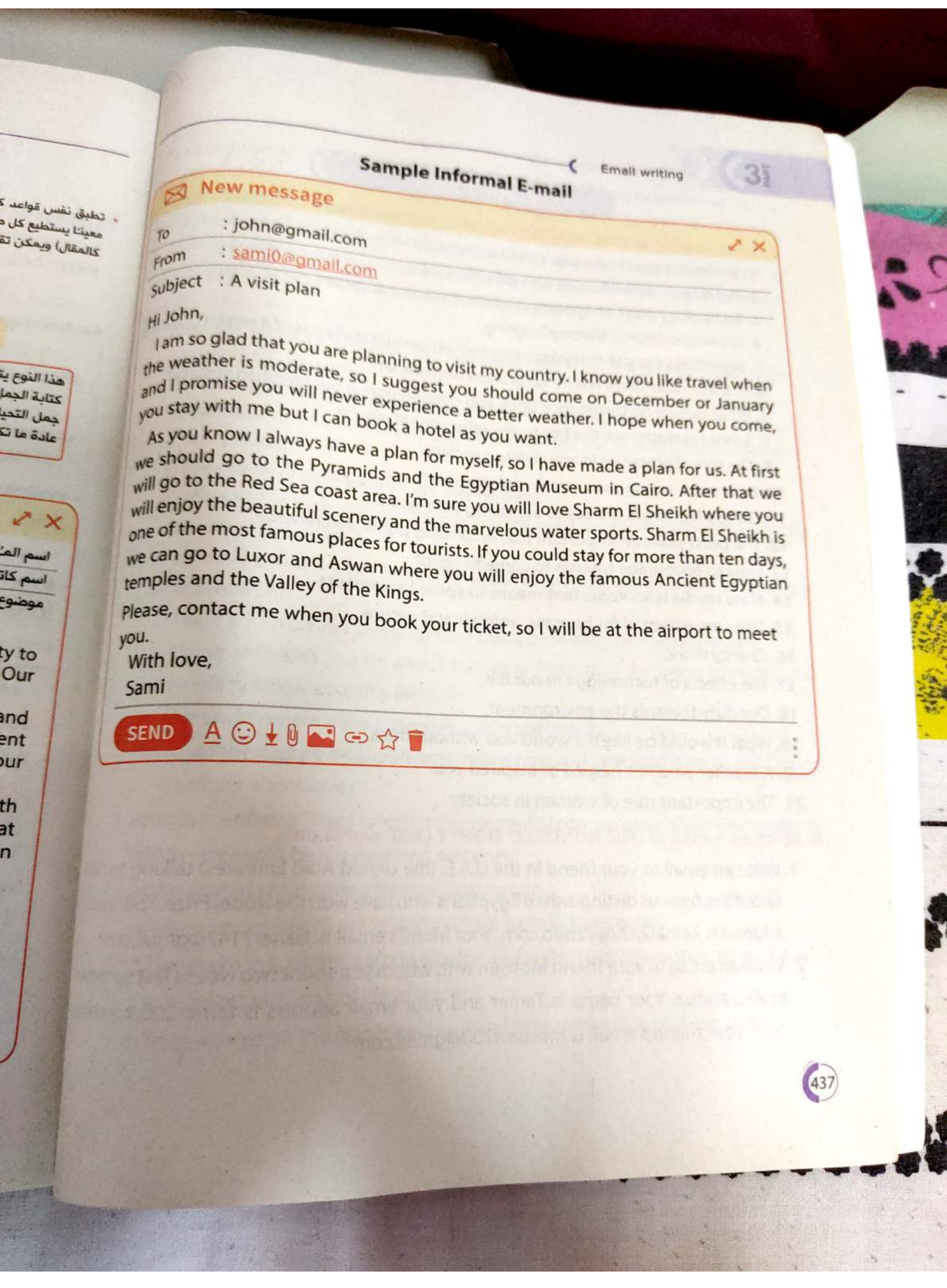
Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,

Robert Spooner

Senior Vice President

SEND



Sample Informal E-mail

New message

To : john@gmail.com

From : sami0@gmail.com

Subject : A visit plan

Hi John,

I am so glad that you are planning to visit my country. I know you like travel when the weather is moderate, so I suggest you should come on December or January and I promise you will never experience a better weather. I hope when you come, you stay with me but I can book a hotel as you want.

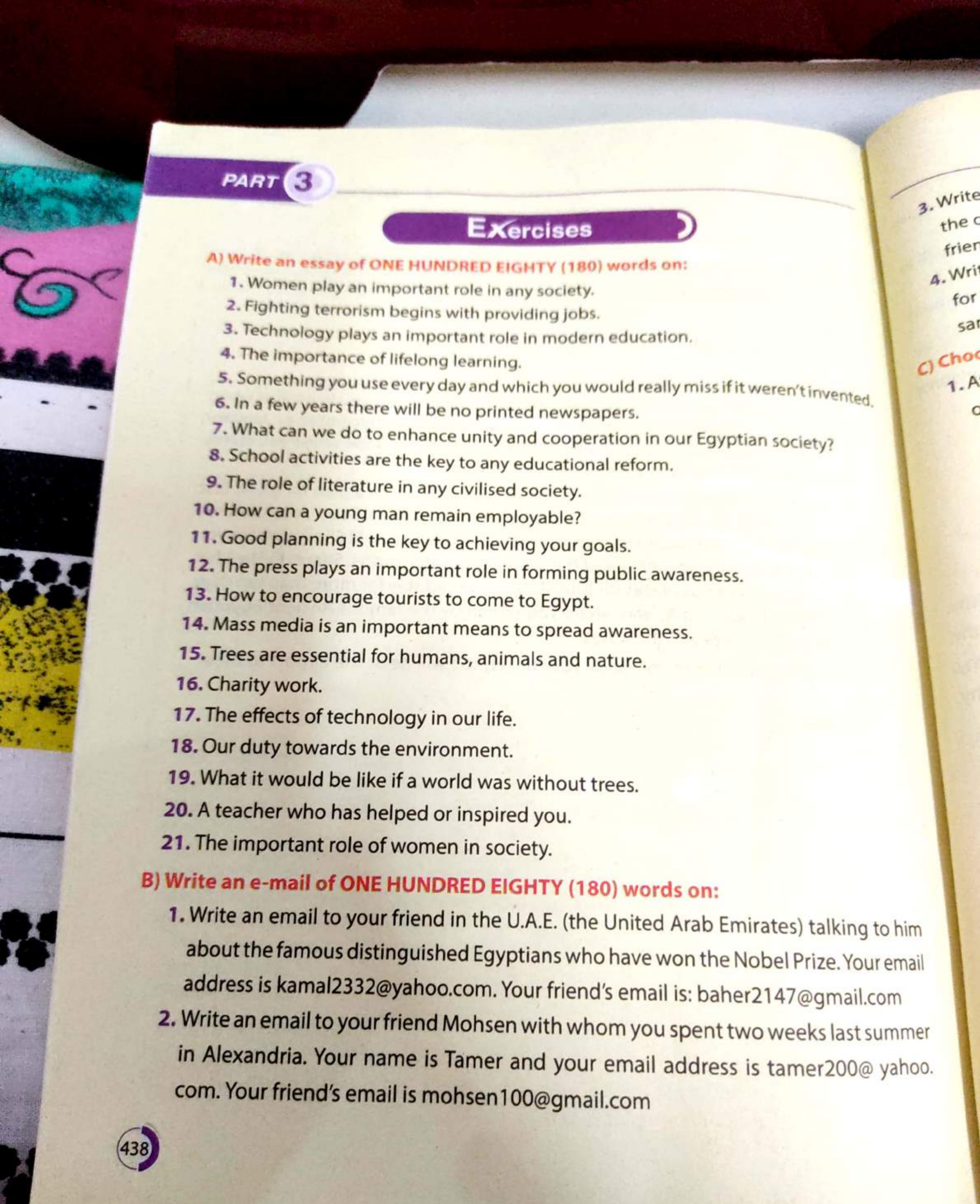
As you know I always have a plan for myself, so I have made a plan for us. At first we should go to the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. After that we will go to the Red Sea coast area. I'm sure you will love Sharm El Sheikh where you will enjoy the beautiful scenery and the marvelous water sports. Sharm El Sheikh is one of the most famous places for tourists. If you could stay for more than ten days, we can go to Luxor and Aswan where you will enjoy the famous Ancient Egyptian temples and the Valley of the Kings.

Please, contact me when you book your ticket, so I will be at the airport to meet you.

With love,

Sami

SEND



Exercises

A) Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1. Women play an important role in any society.
2. Fighting terrorism begins with providing jobs.
3. Technology plays an important role in modern education.
4. The importance of lifelong learning.
5. Something you use every day and which you would really miss if it weren't invented.
6. In a few years there will be no printed newspapers.
7. What can we do to enhance unity and cooperation in our Egyptian society?
8. School activities are the key to any educational reform.
9. The role of literature in any civilised society.
10. How can a young man remain employable?
11. Good planning is the key to achieving your goals.
12. The press plays an important role in forming public awareness.
13. How to encourage tourists to come to Egypt.
14. Mass media is an important means to spread awareness.
15. Trees are essential for humans, animals and nature.
16. Charity work.
17. The effects of technology in our life.
18. Our duty towards the environment.
19. What it would be like if a world was without trees.
20. A teacher who has helped or inspired you.
21. The important role of women in society.

B) Write an e-mail of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1. Write an email to your friend in the U.A.E. (the United Arab Emirates) talking to him about the famous distinguished Egyptians who have won the Nobel Prize. Your email address is kamal2332@yahoo.com. Your friend's email is: baher2147@gmail.com
2. Write an email to your friend Mohsen with whom you spent two weeks last summer in Alexandria. Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer200@ yahoo.com. Your friend's email is mohsen100@gmail.com

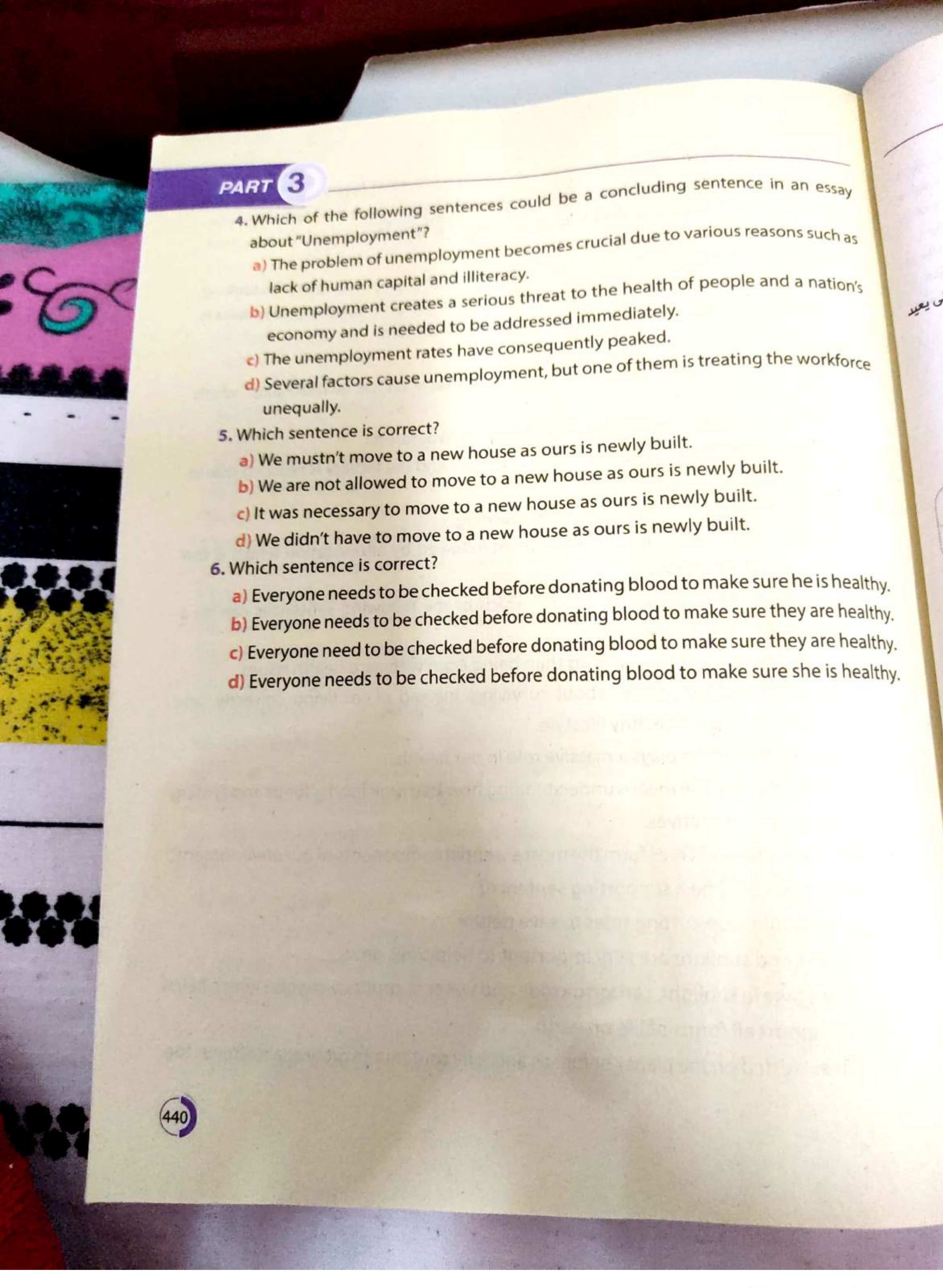
3. Write the c frien
4. Wri for sar

C) Choo
1. A c

3. Write an email to your friend Ali thanking him for the camera he presented you on the occasion of your success. Your email address is khloud8787@yahoo. com. Your friend's email is noha3636@gmail.com
4. Write an email to your English friend John telling him about your plans for looking for a job after graduating from university. You are Samy, and your email address is sam@yahoo.com. Your friend's email is jonny@gmail.com

C) Choose the correct answer:

1. After the sentence "Deforestation has great effects on the environment." which one could be evidence?
   a) Government projects may require clearing up of forests.
   b) Deforestation reduces the fertility of the soil and the fertility is reduced due to soil erosion.
   c) The effects of deforestation are far-reaching.
   d) Most of the time, deforestation is not followed by afforestation which is the opposite of deforestation.
2. In an essay about "Health is Wealth" which of the following sentences can be a topic sentence?
   a) There are no greater blessings than being born with zero health issues.
   b) Living shouldn't just be about surviving, instead of for living correctly, one needs to follow a healthy lifestyle.
   c) Our environment plays a massive role in our health.
   d) A healthy lifestyle means understanding how bad junk food is for us and finding healthier alternatives.
3. After the sentence "Trees form the most essential components of our environment." Which one could be a supporting sentence?
   a) We should stop cutting trees to save nature.
   b) Water and sunlight are very important to help trees grow.
   c) Trees take in sunlight, carbon dioxide and water to produce oxygen which helps to support all forms of life on earth.
   d) Trees existed on the planet before us and may continue to grow again after us too.



PART 3

4. Which of the following sentences could be a concluding sentence in an essay about "Unemployment"?
   a) The problem of unemployment becomes crucial due to various reasons such as lack of human capital and illiteracy.
   b) Unemployment creates a serious threat to the health of people and a nation's economy and is needed to be addressed immediately.
   c) The unemployment rates have consequently peaked.
   d) Several factors cause unemployment, but one of them is treating the workforce unequally.
5. Which sentence is correct?
   a) We mustn't move to a new house as ours is newly built.
   b) We are not allowed to move to a new house as ours is newly built.
   c) It was necessary to move to a new house as ours is newly built.
   d) We didn't have to move to a new house as ours is newly built.
6. Which sentence is correct?
   a) Everyone needs to be checked before donating blood to make sure he is healthy.
   b) Everyone needs to be checked before donating blood to make sure they are healthy.
   c) Everyone need to be checked before donating blood to make sure they are healthy.
   d) Everyone needs to be checked before donating blood to make sure she is healthy.

3 Translation

How to Translate into Arabic

١ نترجم should/must/ought to إلى: ينبغى أن/إنه لزام علينا أن.

٢ يمكن التخمين باستخدام مقاطع أول وآخر الكلمة مثل non-renewable فإن أصل الكلمة new وأضيف لها re بمعنى يع
وable تضيف الصفة وnon للنفى فتصبح الكلمة غير متجدد.

٣ إذا لم نستطع التخمين فلا نترك مكانها فارغًا.

٤ نلتزم بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة، ويمكن تحويل المجهول إلى معلوم إن استطعنا.

How to Translate into English

١ التمكن من قواعد اللغة التى درستها وتدرسها والتى تمكنك من البناء السليم للجملة وتكوينها.

Subject	Verb	Object	The rest باقى الجملة
الفاعل	الفعل	المفعول	الحال + المكان + الزمن

لاحظ أن موضع الصفة يكون قبل الأسماء فليس لها موضع محدد.
«رأى أحمد الولد القوى يجرى بسرعة فى الحديقة الواسعة الأسبوع الماضى».
فيجب تحديد أجزاء الجملة أولًا وهو كالآتى:

الفاعل	الفعل	المفعول	الحال	المكان	الزمن
Ahmed	saw	the strong boy	running quickly	in the wide garden	last week.

مع ملاحظة أن الصفة وصفت كلًا من الأسماء الآتية: الولد بأنه قوى والحديقة بأنها متسعة.
«لقد حققت مصر إنجازات عظيمة خلال العشرين سنة الأخيرة».
إذن فاعل الجملة ⬅ (مصر) والفعل ⬅ (حققت) والمفعول ⬅ (إنجازات عظيمة)
ملحوظة: كلمة «لقد» تعطى الأفضلية لزمن المضارع التام، وتحذف عند الترجمة. وماذا عن مكان الصفة؟ دائمًا قبل الاسم (ولا تجمع أبدًا).

الفاعل	الفعل	المفعول	الزمن
Egypt	has made	great achievements	during the last twenty years.

٢ حدد زمن الجملة: هل هو مضارع أم ماضٍ أم مستقبل أم مزيج من الأزمنة؟
«لقد نجح أخى وحصل على درجات عالية وسوف يلتحق بكلية الطب».
لاحظ: تحتوى الجملة هنا على أكثر من زمن. الجزء الأول من الجملة يحتوى على زمن مضارع، والآخر مستقبل. انظر كيف تكون الترجمة:
My brother has succeeded and got high marks and he will join the faculty of medicine.

٣ تجنب دائمًا الترجمة الحرفية.

٤ يجب أن تتعامل بشكل صحيح مع (Verb to be).
٥ أيضًا يجب أن تتعامل بشكل صحيح مع (Verb to have).
٦ المفعول المطلق لا يترجم، ولكن يستخدم ظرف أو جملة ظرفية تدل على معناه:
- يؤثر التدخين على الإنسان تأثيرًا سيئًا. Smoking affects man badly.
٧ دائمًا الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل وعلامته «ly» ما عدا الشواذ.
٨ أداة النصب «أن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.
٩ حفظ الأفعال التى لا تحتاج إلى حروف جر:

affect	يؤثر على	admire	يعجب بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	suspect	يشك فى
feel	يشعر بـ	include	يشتمل على
join	يلتحق بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	recognise	يتعرف على
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
reach	يصل إلى	fear	يخشى أن

١٠ هناك قواعد عامة ينبغى على الطالب أن يعلمها جيدًا لأنها من الثوابت مثل:
- حروف الجر بعدها v-ing إلا to فبعدها المصدر. I congratulated him on passing the exam
- الصفات قبلها v- to be The car is fast. Ahmed is tall. The lesson is easy.
- تتميز الأزمنة المستمرة بـ (Verb to be) + v-ing والأزمنة التامة بـ (V. to have) + p.p

١١ الأسماء المعنوية لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية:

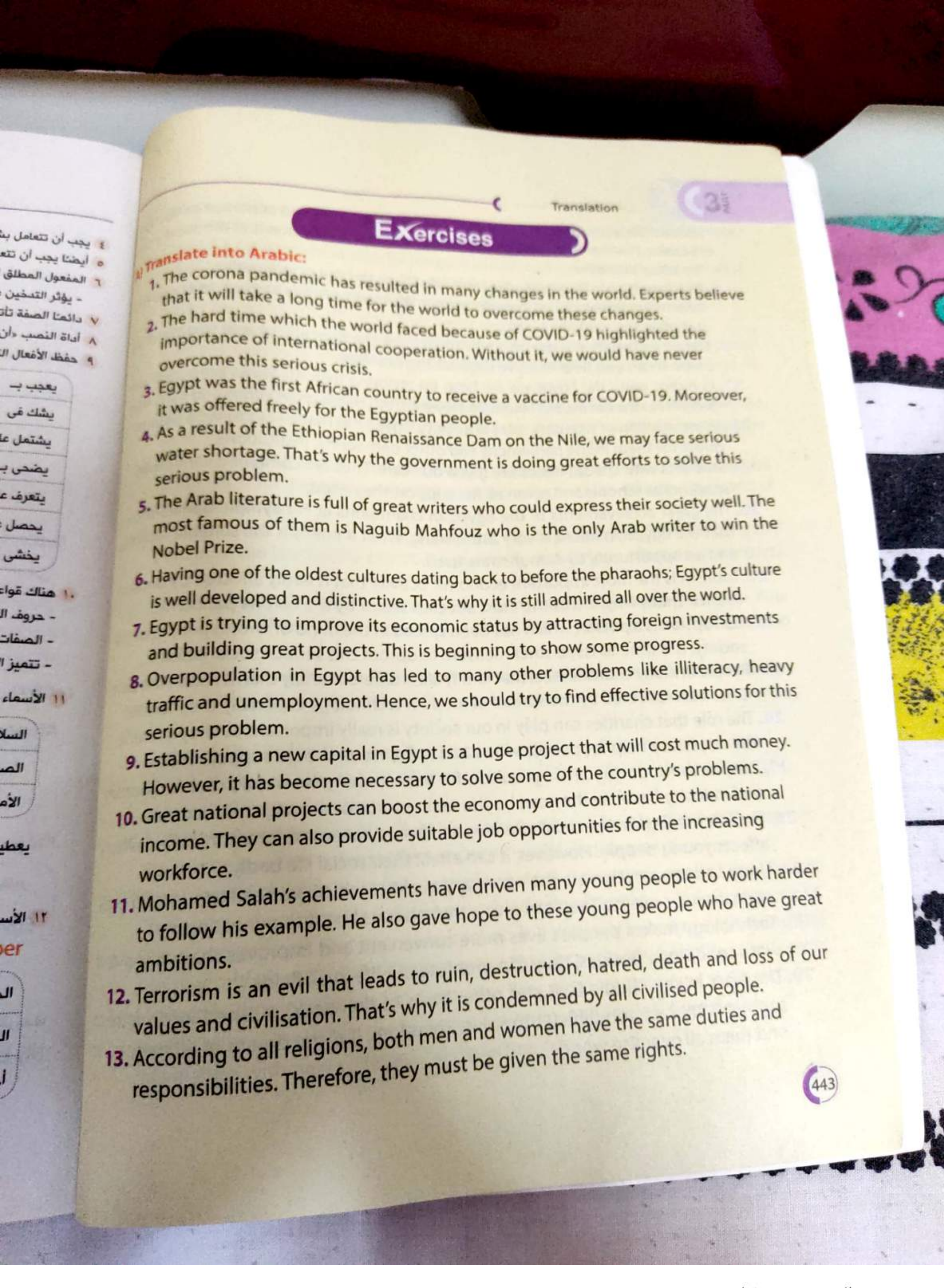
honour	الشرف	virtue	الفضيلة	peace	السلام
beauty	الجمال	love	الحب	friendship	الصداقة
truth	الصدق	progress	التقدم	honesty	الأمانة

يعطينا السلام فرصة ذهبية لتنفيذ مشروعات مفيدة.

Peace gives us a golden chance to carry out useful projects.

١٢ الأسماء التى لا تجمع Uncountable Nouns لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة the إلا فى حالة التخصيص مثل: The baggage of Mr Saber

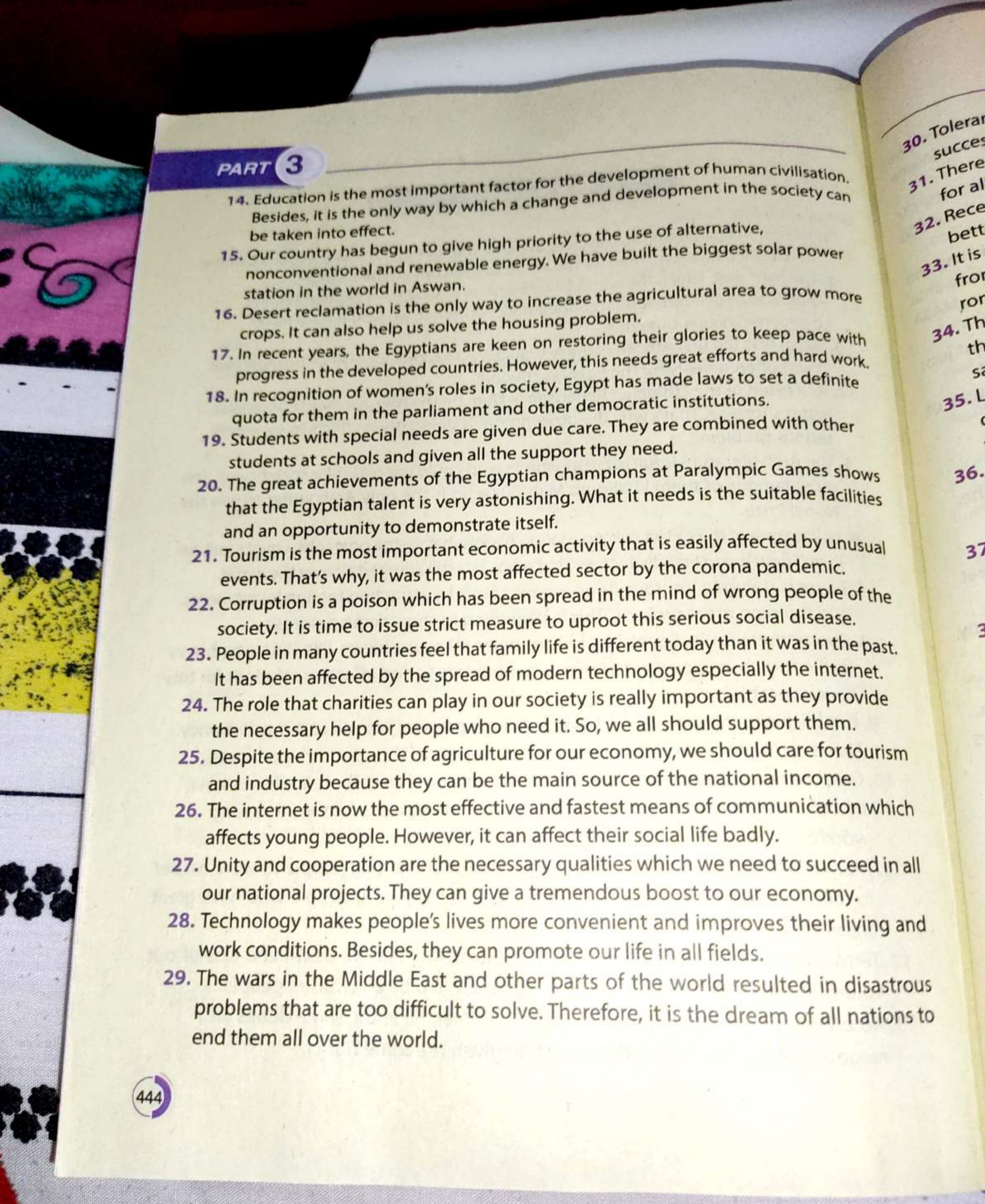
paper	الورق	luggage	الأمتعة	baggage	الحقائب
grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار



Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The corona pandemic has resulted in many changes in the world. Experts believe that it will take a long time for the world to overcome these changes.
2. The hard time which the world faced because of COVID-19 highlighted the importance of international cooperation. Without it, we would have never overcome this serious crisis.
3. Egypt was the first African country to receive a vaccine for COVID-19. Moreover, it was offered freely for the Egyptian people.
4. As a result of the Ethiopian Renaissance Dam on the Nile, we may face serious water shortage. That's why the government is doing great efforts to solve this serious problem.
5. The Arab literature is full of great writers who could express their society well. The most famous of them is Naguib Mahfouz who is the only Arab writer to win the Nobel Prize.
6. Having one of the oldest cultures dating back to before the pharaohs; Egypt's culture is well developed and distinctive. That's why it is still admired all over the world.
7. Egypt is trying to improve its economic status by attracting foreign investments and building great projects. This is beginning to show some progress.
8. Overpopulation in Egypt has led to many other problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. Hence, we should try to find effective solutions for this serious problem.
9. Establishing a new capital in Egypt is a huge project that will cost much money. However, it has become necessary to solve some of the country's problems.
10. Great national projects can boost the economy and contribute to the national income. They can also provide suitable job opportunities for the increasing workforce.
11. Mohamed Salah's achievements have driven many young people to work harder to follow his example. He also gave hope to these young people who have great ambitions.
12. Terrorism is an evil that leads to ruin, destruction, hatred, death and loss of our values and civilisation. That's why it is condemned by all civilised people.
13. According to all religions, both men and women have the same duties and responsibilities. Therefore, they must be given the same rights.


PART 3

14. Education is the most important factor for the development of human civilisation. Besides, it is the only way by which a change and development in the society can be taken into effect.
15. Our country has begun to give high priority to the use of alternative, nonconventional and renewable energy. We have built the biggest solar power station in the world in Aswan.
16. Desert reclamation is the only way to increase the agricultural area to grow more crops. It can also help us solve the housing problem.
17. In recent years, the Egyptians are keen on restoring their glories to keep pace with progress in the developed countries. However, this needs great efforts and hard work.
18. In recognition of women's roles in society, Egypt has made laws to set a definite quota for them in the parliament and other democratic institutions.
19. Students with special needs are given due care. They are combined with other students at schools and given all the support they need.
20. The great achievements of the Egyptian champions at Paralympic Games shows that the Egyptian talent is very astonishing. What it needs is the suitable facilities and an opportunity to demonstrate itself.
21. Tourism is the most important economic activity that is easily affected by unusual events. That's why, it was the most affected sector by the corona pandemic.
22. Corruption is a poison which has been spread in the mind of wrong people of the society. It is time to issue strict measure to uproot this serious social disease.
23. People in many countries feel that family life is different today than it was in the past. It has been affected by the spread of modern technology especially the internet.
24. The role that charities can play in our society is really important as they provide the necessary help for people who need it. So, we all should support them.
25. Despite the importance of agriculture for our economy, we should care for tourism and industry because they can be the main source of the national income.
26. The internet is now the most effective and fastest means of communication which affects young people. However, it can affect their social life badly.
27. Unity and cooperation are the necessary qualities which we need to succeed in all our national projects. They can give a tremendous boost to our economy.
28. Technology makes people's lives more convenient and improves their living and work conditions. Besides, they can promote our life in all fields.
29. The wars in the Middle East and other parts of the world resulted in disastrous problems that are too difficult to solve. Therefore, it is the dream of all nations to end them all over the world.

30. Tolerance helps groups of people to live together without arguing and to do their jobs successfully. It is an important moral quality that should be taught at an early age.
31. There is a comprehensive plan for the educational reform which is the responsibility for all sectors. Using modern technology is at the heart of this important plan.
32. Recent researches have showed that pleasure and positive states of mind are better for our health. However, they aren't gained as easily as we think.
33. It is said that poetry represents the media in which people can have time to escape from the worries of everyday life. It is admired mostly by people who believe in romanticism of life.
34. The United Nations urges countries of the world to issue more and more laws for the equality between men and women. It asserts that women should be given the same rights as men.
35. Lifelong learning is a continuous lifelong process, going on from birth to the end of our life. It has become a necessity to acquire the suitable skills for the world of work nowadays.
36. Environmental change is a global problem which people need to take seriously before it's too late for the planet. It has already had serious effect on many parts of the world.
37. Teachers must be aware that their methods must develop coping with the new generations. That's why the ministry of education is offering continuous training for them.
38. Because of the high cost of living, many people can't balance their work and their families. They have to work hard to support their family ignoring some important social matters.
39. Distance learning makes use of educational experts in the various branches of knowledge all over the world. It is the best solutions for those who haven't completed their education.
40. A writer's experiences in life affect his works and his style. It is said that literature is the mirror in which writers reflect society's merits and demerits.
41. Encouraging children to read is a good way to increase their general knowledge. That's why school libraries should be provided with all available and exciting books.
42. Some people think that space exploration is a waste of money which should be spent wisely on earth. Yet, scientists argue that it can do any benefits to humanity.
43. Modern technology has led to many new jobs which require new skills and qualifications. Therefore, the Egyptian government has established new universities with new colleges and departments.

44. Our engineering abilities have given us a great deal of comfort in our lives, but we still live with uncertainty about nature. We can't control many natural phenomena such as hurricanes and earthquakes.
45. Voluntary work and sharing in society activity add much to any applicant's CV. Social service and good social skills are becoming important qualities in the world of work.
46. Greed is considered a major source of evil that is the root cause for stealing, killing and treason. It leads greedy people to violating others' rights in order to get what he wants.
47. Many people believe that landing people on Mars isn't only science fiction. NASA has a project for this mission that is expected to complete in 2030.
48. Computer and language skills have become essential qualifications for most jobs nowadays. That's why they are given much care at schools and universities.
49. Festivals are a good opportunity for people to relax and forget the pressures of their everyday life. Hence, all countries have their own special festivals.
50. The pharaohs are considered the first great builders for all the temples and pyramids they left behind.
51. Cutting trees means that we add more and more poisons to the air we breathe. Trees are one of the most important factors to solve global warming.
52. Throughout history, the Egyptians proved their ability to carry out great architectural projects. The Pyramids, the Suez Canal and the High Dam are great examples for this.
53. One of the disadvantages of freelance work is the irregular income which many people can't afford. However, it may suit young and ambitious employees.
54. Meeting a deadline is one of the most serious work stress which many workers can't handle. However, companies think that it is one of the best ways to do good work.
55. Modern technology has made it possible for anyone to enjoy music from other cultures around the world. Through social media, you can enjoy music from all countries.
56. Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out permanently during an eclipse. But, this is scientifically incorrect.
57. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. It is a problem that needs all efforts to eliminate.
58. Despite our advanced technological abilities, there are still many things that we cannot do. One of these things is how to achieve success and happiness in life.
59. It is the responsibility of the elders to teach the youth how to face the obstacles of their practical life. Through their experiences, they can help them avoid mistakes.
60. Rules and laws are designed to ensure fairness, safety and respect for other people's rights. People shouldn't only think of their rights ignoring others.

B) Translate into English:

١ يؤكد الأطباء والمؤسسات الطبية على أهمية التباعد الاجتماعى وارتداء الكمامة والحفاظ على النظافة الشخصية للوقاية من كوفيد-١٩ وباقى الأمراض المعدية الأخرى.

٢ أثبتت جائحة كورونا أهمية تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى من الغذاء حتى تأمن مصر من الأخطار التى قد تهدد الأمن القومى الذى يعد الغذاء أهم عناصره.

٣ رغم وصول بعض شركات الأدوية إلى لقاحات لفيروس كورونا إلا أن اتخاذ الإجراءات الاحترازية الصحية ما زالت هامة حتى نتأكد من فاعلية هذه اللقاحات فى القضاء على هذا الفيروس.

٤ كان لجائحة كورونا آثار اقتصادية واجتماعية كبيرة ليس فقط فى الدول الفقيرة ولكن أيضًا الدول الغنية، ويعتقد الخبراء أن تلك الآثار سوف تستمر لشهور أو سنوات قادمة.

٥ رغم استمرار انتشار فيروس كورونا فى العالم إلا أن هناك من يتظاهرون ضد عودة إجراءات الغلق وحظر التجول التى اضطرت كثير من الحكومات إلى فرضها مع بداية انتشار المرض.

٦ تقوم الحكومة المصرية بجهود كبيرة لترشيد المياه وتوفير مصادر المياه العذبة مثل تطهير الترع وإنشاء محطات تحلية المياه حتى نتمكن من مواجهة مشكلة نقص المياه فى المستقبل.

٧ تهتم الحكومة المصرية بتوفير الرعاية الصحية لكل المصريين؛ ولذا قامت بكثير من المبادرات لفحص المرضى وتوفير الأدوية اللازمة لهم بالمجان.

٨ حققت مصر نجاحًا كبيرًا فى علاج أمراض الكبد فى كثير من القرى المصرية من أهمها تحقيق نسب شفاء عالية لمرض الكبد الوبائى.

٩ تهتم مصر بتحسين علاقاتها مع كل دول العالم وخاصة الدول الصديقة مما يزيد من عودة مصر لمكانتها المتميزة بين دول العالم.

١٠ تشارك المرأة المصرية بفاعلية كبيرة فى كل مجالات ونشاطات المجتمع والسياسة مما يؤكد دورها المتميز الذى لعبته على مر التاريخ القديم والمعاصر.

١١ إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم للشعوب والبلاد؛ لذلك تهتم الحكومات فى كل أنحاء العالم بالتطوير المستمر لكل أدواته وتوفير الإمكانيات اللازمة للمدارس.

١٢ فى نظام التعليم الحديث يجب على المدرس الجيد أن يكون ملمًا بأحدث الطرق التى تفيد الطلاب، ومن أهم هذه الطرق استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى نظم التعليم.

١٣ أسهمت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى نشر الأفكار سواء الصالحة أو الفاسدة فى جميع أنحاء العالم؛ لذا ينّادى الكثيرون بفرض رقابة عليها رغم معارضة الشباب لذلك.

١٤ إن تحرير المرأة لا يعنى رفض التقاليد واتباع «الموضة» بل يعنى الالتزام بالمبادئ والقيم الإنسانية التى سادت المجتمع المصرى عبر القرون.

١٥ تعتبر الوحدة الوطنية من أهم دعائم المجتمع المصرى التى تحميه من الفتنة الطائفية والصراعات الاجتماعية التى تنتشر فى بعض الدول المجاورة.

١٦ لقد أثبت الشعب المصرى أنه يرفض الإرهاب بكل صوره ولن تزيده الأعمال الإرهابية إلا تصميمًا على بناء الوطن ومحاربة كل الأفكار الهدامة ومحاولات هدم الأوطان.

١٧ يحذر الخبراء من الأثر السيئ لمواقع التواصل الاجتماعى على الأطفال؛ لذا يجب حمايتهم منها والحد من المشكلات التى قد يواجهونها نتيجة الاستخدام السيئ لها.

١٨ تتحمل وسائل الإعلام مسئولية تثقيف الناس وتعريفهم بحقيقة ما يجرى حولهم مما يزيد من أهمية تحرى الخبر الصادق والبعد عن الشائعات.

١٩ إن التلوث أحد أخطر التحديات التى تهدد حياة الإنسان ومستقبله على الأرض.

٢٠ إن زيادة الإنتاج هى السبيل الوحيد لبناء المجتمع المثالى الذى نأمل جميعًا فى الوصول إليه ولا يتحقق ذلك إلا بالعمل الجاد والصبر والإصرار.

٢١ زادت مشكلة المياه مع إثيوبيا من أهمية ترشيد المياه والحفاظ على مياه النيل لذا يجب نشر هذا الوعى بين الناس ومعاقبة كل من يخالف ذلك.

٢٢ تنفق الحكومة أموالًا طائلة على مشروعات تطوير سيناء حيث إن تطوير سيناء وتوفير فرص العمل هو الوسيلة المثلى لمحاربة التطرف والإرهاب بها.

٢٣ لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية هدفًا يسعى إليه الشباب الطموح المتطلع إلى غد أفضل، وتشجع الحكومة ذلك التوجه بتوفير القروض لمشروعات الشباب بفوائد ميسرة.

٢٤ يهدد الكتاب الإلكترونى مكانة المكتبات فى نشر الثقافة والمعرفة وذلك بسبب تفضيل الشباب لاستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة على الوسائل القديمة.

٢٥ كان لاختراع الورق والطباعة دور كبير فى نقل المعرفة والعلوم من جيل إلى جيل لكن البعض يظن أنهما سرعان ما سيصبحان جزءًا من التاريخ .

٢٦ إن القلق وضغط العمل هما العدو الخفى الذى يسبب ضررًا ومعاناة أكثر من أى مرض آخر؛ لذا ينصح الأطباء بتخصيص وقت للراحة والاسترخاء.

٢٧ نحن ندين بالكثير لوالدينا ومعلمينا الذين لم يدخروا جهدًا لتقديم كل الدعم والنصح لنا فهم مثل الشموع التى تحترق لتضىء طريق الآخرين.

٢٨ أسهم مترو الأنفاق كثيرًا فى حل مشكلة المواصلات فى القاهرة كما أصبح وسيلة النقل الأكثر أمانًا والأقل تلويثًا مما يدفع الحكومة المصرية لبناء المزيد من الخطوط.

٢٩ تتميز مصر بالعديد من العجائب الهندسية القديمة مثل الأهرامات والمعابد المنتشرة فى جميع أنحاء صعيد مصر والتى ما زالت تجذب اهتمام السياح والخبراء من جميع أنحاء العالم.

٣٠ أصبحت الأعاصير والفيضانات حدثًا متكررًا فى الكثير من دول العالم بسبب التغير المناخى.

٣١ حصل ثلاثة من المصريين على جائزة نوبل مما يعتبر مصدر فخر لكل المصريين ودليلًا على تميزهم فى كثير من المجالات.

٣٢ أسهمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى تطوير طرق التعليم والاتصال بين المعلم والمتعلم مما كان له أهمية كبيرة فى الاعتماد على التعليم عبر الإنترنت خلال أزمة فيروس كورونا.

٣٣ يستخدم علماء النفس الموسيقا فى علاج بعض الأمراض التى قد تعجز الأدوية عن علاجها.

٣٤ المدرس هو العمود الفقرى الذى يجب الاعتماد عليه لتحقيق أى إصلاح حقيقى للتعليم مما يستلزم اطلاعه المستمر على الطرق التربوية الحديثة.

٣٥ لقد حل التليفون المحمول محل القراءة وممارسة الرياضة مما أثر على صحة الشباب ومعارفهم العامة فمعظمهم يعانى من قلة المعارف العامة.

٣٦ أدت الحروب والنزاعات فى الشرق الأوسط إلى تفاقم مشكلة اللاجئين فى أوروبا مما يدل على أن العالم أصبح كمكان صغير يتأثر بعضه ببعض سريعًا.

٣٧ يجب أن يدرك الجميع أهمية دور المدرسة فى تنمية القيم والأخلاق فى المجتمع؛ لذا يجب أن تصبح مكانًا ممتعًا لا ينفر منه الطلاب.

٣٨ كلنا نعيش بالأمل، وبدونه يسود اليأس والتشاؤم مما يؤدى إلى آثار سيئة على حياتنا، أما التفاؤل فيؤدى إلى النجاح فى كل مشروعاتنا الحالية والمستقبلية.

٣٩ دافع الكثير من رائدات العمل الاجتماعى مثل هدى شعراوى ونبوية موسى وبنت الشاطئ عن حقوق المرأة فى التعليم والعمل مثل الرجال. وكان لجهودها أثر كبير فى تحقيق ذلك.

٤٠ لقد بدأت مصر مشروع إنشاء المفاعل النووى للاستفادة منه فى توليد الكهرباء التى نحتاج إليها كأحد مصادر الطاقة المتجددة التى لا تلوث البيئة.



رقم الإيداع: ٩٦٧٣ / ٢٠٢٠

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم

رقم ١٠٤/ ١٤/ ٢/ ١٢٤